

Historico-Political GEOGRAPHY;

Or, A. Particular

Revised K

DESCRIPTION Of the Several COUNTRIES in the World;

IN THEIR

Situation, Extent, Air, Soil, Divisions, Provinces, Rivers, Commodities, Rarities, Capital Cities, Chief Towns, Inhabitants, Manners, Languages, Populoufness, &c.

The Genealogy, Pretensions, Government, Titles, Revenues, Residence, &c. of their KINGS and PRINCES.

Their respective States, Courts of Justice, Laws, Nobility, Orders of Knighthood, Clergy, Archbishopricks, Bishopricks, Universities, and Religion.

THE SECOND EDITION, with ADDITIONS.

L O N D O N:

Printed for WILLIAM FRANCE, at the *Mense-Gate*, near
Charing-Cross. 1729.

(Price Four Shillings.)

Historico-Political

R

MOLEY

MOLEY





To the Right Honourable
The Lord Robert Mountague,
AND
Lord John Murray,

And to Messieurs

Thomas Hayward,
Charles Rich,
Stephen Polier de Bottens,
William Mathews,
Charles Williams,
William Richardson,
John Williams,

Charles Bradshaigh,
Stephen de Mainbray,
Frederick Teusch,
Thomas Foulkes,
Ward de la Bastide,
Richard Sawle,

And to the rest of my BOARDERS.

My LORDS and GENTLEMEN,



HIS BOOK being made for your Use, 'tis no wonder if I Dedicate it to you: 'Tis your Due, and you may claim it as your lawful Property. But you cannot expect, that, according to the Example of most Authors, I shou'd here make a Panegyrick on your Persons, and Families; it wou'd require too-much Time: It will be sufficient for my Purpose, to acquaint you, in this Epistle Dedicatory, with some Maxims which will shew you the Usefulness of the Science this Book treats of.

The Epistle Dedicatory.

Most Sciences require a Considering Mind, in order to compare Propositions one with another ; **Geography** is Easy ; whereas Geography is a Science of the Eyes, and is very Plain : And the Plainer and Easier this Science is, the more necessary it is, and the greater shame it wou'd be to be ignorant of it. This Advantage it hath above the rest, that being extremely diversify'd, it delighteth much more than it fatigues ; wherefore, it is as well suited to the Capacity of Young People, as to that of Persons more advanced in Years. You know, as well as my self, of young Children, who at four, five, six, or eight years old, know a great deal more of Geography, than many People of forty or fifty years of age.

In vain wou'd a Man pretend to write an Necessary to History, without an exact and profound knowledge of Geography : He wou'd infallibly fall into the same Error, with which we reproach some of the ancient Historians, whose Ignorance, or want of Accuracy, throws us into Intricacies, out of which their Commentators (always fond of their Authors) have much a-do to dis-intangle us. Without the help of this Science, and that of Chronology, History is but blind and confused. Hence it is, that Vossius calls Geography and Chronology the two Eyes of History, "*duo Historiæ Lumina.*" How can an Historian relate the Wars and Expeditions of Conquerors, the Rise or Fall of Empires, if he be not well acquainted with the Geography of the Country where those Things happen'd ? Wherefore, Polybius went formerly over the Alps, and a part of Gallia, in order to give a true and full Account of Hannibal's Passage into Italy. It is also related of Sallust, that before he wrote his Jugurthine, or Numidian War, he himself went to take a view of the Places, in order to examine the Nature of the Soil, and to know the Difficulty of the Encampments, the Facility of the Armies Marches, the Troubles undergone to Defend or Attack a Place or Camp ; in a word, all that is necessary to make his Readers understand his Meaning.

To the
Reader of
History ;

And tho' it be not as necessary for the Reader, as for the Composer of the History, to have a full and particular Knowledge of all the Places, yet he must at least have a general Notion of them. Can we, without this, judge whether or
no

no Xenophon and his 10,000 Grecians justly deserve the Praises which are given them, for their so-much-boasted Retreat? Or, whether Cesar's Conquests be the Actions of an Hero, or those of an ordinary Captain? In a word, Geography is very assisting to such as learn and read History, seeing it points out to them the Places of the Earth where the Things themselves happen'd; for it is properly, and in the truest signification, the Local Memory. How great, for example, is the difference between a Man who has only read the History of Alexander the Great, in Quintus Curtius, and one who has study'd it with the Geographical Map before his Eyes? The first can have but a very imperfect Idea of that great Conqueror; whereas the other, tracing that Prince in his Conquests on the Map, becomes, as it were, an Eye-Witness of his most glorious, but very hazardous and difficult Expedition: He first views Alexander defeating Darius's Army at the crossing of the River Granic; and then coasting along the Archipelago, he takes the Cities of Ephesus, Milet, Halicarnassus, Sardis, and subdues the Provinces of Lydia, Ionia, Caria, Pamphylia, and Cappadocia. Having vanquished Darius a second time in the Battle of Issus, he conquers Phenicia, and the Cities of Sidon, Tyre, Damascus, Gaza; and goes into Egypt, which he also conquers, there he builds the City of Alexandria. After that, he intirely defeats that unhappy Prince a third time near Arbella. Darius flies into Media, and Alexander designs to pursue him; but he first takes Babylon: then he advances into Persia; Persepolis opens its Gates to the victorious Monarch, who is immediately acknowledged Sovereign of Media, Hircania, and the neighbouring Provinces. He afterwards goes into the Indies, and having overcome King Porus, he advances as far as the River Hydaspes, and returns at last to Babylon, where he dies of Poison, as is suspected, but rather, of excessive Drinking. It is undeniable, but that a Man who thus has two or three times followed, as it were, Alexander in his Victories, must be very able to give a very good Account of the History of that Conqueror. No wonder then, if we see so many Scholars forget the Histories they read in Livy, Sallust, Polybius, Diodorus Siculus, &c. Would their Masters, instead of other vain and useless Sciences, instruct their Scholars in Geography and Chronology, their Parents would have abundant reason to be satisfy'd with their Improvement, and their Masters Care, and would never grudge the Expence they are at for their Childrens Education. In a word; We may rightly apply to the Historian, what Tully says

of the Orator ; Quæro enim num possit aut contra Imperatorem aut pro Imperatore dici, sine Rei Militaris usu, aut sæpè etiam sine Regionum Terrestrium aut Maritimarum Scientia : “ How can he speak of a General, if he does “ not understand Military Discipline, or if he be ignorant in “ Geography ? for without the knowledge of this Science, an “ Orator can neither praise nor blame a General’s Conduct ; “ he is not in a capacity to render him all the Justice he deserves.”

The Practical part of War, does indeed require but a general knowledge of the Terrestrial Globe ; but it often requires a particular one of the Kingdom, and especially of the Province which is the Seat of War. Else how could a General, without an exact Topography, seize on the richest Camp, regulate the March of his Army, order the Attack and Defence of a Town, and send Succours to a besieged Fortrefs ? It may be, perhaps, as much owing to this Science, as to some other Abilities, that the late Duke of Marlborough and Prince Eugene have acquired so much Glory, by so effectually defeating their Enemies. It has always been so : Crassus, by his ignorance of Armenia, saw his Army perish with Hunger and Misery in a Wilderness, whither a treacherous Guide had led him : Whereas Alexander, at the Battle of Issus, with a handful of Soldiers, beat Darius who had an incredible number of Men. Darius, nevertheless, was Courageous and Valiant, and had a sufficient number of well-disciplin’d Soldiers ; How came he then to be vanquished by an Army which he might have crush’d in pieces ? To understand this aright, we must make use of the help of Geography ; and Quint. Curt. who describes that bloody Day, makes a very good use of his skill in this Science : Alexander, before the Battle, had a mind to change his Camp, in order to have a greater latitude to range in ; but Parmenio dissuaded him from it, by telling him, That as the Place was but little and narrow, Darius could never bring more Troops upon them in Front, than they had themselves, and would therefore never be over-match’d by him. Alexander follow’d his Advice, and gain’d a Conquest : Whereas Darius was beat, because he would not believe what the Grecians, he had in his Army, had told him, who advised him to go back, in order to draw Alexander into the wide Plains of Mesopotamia, where his small Army should be easily surrounded, and cut to pieces by his that was so very numerous.

The Epistle Dedicatory.

v

Geography is also very beneficial in Politicks. To a
As Convenience regulates the Interests of most Statesman ;
Princes ; so the Situation of Places, Towns, and
Provinces, is often the Rule of that Convenience.
We must consider who are our Neighbours, before we be able to
know what Confederacies and Alliances we ought to make with
em : And for want of such Consideration, we often neglect our
own Interests. Ministers of State have often fallen into gross
Mistakes, for want of some skill in Geography, (as we shall see
hereafter.)

How beneficial has this Science been to Com- To a
 merce, either for Exportation or Importation of Merchant ;
 Goods from one Country to another ! Trade is
 now come to a very great perfection, by means of
 Navigation, which is an essential part of Geography. *We*
had formerly our East-India Goods by the Red-Sea ; they were
unladen at Suez ; from whence they were with much trouble
transported to Grand-Cairo by Land, and thence to Alexan-
dria, where the Venetians who had the Monopoly of them, took
them, and sent them afterwards throughout all Europe. But
Geography has taught us a shorter Cut, and a less expensive
Way to fetch them, by doubling the Cape of Good-Hope, which
is the easiest and best Way to the East-Indies. The same Science
teaches us also, that by Canals and Rivers, Commodities may
easily be transported from one Province where an Abundance is, into
another where they are more wanted, because of the Scarcity of
them : Thus Plenty is procured to great Cities, and large Pro-
vinces are enriched ; which, for want of this transportation,
wou'd be Poor, in the midst of their Opulence.

Geography is also useful, for the understand- To a
 ing Religious Affairs : There are a great many Divine ;
 Places in Scripture, which we can never well
 understand, without the help of Geography.
Were it not for the knowledge we acquire thereby, the reading the
Pilgrimages of the Patriarchs, the Travels of the Israelites, the
Predictions of the Prophets against some particular Kingdoms
and Nations, and ev'n the Acts of the Apostles, wherein we view
with Admiration the Beginning and Progress of the Christian
Church, wou'd turn to little purpose. And whoever is ignorant
of the Mediterranean Sea, its Coasts, Harbours, and Islands,
can

can never rightly understand the Voyage of St. Paul from Cesarea to Rome, when he appealed to Cesar. Wherefore, it is reported of Erasmus, that being fifty Years old, and about making Annotations on this Book, he apply'd himself so much to this Science, that he was continually poring on Maps and Books of Geography. If Sulpitius Severus, and several other Great Men after him, had taken as much delight in this Science, they would not have fallen into such gross Errors concerning the inconceivable Voyage of the Whale which swallow'd up Jonas, and which they suppose to have cast him up in the Harbour of Nineve: Whereas Nineve is not on the Shore of the Mediterranean, but on the Banks of the Tigris, which in that place is too shallow for so great a Fish to swim in: besides, that Whale must, after doubling The Cape of Good-Hope, have travelled several thousand Leagues in three Days time.

In a word, let the Ridicule which several People
 A shame to have drawn upon themselves, by their committing
 be ignorant such Blunders in this Science, inspire us with
 of Geogra- an Inclination for Geography. I could name
 phy. Instances of several People now alive, as a Proof
 of my Assertion: but let it be enough to in-
 stance it, on Persons that are dead long ago. An English Em-
 bassador being at the Court of Rome when Mr. Bethancourt a
 Frenchman discover'd the Canaries, then called the Fortunate
 Islands, and Pope Clement VI. having made a Grant of them
 under that Name, in 1343, to the Count de Clermont a
 Prince of the Blood Royal of France and Spain; the English
 Embassador, thinking there were no other Fortunate-Islands but
 those of Great-Britain, left Rome in disgust, and went to
 acquaint his King, That the Pope had given away his Domi-
 nions. Sandoval who has written the Life of Charles V. so
 accurately, speaking concerning a Voyage of that Emperor into
 France in 1544, says, that there is but ten Leagues from Paris
 to Luxemburg, tho' there be above 72. He is yet guilty of
 a greater Blunder, by saying, that Coron a Town in Morea si-
 tuated in the Gulf formerly called Messeniacus, is Cheronea
 an Inland Town of Boeotia. An eminent Turkish Courtier,
 when he heard that the last Siege of Vienna was raised by John
 Sobieski King of Poland, fell into a great Rage against the
 French King Lewis XIV., for suffering that Prince (as he
 supposed) to march thorough his Dominions against the Turks.
 Some late French Authors have written of Ships sailing from
 the

the Caspian to the Euxine Sea, because they did not know that those Seas have no Communication with one another, and that there is a great Ridge of Mountains between them.

Geography being a very plain and easy Science, requires but few Principles. Those Principles are only some particular Words, which you will find explained in every Method or Introduction to Geography; but if you will penetrate still further into it, you must then make use of Principles which are more Astronomical than Geographical. In that case, The Geographia & Hydrographia Reformata of Father Riccioli; The Memoirs of the Royal Academy at Paris; The Transactions of the Royal Society at London; The Book of Father Dechalles, and especially that of Varenus; such as published by Sir Isaac Newton, may be of very great assistance. What these two great Mathematicians say, are enough for those who desire to attain but to a moderate knowledge of these things; and very few are obliged to examine them thoroughly. The Principles of plain Sciences must not be cumber'd with strange Notions: The best way then for Beginners, is, to remain satisfy'd with such general Maxims as are to be met with in the common Books; and afterwards, if their Genius inclines them, and especially if their Professions require a more particular Knowledge of this Science, they may then examine it to the bottom.

The best Method to study this Science, does not consist in much reading, but in giving a particular attention to Places on the Maps, and to treasure up in one's Memory such Places as are set down in the Geography we make use of: for in this case, the Eyes work more than the Mind. Nevertheless, it would be very much to the purpose, to fix our Imagination, if every Place set down in the Book or Map were characterized by some Particulars of Natural, Ecclesiastical, or Civil History, or by the Commerce, and Nature of the Soil, by some Siege, Battle, or other extraordinary Event. This Method has a double Advantage; for it serves, not only to strengthen the Imagination, which can hardly fix it self on a meer Word, distinguished by no particular Mark; but it has also the happiness of taking away from Geography whatsoever is tedious or empty, which a long Series of extraordinary Words will certainly produce. By this Method, we have also

The Order
to be fol-
low'd in the
Study of
Geography.

the pleasure of learning some important Actions, which we are seldom so happy as to learn any other way. And tho' this Method be very Advantageous, yet very few Authors have made use of it. The Author of The French New Method to learn Geography, gives us an Account of Towns and Provinces in this manner; and we often follow his steps in this Treatise, which, abstracted from what it borrows from History and Politicks, would, like many other Works of this nature, be only a meer Skeleton, or at best a Body on which nothing is visible but a dry Skin composed of Sinews and Bones only.

What I have said hitherto concerns only the Principles and Entrance into this Science; but if you are desirous of examining further into it, you must be more prolix and stricter in your searches: In order to this, you must reflect on the Profession you are designed for. An Officer, for example, must study Geography in a quite different manner from the Magistrate, and the Merchant from the Divine. The general Principles are the same for those several Stations; but if any particular Discussion or Account is to be given, then every one must separate and take to his Province, as well concerning the Observations to be made in the progress of this Study, as about the Choice of Books, and the Method of examining them.

When the Military Man has gone through the general Principles, when he is sufficiently Master of this part, he must particularly study the Geographical Description of the Provinces which are commonly the Seat of War. He must take particular Notice of the Mountains, Rivers, Canals, Marshes, and Defiles which might stop the March of an Army, or which may secure a Camp. And if he can conveniently, he must acquaint himself with the Situation and Strength of the principal Towns. But here every one must have a just regard to the Situation of his Country, to the Provinces that border upon it, and ev'n to the warlike or pacifick Temper of the neighbouring People. However, we are not to think that this particular Knowledge is necessary to the General only; for every particular Officer may happen to have some Command, larger or lesser, each according to their Rank; to which this knowledge may be very subservient. The Colonel leads his Regiment, and a Captain is daily sent with Detachments. In a word, every Military Man ought to aspire to the highest Posts; for thereby Bravery would lift up its head:

head: but without this noble Emulation the Soul flags, and easily grows remiss. Howsoever then the Particulars may be set down in the Map, they must not be neglected; the Accounts of a Siege, of a Battle, and of an extraordinary March must never be read, nor can ever be well understood, unless we have the Map before our Eyes. This is not purely to study Geography, 'tis rather the learning of one's Profession.

The Magistrate must take another Course; he must not attend to the Encampments, or Marches of an Army; he ought to penetrate into the different Tempers of People, their particular Laws. The different Situations of a Country ought sometimes to teach him the diversity of their Customs. The Positions of some Towns or Provinces, put him in mind of this or that Country's Interests or Pretensions. That is useful: more than this, is meer Curiosity.

By the
States'-
Man;

A Merchant, in his application to Geography, ought to reflect upon the Fruitfulness of a Country, on the Nature of the Commodities that abound in some Places, on the Scarcity of some particular Merchandises, and on the conveniency of transporting them either by Land or Water. If there be plenty of Corn in his Country, he must study Geography, in order to know such Places as want it, and consider which is the shortest and easiest Way to export their Superfluities thither. By this Method, Holland, which is almost bury'd in the Water, has been able to take Advantage, from what otherwise would have caused its Ruin and Destruction. The Dutch have so managed those Waters, and keep them out by their Canals, as, by their means, they carry plenty of all Things, not only to the most barren Parts of their Country, but ev'n to the neighbouring Provinces and Kingdoms. I don't mention the incredible Riches they get by Navigation. Let us only observe, by the by, that their Maps and Geographical Observations are commonly more exact than those of other Nations.

The Mer-
chant;

The Geography of the Clergyman is confined within narrower bounds. He must bind all Clergyman; his attention to what may explain the Ecclesiastical History. He ought to discuss a Position that is dubious, but necessary for the well understanding of the Holy Scriptures; by

The Epistle Dedicatory.

by Geography; he must get the Knowledge of a Place, where a Council has been held, and of the extent of the principal Episcopal Sees. It is also necessary for him to know where Heresies had their Rise, their Progress, and Ends. As this Study is less incumber'd, so it is mostly explained in the several Treatises and Dissertations of Learned Men.

To all this, I may add, That the Method Young Men must make use of in learning this Science, is very different from that which is to be followed by People more advanced in Years, and such who have already made some Improvements in it. They must begin by the easiest and plainest Things, and then proceed gradatim to that which is more complexed. It would be very advantagious, were this Science render'd a kind of Diversion, and Pleasure were joyned with Profit: But all this depends upon the Prudence of the Master or Tutor.

But these ought to take care not to hurry from one Author to another; for as every Man's Principles are particular to himself, and as they don't follow the same Order, it will create a Confusion in the Memory, in a Science which requires so much Order and Method. You must always stick close to the most careful Author in every sort, and in case of necessity, one or two of the same kind must be consulted, and ev'n then it ought to be only when a great Difficulty requires it. If you have a mind to acquire solid Learning, keep close to one Book, but let it be exact, and of such a bigness as will permit you to read it more than once, that you may the better dive and penetrate into the Principles of it; but as some Difficulties may arise in your progress, which an Epitome cannot intirely remove, in that case you may make use of Books of a greater size; but neither their diversity or multitude ought to impose upon you; mind only whether their Authors have been diligent and exact in compiling. And ev'n when we are to chuse Books wherein we may find some light, every Body must have a regard to the Works be likes, or to those which are most easy to be found; with this Caution, nevertheless, that when they are not of an approved Fidelity, they cannot be read over with too great Care and Circumspection, lest we be the Dupes of our own Credulity.

I should

I should now give you a Catalogue of such Authors as have written either general or particular Treatises upon this Subject, but this would make my Preface too long; besides that, you may find them in Booksellers Catalogues: we are only to observe, that Authors that are born or have lived a long time in a Country, are commonly better acquainted with its Laws, Customs, &c. and are consequently fitter than Foreigners to write upon those Subjects. But this is not always true; for were it not for the Works of Dionysius Halicarnassæus, Dion, Plutarch, &c. it would be difficult for us to understand the several Customs of the Romans, and it often happens that those Authors are too partial to their own Nation.

We may apply to Geographical Maps, what has been already said concerning Books that treat of Geography: for on the choice of those Maps often depends our improvement in that Science. Wherefore I advise you to make use of the largest, and that are on several Sheets, for they are commonly more distinct and plain: you must not mind such as are in Geographical Introductions; since they scarce serve to shew the general Situation of Kingdoms, and are entirely useless, to see the true Position of Towns and Provinces. What advantage can we make from a Map of six Inches, which sets before our Eyes a Country of six or seven hundred Leagues, when a Map of four Feet is not sometimes large enough to give a full Knowledge of the general and particular Divisions of it? The Maps made by Messieurs Sanfon, Duval, Jaillot, De L'Isle, Nolin, Tillemont, Defer, Inselin, Blæu, Visscher, Dewit, Moll, and Senex, are the most approved of.

These Things, with several Additions, Retrenchments and Alterations of our own, are to be found in a Preliminary Discourse composed by the Abbot Langlet Author of The New Method to Geography.

It only remains, that I acquaint you with some few Things concerning this Treatise which I Dedicate to you. You will find in it a Compendious, but Distinct Account of whatever is necessary to be Known about the several Countries in the WORLD, and

and especially in EUROPA. And tho' it contain little or nothing but what may be found in most Geographical and Historical Treatises, such as Heylin's Cosmography, Morery's Dictionary, Gordon's, Sanfon's, Robbe's, Defer's, Le-cocq's Geography, New Atlas, New Method, The Sovereigns of Europa, &c.; yet I can't be charg'd with Plagiarism, since in Books of this sort it is impossible to utter things entirely of our own making, except they be both false, and designedly forged. Who is the Man that would charge the Abbot de Vertot with being a Plagiary, tho', in his Roman Revolutions, he relates but what has been said by Livy, Dion, Plutarch, &c. 2. The Order and Contrivance are entirely my own; I don't know of any Author that comes near it, except Gordon. 3. I have put together and digested what is to be found in several Authors; and have set in this Book, the truest, usefulest, and best-related Things to be met with in those Authors: so that in reading this Treatise only, you will read many others. Lastly, As I am born in a Contry where Honesty, Candour, Sincerity and Neutrality, are, as it were natural; 'tis not strange, if I relate Things in their native colours; and not, like several others, either in order to extol and flatter their own Nation, or to turn others into ridicule: But still I don't claim your belief of every thing I relate; I don't pretend to be infallible. And as, by the Grace of God, I am born a Protestant, and am now a Member of the Church of England, you must not be surpris'd, if I judge so charitably the Religion of other People, and that (according to the Command of our Saviour) I don't recriminate against Papist Authors, who, mostly in their Geographical Treatises, don't fail of giving us a Wipe now and then. And altho' I have been brought up in a Common-wealth, yet I have advanced nothing against Monarchical States, but in Matters which are obvious to every Body: And, to speak true, I find none, wherein the Advantages and Prerogatives of the Crown be so well temper'd with the Privileges and Liberties of the People, as they are now, and I hope will always be, in Great-Britain. And I presume, that no body will blame me, for wishing that all other Countries in the World were govern'd after as happy a manner, as the English are at present, and will always be, as long as any Regard is had for the Constitution in Church and State: That Priviledge is so precious and valuable, that I can't too much advise you to be very zealous in the keeping it.

Before

Before I make an end, it must not be forgot, my Lords and Gentlemen, that some of you will find few Things in this Book, that you were ignorant of before. You are Witnesses to me, that the knowledge of Geography is so far from being an Obstacle to the study of Religion, (which is here carefully taught you, as well as French, Latin, Greek, History, Chronology, &c.) that, on the contrary, it conduces very much to the speedy learning and easily retaining those several Sciences.

In order to have render'd this Study more delightful and easie, I had design'd to join to it several Cuts which should have represented the Rarities which are to be seen in the several Countries mention'd in this Book; but I wanted more Subscriptions to this Work than I could have reasonably expected. Some of your Parents were indeed pleas'd to promise me, that they would be at the Expence of having a Plate engraven each, but the number fell short of the multitude I wanted.

I must not forget to tell you, that in the Artic. of Rarities to be seen in England, there is one, which, of late, I know to be entirely false: The River (Mole) near Darking in Surry, does not, nor ever did run under Ground. I wonder how People could so confidently assert the contrary, unless it were to allure curious People to go into those Parts. If my Business did permit me to go and see many of the Rarities I set down as such in this Book, I dare say there would be several struck out of it, as unworthy that bewitching title. And it would be very much for the Credit of the Republick of Learning, if Judicious and Learned Men were sent to several Parts of the World, to see and examine the Things which concern Geography; Falshood would soon be banish'd out of it: But as Things are at present, I'm afraid that the ancient Philosopher, who said that Truth was at the bottom of a Well, will prove at last but too true a Prophecy, and that no body will be at the trouble and expence to look for it.

That God would be pleas'd to bless you with his Spiritual and Temporal Blessings, that you may once serve your King and Country

xvi

The Epistle Dedicatory.

Country either in Church or State Employments, and that you may answer the Expectations of your Parents and Relations, is the earnest Prayer of,

My LORDS and GENTLEMEN,

Your most Humble,

and most Obedient Servt.

Little-Chelsea,

June 23d,

1722.

PASCHOUD.



Historico-



Historico Political Geography.

CHAP. I.

Of Spain.

I. Q.



HY is this Country so called?

A. Justin, and some others say, it is so called from a certain King named *Hispanus*. Others

The Name of Spain.

from the *Iberians*, a People inhabiting before near the *Caspian* and *Black Sea*, who came and settled in *Spain*; and in Honour to the God *Pan*, whom they worshipp'd, call'd this Western *Iberia*, *Pania*, then *Spania*, and at last *Hispania*. Others from the Greek Word *Spania*, i. e. Want, because of its Scarcity of Inhabitants. But the most receiv'd Opinion is, that this Name comes from *Hispalis* (now *Seville*) the chief Town of all this Country in former Times. Mr. *Bochart* says it was called *Spania*, i. e. abounding in Rabbits, which were once in so great Number, that they undermined Houses and Cities, says *Pliny*. It is also called *Iberia* from the River *Iberus* (now *Ebro*) or from the *Iberians*, who came and settled there. But Mr. *Bochart* says, it was so called from *Ibrin*, i. e. the End and Extremities of the World. Then the *Gauls* or *Welch* flocking thither also, it was called *Celtiberia*. *Mousa*, a Saracen Captain, endeavour'd,

A

vour'd,

your'd, but in vain, to give it the Name of *Moufa Arabia*. The *Grecians* call'd it *Hesperia*, because it is on the West of *Greece*.

Some Geographers make it square, by cutting off *Catalonia*; others triangular, and others compare it to an Oxe's Skin spread on the Ground; but it is more like a *Peninsula*, surrounded North and West by the Ocean, South by the Mediterranean Sea, and separated on the East from *France* by the *Pyrrenean Hills*; so that by its Situation on the Ocean and Mediterranean, it lyes advantageously for Trade.

Madrid, Lat. 40. 25. Long. West, 31 half; *Chief Town* about 290 Miles East of *Lisbon*, 210 N. East of *Seville*, 670 S. West of *Paris*, 760 of *London*, 960 West of *Rome*, 1850 of *Constantinople*, is now the Capital of all *Spain*. 'Tis large, well-built, populous, ill-paved, dirty, and without Walls. It stands on a rising, but even Ground, by the little River *Manzanares*, and has been the Residence of the Kings since *Philip II*. The Air is healthful, and the Country round about fertile. The City, including the Gardens and Suburbs, is about Fifteen Thousand Six Hundred Paces in Compass. The Houses are generally of Brick, many of 'em well-built; the Streets regular, spacious, and some of them very noble. The Royal Palace, the *Place Major*, where the People see the Bull-fighting, the *Jesuits Church*, the *Buen Retiro*, a Royal Palace a little out of the City, the *Pardo*, or Ring, are the finest things in *Madrid*.

Toledo, 41 Miles S. West of *Madrid*, was formerly the Residence of the *Gothic* and *Moorish* Kings. The City is now only remarkable for being the See of an Archbishop, who is Primate of the Kingdom, and has above Two Hundred Thousand Ducats *per Annum*. His Chapter is also reckoned the richest in *Europe*.

Seville, on the *Guadalquivir* is a very ancient, fine, large, rich, and populous City, and was anciently the Capital of all *Spain*. The *Spaniards* say in a Proverb, *Que non ha visto Sevilla, non ha visto a Maravilla*: He that never saw *Seville*, never saw a Wonder. It is the See of an Archbishop, next in Place to him of *Toledo*. He has Eighty Thousand Ducats *per Annum*. Mr. *Bochart* says, it was so called from a *Phenician Word*, signifying *Plain*, because it is so situated.

2. Q. What is the Division of Spain?

Division of
Spain.

A. The first Division made by the Romans, was into *Hispania Citerior*, or hither Spain; and *ulterior*, or farther from them. Afterwards they divided it into three Provinces, viz. *Batica*, *Terraconensis*, and *Lusitania*. But now Spain is most conveniently divided into 15 great Provinces (formerly so many Kingdoms, or Principalities) which lie after this manner; 5 along the Ocean, 5 on the *Mediterranean Sea*, and 5 in the midland Parts.

PROVINCES.

The Five on the Ocean.

Biscay, a Lordship.

Asturia, a Principality.

Gallicia, a Kingdom.

Portugal, of which in the next Chapter.

Andalusia, a Kingdom

Chief Towns, with their Distance from *Madrid*.

Bilboa, 200 N. St. *Sebastian*.
Fontarabia.

Oviedo, 210 N. W. *Santillana* 200 N.

Compostella, 270 N. W. *Corunna* 280.

The Five in the Mediterranean Seas.

Granada, a Kingdom.

Murcia, a Kingdom.

Valentia, a Kingdom.

Catalonia, a Principality.

The Islands of (a Kingdom)

Seville, 210. *Cadiz* 280. *Gibraltar* 280 S. *Cordoua* 170 S.

Granada, 180 S. *Malaga* 240.
Murcia 194 S. E. *Cartagena*,
230.

Valencia, 150 S. E. *Denia*, 170.
Alicante.

Barcelona, 270 E. *Terragona*,
210. *Tortosa*, 180.

{ *Majorca*, 320 E.
Minorca, 360. *Port Mahon*,
Trica, 250.

The Five Midland Parts.

PROVINCES.

Arragon, a Kingdom.

Navarre, a Kingdom,

Old Castile, a Kingdom,

New Castile, a Kingdom,

Leon, a Kingdom,

Chief Towns, with their Distance from *Madrid*.

Saragossa, 160 N. E. *Huesca*.
Pampelona, 200 N. E. *Tudela*
140.

Burgos, 120 N. *Valadolid* 90.
Segovia 40.

Madrid, *Toledo*.

Leon, 190 N. W. *Salamanca*,
100 W. A 2 These

These Provinces are again Subdivided after this manner:

Sub-Division.	Towns with their Dist. from the Capital of each Province.
1. <i>Biscay</i> , 115 m. from E. to W. & 80 S. to N. is divided into 3 <i>Me- rindades</i> ,	1. Of <i>Bilboa</i> , or <i>Biscay</i> , proper. { <i>Bilboa</i> , 33 W. <i>St. Andreo</i> 50. 2. <i>Alava</i> . { <i>Victoria</i> 41 S. E. 3. <i>Guipuscoa</i> . { <i>Tolosa</i> , 48 S. E. <i>St. Sebastian</i> 46 E. <i>Fontarabia</i> 56.
2. <i>Asturia</i> , 115 E. to W. 55 S. to N. is divided into <i>Astu- ria</i> ,	<i>D'Oviedo</i> on the W. { <i>Oviedo</i> . <i>Aviles</i> . <i>Cap. de las Pennas</i> . <i>De Santillana</i> on the E. { <i>Santillana</i> , 78. E.
3. <i>Gallicia</i> , 120 S. to N. 110 E. to W. is divided into 5 <i>Dio- ceses</i> ,	<i>Compostella</i> , { <i>Compostella</i> . The <i>Groyne</i> , 30 <i>Mondnedo</i> , { N. <i>St. Mary de Finist.</i> 48 W. { ditto 60 N. E. <i>Sta Martha</i> , <i>Lugo</i> , { <i>Castro d'Ortegal</i> . <i>Orense</i> , { ditto, 60 E. <i>Porto Marino</i> . <i>Tuy</i> , { ditto, 52 S. E. <i>Viana</i> . { ditto, 50 S. <i>Vigo</i> 44.

4. *Andalusia* is 142 Miles from S. to N. and 245 E. to W. It had formerly the Title of a Kingdom, comprehended most of the ancient *Betiga*, and was called *Vandalicia*, because inhabited by the *Vandals*, of which the present Name is a Corruption. It is the best, most populous, and richest Part of *Spain*; the Air is temperate in Winter, but very hot in Summer. It produces more Corn and Fruit than any other Province in *Spain*. Their Oil is the sweetest, their Wine the best of any in *Spain*; and their Horses, called *Jennets*, are reckon'd the finest in *Europe*. They have Mines of Silver, Copper, Lead, and Quick-silver. Here is also Load-stone; and they have a great Trade in Silk, Cotton, Wax, Honey, Sugar, Salt and Fish. It is divided into the two Kingdoms or Territories of,

i. *Sevilla*,

1. <i>Sevilla,</i>	}	{	<i>Seville, St. Lucar de Barrameda,</i>
			<i>52 S. W. Port St. Mary, Cadiz.</i>
			<i>Gibraltar. Offuna 42 S. E. Alcantarilla, 22 S.</i>
2. <i>Cordoua</i>			<i>Ditto, 68 E. Jaen 120 Baca.</i>
5. <i>Granda</i> 210. E. to W. and 65 N. to S. is divided into four	} Dioceses of	{	1. <i>Granada,</i> ditto, <i>Alhama</i> 26 S. W.
			<i>Almunecar, 50.</i>
			2. <i>Malaga,</i> ditto, 80 S. W. <i>Monda</i> where <i>Pompey's Sons</i> where defeated.
			3. <i>Guadix,</i> ditto, 30 N. E.
	} Territories of	{	4. <i>Almeria,</i> ditto, 60 S. E.
6. <i>Murcia</i> is called the Garden of S. and divided into the			<i>Murcia,</i> Ditto, <i>Cruz de Caravacca.</i>
			<i>Lorca, 47. N. W.</i>
			<i>Carthagena,</i> Ditto, 20 S.
7. <i>Valencia</i> 190 N. to S. 68 E. to W. divided into the Territories of	} {	{	<i>Valencia, Segorbe</i> 40 N.
			<i>Xucar,</i>
			<i>Segura,</i>
			<i>Milleres</i>
			<i>Origuela, 80 S. Alicante</i>
			<i>60. Denia. Gandia.</i>
			<i>Ditto 20 W. Villa Hermosa, Peniscola.</i>

8. The Principality of *Catalonia* is 90 m. from S. to N. 155 from N. E. to S. W. The Air is healthful, and the Soil mountainous, but produces abundance of Corn, Wine, Oil and excellent Fruit. It has Mines, some say of Silver, Allum, Vitriol and Salt. Here are likewise Amethyfts, Agats, Chryftal, Jasper, Alabaster and Coral. It revolted from *Spain* to *France* in 1640, but was restor'd by the Treaty of the *Pyrenees*. It was the last Part of *Spain*, which held out for the present Emperor, for which it has been ill used and deprived of its Privileges. *Barcelona* the Capital was before the late Wars a famous Mart, has a tolerable *Barcelona*. Road for great Ships, a strong Fort, and a Mole that runs 750 Paces into the Sea, which secures the Ships from Tempests. It is one of the largest, best built, most populous, richest, strongest, neatest, and best paved Towns in *Spain*; but its chief Strength lies in *Fort Montjoy*, a Fortrefs on the Top of a neighbouring Hill. The *Pope* is Heir to the Bishop, and has an Officer always ready to seize his Effects as soon as he dyes. This Town has been often taken and retaken by the *French* and *Spaniards*. The *French* seized it with the

rest of the *Spanish* Monarchy, in 1705; but the *English* and *Dutch* retook it that same Year. The *French* beſieg'd it again in 1706, but were obliged to break up the Siege with Loſs and Diſgrace. The *French* and *Spaniards* retook it after an obſtinate Siege in 1714, but broke the Capitulation, and treated the Inhabitants barbarouſly.

Catalonia is divided into the Old, or *Eastern*, and the New, or *Western Catalonia*, which contain each ſeveral *Vigueries*.

Old *Catalonia* contains the ſix *Vigueries* of

1. *Barcelona*, *Martorel*.
2. *Gironna* 50. N. E. *Rofes* in the *Lampourdan*.
3. *Manreſca*, 27 N. W. *Montſerrat*.
4. *Campredon*, 40 N. E.
5. *Vich*, 25 N.
6. *Puycerda*, *Urgel*.

New *Catalonia* contains the 9 *Vigueries* of

1. *Lerida* 80 W. 2. *Balaguer*. 3. *Agramont* 56 N. W. 4. *Cervera*, 60 W. *Solfone*, *Cardone*. 5. *Villa Franca de Panades*. 6. *Taragona* 54. W. 7. *Monblanc*. 8. *Tortofa*. 9. *Tarrega*

The Iſles.

There are not many Iſlands round about *Spain*; the moſt conſiderable are *Majorca*, *Minorca*, *Ivica*, and *Fermentara*: The two firſt were formerly known under the Name of *Baleares*, from a *Greek*, or rather *Phœnician* Word, ſignifying, to throw; becauſe the Inhabitants were famous for their Dexterity in throwing Stones with a Sling, or in darting Darts. *Lycophron* and *Florus* report that, in order to have their Children very early exerciſ'd in throwing Stones with a Sling, the Mothers uſed to ſet their Children's Breakfast upon a high Pole, and that if they would have it, they muſt throw it down. But they were very ignorant, lived in Dens, and went naked: They did not know the Uſe, either of Gold or Silver; but they were great Drunkards, tho' there was then no Wine growing in their Country: They were ſo brutiſh, that at a Wedding-Day, all the Relations of the Bride lay with her before her Husband. When they liſted themſelves under a Captain, they deſired nothing but Wine and Women; and they gave very willingly four Men in exchange for one of their Women, that was Priſoner. *Pliny* relates, that there was once ſo great a Number of Rabbits, that the Inhabitants were forced to implore *Auguſtus's* Help to

to be rid of them. There are yet a great many. Once these Islands belong'd to the *Romans*, then to the *Goths*, afterwards to the *Moors*, then to some Kings of their own, and at last to the *Spaniards*.

Majorca, the biggest of 'em, lies above 100 m. E. of *Valencia*, betwixt Lat. 39 and 40. It is about 50 m. S. to N. 60 E. to W. and 240 in Circuit. The Coasts are Mountainous, but the Inland Country fruitful. Here is great plenty of Corn, Salt, Oil, Wine, Cattle, Venison and Pork. The Inhabitants are reckon'd good Privateers, and make good Profit of their Coral-fishing and Coining of *Reals*. The chief Town is called *Majorca*, which lies part on a Hill, and part on a Valley: it contains about 6000 Houses, and has a safe Harbour, and defended by a Mole.

Minorca lies about 26 Miles N. of *Majorca*; it is about 25 where broadest, and 60 in Compass. It is for Goodness almost the same with *Majorca*. The chief Trade consists in Wood, Black Cattle, and Mules. It belongs to the *English*, who took it in 1708. And as the late Earl *Stanhope* behaved himself very courageously there, and in other Places, His *Brittish* Majesty has madee him Earl *Stanhope*, and Baron *Port-Mahon*, which lies at the bottom of a Bay near the South-West End of the Island. It is well-fortify'd, and accounted one of the best and largest Ports in the *Mediterranean*. It is guarded by Fort St. *Philip*, but *Cittadella* is the Capital.

Ivica, about 40 Miles E. of *Denia*, is not so large as *Minorca*. Here is abundance of Wood, without any venomous Creatures, tho' the little Island of *Fermentara*, which lies South of it about 5 Miles, is so pester'd with Serpents as not to be habitable.

Arragon is 160 Miles S. to N. and 116 E. to W. it contains the 7 Dioceses of

1. <i>Saragossa</i> ,	2. <i>Tervel</i> ,	60 S.
3. <i>Albarazin</i> .	4. <i>Tarragona</i> ,	
31 N.W.	5. <i>Balbastro</i>	45 N.
E.	6. <i>Huesca</i> .	7. <i>Jaca</i> .

Navarre is 82 N. to S. and 60 E. to W. It contains

1. <i>Pampelona</i> .	2. <i>Estella</i> .
3. <i>Tudella</i> .	4. <i>Olite</i> .
5. <i>Sanguessa</i> ,	<i>Roncavaux</i> .

5 *Merindades*,

Old Castile is 180 N. to S. and 140 E. to W. It contains 8 *Merindades*, and 2 Territories, { 1. The *Merindades* of { *Burgos*, 2. *Valladolid*. 3. *Calahorra*, 4. *Osma*. 5. *Segovia*. 6. *Avila*. 7. *Soria*. 8. *Siguenga*. *Medina Cely*.
 { 2. The Territories of { 1. *Placentia*, *Coria*. 2. *Rioza*. *St. Domingo*.

New Castile is 320 E. to W. & 180 S. to N. and divided into { 1. *Algarria*, on the N. of the *Tagus*. { *Madrid*, *Escorial* 12 M. N. W. *Alc. de Henares*.
 { 2. *Sierra* on the E. { *Cuenca*. *Molina*.
 { 3. *Mancha* on the S. { *Ciudad Real*. *Calatrava*.
 { 4. *Estramadura* on the W. { *Badajoz*, *Alcantara*, *Truxillo*. *Merida*.

Leon is 170 S. to N. and 85 E. to W. is divided into { Nn. { *Leon*, *Astorga*, 23 *Palencia*.
 { Sn. { *Salamanca*. 100 S. *Ciudad Rod.* 150. *Alvade Tormes*.

2. Q. How is *Spain* situated ?

A. It lies betwixt Lat. 35, 50, and 44 ; and betwixt Long. West 10, and East Long. 3. 30. in the 5th, 6th, and 7th Climates. The opposite Place of the Globe to *Spain* is part of *Zelandia Nova*. It is 490 Miles from S, to North ; and 600 from *Cape Finisterre* to *Cape Creux* in *Catalonia*. The longest Day in the South is 14 Hours, and the shortest 10.

The *Air* is generally pure, calm and healthful, being seldom infested with Mists and Vapours ; but in Summer-time 'tis so extreamly hot, especially in the southmost Parts, that it is both dangerous and inconvenient (especially to those who are not used to it) to stir abroad about Noon, from the middle of *May* to the latter-end of *August*.

The *Soil* in many Places is dry, sandy, and barren; and several of the in-land Provinces are either over-grown with Woods, or encumbered with Mountains ; and other Parts (chiefly on the South) where the Soil is naturally fertile, are for the most part neglected, and not much cultivated, by reason of the Fewness, or rather Laziness of the Inhabitants. Their Corn, Wine, Game, Cattle, Fish, Grapes, and others Fruits are excellent. Here are Mines of Iron, Salt, and Vermilion ; and, as they say, of Gold and Silver, but the two latter not much minded, since the Discovery of *America*.

Their

Their chief Commodities are Wines, Oils, Sugar, Rice, Silk, Liquorish, Honey, Flax, Saffron, Anniseed, Raisins, Almonds, Oranges, Lemons, Cork, fine Wool, Soap, Anchovies, Sumach, Vermilion, Lamb-Skins, Tobacco and Horses; those of *Andalusia* are the most lively; those of *Asturia* the strongest; and those of *Portugal* the swiftest: Wherefore it was said by the Antients, that the Mares conceived here by the Wind.

4. Q. What are the Rarities in *Spain*?

A. The *Spaniards* do commonly boast of these wonderful Things: 1. A Town surrounded with Fire, viz. *Madrid*, the Walls of the Houses being of Flint-Stone, look as if they were on Fire, when the Sun shines upon 'em. 2. A Bridge, over which the Water runs, viz. the Aqueduct of *Seville*. And, 3. The richest Bridge in the World, whereon are commonly fed 10000 Sheep, and one may set an Army in Battle-Array, viz. That Spot of Ground under which the *Guadiana* hides it self. 4. Near *Cadiz* is an old ruinous Building (now converted into a Watch-Tower) which some would fain persuade themselves to be the Remains of *Hercules's* Pillars, or Temple, so much talk'd-of by the Antients. 5. At *Orense* in *Gallicia*, are several Springs of Medicinal Hot-Water, wonderfully esteem'd by the ablest Physicians. 6. At *Toledo* is a Fountain, whose Waters near the Bottom are of an acid Taste, but towards the Surface, extremely sweet. 7. Near *Guadalaxara* in *New-Castile*, is a Lake, which is said to send forth dreadful Howlings before a Storm. 8. In the City of *Granada* is the large sumptuous Palaces of the *Moorish* Kings, whose inside is adorn'd with divers Inscriptions, and beautify'd with so much Jasper, Porphyry, and Gold, that the Moors said that their *Bulhar* must have the Art of making Gold to build so fine an Edifice. They fancied also the celestial Paradise to be just over this Place. 9. At *Segovia* is a famous Aqueduct of Free-Stone, which is supported by about 200 Arches of great height, some of them above one another: It is about 5 Leagues long, conveys Water into the City, is suppos'd to be a *Roman* Work, and one of the noblest Monuments of Antiquity in *Europe*. 10. The Cathedral Church of *Murcia* is noted for its lofty Steeple, with a winding Stair-Case of Stone, so broad and easy, that a Coach and Horses may go to the Top of it. 11. The *Escorial* is famous for a noble Monastery, and a stately Church in Honour of St. *Lawrence*, on whose Day the *Spaniards* beat the *Fench* at St. *Quintin* in 1557. It is of vast Extent, and

reck

reckon'd one of the most magnificent Structures in *Eurofa*.

It has 17 Cloysters, 22 Courts, 11000 Windows, cost above 30 Millions, and was 21 Years a building. There's a Chappel with a Sepulchre for the Kings and Queens, called the *Pantheon*, because fashion'd like that at *Rome*. The Library is also very fine. 12. Many talk of a Ship of Stone, with Masts, Sails, and Tackling, to be seen in the Port of *Mon-gia* in *Gallicia*.

The chief RIVERS are,
 RIVERS, running tow. with their Branches running near

1. Ebro	S. E. Med. Sea.	{	<i>Segra</i> , S. W.	<i>Urgel</i> .
			<i>Cinca</i> , S. E.	<i>Fraga</i> .
			<i>Galega</i> , S. W.	<i>Sarragossa</i> .
2. Guadal- quivir,	S. W. Ocean:	{	<i>Xenel</i> ,	W. <i>Granada</i> .
3. Guadiana	S. W. Ocean.		<i>Guardamena</i> S.	<i>Alcares</i> .
4. Tajo	S. W. Ocean.	5. Douro.	And 6. Minho,	W.

About these Rivers they say, That the *Guadiana*, in *Latin* *Anas* having hidden it self under Ground, comes out again : But those who have believed it, upon the Authority of the Antients, and of some modern Authors, have believed a Fable ; and the learned *Bochart*, who for that Reason derives its Name from the *Arabick* Word *Hana fa*, i. e. *to hide*, has been deceived himself. However, as the *Ebro* gives its Name to *Spain*, the *Douro* carries the greatest Quantity of Water ; the *Tajo* has Silver in its Sand ; the *Guadalquivir*, in *Latin* *Betis*, runs through the finest Countries of *Spain*, and the *Guadiana* runs under Ground. The *Spaniards* say that the *Ebro* is famous for its Name, the *Douro* for its Strength, the *Tajo* for its Fame, the *Guadalquivir* for its Riches, and the *Guadiana*, having nothing to boast of, is ashamed and hides it self under Ground.

The Sea-Ports, or Towns on navigable Rivers
 Sea-Ports. are, beginning from *Catalonia*, *Roses*, *Palamos*,
Barcelona, *Tarragona*, *Valencia*, *Gandia*, *De-
 nia*, *Alicante*, *Cartagena*, *Almeria*, *Malaga*, *Gibraltar*, *Ca-
 diz*, *St. Lucar*, *Seville*, *Palos*, where *Colomb* embarked for
 the *West-Indies*, *Crunna* or the *Groin*, *St. Andreo*, *St. Se-
 bastian*, &c.

The strongest Towns are *Barcelona, Montjoui, Girona, Tortosa, Lerida, Xativa, Denia, Alicante, Pampelona, Fontarabia, St. Sebastian, Cadiz, Gibraltar, Badajos.* Strong Towns:

5. Q. Who were the first Inhabitants of *Spain*?

A. Some fancy the *Celts*, and the *Phenicians* and *Carthaginians* seized afterwards upon the Southmost and nighest Parts to *Africa*, and endeavour'd to possess it all; but the *Romans* drove them out, and have possess'd it for a long time, until the *Goths, Vandals, Sueves, Alains* and *Silinges*, came and divided that Country among themselves; but the *Goths*, who called themselves also *Franks*, remained the sole Masters thereof, till the *Moors* or *Saracens* having been invited by Count *Julian*, whose Daughter King *Rodrigo* had ravish'd, did at several times beat the *Goths*, whom their Vices had render'd effeminate; *Rodrigo* was kill'd in 714, and the *Moors* forced the *Goths* to retire to the Mountains of *Leon, Asturias, and Galicia*; but the Posterity of those *Goths*, after 7 or 800 Years, did at last drive the *Moors* out of the Country, and in the mean while even erected those 14 Kingdoms, *Spain* is compos'd of.

The *Spaniards* are of a swarthy Complexion, black Hair, and of good Proportion; of a Majestick Gate and Deportment, grave and serious in their Carriage; in Offices of Piety very devout, not to say superstitious; obedient and faithful to their King; patient in Adversity; very sober in Eating and Drinking; not prone to alter their Resolutions and Apparel; in War too deliberate; they make good Soldiers; are politick and cunning: Arts they esteêm dishonourable, and are accounted very Lazy, much addicted to Women, unreasonably jealous of their Wives, extremely proud and revengeful. Manners.

But to give you a fuller Account of their Character, remember that the *Spaniards* are lookt upon to be of a phlegmatic and melancholick Temper: They are Wise, and examine thoroughly a Thing, before they undertake it; but whilst they are with so great Accuracy pondering upon their Affairs, very often they lose a very good Opportunity. In a word, they are slow in their Resolutions, but obstinate and constant to perform what they have resolv'd upon; and even when they have miscarried, they try again, and by all manner of Ways endeavour to overcome their ill Luck, by their Steadiness and Perseverance. They are slow to resolve, but constant in their Undertakings.

Th

Fit for War. The *Spaniards* are fit not only to make the first Attack in War, but also to resist, and hold out a long while ; For their Patience is to them of great Use to endure patiently Hunger, Thirst, and Watching. Moreover they are secret, cunning, and great Politicians.

Bad Qualities Their Gravity from whence it comes. But some say, that their Gravity is never without Moroseness, and ridiculous Words and Gestures ; yet those, that have a long while convers'd with them pretend, that, that Gravity, so intolerable to other Nations, is not so much the Effect of Pride and Haughtiness, as of their melancholic Temper, and of their ill Custom, in conversing little with Foreigners, and even with one another.

Are Lazy. Why ? They abhor all Trades which require a troublesome Labour ; wherefore they leave them entirely to Strangers ; for their Pride does not permit 'em to mind so mean and vile Employments : Yet many of them will patiently endure to stand all their Life-time Centinel in a Castle, because they think that the Dignity of their Sword, and the Hope of a Preferment are sufficient to alleviate all the Pains and Troubles they suffer therein.

Cruel, Covetous & Proud. The *French*, who are among the *Spaniards*, pretend they all come from *Burgundy*, because the *Spaniards* do not love the *French* ; but on the other side, the *French* and other Nations don't like the *Spaniards*, because of their Pride, Covetousness and Cruelty. And these bad Qualities are the Cause why the *Spaniards* have lost so many conquer'd Places and Countries ; for when People see themselves ill used, and despised by Foreigners, they will revolt against them, tho' they be their Masters by Conquest ; yet the *Spaniards* pretend to justify all these Crimes by their great Zeal for Religion.

The Language. The Language generally spoken is the *Spanish Tongue*, tho' the Dialects be very different, according to the several Provinces. That spoken in *New Castille* is the finest, and comes very near the *Latin Tongue*. In *Biscay* they speak a Language called *Bassque*. On the Mount *Alpuxara*, towards *Granada*, they speak the *Arabic Tongue* : And the *Catalans* speak a Tongue very like the *Gascon*, or *Languedocian*. However, the *Spanish Tongue*

Tongue is fine, and reckon'd the most Majestick of any deriv'd from the *Latin* : So that *Charles V.* used to say, *That were he to speak to God Almighty, he would do it in that Language.*

Spain is not Populous in proportion to its Extent, because 1. Women are there not so fruitful as in more Northern Countries ; for tho' they have Children very young, yet they leave off bearing very soon, because the Air is very hot, and their Bodies very dry. 2. Some of the midland Provinces are so barren, that they don't produce wherewith to feed Men. 3. People feeding but poorly, cannot be Fathers of great many Children, for *sine Cerere & Baccho friget Venus*. 4. Impurity being openly allow'd, many choose rather to entertain an unlawful Commerce with lewd Women, than to trouble themselves with the Care of maintaining a Wife and Children. 5. There are a vast many Clergy-men, Monks and Nuns, who live an unmarried or dissolute Life. 6. In the Wars which this Nation has had in several Parts of the World, especially in *Italy* and in the *Low-Countries*, a prodigious Number of *Spaniards* have perish'd. 7. Great Numbers have been sent to their other Dominions, especially into *America* ; the *Spaniards* liking very well that Voyage, because with a Trifle they may live very well there. 8. King *Ferdinand* having conquer'd the Kingdom of *Granada*, *Philip 2d* did in 1610 drive out of *Spain* several Hundred Thousands of *Moors* and *Jews*, because he could not rely on the Fidelity of those People ; or rather because the *Inquisition* drives out the Inhabitants, and hinders Foreigners from settling in that Country.

6. Q. What are the Countries subject to the Crown of *Spain* ?

A. 1. All those Countries and Towns mention'd in our Division, if you except *Gibraltar*, and the Isle of *Minorca*, which by the Peace of *Utrecht*, were yielded up to the *English*. 2. On the Coast of *Africa*, *Ceuta* besieged these 30 Years by the *Moors*, *Laracha*, *Merrilla*, but *Oran* which had been taken in 1508, was retaken by the *Moors* in 1708. 3. The *Canary Islands*. 4. In the *East-Indies* the *Spaniards* have 1. The Islands of *Ladrones*. 2. The *Philippine* Islands, whose Capital is *Manilla*. These Islands are now so little beneficial to *Spain*, that it has been often deliberated whether they should be abandon'd, but it has not been done yet, because the Commodities exported from several Parts of *Asia*, especially from *China*, are carry'd

ry'd to *Manilla*, in order to be shipp'd off for *New Spain*, or *Mexico*; so that thereby the *West-Indies* belonging to the *Spaniards*, have a Communication with the *East-Indies*. 5: In *America* they have *New Spain*, *New and Old Mexico*, *Florida*, *Terra-firma*, and all the Continent on the Coasts of *South America* (the *Brazil* only excepted, and some few Places near the Mouth of the River *Oronoko*) the Islands of *Hispaniola*, *Cuba*, *Porto Rico*.

Spain had formerly several other Countries, as the 17 Provinces of the *Netherlands*, six Castellanies in *Burgundy*, *Franche County*, the Dukedom of *Milan*, *Naples*, *Sicily*, and *Sardinia*; and many other Places, which by several Treaties, and especially by that of *Utrecht*, have been dismembred from that Crown: So that formerly the Kings of *Spain* were the greatest Land Princes on Earth, having Dominions of 5083 Leagues in length, and 2517 in breadth, which is about the 6th Part of all the Countries in the World; and even now the King of *Spain* does possess larger Territories than any other Prince whatsoever. Some of his Predecessors boasted that the Sun did never set upon their Territories; and that that Planet only could measure the Length of their Dominions. The *Spaniards* have formerly printed Letters from the King of *Persia* to their King, with this Superscription, *To the King who has the Sun for his Hat*.

The Kings of *Spain* claim, 1. The Dutchy *Pretensions*. of *Burgundy*, by *Mary*, only Daughter and Heir to *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy*, married to the Emperor *Maximilian*, from whom *Philip* the First descended.

2. The *Roussillon*, as a dependant Province of *Catalonia*, which *Peter* K. of *Arragon* did in 1467 mortgage to *Lewis* XI. K. of *France*, for 300000 Crowns of Gold. But *Charles* VIII. having afterwards undertaken the Conquest of *Naples* and *Sicily*, did yield up that Country to King *Ferdinand*, on condition that he should not disturb him in his Conquests; but the *Spaniard* having broken that Treaty, the *French* retook that Country.

3. *Portugal*, because *Alphonse*, K. of *Arragon*, having conquer'd it, gave it to *Henry* of *Lorraine* his General, as a Portion for one of his Natural Daughters; but the Posterity of this *Henry* being at an end in King *Sebastian*, and the Cardinal *Henry* his Brother, *Philip* II^d seized this Kingdom, and the *Spanish* Kings did possess it from 1580, until 1640, when *John* Duke of *Bragance*, as being the nearest Relation

to King *Sebastian*, caused himself to be proclaim'd King of *Portugal*, all the *Portuguese* standing by him.

4. The Kingdom of *Jerusalem*, because the Emperor *Frederick* 2d married *Jolande*, only Daughter of *John* King of *Jerusalem*.

5. *England*, because *Philip* 2d married Queen *Mary*; for it is said there was a mutual Contract, whereby it was agreed, that he who should out-live the other, should inherit the Countries of the Deceased.

6. *Tuscany*, by the Emperor *Charles* V. who made *Laurent* of *Medicis* Duke of *Tuscany*, and gave him for Wife one of his Natural Daughters.

7. The Islands of *Maltha* and *Goza*, which the same Emperor gave as a Fief to the Knights of St. *John* of *Jerusalem*, on condition that they should secure the Streight betwixt *Sicily* and *Africa*, and should every Year pay Homage to the King of *Spain*.

7. Q. What's the Government of *Spain*?

A. Monarchical, and Females succeed, when *Government*; there's no Male of the Royal Blood. Yet the Royal Authority is limited by their *Cortez*, or Parliament, who before their King's Coronation, oblige him to swear that he will keep certain Articles exhibited unto him. And the Solemnity of the Coronation consists only in the King's Proclamation, wherein they shew the Royal Standard. The numerous Cities and Provinces of this Kingdom, are govern'd by particular Governors appointed by the King; but the Provinces of the *East* and *West-Indies* are ruled by several *Vice-Roys*, who are generally very hard in exacting from the Subjects what possibly they can, during their short Regency, which is commonly limited to three Years: There are also a great many Councils of State, and inferior Courts of Judicature.

The *Cortez*, or *States*, are certain Courts, *Cortez*, or which the King assembles to swear the Prince his *States*. Son as Prince of *Asturia*, or presumptive Heir to the Crown; or for some other Affairs of great Concern. Those *Cortez* consist of some Deputies from the Clergy, Nobility and Commons, which are sent by 18 Towns, viz.

Burgos,

Burgos, Seville, Jaen, Salamanca, Zamora, Guadalaxar, Leon, Cordoua, Toledo, Avila, Cuenca, Valladolid, Granada, Murcia, Segovia, Tora, Soria, Madrid.

The present King of Spain is *Philip V.* born King's Ge- Dec. the 19th 1683, and second Son to the Dauphin Lewis, and to *Mary Anne* of Bavaria, nealogy.

Grandson to *Lewis XIV.* and to *Mary Theresa* Daughter of *Philip IV.* King of Spain. He is Uncle to *Lewis XV.* and was formerly called Duke of *Anjou*; having been proclaim'd King of Spain, he left *Versailles* Decemb. the 4th, 1700, and arriv'd at *Madrid* Feb. the 18th, 1701. He has had for his first Wife *Mary Louisa Gabriela*, Daughter of *Victor Amadeus* Duke of *Savoy*, now King of *Sardinia*, and of *Anne* Daughter to *Philip*, Duke of *Orleans*, and to *Henrietta* Daughter of *Charles I.* King of *England*. This Queen was born Sept. the 17. 1688, and dy'd Feb. 14. 1714. And for his second Wife, *Elizabeth Farnese*, only Daughter to *Edward Farnese* Duke of *Parma*; she was born Octob. 25. 1692, and married in 1714. By his first Queen he has had, 1. *Lewis* Prince of *Asturia*, born at *Madrid*, Aug. the 25th, 1707. 2. *Dom Philip*, 1st Infant of Spain, born June the 12. 1712. 3. *Dom Ferdinand*, 2d Infant of Spain, born Sept. 23. 1713. And by his second Queen, 4. *Dom Carlos* born Jan. 10. 1716. 5. The Infanta born besides some others that are dead.

The late Kings of Spain came from *Philip* Arch-Duke of *Austria*, Son of the Emperor *Maximilian I.* and of *Mary* Heiress of *Burgundy*. That Prince having in 1496 married *Joan* Daughter to *Ferdinand* the Catholick, had two Sons, the Emperor *Charles V.* and *Ferdinand I.* who have been the Heads of the Branches of the *Austrian* Family: *Ferdinand's* Posterity does even now possess the Imperial Crown, but the Offspring of *Charles Vth* ended at the death of *Charles 2d*, who, as some say, declar'd for his Heir and Successor *Philip* Grandson to his Sister *Mary Theresa*. But as *Lewis XIV* did, for Himself and his Heirs, renounce all manner of Pretensions to that Crown, *Philip* was opposed by the Allies, who declar'd the Arch-Duke *Charles*, now Emperor, to be lawful King of Spain; but *Philip* has at last been acknowledg'd King of Spain, by most Part of the *European* Potentates and States.

The

The King of *Spain's* Titles are, *Philip*,
by the Grace of God, King of *Castille, Le- Title.*
on, Arragon, of the two Sicilies, Jeru-
salem, Navarre, Granada, Toledo, València, Galicia, Ma-
jorca, Minorca, Sevilla, Sardinia, Cordoua, Corsica, Mur-
cia, Jaen, Algesir, Gibraltar, Canary Islands, East and West
Indies, Terra-firma; Arch-Duke of *Austria*, Duke of *Bur-*
gundy, Brabant, Milan; Earl of *Hapsburg, Flanders, Ti-*
rol, and Barcelona; Lord of *Biscay, and Mechlin, &c.* He
is also stiled, *Catholick King*, from *Ferdinand V.* who ha-
ving taken *Granada* in 1492, put an end to the Empire, or
Dominion of the *Moors* in *Spain*. Pope *Alexander VI.* gave
him that Title.

The eldest Son and apparent Heir to the
Crown is called, *Prince of Asturia*; and the *Prince's*
other Princes are called *Infants*, even when *Title.*
they are grown old. The Daughters are also
called *Infanta's*; and when there is no male Prince, the eldest
Princess is called *Infant*, as if she were a Boy.

The King's Revenues are not so considerable
as one might expect from so vast and so rich *The King's*
Dominions. He might indeed receive a pro- *Revenue.*
digious Quantity of Money from the *Indies*, if
they were well-govern'd, for every two Years, two Hundred
Millions are brought from that Country; but the *French,*
English, Dutch, and Genouese, carry away most part of that
Money; so that there remain scarce four Millions for the King.
The Subsidies arising from Taxes, Duty, and Demesnes, are
very considerable, but all that ill regulated. So that this
Kingdom, which ought to be very rich, is yet very much in-
debted. The King's Forces have been of late
very considerable, having upwards of 70000 *Forces.*
Men, and near 30 Men of War.

The King commonly resides at *Madrid*, and *Residence.*
sometimes at *Buenretiro, Aranjues, and Pardo.*

None are lookt upon and consider'd as No- *Nobility.*
blemen in *Spain*, except they be Dukes, Mar-
quesses, Earls, or Knights of the three Military Orders.
But those Noblemen are not equally consider'd, for the great-
est Honour is paid to the *Grandeas*, of whom there are three
Classes. 1. Some are such only during their Life. 2. Others
possess some Lands, to which the Title is annexed. 3. Others
again are such for themselves and their Posterity. All these
Grandeas may in the King's Presence sit down, and cover
B their

their Heads, except in the Hall called *Oscora*, with this difference, that the *Grandeos* of the first Class cover themselves before they speak to the King; those of the second, when they have begun their Speech; but those of the third, can't put on their Hats till they have made an end of their Speech, and retir'd to their Place., and even then they must wait for the King's Order. The *Spanish* Lords are very rich, especially those, who either themselves or their Ancestors have had some good Government. Some say there are in *Spain* 26 Dukes, whose yearly Income is about 500000 *l.* Sterling; 41 Marquisses above 250000; and 40 Earls who have as much. In a word, the *Spanish* Lords are perhaps the richest of any in *Europe*.

The Knights are those of St. *James*, surnam'd *Knights*: the Noble, of *Calatrava* the Gallant, and of *Alcantara*, the Rich, tho' the Commandries of this Order be not more considerable than those of the two others. At first each Order had his Great Master, whose Revenue was above 100000 Ducats: But the Kings of *Spain*, with the Pope's Leave, have seized upon those Dignities, and their Revenues; yet some of the Commandries are worth from four to fourteen Thousand Ducats *per Annum*. The Order of the *Golden Fleece* has no Commandry, but is only a Title of Honour.

7. Q. What do you say of the *Spanish* Clergy?

A. The Number of them is very great; there are about 25000 Parishes, with a great many rich Abbeyes and Monasteries; 8 Arch-Bish. and 44 Bishops. The Arch-Bishop of *Toledo* is Primate of the Kingdom, and great Chancellor of *Castille*; his Income is above 100000 *l.* Sterl. *per An.* Some other Prelates have from 8 to 40000 Pounds. Tho' the Kings of *Spain* have the Nomination to all the Bishopricks, from 1523, when Pope *Adrian VI.* gave it to *Charles V.* whose Tutor he had been, yet the Pope has great Authority in *Spain*, and the Disposal of the third Part of the good Livings; and the Clergy possess the third Part of the Lands.

The ARCH-BISHOPS are,
A. Bishops. 1. *Toledo*, 2. *Burgos*. 3. *Compostella*. 4. *Seville*. 5. *Granada*. 6. *Sarragossa*. 7. *Tarragona*. 8. *Valencia*.

Their

Their SUFFRAGANS.

Suffragans to *Toledo*, to *Burgos*, to *Compostella*, to *Seville*:

<i>Bishops.</i>	<i>Corduba.</i>	<i>Pampelona.</i>	<i>Salamanca.</i>	<i>Guadix.</i>
	<i>Segovia.</i>	<i>Calborra.</i>	<i>Avila.</i>	<i>Cadiz.</i>
	<i>Cartagena.</i>	<i>Palenca.</i>	<i>Placentia.</i>	<i>Canaries.</i>
	<i>Siguenga.</i>		<i>Lugo.</i>	
	<i>Orma.</i>		<i>Astorga.</i>	
	<i>Tuenga.</i>		<i>Zamora.</i>	
	<i>Faen.</i>		<i>Orensa.</i>	
	<i>Valladolid.</i>		<i>Tuy.</i>	
			<i>Badajoz.</i>	
			<i>Mendonedo.</i>	
			<i>Coria.</i>	
			<i>Ciudad Rodrigo.</i>	
			<i>Leon, Oviedo.</i>	

Suffr. to *Granada*, to *Sarragossa*, *Terragona*, to *Valencia*:

<i>Malaga.</i>	<i>Huesca.</i>	<i>Barcelona.</i>	<i>Majorca.</i>
<i>Almeria.</i>	<i>Jaca.</i>	<i>Girona.</i>	<i>Oribuela.</i>
	<i>Tarracona.</i>	<i>Lerida.</i>	
	<i>Balbastro.</i>	<i>Vich.</i>	
	<i>Tervel.</i>	<i>Solsona.</i>	
	<i>Albarazin.</i>	<i>Urgel.</i>	
		<i>Tortosa.</i>	

<i>Salamanca.</i>	<i>Seville.</i>	<i>Alcala de Henares,</i>	<i>Universi-</i>
formerly <i>Complutum.</i>	<i>Saragossa.</i>	<i>Murcia.</i>	<i>ties.</i>
<i>Granada.</i>	<i>Tudela.</i>	<i>Tarracona.</i>	<i>Compostella.</i>
<i>Siguenga.</i>	<i>Offuna.</i>	<i>Baeza.</i>	<i>Toledo.</i>
<i>Valencia.</i>	<i>Oria.</i>	<i>Lerida.</i>	<i>Gnatria.</i>
<i>Valladolid.</i>	<i>Huesca.</i>	<i>Barcelona.</i>	<i>Religion.</i>

No other Religion is publicly professed in Spain but that of the Church of Rome; for since 1478, they have had a very severe *Inquisition* against the Exercise of all others: There are Ten Tribunals in the chief Cities of this Kingdom, belonging to this Court, from whence Appeals lie to the sovereign Tribunal at *Madrid*, whose President is called, the *Inquisitor-General*. However, at *Toledo* and *Salamanca*, the Manner of celebrating Mass differs from that at *Rome*. They follow the *Musarabick* Liturgy, instituted by St. *Leander* and *Isidorus*. Those Christians, who did live under the *Moorish* Kings, were called *Mus-Arabs*. The *Spaniards* are now according to our Mind, very Superstitious, but in their Opinion they are great Zealots for the Catholick Faith: And so industrious and careful are the Clergy, to keep the whole Body of the Laity in the thickest Mist of Ignorance;

norance ; and so great is the Terror of the *Inquisition*, that humanly speaking one can't expect a Reformation about religious Matters in this Country.

8. *Q.* By what you have said, *Spain* must *Advantage*, be a very powerful and rich Country, is it *Defect*. so ?

A. Yes ; but this large Kingdom is also liable to very great *Defects*, which are a great Diminution to its Strength : Among the chief may be reckon'd, 1. The small Number of its Inhabitants ; for it does not contain as many Inhabitants, as would be necessary to curb so many Provinces, very ill-affected, for the most Part, and to resist a powerful Enemy. 2. Its Provinces are separated by vast Countries and Seas, and so the King must take a great deal of Trouble to govern and secure them all ; for he can hardly know how his Governors behave themselves in so distant Countries, and the oppressed People can't complain to him, as it happen'd to the *Dutch*, and as it is even now with his Subjects in *America*. 3. *America* (the Treasure of *Spain*) is separated from it by the great Ocean, and so the Ships, which bring the Money out of those Parts, are in danger of being lost in Storms, or taken by Strangers ; and then *Spain* for want of Money can undertake nothing. 4. The *Spaniards*, 'tis true, bring vast Sums from thence, and as appears by their Registers in 1618, they had received 1536 Millions of Gold from that Country ; but their Trade is so ill order'd, that the most part of the Riches brought from thence, fall into the Hands of Strangers, who very often make use of 'em against *Spain*. 5. After the death of *Philip* II^d, the Negligence of his Successor, and the long Minority of *Charles* II^d, have been an Occasion for the great Ones of this Kingdom to become too potent, so that not only they don't assist their King as much as they ought, but even drawing to themselves all the Wealth of the Kingdom, they grow rich, but the Public is impoverish'd. 6. Another interior Defect of this Kingdom (and common with all the Countries, wherein the *popish Religion* is predominant) is that the Clergy are too rich and powerful. The *Spanish* Clergy pretend that *Jure Divino* they are free from all Imposts, and so give but very small Subsidies, even in the utmost Necessity ; and when they do it, it is as a Gift, and never without the Pope's Consent. Lastly, *Spain* has suffer'd very much in the last War.

9. *Q.* What Advantages or Prejudices may accrue to the *Spaniards* from other People ?

A. If

A. If we begin with *Barbary*, we may say that nothing can be more convenient for *Interest with Spain*, than to have *Algier* and *Tunis* in *Barbary*. their Hands. Wherefore *Charles V.* did his utmost to take those Towns, and yet *Spain* is not in great Danger of being invaded again by those People, because the Race of the *Maranes* is now almost quite extinguish'd in *Spain*: And the Booty made by the Corsairs of *Barbary* on the Sea, is not so great a Detriment for the *Spaniards*, as for other Nations trading to *Spain*, *Italy*, or *Turkey*; because the *Spaniards*, by reason of their Laziness, are not used to export themselves their Merchandizes into other Countries, but Strangers must come and fetch them out of their Harbours.

Spain is in no Danger from *Turkey* and *Italy*, especially now, when the *Spaniards* have *Turkey*. nothing in *Italy*; but they ought always to keep *Italy*. fair with the *Italian* Princes, and endeavour to have them on their Side, in case of Need.

Until the Peace of *Munster*, the *Spaniards* have had a dangerous Enemy in *Holland*, but *Holland*. methinks they have not now great Reasons to be afraid of the *Dutch*, for 'tis hard to think how the *Dutch* should be so ill-advis'd, as to go and attack *Spain*, since it is all they can do, to maintain themselves in *statu quo*.

The *Dutch* are, 'tis true, in a Condition to invade the *Spanish* West-Indies, as they did in the XVII Century the East-Indies; but then they must not only fight against the *Spaniards*, who would resist them as much as they could, but even *Great Britain*, and *France* would never let the *Dutch* have the two most considerable Branches of the Trade; and methinks *Spain* has lost enough by the last Peace, without being impoverish'd any more. As for *Germany*. *Germany*, it can do no Harm to *Spain*, for want of a Fleet.

Great Britain may do a great deal of Harm to *Spain*, by attacking the West-Indies, but it *Gr. Britain*. would not be of great Advantage to *England*, because the *English* have a great Trade in *Spain*; and the *Spanish* Capers would then be a great Nuisance to the *English* Trade into the *Levant*. Lastly, The *French* and *Dutch* would not suffer the *English* to succeed in the Undertaking. Besides, it would not be an easy thing to drive the *Spaniards* out of their Colonies in *America*, especially out of the Mid-

land Towns where the Mines are, 1. Because it is very difficult to go near them. 2. It is very difficult to transport from *Europe* as many Troops as would be necessary for such an Undertaking. 3. None are suffer'd to Trade and live freely there but *Spaniards*, who certainly would not join with those who should come to attack them. 4. It is very likely that Soldiers newly landed, would easily be swept away by Diseases, which do commonly befall all those who arrive in a Country, whose Air and Food they are not used to.

Portugal by it self is not able to annoy very much the *Spaniards*, except when intangled in War with other powerful Enemies; for then the *Portuguese* can make a Diversion which might prove very detrimental to *Spain*: But what the *Portuguese* would get thereby, would not be worth half the Pains and Expences they should be at for it. And perhaps the *Dutch* would stand by the *Spaniards*, to have thereby an Occasion of entirely driving the *Portuguese* out of the *West* and *East-Indies*.

The Emperor then, if he had a Fleet, would be the most powerful Enemy to *Spain*; and *France*, the King of *France* next to the Emperor, especially, if the young King should chance to dye, and the Crown of *France* should, according to the several Acts of Renunciation, fall into the Hands of the House of *Orleans*; for *France* by it self is sufficient to hurt *Spain* very much, either by Land or Sea. Nevertheless, if we may judge of Things to come by what is past, none of the *European* Princes will ever permit *France* to grow rich by the Spoils of *Spain*; because it would then be too formidable.



CHAP. II.

OF PORTUGAL.

I. *Question.*



HENCE does the Word *Portugal* come ?

A. Some say from *Name of Portu Gale*, a Sea-Port Town, at the Mouth of the River *Douro*, but by others it is so called

from *Portu Gallorum*, that Haven (now *Porto*) being the Place where the *Gauls* did usually land, when most of the Sea-Port Towns in *Spain* were in the Hands of the *Moors*. It was formerly called *Betica* from the River *Bætis*, now *Guadalquivir*, and *Lusitania* from *Lusus* Son of *Bacchus* and *Lysa*; for *Tania* in Greek signifying Country, *Lusitania* is nothing else but the Country of *Lysus*, or Wine. Mr. *Bochart* says it comes from the *Phenician* Word *Lus*, i. e. *Almond*, because the Country abounds in that Fruit. However, it has *Gallicia* on the N. the rest of *Spain* on the East, and the *Atlantick* Ocean on the West and South.

Coimbra was formerly, but now *Lisbon*, is the Capital of the whole Kingdom. It stands on the North-side of the *Tagus*, near its Mouth, Lat. 38, 58. Long. West, 9, 25. 240 m. N. W. of *Gibraltar*, 300 W. of *Madrid*, 750 S. W. of *Paris*, 800 S. of *London*, 950 W. of *Rome*. It was called by the *Latins* and *Greeks* *Ulissipo*, or *Olofippo* (as it were *olos ippon*, a Country full of Horses) or from the *Phenician* Words *olis uppo*, i. e. a

Chief
Towns.

pleasant

pleasant Gulph. It is one of the finest, richest, biggest, and most populous Cities in *Europe*. It lies about two Leagues along the River, in Form of an Amphitheatre, and incloses seven Hills and Vallies. There's a Castle on the highest Hill, which commands the Town, betwixt which and the Harbour there are many stately Churches, Palaces, Squares with Piazza's, large and well-pav'd Streets, delicious Gardens and Fountains. The King's Palace, which is adorn'd with excellent Painting, Sculpture and Architecture, lies on the Bank of the River, and is very regular and magnificent. It has been the Seat of their Kings ever since 1147, when 'twas taken from the *Moors*. It is also the Seat of the chief Parliament of the Kingdom, and of the Court of Inquisition, and of the See of an Arch-Bishop; But the Patriarch of the King's Chapel is entirely under the King. Some say it is 7 Leagues round, has 40 Parishes, 20 Monasteries, and 18 Nunneries, and above 100000 Souls. The Tide flows up into the Harbour, wherein Ships of the greatest Burthen ride in 16 Fathom Water, and they are defended from the Enemies by Towers, and from the Winds by Mountains. This Port is always frequented by an infinite Number of Ships, with valuable Commodities from all Parts. About 4 Miles W. of *Lisbon* is the strong and magnificent Castle of *Belem*, and near it a large Monastery of *Hieronymites*, in which are the *Mausoleums* of the Kings of *Portugal*. The *Portuguese* say, He who has not seen *Lisbon*, has not seen a fine Thing. *Que non ha visto Lisboa, non ha visto cosa bga.*

2. *Q.* How is *Portugal* divided?

Division.

A. Into 6 Provinces, each of them containing several *Commarches*.

Provinces.	L.	B.	Chief Towns, with their Distance from <i>Lisbon</i> .
1. <i>Entre Duro et Minho.</i>	51	79	<i>Porto</i> 160 N. <i>Braga</i> 200. <i>Viana de Fez de Lima</i> . <i>Guimaraes</i> , <i>Villa de Conde</i> .
2. <i>Tralqs Montes</i>	80	112	<i>Braganza</i> 230 N. E. <i>Miranda de Douro</i> . 220. <i>Pinhel</i> 160.
3. <i>Beira</i>	112		<i>Coimbra</i> 120 N. <i>Lamego</i> 180. <i>Viseu</i> <i>Castelbranco</i> 120 N. E. <i>Guarda</i> .

4. *Estre-*

- | | | |
|-----------------------|---------|---|
| 4. <i>Estramadure</i> | 76 140 | <i>Lisbon, Leiria 70 N. Santaren, Setuval.</i> |
| 5. <i>Alentejo</i> | 100 185 | <i>Evora 70 E. Estremos, Elvas, Portalegre, Beja.</i> |
| 6. <i>Algarve</i> | 82 33 | <i>Tavira 120 S.E. Faro, Sylvest. Lagos, St. Vincent.</i> |

Entre Minho Douro is so called, because it lies betwixt those two Rivers. It is the best and most populous Province of all *Portugal*, and is look'd upon by the Inhabitants as a Paradise. Some say it contains 1400 Parish-Churches, 130 Monasteries, 6 Harbours, 200 Stone Bridges, and 5000 Fountains.

Tralos Montes is a mountainous Country, but famous for its chief Town, *Braganza*, whose Dukes (an Offspring of the antient Kings of *Portugal*) are now Kings of *Portugal*; they had the Privilege to sit in publick under the Canopy of the King of *Spain*.

Algarve in the *Moorish* Tongue signifies a fruitful Country. *Alphonse* 3d, King of *Portugal*, is the first that was called King of *Algarve*, after his Marriage in 1274, with *Beatrice* of *Castille*, natural Daughter to *Alphonse* X. and to *Mary de Guzman Vilena*. It was formerly a County, and given as a Portion to that Lady with the Title of a Kingdom.

3. Q. What is the Situation of *Portugal*?

A. It is situated betwixt Lat. 36, 50 and 42-42. and Long. W. 6 and 10. So that its Extent from N. to S. is about 360 Miles, and from E. to W. about 130.

Situation.
Extent.

The *Air* is much more temperate, especially in the maritim Places, than in those Provinces of *Spain* which lie under the same Parallel, it being frequently qualify'd by westerly Winds, and cool Breezes from the Sea. The *Consumption*, a bad Distemper (proceeding either from gross Air, or Luxury) kills here as well as in *England*, a great many People.

Air.

Most of the *Soil* is mountainous, especially in *Algarve*, so that in general it produces little Corn, but abundance of delicious Wine, and excellent Fruit, of the same Sort as those mention'd in *Spain*.

Soil.

Commodities.

In a Lake on the Top of the Hill *Stella*, there are found Pieces of Ships, tho' it be distant above 36 Miles from the Sea. 2. Near *Beja* is another Lake remarkable

Rarities.

markable

markable for its hideous rumbling Noise, which is ordinarily heard before a Storm, and that at the distance of about 20 Miles. 3. About 24 Miles from *Coimbra* is the Fountain of *Cedima*, which swallows up whatever toucheth the Surface of its Waters, as Logs, Cattle, &c. 4. *Almada*, a League from *Lisbon*, is noted for a Fountain, whose Water dissolves the Stone in Human Bodies; and *Onguela* 12 Miles North of *Elvas*, for a Fountain, that kills all Creatures that drink of it, except Frogs. 5. Near *Estremos* is a Fountain, which dries up in the Winter, but flows so in Summer, as to drive a Mill not far from its Rise, and the Water is of a petrifying Nature. 6. At *Antas*, about 20 Miles N. of *Lisbon*, there is a Quarry of Stones fit for Ovens, which when once heated continue hot enough for two Days to bake, but, they say, lose this Quality when transported.

Their chief Rivers are the *Tajo*, *Guadiana*, *Rivets*. *Douro*, *Minho* and *Mandego*, most of which rise in *Spain*.

Sea-Ports. Their Sea-Ports, or Towns on navigable Rivers are, *Lisbon*, *Porto*, *St. Ubez*, *Aveiro*, *Viana*, *Guarda*, *Lagos*, *Tavira*, *Faro*, &c.

The strong Towns, *Cudad Rodrigo*, *Elvas*, *Strong* *Gerumemba*, *Oliveira*, *Campo maior*, *Estremos*, *Towns*. *Evora*, *Beia*, *Portalegre*, *Leiria*, *Salvaterra*, *Villa viciosa*, and even *Lisbon*, because of its Castles and Towers.

4. Q. What sort of Men are the *Portuguese*?

Inhabitants. A. The People who settled first in *Spain*, may be lookt upon to be the same with those who did settle here: The *Gravii*, *Bellitani*, and *Callaici Braccarii* were the Names of the antient Inhabitants. The *Portuguese* were some Ages ago very much noted for their Skill in Navigation, and their vast Discoveries of the (until then) unknown Parts of the World. They were also very good Soldiers, and did courageously fight against the *Castilians* and *Moors*. *Their Man-* Proofs and Instances of their
nes.

Courage they have given in *Africa*, *Asia*, and *America*: But now their Foot, and especially their Horse, are almost good for nothing. They are very sparing, love very much their King, and differ but little from the *Spaniards*, especially in their bad Qualifications: For this is the Character some give of them. Strip a *Spaniard* of all his good Qualities, and that Person thus remaining will be a compleat *Portuguese*.

guefe. They are generally esteem'd a People very treacherous to one another, but more especially to Strangers ; extraordinary cunning in their Dealings ; much addicted to Covetousness and Luxury ; barbarously cruel, where they have the upper-hand ; and the meaner Sort are generally given to stealing. Some will have also this People to be very Malicious, which they say is the Remnant of the *Jewish* and *Moorish* Blood. In a word, they are not prudent like the *Spaniards*, for during their Prosperity, they live secure and careless ; and in great Dangers they are rash and imprudent : They love very much Bull-fighting, and to play on the *Guittar*. As for their *Language*, it is a Compound *Language* of the *French* and *Spanish* Tongues, especially the latter.

The same Reasons we have assign'd to be the *Populous* Cause of the Want of People in *Spain*, may serve for this Countrey, which nevertheless is more *Populous* in proportion than *Spain* :

5. Q. Which are the Dominions possess'd by the *Portuguese* ?

A. The King of *Portugal* possesseth, 1. *Portugal* and *Algarve* 2. *Brasil*, formerly called *Malaca* in *South-America*. 3. The Fortress of *Mafagan* in the Kingdom of *Moroco*, *Angola* on the Coasts of *Congo*, with the Island of *Loanda*, *Villa de San Pao*, *Zofala* on the Coasts of *Casrery*, from the Year 1500 ; and in 1509 they took *Zanguebar*, *Mozambique*, and *Quiloa*. In *Africa*, near the *Canary* Islands, they are Masters of *Madera*, the Islands of *Cape Verde* ; and further off, the Islands of *St. Matheo*, *Fernando de Pao*, *St. Thomas*, *Delprincipe*, and *Annebon*. Betwixt *Africa* and *America*, about N. Latitude 39, the Isles of *Acores*. 4. In *Asia* they have the Fortress of *Diu* in the Province of *Guzurate*, since 1535. *Damaon*, *Chaoul* and *Bassia* near *Cambaya*. The famous Town of *Goa*, taken in 1510, in the Kingdom of *Decan*: A Dependency of *Goa* are *Conor* and *Mangalor* in the Kingdom of *Bisnagar*, *Paleacate* and *Macao* on the Coasts of *China*. They had many other Places in the *East-Indies*, which are now lost from them, especially in *Japon*, from whence they were driven out at the Instigation of the *Dutch*. Wise Men do not at all approve the Way of Living of the *Portuguese* in those Parts ; for they seldom exercise themselves, on the contrary they indulge themselves in all manner of infamous Pleasures, and are very well satisfy'd, when by their Pride and Haughtiness they can

can bully others : And so it was no hard matter for the *Dutch* to drive out of those Countries a Nation, which was so hated and despicable.

The King of *Portugal* claims, 1. The whole *Pretensions*. Monarchy of *Spain*, by a fundamental Law of *Spain*, whereby the *Infanta's* married to foreign Princes, are with their Posterity excluded from the Crown ; and the Kings of *Portugal* pretend thereby, that no other Prince but themselves has any Right to that Crown, since they are truly born *Spaniards*, and the Offspring of *Maria*, second Daughter to *Ferdinand* the Catholick.

2. The *Molucques* Islands, *New-Guinea*, and other Plantations of the *Spaniards* in the *East-Indies*.

3. The Isle and Town of *Ormuz* taken by their Admiral *Alburquerque*, in 1508 ; but the *English* jealous of so good a Plantation, persuaded and helped the *Persians* to take it, which was performed in 1622.

4. The Coasts of the Isle of *Ceylan*, taken by the *Dutch* in 1606, with the Help of the King of *Candi*, one of the 3 Kingdoms of that Isle.

5. *Mascate* in *Arabia*, the *Portuguese* having been driven out of it by the King of *Norenaux*.

6. The Town of *Monbaza* in *Africa*, conquer'd by the *Portuguese* in 1505, and retaken by the Moors in 1700 after a long Siege.

6. Q. What is the Origin of the Kingdom of *Portugal* ?

A. It begun about 1093. *Alphonse* VI. King *Government* of *Castille* and *Leon*, gave it as a Portion to his natural Daughter *Theresa*, whom he marry'd to *Henry*, to reward him for the great Services he had received from that Prince, in his Wars against the *Saracens*. Some late Authors pretend to have discover'd, that this *Henry* was Son to *Henry* Duke of *Burgundy*, Son of *Robert* Duke of *Burgundy*, whose Father was *Robert* King of *France*, and Son to *Hugh* *Capet*. However, *Alphonse* his Son who succeeded him, having often overcome the *Saracens*, took at last in 1139, the Title of King of *Portugal*, which his Successors have ever since retain'd : So that the *Government* is truly *Monarchical* and *Hereditary*, even to the Females and Bastards of the Royal Blood. Foreigners, according to the Law made by the *Estates* assembled at *Lamego* in the XIIth Century, under *Alphonse* I. cannot be Kings of *Portugal* ; for the Princesses cannot transmit their Rights to their Husbands, if born out of *Portugal*. Wherefore the *Estates* assembled

assembled at *Lisbon* in 1679, departed from this fundamental Law, in favour of their Infanta *Elizabeth Maria Loisa*, who was to be marry'd to the present King of *Sardinia*. The King has several Councils, and is not intirely *absolute*, for the *Estates* decide the most material *Busineses*. They are composed of three Orders of Men; 1. The 30 *Titulados*, viz. Dukes, Marquisses, Earls, the King's Privy Counsellors, and the Lords Chief Justices. 2. Deputies from certain Towns and the Clergy make up the third Order.

Q. Who is now King of *Portugal*?

A. *JOHN*, born *October* the 22d, 1689, King's Genealogy. was crowned *January* the 1707; he marry'd *Octob. 27. 1708*, *Mary Ann* of *Austria*, born *Sept. 7. 1683*. She is Daughter of the Emperor *Leopold* and *Eleonora* of *Newbourg* his third Wife. Their Children are, 1. *Mary Magdalen Joseph Therese Barbe*, born *Dec. the 4th 1711*. *Dom Pedro* Prince of *Brasil*, born *Oct. 19th, 1712*, and dy'd *Octob. the 29th, 1714*. 3. *Dom Joseph Pedro Juan Lewis*, Prince of *Brazil*, born *June the 9th, 1715*. 4. *Dom Carlos*, born *May the 2d, 1716*. 5. A Prince born *July the 5th, 1717*.

King *John* is Son to *Pedro III*, born *April* the 26th 1648. *Alphonse VI*. his eldest Brother having been deprived of the Crown for his brutish Actions, *June the 9th, 1668*, *Pedro* took the Administration of the Kingdom, under the Title of *Regent*, for he did constantly refuse that of *King*, until his Brother's Death, which happen'd in 1683, in the *Island Tercera*. By the Pope's Dispensation, he marry'd in 1668, his Brother's Wife, *Mary Elizabeth Francis*, Daughter of *Charle Ane*, Duke of *Aumale* and *Nemours*, and to *Elizabeth*, Daughter of *Cesar* Duke of *Vendôme*: She dyed in 1683; and 1687 *Dom Pedro* married again *Mary Sophia Elizabeth*, Daughter of *Philip William*, Elector *Palatine*, and of *Elizabeth Amalia*, of *Hesse Darmstad*. By his first Wife *Louisa de Gusman*, Daughter to the Duke of *Medina Sidonia*, who dy'd in 1666; he had *Isabella*, who in 1674 was declared Heiress to the Kingdom. In 1680 she was betroth'd to the present King of *Sardinia*, but she dyed unmarried, *Oct. the 21st, 1690*.

By his second Wife *Dom Pedro* has had, 1. *John Francis*, born *Aug. the 30th, 1688*, and deceased *Sept. the 16th 1688*. 2. *K. John V*. 3. *Francis Xavier Antony Urbain*, born *May the 25th, 1691*. 4. *Anthony Francis*, born *March the 15th, 1695*. 5. *Theresa Francis Josepha*, born *Feb. the 24th, 1696*, and

and dy'd in 1704; she was betrothed to the present Emperor:
 7. *Emanuel*, born *Aug.* the 3d, 1697. 8. *Françoisa Xavie-
 ra Josepha*, born *Jan.* the 30th, 1699.

The Dukes of *Cadaval*, and *Veragua*; the Counts of *Oro-
 pesa*, *Lemos*, and *Vimioso*, are also of the Royal Blood, as
 being the Posterity of *Alphonso* 1st Duke of *Braganza*, the
 common Stock of the Royal Family.

The King of *Portugal's* Titles are, *John V.* by
Title. the Grace of God, King of *Portugal* and *Algar-
 ves*, of the Parts on this and the other side of
 the *African* Sea, Lord of *Guinea*, Conquest, Navigation
 and Trade of *Ethiopia*, *Arabia*, *Persia* and *Indus*.

The Hereditary Prince was formerly call'd Prince of *AL-
 grave*, but now Prince of *Brasil*. The King's Sons are call'd
Infants of Portugal.

The Trade of *Negroes*, the Duties paid for
Revenues. imported Merchandizes, the selling of *To-
 bacco* and *Horses* are the most considerable
 Branches of the King's Revenues: And some say that he
 has about two Millions *Sterling*, besides 250000 the Patri-
 mony of the the Royal Family, which is not annexed to
 the Crown. But he is always, even in the
Forces. time of Peace, oblig'd to have a standing Army
 of 12 or 13000 Men, to secure himself from
 his Neighbours the *Spaniards*. And the Distance of the
Indies, and the Dangers from Rovers obligeth him to keep
 a Fleet of about 25 Men of War: But they are of great
 Advantage to the Kingdom for transporting their Wines,
Oyls, *Fruits*, and *Salt*, and to secure the *Brazil*, which is
 the greatest Treasure of the *Portuguese*.

The King commonly resides at *Lisbon*, but
Residence. sometimes he goes to *Villa viciosa*, where he has
 a fine Palace; and to *Salvatiera*, and *Alcantara*.
 The Court is very splendid and sumptuous, and has all the
 great Officers of State, &c. that are usual in
Nobility. other *European* Courts. There are many Dukes,
 Marquisses and Earls. The *Grandeers* of *Portugal*
 have the same Honours as those of *Spain*. The
Orders of Kings of *Portugal* are the Great Masters of the
Knighth. Order of *Christ*: *Avis* and *St. James* have very
 good Commandries.

Clergy. The Clergy possess two third Parts of the
 Lands, and have the Right to nominate to Li-
 vings and Canonships. And there is no Country wherein the
 Pope's

Pope's Authority is more regarded. Their Arch-Bishoprick and Bishopricks are,

A. Bishops.

- | | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1. <i>Lisbon</i> , where
there is a Patriarch
in the King's Chapel. | 2. <i>Braga</i> , Primate.
<i>Coimbra</i> .
<i>Lamego</i> .
<i>Viseu</i> .
<i>Porto</i> . | 3. <i>Evora</i> .
<i>Elvas</i> .
<i>Leria</i> .
<i>Faro</i> , and
<i>Tavira</i> . |
| <i>Miranda</i> .
<i>Portalegre</i> . | | |

Some of those Bishops have 20, 30, 40 and 50 Thousand Ducats *per Ann.*

Their *Universities* are *Lisbon*, *Evora*, and *Univversf. Coimbra*. No Religion is publickly profess'd *Religion.* but the *Romish*, yet there are many *Jews*, and the Inquisition is very severe against relapsing *Jews*, and others suspected of *Heresy*.

8. *Q.* Which are the Advantages of this Kingdom?

A. *Portugal* receives a vast Quantity of Gold from *Brasil*; and is so well situated, that it is *Advantages* on one Side secured by the Ocean, and on the *Defects.* other by Hills: But there are few fortify'd Places; and most of their Gold for want of Manufacture, goes into the Hands of foreign Nations, especially the *English*.

By what has been said it appears, That the Well-being of *Portugal* depends on the Trade they carry on in the *East-Indies*, *Brasil*, and some Places *Portugal's* they have got in *Africa*: But it is also evi- *Interest.* dent, that the Strength of this Kingdom, in comparison with other powerful States of *Europe*, is not sufficient to attack one in open War, or to undertake to invade it. And so its Interest requires to seek all manner of Ways to remain in *statu quo*, and never ingage in a War with a Nation powerful by Sea, lest their remotest Dominions should be invaded, and taken away from them.

The *Portuguese* ought always to have a strict Eye upon the *Spaniards*, who have not yet *With regard* forgot the Loss of so beneficial a Kingdom. *to Spain.* However, it would be very hard for a *Spanish* Army of 25000 Men to subsist in *Portugal*, for want of Provisions; and so the *Portuguese* might oppose against them an Army of an equal Number of Men. And, 2. The *Spaniards* cannot easily equip a Fleet, sufficient to attack with Success, the other Provinces of *Portugal*. But suppose that the *Spaniards* should invade this Country, there is no doubt but

but that the *Portuguese* fighting *pro Rege et focis*, would make a brave Resistance : And *England* would soon send them some considerable Succours. But they must be very cautious not to enter, at the Instigation of some other Power, into an unnecessary War against *Spain* ; for all they should get thereby would not be a sufficient Compensation for the Expences they should be at, for the carrying on of that War ; and their Forces would be very much diminish'd and impair'd.

9. Q. How long have the *Spaniards* been Masters of *Portugal* ?

A. King *Sebastian*, at the Age of 25, went into *Africa*, and was kill'd there in a Battle against the King of *Morocco* in 1578. His old Unkle Cardinal *Henry* succeeded him, but as soon as he was dead, *Philip* 2d King of *Spain*, seized upon *Portugal*, by Right of his Mother *Isabella*, Daughter to King *Emanuel* ; but in 1640 the *Portuguese*, being unable to bear any longer the tyrannical Government of *Spain*, did throw off that intolerable Yoke, and set the Crown upon the Head of *John* VI. Duke of *Braganza* (afterwards King *John* IV. surnam'd the Fortunate) Father of *Alphonso* VI. and *Pedro* II. because he was of the Royal Blood, not only by his Grand-Mother's Side, who was Daughter to *Edward* Brother of *Isabella*, *Philip* the 2d's Mother, but also because the Dukes of *Braganza* came from *Alphonse* Earl of *Barjel*, natural Son to *John* I. by a Lady of Quality ; he dy'd in 1461. This Revolution was happily (tho' not without great Resistance from the *Spaniards*) brought about, by the Help of some *French* Forces ; and this Design of the *Portuguese* was so closely carry'd on, that tho' it was known to above 200 Persons at once, and in agitation for the Space of a whole Year, yet none discover'd it ; and all the Places possess'd by the *Portuguese* in *Europe*, *Asia*, &c. did, almost on the same Day, shake off the *Spanish* Yoke. None remained in the Hands of the *Spaniards*, except the Town of *Ceuta* in *Africa* ; because the Governour being a *Spaniard* was not privy to the Secret. These were the Causes that prompted the *Portuguese* to this Enterprize, 1st, The Permission, granted by the King of *Spain* to others than the *Portuguese*, to go and Trade in the *East-Indies*. 2. The antient, and as it were natural Antipathy between the two Nations. 3. The *Spaniards* hard Usage of the *Portuguese*, by divesting their Noblemen of all Places of Profit and Honour, by reducing the People to Poverty, and carrying them into foreign Wars, or keep-

keeping them in *Catalonia*, or throwing them into Prisons. And 4thly, The Tribute publish'd in 1635, whereby every 5th Part of a Hundred should be lev'y'd on all the Revenues and Merchandizes of the Kingdom.

10. Q. Is *Portugal* in any Danger from *France*?

A. No, because the *French* are very remote from it, and their Sea-Forces not sufficient to invade those Parts of the *East* or *West-Indies*, where the *Portuguese* are settled, and have good strong Towns. 2. It is not likely that the *French* should attack *Portugal*, because their Interest requires, that this Kingdom should subsist against *Spain* and *Holland*: But the *French* may, in case of Need, be a great Help to the *Portuguese* against the Undertakings of the *Spaniards*, *Dutch*, or any other Nation.

The *English*, who are very powerful by Sea, may very much annoy the *Portuguese*; but in my Opinion they would not reap a greater Advantage than by remaining Friends to this Nation, with whom they have a very beneficial Trade.

Hitherto the *Dutch* have been the greatest Enemies to *Portugal*, and even now they can *Holland*. keep their Sea-Ports in a continual Alarm, and reduce them to great Extremities in the *East* and *West-Indies*. And it would not be a hard Task for the *Dutch* to seize upon the City of *Macao*, and the Towns on the Coasts of *Malabar*, whereby the *Portuguese's* Trade would be quite destroy'd. But the *English*, in that Case, would powerfully assist *Portugal*, for from along while the *English* are jealous of the great Successes the *Dutch* have had in the *East-Indies*, whereby *Holland* has got so great Riches, that they are in a Condition to brave not only *Great Britain*, but also other Powers:



C H A P. III.

Of ITALY.

1. Question.

Name of
Italy.

H Y is this Country so called ?

A. Some say it is so called from a Greek and *Tuscan* Word signifying *Oxen*, because of the Multitudes there were, they pretend, formerly in this Country, But

others will have it to be so called from one of the Kings of this Country : But Mr. *Bochart* will have it to be so call'd from a *Phœnician* Word signifying *Pitch*, this Country, especially those Parts called the Kingdom of *Naples* abounding in that Commodity. *Calabria*, Part of it, signifying the same in that Language, as also the Greek Word *Peucetia*. However, this Country was also call'd, *Hesperia*. *Oenotria*, *Saturnia*, *Aufonia*, *Latium*, &c. and is very much like a *Boot*, whose Foot seems to throw *Shape*. *Sicily* into the Sea. It is bounded on all Sides by the *Mediterranean* Sea, except in the North-West, where it is separated by the *Alps* from *France*, *Switzerland*, and *Germany*.

R O M E in Lat. 41. 52. and Long. 13.
Chief Town 400 Miles S. of *Vienna*, 560 of *Cracow*, 680
Rome. S. E. of *Paris*, 750 of *Amsterdam*, 840 of
London, 900 W. of *Constantinople*, and 960
E. of Madrid, stands on both Sides the River *Tiber*; and
 for its Antiquity, Magnificence, Bigness and Rarities, is look'd
 upon to be one of the most famous Cities in the World; tho.
 now it is nothing in comparison to what it was antiently.

It

It is 13 Miles round, but does not seem so Populous as *Milan, Venice, or Naples*, and has a deal of waste Ground within the Walls. The City is generally well-built, the Streets strait and beautify'd with many Palaces, Monasteries, and Churches, fine Piazza's and Gardens. Its most magnificent Palaces are those of the *Vatican, Monte-Cavallo, Farnese, Borgheze, Barberin, Chigi, Altieri, and Medicis*. St. Peter's Church is reckon'd the noblest of its Kind in the World, the Harmony and Proportion of the Architecture is admirable; the variety of fine gilt emboss'd Work, rare Pictures, Statues of Brass and Marble, strike the Beholders with Admiration. The Length of the Church within is 594 Feet, the Length of the Cross, North and South, 438 the Height of the Cupola to the Top of the Cross, 432, the Circumference of the Cupola without, 620, St. Peter's, the Diameter within 143, and the Diameter of the Ball, on which the Cross stands, is 8: From the Time they begun to repair it under Pope *Julius 2d*, to 1654, it had cost 40 Millions of Crowns; and there is about 20000 *l. per Ann.* allow'd for maintaining it.

The Palace of the *Vatican* lies conveniently for the Pope near St. Peter's Church, but loses much of its Lustre and Prospect by its Neighbourhood. It *Vatocan.* is not an intire regular Structure, but a Composition of many beautiful Pieces, containing thousands of Rooms. The *Belvidere* belonging to it is so called, because of its delightful Prospect, and abounds with excellent Paintings. The Library here is very famous, and owes much of its Increase to that of *Heydelberg*, which was carried away from thence by the *Spaniards* and *Imperialists*: The Popes usually live at this Palace. There is an Arsenal containing Arms for 20000 Horse, and, some say, for 40000 Foot. The Castle *St. Angelo* is as it were the Cittadel of *Rome*. The chief Commodities here are the best Viol and Lute strings in *Europe*, perfumed Gloves, Combs made of *Buffler's* Horns, Women's Fans, Vitriol and Essences, and here are the best Masters for Musick, Pictures and Statues in *Europe*. The People are generally civil to Strangers, because most of their Subsistence depends upon it; so that a Stranger, unless he be very imprudent, is in no danger of the *Inquisition* here. They reckon at *Rome* above 22000 Houses, 41 National Churches, 64 Monasteries, above 40 Nunneries, 30 Hospitals, and great many other public Houses, 82 Parishes. And in the Year 1687 there were at *Rome* 123151 Inhabitants, among whom they

they reckon'd 71681 Men, 51470 Women, 41 Bishops, 241 Priests, 3320 Monks, 2084 Nuns, 1262 Scholars in the Colleges, 1831 Poor in the Hospitals, 632 publick Whores, and 26834 Families.

2. Q. How is *Italy* divided ?

Division of
Italy.

A. Into three great Parts; the upper, middle, and lower *Italy*, to which we may add the Islands.

I. Upper *Italy*, formerly called *Lombardy*, contains;

PROVINCES.

Chief Towns, with their Distance from *Milan*.

1. Principality of *Piedmont*,
to which we join

Turin 90 W. *Aouft*, 120 N.
W. *Ivrea*. *Verua* 70 W.
Sufa, *Pignerol*, *Nice* 130
S. W.

Savoy.

Chamberry, 180 N. W. *Mont-*
melian.

2. The Dutchies of *Montferrat*

Cazal, 56 S. W. *Trino*, *Ac-*
qui.

3. *Milan*.

Milan, *Pavia* 28 S. *Cremona* 48 S. E. *Como* 15 N.
Alexandria 50 S. W.

4. *Parma*.

Parma 64 S. E. *Plaisance*

5. *Modena*.

Modena 120 S. E. *Reggio*.

6. *Mantua*.

Mantua 90 E. *Mirandola*.

7. The Republick of *Venice*

Venice 160 E. *Padua*. *Bres-*
cia 60.

8. *Genoua*.

Genoa 70 S. *Savona*, 80 S.
W. *Final*.

9. *Luca*.

Luca 120 S. E. *Massa*.

10. The Bishoprick of *Trent*.

Trent 120 N. E.

II. The Middle *Italy* contains two great States, viz. The Lands of the Church, or *Papacy*. 2. The Great Dukedom of *Tuscany*, and several small Countries.

The

The Lands or the Church, or Dominions of the *Pope* contain,

PROVINCES.

Chief Towns with their Distance from *Rome*.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. <i>Campagna di Roma</i> . | <i>Rome</i> , <i>Tivoli</i> 30 N. <i>Ofia</i> 12 S. |
| 2. <i>St. Peter's Patrimony</i> . | <i>Viterbo</i> , 35 N. <i>Civita vecchia</i> 12 W. <i>Bracciano</i> , <i>Ronciglione</i> . |
| 3. <i>Dutchy of Castro</i> . | <i>Castro</i> 40 N. W. <i>Castelfarnese</i> , <i>Montalto</i> . |
| 4. <i>The Orvietan</i> . | <i>Orvieto</i> 50 N. <i>Aquapendente</i> . <i>Bagnaria</i> . |
| 5. <i>The Perusin</i> . | <i>Perugia</i> 80 N. near it is the <i>Lake Trasimene</i> . |
| 6. <i>Ombria</i> , or <i>Dutchy of</i> | <i>Spoletto</i> , 60 N. <i>Affise</i> . |
| 7. <i>The Territory of Sabina</i> . | <i>Magliano</i> . |
| 8. <i>Marq. of Ancona</i> . | <i>Ancona</i> 120 N. |
| 9. <i>Dutchy of Urbin</i> . | <i>Urbino</i> 100 N. <i>Citta di Castello</i> , a County. <i>Pesaro</i> . |
| 10. <i>Romagna</i> . | <i>Ravenna</i> 150 N. <i>Rimini</i> , <i>Faenza</i> . |
| 11. <i>Ferrarese</i> . | <i>Ferrara</i> 180. <i>Commachio</i> . |
| 12. <i>Bolognese</i> . | <i>Bologna</i> . |

The little Common-Wealth of *St. Marino* is betwixt *Romagna* and *Urbino*.

N. B. And we must not think that what is called *St. Peter's Patrimony* belong'd to him : No, no, his true Patrimony was the Grace of God, and the Poverty of *Jesus Christ*, whose *Kingdom was not of this World*. He does explain it so, when he tells the poor lame Man, *I have neither Gold nor Silver, but what I have, &c.* Let the *Popes* say and do the same ; but their *Kingdom* is of this World, and they have not inherited the true Patrimony of *St. Peter*.

The Great Dutchy of *Tuscany* is divided into 3 Parts.

PROVINCES.

Chief Towns with their Distance from *Florence*.

- | | |
|------------------------|--|
| 1. <i>Florentine</i> . | <i>Florence</i> , <i>Arezzo</i> . |
| 2. <i>Pisan</i> . | <i>Pisa</i> 45 W. <i>Leghorn</i> , <i>Volterra</i> . |
| 3. <i>Sieneze</i> . | <i>Siena</i> 40 S. E. <i>Pienza</i> . |

Along the Sea Coasts there are several little Countries belonging to other Princes ; as,

1. The State *Delli Presidii* ; *Orbitell* 90 S. E. *Porto Hercole*, *Telamone* to the Emperor.

2. The Principality of *Piombino*, 47 S. E. of *Leghorn*, belongs to its own Prince, but the Emperor keeps a Garison here. The Isle of *Elba*, and *Portolongone* belongs to the same Prince ; but the Isle of *Pianosa* belongs to the Great Duke, as well as the Vally of *Madra*, where are *Pontremoli* and *Pietra Santa*.

3. The Domains of the House of *Cibo*, viz. The Dutchies of *Massa* and *Carrara*.

4. And the Marquisate of *de Fos di Nuovo*, to the Family of the *Malespina*.

III. Lower *Italy*, antiently *Magna Gracia*, contains the Kingdom of *Naples*, which is divided into Four great Provinces, each of 'em containing three smaller Ones.

Gr. Provinces.	Small ones. Their Extent.	Chief Towns, with their Distances from <i>Naples</i> .
1. <i>Terra di Lavoro</i> .	1. <i>Terra di Lavoro</i> , prop. 60. 60.	<i>Naples</i> , <i>Capua</i> 15 N. <i>Gaeta</i> , 40 N. W. <i>Ponza</i> Isle to the D. of <i>Parma</i> .
	2. <i>Principato Citerior</i> , 120, 40.	<i>Salerno</i> 28 S. E. <i>Amalfi</i> the Birth-place of <i>Flav. Blondus</i> , who is said to have invented the <i>Compass</i> about 1300.
	3. <i>Principato Ulterior</i> , 60, 30.	<i>Benevento</i> , 35 N. E. to the Pope. <i>Bisaccio</i> , <i>Avellino</i> .
2. <i>Abruzzo</i> .	1. <i>Abruzzo Citerior</i> , 60, 60.	<i>Civita di Chieti</i> , 35 N. <i>Sulmona</i> , the Birth-place of <i>Ovid</i> .
	2. <i>Abrunzo Ulterior</i> , 70, 50.	<i>Artila</i> , 120 N. <i>Atri</i> and <i>Amiterne</i> , the Birth-places of <i>Adrian</i> and <i>Salust</i> .
	3. County of <i>Molisa</i> , 60, 55.	<i>Lanciano</i> , <i>Molise</i> .
3. <i>Apulia</i> .	1. <i>Capitana'a</i> , 95, 90.	<i>Lucera</i> , 80 W. <i>Manfredonia</i> , 120 N. E.
	2. <i>Terra di Bari</i> , 80, 22.	<i>Bari</i> 180 N. <i>Trani</i> . <i>Canes</i> .
	3. <i>Terra d'Otranto</i> , 116, 35.	<i>Otranto</i> , 270 E. <i>Taranto</i> . <i>Brindisi</i> , <i>Leccie</i> .
		4. <i>Calabria</i> ,

4. Calabria. } 1. *Basilicate*, 190, *Cirenza*, 120 N. E. *Venosa* 65. *Horace's Birth-place*.
 2. *Calabria Cite- Cosenza*, 140 S. E. *Rossano*.
 3. *Calabria Ulte- Cantazaro, Reggio*, 240 S. E.
 rior, 100, 100. *Severina*.

IV. The principal Islands belonging to *Italy* are,

1. *Sicily*. } 1. *Valley di Ma- Palermo, Marzara, Montreal,*
 140, 120. } zara. *Gergenti*.
 2. *Valley di Demo- Messina, Catanea, Melazzo*.
 3. *Valley di Nota. Noto, Syracuse, Augusta*.
 2. *Sardinia*. } Cape *Logoduri. Sassari, Algeri*.
 170. } Cape *Cagliari. Cagliari, Oristagni*.
 80. }
 3. *Corfica*. } North-part. *Bastia*.
 100, } South-part. *Ajazzo*.
 40. }
 4. *Lipari, Stromboli, Palmaria, Volcano, Ericusa, Salina, Parerotto*.
 5. *Malta*, 24, 16. *Malta, New and Old, the Isle of Gozon*.

We shall speak of each of these Islands in the End of this Chapter, and to prevent vain Repetitions, we shall speak of the several Princes that have Dominions in *Italy* as, 1. The Emperor. 2. The Pope. 3. The King of *Sardinia*. 4. The Great Duke of *Tuscany*. 5. The Dukes of *Parma*. 6. *Modena*. 7. Bishop of *Trent*. 8. The Republicks of *Venice*. 9. *Genoa*. 10. *Lucca*, and 11. *San Marino*.

3. Q. What are the Dominions of the Emperor in *Italy*?

A. The Countries yielded to the Emperor by the Treaty of *Baden*, are, 1. The Kingdom of *Naples*. 2. The Duchies of *Milan* and *Mantua*. 3. The Island of *Sardinia*, now exchanged for *Sicily*. And, 4. The Places and Harbours on the Coasts of *Italy*. Of all these in their Order.

The Emperor's Dominions in *Italy*.

The Kingdom of *Naples* has the Ecclesiastical State on the W. and N. W. the *Gulph* of *Venice* on the N. E. the Mediterranean on the S. W. and S. E. and is divided from *Sicily* by a narrow Strait about six Miles on the S. W. Corner. It is the largest Dominion in *Italy*, and is about 300 Miles from S. E. to N. W. The Air in general is very good, and the Country so plentiful of Corn, Wine, and excellent Fruits of all Sorts, that other *Italians* who envy them, call it a Paradise inhabited by Devils: For they charge the Inhabitants with Laziness, Dissimulation and Uncleaness. But others say, they are very brave, generous, bountiful, and civil to those who suit their Humour. Besides the Commodities already mention'd, this Country produces Flax, Hemp, Annise-Seed, Manna much esteem'd, Honey, Wax, Almonds, Nuts, Figs, Oranges, Citrons, Iron, Steel, Allum, Silk, Saffron, Olives, Cotton, Sugar, sprightly Horses, and even Pepper near *Rosfano*. Some say it contains 148 Cities and large Towns, 2000 Boroughs or Parishes, 20 Arch-Bishops, 127 Bish. about 100 Principalities and Dutchies, 100 Marquisates, 65 Earldoms, and 1000 Baronies; and the Number of People is reckon'd at two Millions.

It has undergone many Changes of Government, having been possess'd by the *Greeks*, *Romans*, *Goths*, *Lombards*, *Saracens*, *Normans*, *French* and *Spaniards*, but is now subject to the Emperor; for which he is Homager to the Pope, and accordingly sends to his Holiness yearly (on *St. Peter's Eve*) a White Horse and 7000 Ducats, because the Popes, as it is said, rescued it from the *Saracens*: But it is to be noted, that this Homage is made both for *Naples* and *Sicily*, and that antiently those Princes, who possess'd those two Kingdoms, were called Kings of the two *Sicilies*. This Country is govern'd by a Vice-Roy, whose Power is very great. These Vice-Roys were formerly (and perhaps are now) great Extractors upon the People, during their short Regency (commonly of three Years) whence came the Proverb, That the King's Officers do suck in the D. of *Milan*, and fleece in the Island of *Sicily*, but flea off the very Skin in the K. of *Naples*. The Revenue is reckon'd a Million *Sterling per Annum*, Half of it for the Vice-Roy. And some say they are able to raise 150000 Foot, and 100000 Horse, including all who are able to bear Arms. The Wealth of Churches and Monasteries passes Imagination, for it is computed, that the Church-Men are possess'd of four Parts in five of the whole

whole Kingdom, and no Person of Note dies without leaving some considerable Legacy to a Church or Convent.

Naples, the Capital of the Kingdom, Lat.

40. 57. and Long. 14. 50. 110 Miles S. E. of City.

Rome, is the antient *Parthenope*, and lies on a Gulph at the End of a delicious Plain, near the Foot of charming Hills. It is scarce ever cold in Winter, and there is a fresh Air from the Sea and Mountains in Summer. It is one of the finest, largest, richest, and most beautiful Towns in *Europe*. It is reckon'd 9 Miles within the Walls, and 18 including the Suburbs. But Dr. *Burnet* thinks it is not above half so big as *Paris*, or *London*, yet says it is much more beautiful than either, being full of Palaces and great Buildings And those fine Structures are not mixed with mean ones, as elsewhere; but all the Houses are high, almost uniform, and have Plat-forms, where the Inhabitants take the Air in the Evening; and the Streets are large, strait, and paved with hewn Stone. Here are many large handsome Squares, with Fountains of an extraordinary Size and Beauty. Their Churches are reckon'd 300, and there is scarce one that has not something worth the Curiosity of the ablest Artists of all Sorts. The Metropolitan Church of St. *Jamarius* is noted among other Things, for some of the Blood of that Saint kept in a Viol, where they pretend it flows Annually at a certain Season, and when put near his Head, and the Zealots reckon it a Miracle. Their *Annunciata* is reckon'd the greatest and richest Hospital in the World: Its Revenues are computed to 400000 Crowns per Ann. The Plate of the Churches of *Naples* is reckon'd at 8 Millions of Crowns. The *Jesuits* have seven Convents here, all very rich, and are the great Merchants here, especially of Wine. The Town is well supplied with Provisions, and has a noble Harbour, but their Trade is much decay'd by the Laziness of the Inhabitants. The City, besides its Walls, is defended by the three Castles of St. *Elmo*, *Del Ovo*, and the *New Castle*. The Vice-Roy's Palace is in a large Square, and very fine. But this City has suffer'd much by Eruptions from Mount *Vesuvius*, particularly in 1688, when one Third of it was destroy'd. It suffer'd much also in 1701.

The Dutchy of *Milan* has the Dominions of *Genoa* on the S. *Switzerland* on the N. *Piedmont* on the W. and the Dominions of *Venice*, and Dutchy of *Parma* on the E. The greatest Length from S. to N. is 120, and from E. to W. 100 Miles. It is divided into the following Territories.

Terri-

Territories with their chief Towns and distance from *Milan*

1. <i>Milanese</i> proper.	<i>Milan, Rivalte, Marignano</i>
2. <i>Pavese</i> .	<i>Pavia, 28 S.</i>
3. <i>Novarese</i> .	<i>Novara, 28 W.</i>
4. <i>Comasco</i> .	<i>Como, 15 N.</i>
5. <i>Lodetan</i> .	<i>Lodi, 22 S. E.</i>
6. <i>Cremonese</i> .	<i>Cremona, 46 S. E.</i>
7. <i>Tortonese</i> .	<i>Tortona, 40 S.</i>
8. <i>Alexandrin</i> .	<i>Alexandria, 50 S.</i>
9. The County of ———	<i>Anghiera, 30 W.</i>
10. The Territory of ———	<i>Bobio, 50 S.</i>
11. <i>Laumelino</i> .	<i>Valenza.</i>
12. <i>Vigevanese</i> .	<i>Vigevano 25 S. W. Mortara.</i>
13. The Vally of <i>Sessia</i> .	<i>Sanmajolo W. of Anghiera.</i>

This Dutchy abounds with Corn, Wine, Flax, Rice, Fruit and Cattle, and has many Rivers. It is one of the finest, most fruitful, and populous Dutchies in *Europe*. Its annual Revenue is computed at four Millions of *Livres*. It had formerly Dukes of its own, who made a great Figure in History, and has been subject to many Revolutions in Government ; but at last it fell into the Hands of the Emperor *Charles V.* who gave it to his Son *Philip II.* but he was to be Homager to the Empire for it. The Emperor sends there a Governor, whose Authority is almost absolute ; wherefore they say, That *Milan* is govern'd with Authority, *Naples* by Subtlety, and *Sicily* by Gentleness.

Milan, Lat. 45, 22. and Long. 9, 15. stands on the *Oltana*, about 200 Miles N. W. of *Rome*.

It is one of the largest, antientest, fairest, and richest Cities of *Italy*. It is said to contain 300000 Inhabitants. The Houses in general are stately, the Squares large and fine, the Streets broad and neat, and has a great many Tradesmen and Artists, especially in Lace, Embroidery, and Works of Steel and Chrystal. The Citadel is reckon'd one of the strongest and largest in *Europe*. The most remarkable Structures are, 1. The Cathedral, the largest in *Italy*, after *St. Peter's* at *Rome*. 2. The Hospital for those infected with the Plague. 3. The Town-House, and the Palaces of the Duke, and Arch-Bishop. The *Ambrosian* Library is reckon'd to contain 14000 Manuscripts, and 72000 printed Books. This Town has been besieged above 40 Times, and taken 22 Times, and

and 3 or 4 Times ruin'd. The Emperor *Frederic* took it in 1160, and the Empress went to see so famous a City, but they rebell'd, murth'rd the Imperial Garison, seiz'd on the Empress, whom they carry'd thro' the Town on an Ass, with her Face towards the Tail, which they made her hold as a Bridle. But the Emperor, to revenge such an Affront, be-seig'd it again, and took that City in 1162, razed it, plough'd it, and sowed Salt upon it, and even oblig'd the Inhabitants to take with their Teeth a Fig from the Ass's Back-side, but many chose to dye rather than do it.

Rivalta on the *Adda* is noted for a great Victory *Lewis XII.* got over the *Venetians*; and *Marignan* for another, got over the *Switzers* by *Francis* the I. who was in his Turn beaten by them at the Battle of *Novara*, which lasted two Days and two Nights. *Pavia* was ruin'd by the *French*, because near it *Francis I.* was beaten and taken Prisoner by the Generals of *Charles V.* in 1525. *Como* is the Birth-place of *Pliny* the younger, and *Beneditto Odeschallchi*, who was Pope under the Name of *Innocent XI.* *Bosco*, the Birth-place of Pope *Pius V.* whose Name was *Michael de Bosco*.

Rivalta.

Marignan.

Novara.

Pavia.

Como.

Bosco.

The Dutchy of *Mantua* has the Dominions of *Venice* on the N. and W. the *Cremonese* and *Parmesan* on the W. the *Modenese* on the S. and the *Ferrarese* on the E. It is 48 Miles N. W. and abounds with Corn, Pasturage, and Cattle, and in some Places with Wine and Rice. It is divided into several Dutchies, &c. It had formerly Dukes of its own, but being a Fief of the Empire, and the last Duke proscribed for his Adherence to *France*, it is now under the Emperor. Some say, that the Duke's Revenue was 350000 Crowns. *Montferrat* produced 200000: That Money was rais'd from the Mills, Custom-Duties, Taxes on the *Jews*, Fines and Marriages. There is also a great Trade of Corn, Silk and Worsted. The last Duke of *Mantua* dy'd in 1708. He had Pretensions on *Brabant*, *Limburg*, *Antwerp*, *Cleves*, *La Mark*, the Empire of the *East*, and on the Republick of *Genoua*: He was absolute over his Subjects. The other Princes of the Family of *Gonzagua* are the Princes of *Gualala*, *Bozolo*, *Castiglione*, and the Earl of *Novellara*.

Mantua

Mantua the Capital 80 Miles W. of *Venice*, and 200 N. W. of *Rome* is an antient and fine City, pretty large, but not populous. It stands in the middle of a Lake, formed by the River *Mincio*, which makes the Air unwholsome in Summer. It is encompass'd by a Wall, and defended by a strong Citadel. It is noted for the Birth of the Poets *Virgil* and *Tasso*. It receiv'd a French Garison in 1701, and was a long time blockaded by the *Germans* in 1702; but in 1707, it was by Capitulation deliver'd up with the whole Dutchy to the Emperor, who put the Duke of *Mantua* into the *Ban*, and remains in Possession of it.

As for *Sicily*, we shall speak of it afterwards; only it is to be noted here, That if the Families of most of the *Italian* Princes should fail, his Imperial Majesty claims their Provinces as his *Fetudatory Right*.

The Pope's Dominions have those of *Venice* on the N. *Mantua*, *Modena*, and *Tuscany* on the N. W. *Naples* on the East, the *Mediterranean* on the S. W. and the *Adriatick* on the N. E. They are much Indented by the neighbouring Dominions. The greatest Extent from S. E. to N. W. is about 240 Miles. In several Places the Air is unwholsome, by reason of the Marshes and standing Waters, and the Country is not populous, nor well-cultivated; however, in some Places, the Soil abounds in Wine, Corn, Olive, and Salt. The Pope besides is possess'd of the City *Avignon*, and *Comtat Venaissin* in France. 2. *Benevente*, with its Dependencies in the Kingdom of *Naples*, and the City of *Ceneda* in the *Trevizano*. These Countries have been all usurped, under a forg'd Donation of the Emperor *Constantine*, and given by superstitious or wicked Princes, to have the Popes on their Side. The Pope claims also a sovereign Pretensions. Power over the Kingdoms of *Arragon*, *Sardinia*, *England*, *Hungary*, *Portugal*, *Sicily* and *Jerusalem*. And for the Kingdom of *Naples* he receives every Year a Nag with all its Harness, and a Purse of 7000 Ducats: The Duke of *Parma* also gives him every Year 10000 Crowns. The Pope pretends moreover to be sole Vicar of the Empire, when there is no Emperor.

The Pope's ordinary Revenue is above 2000000 Crowns from his Provinces, but his casual Revenue is far greater, for he draws a vast deal of Money from the Popish Countries, because of the Investiture, Annates, and other Favours begg'd from the Court

Court of *Rome*; wherefore some have said that the Pope's Revenue cannot fail, so long as he has a Pen, Paper, Ink and Hand to write. Who can then be surpriz'd to see or hear how rich his nearest Relations grow? But the Expences he is to be at, for the Maintenance of his numerous and magnificent Household, are very considerable. However, he saves Annually above 1000000 *l. Sterl.* He has some Militia, called Soldiers *della Bande*, viz. 8000 Foot, and 4000 Horse, to whom he grants considerable Privileges, instead of their Pay. He has also 300 *Switzers*, and 100 Horse for his Guards. He has at *Civita Vecchia* some Gallies: And his strong Towns are *Orvieto*, *Piperno*, *Salsubio*, *Palliano*, *Spoleto*, *Perusia*, *Ancona*, *Forli*, *Bertinora* and *Ferrara*.

Tho' his Authority be not as great as formerly, when Popes exercis'd, tho' they had not the Right of *Dethroning* Emperors, Kings, &c. yet even now thro' the Means of the Clergy, and especially of the Monks, he has a vast Interest in all the Courts of the Princes of his Communion. The Pope's Interest is to keep himself as much as he can *in statu quo*, in relation to the *Roman Catho-* Authority.
licks, and to seduce as many Protestant Princes as he can, to keep the *Balance* betwixt the greatest Powers in *Europe*, lest he should at last become Chaplain or Almoner to the Victorious; to be very cautious, mild and prudent: Wherefore the Cardinals choose no more wicked Popes (as *Alexander VI.*) or turbulent (as *Julius 2d*) but grave, sedate, old and good ones, at least in appearance. The Pope's Dominions are govern'd by their several *Govern-*
Legates, sent by the Pope, who has always a *ment*.
 great many Officers and Councillors (all Clergymen) and especially the Cardinals, who are commonly the Governors or Legates of the Provinces and Cities belonging to the Pope. Those Cardinals are *Cardinals*.
 chosen by the Pope, and are his Counsellors about Civil and Religious Affairs. Some of them are made *Cardinals*, because they are rich, and of a potent Family; others, because they are good Politicians, and few because of their Probity and Learning. And all these, if present in the Conclave, have the Right of choosing the Pope, who is always one of them, and even an *Italian*, because the *Italian Cardinals* are the greatest Number. Pope *Sixtus V.* fixed their Number to 70, whereof there are 6 Cardinal Bishops, 50 Priests, and 14 Deacons. They claim the Precedency before

fore Electors of the Empire, but in vain, for even the *Doge* of *Venice*, the Dukes and Peers of *France*, the *Grande*s of *Spain* won't yield to them.

The King of *Sardinia's* Dominions have *Switzerland* on the N. *Dauphine* and *Provence* on the W. the *Milanese*, and Republick of *Genoa* on the E. and the *Mediterranean* on the S. From *Thonon* to *Nice* they reckon 250 M. but from East to West the Breadth is very unequal, but most commonly about 60. These Dominions are divided into the *Dutchy* of *Savoy*, and Principality of *Piedmont*.

The Dutchy of *Savoy* contains,

PROVINCES.

1. Dutchy of *Savoy*, prop.
2. County of *Maurienne*,
3. County of *Tarentaise*,
4. Barony of *Faussigny*,
5. Dutchy of *Chablais*.
6. Dutchy of *Genevois*,

Chief Towns with their Distance from *Chamberry*.

Chamberry, *Montmelian*, 12 S.
St. John of Maurienne, 24 S.
Moustiers, 26 S. E.
Bonneville, 20. N. E.
Thonon, 30 N. E. *Evian*.
Annecy.

The Principality of *Piedmont* contains,

PROVINCES.

1. *Piémont*,
2. *Salusses Marq.*
3. *Asti* County,
4. *Montferrat*,
5. Valleys of

Chief Towns, with their distance from *Turin*.

Turin, *Ivrea*, 35 N. *Susa* 20 N. W. *Mondovi* 40 S. *Pignerol*, *Exiles*, *Fenestrelles* and *Oneglia* Principality on the Coasts of *Genoa*.
Salusses 20 S. *Carmagnol* on the Po.
Asti 24 E. *Uerrue*.
Trino, *Cazal*, *Albi*, *Agguit*.
Lucerna, *Pragelas*, *St. Martin*, *Peroufa* and *Angrogna*, called the Country of the *Vaudois*.

2. Dutchy of

Aosta, 60 N. *Castiglione*, *Bar*.
St. Remi.

3. County

3. The County of Nizza } 1. Counties of Nizza 80 S. Villefranche, Barcelonetta to the French.
 2a. } 2. Tende.
 3. } 3. Boglio.
 4. Lordship of } Verceil, 50 N. E. Mafferan.

He possesseth also the *Alexandrin* and *Vigevano* in the *Milanese*, and the Kingdom of *Sardinia*, in exchange for *Sicily*; of which at the End of this Chapter.

In *Savoy* the Air is cold, because of the Mountains, which are almost always cover'd with Snow; nor does the Soil abound in Corn, Wine, and Fruit except in the Valleys: But they have abundance of Fir, Oak and Pitch-Trees, Walnuts, Chestnuts, Cattle of all sorts, plenty of wild and tame Beasts and Fowl: But the other Parts of the King of *Sardinia's* Dominions are as fertile and pleasant as any other County in *Italy*; for the Inhabitants export Corn, Cattle of all sorts, Hemp, Rice, Cheese, Wine, Iron-work, Paper, Cloth and Raw-Silks: So that no Country of its Dimensions yields a greater Revenue to its Prince; and it is usual for Gentlemen here to have from 6 to 15000 Ducats *per Ann.* and there is no Place in *Italy* where Castles and Villages are more frequent and large.

The *Savoyards* are laborious, good, kind, and open-hearted; the Noblemen are courageous, and magnificent; but the common People are cringing, and don't like War, tho' they can endure all manner of Hardships; they are very sober and good Husbandmen; but are not noted for their Learning; and most of the People are troubled with Swellings in the Throat, occasion'd by their drinking Water mix'd with Snow. Here, and in some Parts of the D. of *Aosta*, they speak *French*. There are some *Protestants* in the five *Valleys*, and they are there from a very long Standing, tho' they have been often persecuted, especially in 1686.

Tho' there be three Parliaments at *Chambery*, *Turin* and *Nizza*, yet the Duke is Sovereign, and has under him a great many Officers. The Daughters do not inherit, tho' the most Parts of these Dominions come from Women: The Duke is a Member (as Vassal and Vicar) of the Empire in *Italy*; which Dignity was confirm'd to him in 1658, notwithstanding the Oppositions of the Duke of *Mantua*: He can, even during the Emperor's Life, make Noblemen, Barons, and Counts, legitimate Bastards, and rehabilitate those that have

have been declared infamous. As Member of the Empire, he sits in the Diets among the Princes of the Circle of Upper-Rhine, and gives his *Quota* for the War against the Turk; and tho' he sits there betwixt the Duke of *Holstein* and Count of *Henneberg*, yet every where else he goes after the Electors. At *Rome*, in the *Pope's* Chapel, and at the Courts of *Europe*, he goes before all the Princes in *Italy*, and he pretends to go before the Republick of *Venice*, the Duke of *Lorain*, and the Cardinals.

The King of *Sardinia's Pretensions* are, 1. *Pretensions.* The Island of *Cyprus*, by *Lewis* the Old, who in 1432 married the Daughter of the King of *Cyprus*, and *Lewis* his Son married in 1450, the Heiress of that Isle; but *James*, natural Son to *James* 2d, King of *Cyprus*, seized upon that Kingdom by the Help of the Sultan of *Egypt*, and married the Daughter of a *Venetian* Nobleman.

2. The Dutchy of *Milan*, by *Charles Emanuel* marrying in 1585 *Catharina* Daughter of *Philip* 2d, King of *Spain*; because it was agreed, That the first Male born of them should enjoy that Dutchy and *Savoy*, under the Title of King of *Lombardy*; but that Prince Heir dying in *Spain*, Ann. 1605, the *Spaniards* pretended that the Agreement was void. However the Duke of *Savoy* says, that the second Son ought to have inherited it.

3. *Genoa*, and particularly *Savona*, as being D. of *Montferrat*, because that Country surrender'd it self to *Theodorus Paleologus*, Duke of *Montferrat*, in 1409.

4. The Lordship's of *Vaud* and *Romont* in *Switzerland*, sold to *Amadeus* Earl of *Savoy*, in 1359, and possess'd until 1475, when *James* Earl of *Romont* and *Vaud* was deprived of them, because he stood for the *Burgundians* against the *Switzers*.

5. *Spain*, and the *Low-Countries*, by *Catharina* married, as we have said, to *Charles*, &c.

6. The City of *Geneva*, sold in 1401, to *Amadeus* VIII. for 45000 *Livres*, by *Humbert* VIII. Lord of *Thoire* and *Villars*.

7. The Principality of *Achaia* and *Morea*, by *Philip* Earl of *Savoy*, marrying *Isabella de Ville Hardouin*, Heiress to those Countries.

It is generally said, that the House of *Savoy* descend from that of *Saxony*, and that Princes of this Family have seven Times married Daughters of the Emperors of the W. and E. seven

E. seven Times of the House of *Austria*, five Times of the House of *France*, three Times of *Sicily*, twice of *Spain*, and once of *England*.

The present Duke is *Victor Amadeus*, II. born May the 14th, 1666, crowned King of *Sicily* in 1713. He married in 1684, *Ann Mary* of *Valois*, Daughter to *Philip* of *Orleans*, and *Henrietta* Daughter of *Charles I.* of *England*. He has had by her several Children, as 1. *Mary Adelaide*, Mother to the *French King*. 2. *Mary Loisa Gabriella*, married to *Philip V.* of *Spain*; and a great many others, who are all dead, except *Charles Emanuel Victor*, Prince of *Piedmont*, Apr. 27 1705. He married the other Day a Princess Palatine of *Sultzbach*, who died lately. There are some other Branches of this House, as the Branches of *Carignan* and *Soissons*, wherein there are a great many Princes; but especially Prince *Eugene*, famous for his warlike Exploits, born Octob. 18th, 1663, and Son to *Eugene Maurice* of *Savoy*, Earl of *Soissons*, and *Olympia Mancini*, Niece to Cardinal *Mazarin*; she dy'd at *Bruxelles* in 1708.

The Revenues of the present Duke's Grand-father, from *Savoy* alone, amounted to a Million of Gold; but, by the Addition of so many Countries, that Sum is much increased. However they reckon in the Duke's Dominions of *Savoy*, 1800000 Heads, and he may easily keep 30000 Foot, and 5000 Horse. He has several strong Towns, and some Men of War and Gallies.

His Titles are *Victor Amadeus*, by the Grace of God, King of *Sardinia*, Duke of *Savoy*, *Chablais*, *Aosta*, *Genevois*, and *Montferrat*; Prince of *Piedmont*, *Achaia*, *Morea* and *Oneglia*; Marquis of *Salusses* and *Susa*; Earl of *Asti*, *Geneva*, *Nizza*, *Tende*, and *Romont*; Baron of *Vaud*; Lord of *Verceil*, *Friburg*, *Marro*, *Piella*, *Novello*; Prince and perpetual Vicar of the H. R. I. in *Italy*; King of *Cyprus*, &c. His Residence is at *Turin*, where he has one of the finest Courts in *Europe*.

Chamberry, Lat. 45, 55. m. S. W. of *Geneva*, and 100 W. of *Turin*, was formerly the Seat *Chamberry* of the Dukes, and lies in a pleasant Plain, surrounded by several Hills. The Streets are strait, with *Piazza's* to cover the People from Rain. As the Town has been several times taken by the *French*, it is not so populous, rich and splendid as formerly.

Turin.

Turin, Lat. 44. 33. 340 N. W. of *Rome*, 360 S. E. of *Paris*, and 480 S. W. of *Vien-na*, stands in a very fruitful, pleasant Plain on the River *Po*. It is one of the finest Cities in *Italy* for the Magnificency and Regularity of its Buildings, the Beauty of its Streets and Squares, the Number and Sociableness of its Inhabitants, and all Commodities of Life. The Duke's Palaces are of noble Architecture, and their Apartments stately. The Convent of the Jesuits is the finest Building in the City. The Cathedral and other Churches are magnificent, richly painted, gilt, and adorned. The City is regularly fortified after the modern Way, and the Citadel excels in Strength and Beauty. The Invention of Oil-Cloth, and the first Printing in *Italy* is owing to this City. The *Ros Solis*, and other Liquors made here, are much esteemed. The French besieg'd it vigorously in 1706, and reduc'd it to very great Extremities, but Sept. 7. the Duke of *Savoy*, and Prince *Eugene* relieved it, and gain'd a compleat Victory over them, after they had over-run his Dominions.

The Great Dutchy of *Tuscany* has *Genoa* on the *Tuscany*. N.W. *Parma*, *Modena*, *Bologna*, and *Romagna* on the N. others of the Pope's Dominions, on the E. and the *Mediterranean* on the S. Its greatest Extent from S. E. to N. W. is 142 Miles, but it includes others petty Dominions. Some Parts of the Country are mountainous, where there are Mines of Copper, Iron, Silver and Allum, Quarries of fine Marble, Alabaster and Porphyry. In other Places it abounds with pleasant Hills and Vallies, which produce plenty of Wine, Oranges, Limons, Olives, and other Fruits, and store of Corn and Grass. The chief Commodities, besides those already mention'd, are Wool, Flax, Saffron, Serges, Woolen Cloth, Silks, Tapestries, gilt Leather, earthen Ware and Perfumes. Some of the Inhabitants reckon their Riches by Millions.

The Grand Duke's Dominions are, besides what is already mentioned, the Islands of *Elba*, *Gorgona*, or *Margarita*, *Pianosa*, *Giglio*, and *Gianuti*. And some Towns in the Ecclesiastical State, especially in the Dutchy of *Urbino*.

He claims the Republic of *Lucca*, because its Inhabitants did put themselves under the Protection of *Florence*, and surrender'd themselves intirely, being oppress'd by Duke *Castrucci*, whom the

the Emperor *Lewis* the IVth establish'd their Governour in 1324.

2. The Town of *Sarezana*, taken from the *Florentines* by the *Genoesse*.

3. The Isle of *Corse*, because conquer'd both by *Pisa* and *Genoa*.

4. The Dutchy of *Urbino*, by *Ferdinand II.* who married *Victoria* Niece to *Francis Mary Rovere*, last Duke of *Urbino*; but Pope *Urban VIII.* seized on that Dutchy, pretending it was a Fief of the Church.

This Country has undergone many Changes, but came at last under the Family of *Medicis*, about 1410, who are now Hereditary Dukes, and even Absolutes, tho' the Emperor claims it as a Fief of the Empire. In 1569, Pope *Pius V.* gave it the Name of Great Dutchy. Governm.

His Revenue is very great, above 1800000 Ducats, and his Treasury is said to be very rich, and very fine, so that he is able to raise 40000 Foot, and 5000 Horse, and to equip some Men of War upon occasion. His Court is very splendid, and his arbitrary Government would soon make the Country poor, only that He and his Nobles encourage Trade, and Traffick themselves. Revenue.
Forces.

Cosmo 3d, born Aug. 4th 1642, has obtained the Title of Royal Highness from the Emperor and Pope.

He married *Margareta Lovisa*, Daughter of *Gaston John Baptiste*, D. of *Orleans*: She dy'd last Year at *Paris* 1721. He has had by her *Ferdinand*, Hereditary Prince of *Tuscany*, born Aug. the 9th, 1663, and dy'd Childless in 1713; and 2. *Ann Mary Louisa*, born Aug. the 11th, 1667, who in 1691 was married to *John William*, Elector *Palatine*. 3. *John Gaston*, born May the 24th, 1671, married *Ann Mary Francis* of *Saxe Lawenburg*, Widow to *Philip William*, Count *Palatine*; but as there are no Children, the Succession to this Country will probably be the Cause of some Troubles in *Italy*. There are yet some Princes of this Family, known by the Title of *Ottajano*, and Dukes of *Sarno*. This Family was potent many Centuries ago at *Florence*, 23 of them have been *Gonfaloniers*, and about 100 Chief Men of the Republick of *Florence*; three Popes, *Leon X.*, *Clement VI.*, and *Leon XI.* *Alexander*, Son to Pope *Clement VII.*, was the first Duke of *Tuscany*; he married the natural Daughter of the Emperor *Charles* the Vth.

Florence. *Florence*, Lat. 43. 42. 60 m. S. E. of *Modena*, 130 N. W. of *Rome*, lies at the beginning of a large Plain, which is bounded on all Sides by charming Hills. It is 6 or 7 Miles round; the Streets are neatly paved, and the Palaces reckon'd the neatest in *Italy*. It's chief Strength is in three Castles. The Duke's Palace is very magnificent, and full of a vast many precious Rarities. The *Florentines* are reckon'd witty, brave and frugal, but ridiculously jealous. *Boccace*, *Americ Vespuce*, *Accursius*, *Machiavel*, *Galilei*, and other great Men were born here, among others, the famous *Johannes Picus de Mirandola*, *Ferom Savaranola*, both of 'em great Enemies to the Corruptions of the Church of *Rome*.

Pisa. *Pisa* is very ancient, and so large, that it is reckon'd the second City in *Tuscany*. The Streets are broad, strait, well-paved, and the Houses generally well-built; but the Neighbourhood of *Leghorn* has drawn away most of its Inhabitants and Trade. The Cathedral is stately, and has a round Steeple with 153 Steps, that inclines 15 Foot on one Side, which some ascribe to Art, and others to the sinking of the Foundation.

Leghorn. *Leghorn* is 12 m. S. from *Pisa*, on the Coast. The New Town is encompass'd with handsome Fortifications: It is frequented by Merchants of all Nations, because a Free-Port, and drives a considerable Trade in Cotton, Silk, Allum, Roman Anniseed, Coffee, Drugs, *Levant* Goods, Oyl and Wine. The Customs of the Port and City, are one of the chief Branches of the Duke's Revenue. The Air was formerly unwholsome, but 'tis much better since the Marshes were drained by a Canal of fourteen Miles, cut from hence to *Pisa*.

Sienna. *Sienna* is very ancient, but the Situation incommodious, because it stands on high and low Ground. The Air is good, the Houses well-built, the Streets neat, the Water excellent, and the *Italian* is spoke here to perfection, which makes the Town much frequented. It was, as well as *Pisa*, the Head of a Republic for several Ages. It's Cathedral is stately, tho' of *Gothic* Architecture. Here is a Place made in fashion of a Shell, that can easily be filled with Water from Fountains; to represent Naval-Fights. It has a Citadel built on a Hill, and some Towers for Defence of the City.

The Dutchies of *Parma* and *Piacenza*, have *Milan* on the W. *Cremonefe*, on the N. *Genoa* *Parma* on the S. and *Mantua* and *Modena* on the E. They are 57 m. E. and W. and 32 S. and N. They abound with good Wine, Fruit, Cattle, the best Cheefe in *Italy*, Chefnuts and *Truffles*. Here are alfo Mines of Copper and fine Wool.

The Duke of *Parma* poffeffeth, befides the Country of *Rufeto*, the Valley of *Tara*, and the Town of *Penna* in the Kingdom of *Naples*. He claims alfo the Dutchy of *Castro*, and County of *Ronciglione*, and the Kingdom of *Portugal*.

Parma was made a Dutchy by Pope *Paul III*d, for his natural Son *Peter Lewis Farnese*, in 1540; fo that the Duke is a Vaffal of the See of *Rome*, and pays it about 10000 Crowns per Ann. He is nevertheless Sovereign, and the Succellion belongs to the eldeft. His Revenue is about 600000 Crowns, and he is reckon'd able to raife 5000 Men.

The prefent Duke is *Francis Farnese*, Duke of *Parma* and *Plaisance*, born in 1678, and with the Pope's Leave he married in 1695, his Sister-in-Law *Dorothea Sophia*, Daughter to *Philip William*, Elektor *Palatine*. He has no Children by her, but his Brother has had *Elizabeth*, born October 25, 1692, and married in 1714, to *Philip V.* King of *Spain*.

Parma and *Plaisance* are both pretty and ftrong Towns.

The Duke of *Modena* poffeffes the Dutchies of, 1. *Modena*. 2. *Reggio*. 3. The Principalities of *Carpi*. 4. *Corregio*. 5. Marquifate of *Scandiano*. 6. The Lordfhips of *Frignano*, *Grafena*, and the New Caftle of *Terrazona*, with fome other Lands in the Valley di *Carfagnan*. 7. The little Country of *Lorrario*, wherein are *Metello*, *Rocovilla*, *Bricco*, and *Campo grande*; the Inhabitants whereof are obliged to fend every Year to the Duke a Bear, to fight with another wild Beaft. 8. The Dukedoms of *Mirandola* and *Concordia*, bought from the Emperor for five Millions in 1711, fo that the illuftrious Family of *Pic*, noted for their Learning, do's enjoy them no more; but the Duke of *Modena* is obliged to give to *Fran:is Mary*, an annual Penfion of 3000 Piftoles. The Revenue of this Dutchy was about 80000 Ducats.

The Duke claims the *Ferrarefe*, given by *Alphonfe* 2d to his Anceftor *Cesar d'Este*, acknowledged for lawful Heir by the Emperor and People; but Pope *Clement VIII.* feized it, pretending it was a Fief of the Church, and that Bafards could not poffeff it.

He claims also *Commachio* for the same Reason, but the Emperor has seized it from the Pope in the last Wars.

These Countries are almost situate in the middle of *Italy*, along the Mount *Apennine*, and abound in every thing especially Cattle.

The Duke's *Revenue* is about 400000 Ducats raised from Duties on Fruit, Cattle, Employments sold, and on the *Jews*. He has from *Naples* 30000 Crowns for the Maintainance of *Correggio's* Garison. But the present Duke's Revenue is considerably increased by *Mirandola*, &c. He can raise about 12000 Men.

The Governours decide of the most material *Government*. Affairs in their Provinces. The *Podestats* administer Justice, but Appeals are brought before the Duke, who is Sovereign, tho' he be Homager to the Pope for some Lands in the *Ferrarese*, and to the Dukes of *Milan* and *Mantua* for *Bersello*. As Feudatory of the Empire he pays 4000 Crowns *per Ann.* His Court is very fine and numerous; and the Family of *Este* is very antient, and comes from the same Stock with that of *Brunswick*.

The present Duke is *Reginald D.* of *Modena* and *Regio*, Prince of *Carpi* and *Correggio*; Lord of *Frignano*, *Carfagnana*, *Coragio*, &c. He was born in 1655, and was Cardinal-Deacon in 1686: But after his Brother's death, he left off the Purple, and in 1696 he married *Charlotte*, Daughter of *John Frederic Duke Hanover*. She was Sister to the Empress, and dy'd in 1710. He has had by her *Benedicta Ernestina Mary*, born in 1697, and in 1715, married to *Pr. Antony* of *Parma*. 2. *Francis Mary*, Hereditary Prince of *Modena*, born in 1698, who in 1721 married one of the Duke Regent's Daughters. 3. *Amalia Josepha*, born in 1699. And 4. *John Frederic Ernest*, born in 1700. The Marquis of *Este-St.-Martin*, *Dronero*, and the Earl of *Bergomanero*, are also of the Family of *Este*.

Modena is an antient Town, and lies in a fruitful, pleasant Plain, is the Seat of the Duke who has here a neat Palace well-adorn'd and furnish'd. The City is not rich, nor populous, but has a strong Cittadel, as well as *Reggio*, which is very handsome, has fine Churches and Palaces. It has a good Trade.

Tho' the Bishop of *Trent* has a Vote in the Imperial Diet, and be the Emperor's Vassal, as Count of *Tiro*, yet his Country being inclosed

sed within *Italy*, and he being in some Respects a Spiritual and Temporal Lord, we shall speak of his Dominions in this Place. His Dominions are *Trent*, *Riva*, *Bolsano*, *Roveredo*, &c. 80 m. from E. to W. and 50 from S. to N. *Trent* on the *Adige* is very antient, not large, but pretty populous; is defended by an old Castle, has many stately Palaces, and several beautiful Churches. 'Tis famous for a Council held here from 1545 to 1563. The Bishop is chosen by the Chapter, who are all Persons of Quality.

The Dominions of *Venice* in *Italy* have the Dutchies of *Milan*, *Mantua*, and *Ferrara* on the S. the Dutchy of *Milan* and the Grisons of *Venice*. on the W. *Trent* and *Tirol* on the N. and *Carniola* and *Croatia* on the E. They are about 180 m. from W. to E. and 90 from S. to N. and abounds in all things necessary to Life, except *Istria*, where they have no Corn. These Dominions are divided into *Terra Firma*, and *Terra Maritima*.

Terra Firma, contains seven Governments.

Governments.

1. The *Paduan*,
2. The *Trevigo*
 - Trevisano*
 - Feltrino*
 - Bellunese*
 - Cadorin*
3. The *Veronese*
4. The *Vicentin*
5. The *Bresciano*
6. The *Cremesco*
7. The *Bergamasco*
 - ii and the *Polisin* of *Rovigo*
 - iii The *Frioul*

Chief Towns with their distance from *Venice*.

Padua 25 W. *Citadella*, *Esse*.
Trevigio 20 N. W. *Ceneda*.
Feltri, 50 N.
Belluno
Pieve di Cadore.
Verona 70 W. *Pesquiera*.
Vicenza 35 W. *Marostica*.
Brescia 110 W.
Crema 130 S. W.
Bergama 140 W. *Calepio*.
Rovigo 30 S. W.
Udina 60 N. *Palma nuova* ;
 but *Trieste*, *Goritz*, and
Aquileia, belong to the
 Emperor.

Terra Maritima contains,

1. *Udlogado* Venice, with several little Islands, as *Malmocco*, *Murano*, &c.
2. Part of *Istria* *Capo d'Istria* 65. N. E. *Citta Nuova*.

The *Venetians* possess besides,

1. *Morlacha* *Segna*.
2. *Dalmatia*, part of *Zara*, *Sebenico*, *Spalato*.
3. The Isles of *Corfou*, *Cefalonia*, *Zante*, with some other small ones in the *Adriatick* Sea, and *Cerigo* and *Tino* in the *Archipe'ago*.
4. In *Candia* they have yet *Suda*, and *Spinalonga*, *Cara-buza* was taken in 1692, by the *Turks*.

This Republick claims, but with not so good *Pretensions*. Right as the Duke of *Savoy*, the Kingdom of *Cyprus* taken in 1570. 2. The Islands in the *Archipel*, with *Negrepont*, *Albania*, and *Morea*, lost at several Times. 3. The Isle of *Candia*, bought in 1203, but lost in 1669. 4. The *Ferrarese*. 5. The Sovereignty over the *Adriatick* Sea, which the Doge of *Venice* marries every Year with a great deal of Pageantry ; but the Emperor questions that Sovereignty, and has made *Trieste* a free Sea-Port.

V E N I C E, the Capital lyes Lat. 45. 22. about 230 N. of *Rome*, 250 S. of *Vienna*, 500 S. E. of *Paris*, *Venice*. 530 of *Amsterdam*, 620 of *London*, 800 E. of *Madrid*, 800 N. W. of *Constantinople*, 420. S. W. of *Cracow*. It stands upon Islands, commonly said to be above 170; it was built about 421, when *Attila* King of the *Huns*, having ruin'd *Aquileia*, went forward to plunder *Italy* with a powerful Army : For the Inhabitants of *Padua* and their Neighbours retired into those *Laguna*, or Islands to be safe ; and they began to build in that of *Rialto*, the Town of *Venice*, which they made free, and in a short Time all the Islands re-united themselves under that City, which is lookt upon

upon to be one of the richest and most Trading Cities in *Europe*. The Situation of this City is the most extraordinary of any in the World. All the outer Houses being founded on Piles in the Water, it looks like a City rising out of the Sea. It is five Miles from the Continent, and tho' not fortified, yet it is so strong by Situation, that they reckon it impregnable. Mr. *Misson* says, it is five Miles round, and contains 140000 Souls. The Streets are generally narrow, and crooked, but well paved and very clean. The Buildings are generally lofty and magnificent; and in most of the Streets they have Canals. The Air is tolerably good, and they are well supplied with Provisions. The chief Trade of the City is in Treacle, Paper, Salt, Turpentine, Point, Silks, Currants, Looking-Glasses and Soap. The most considerable Things are, 1. The Arsenal, which is two Miles round, separated from the City by a Canal, inclosed with Walls, and strongly guarded. The Gallies and other Vessels are kept here with great Care; and in their Magazine are Arms for several Thousand Men, and Rigging for 100 Gallies. They can speedily put to Sea 40 Gallies, and 10 Galleasses. The Church, Palace, and Place are very fine. The Treasure is kept in the Palace in great Iron Chests under three Locks and Keys, committed to three Procurators and must not be opened unless all be present, on pain of Death.

Padua is very antient, and noted for being *Padua*.
the Birth-place of *Livy*, and an University.

Verona is also reported to be the Birth-place *Verona*.
of *Catullus*, and *Pliny* the Elder.

At first the Consuls of *Padua* govern'd *Venice*, and sometime after there were several Head Magistrates in each Island or Ward of this Town, but in *Venice's Government*. 709 they resolved to have but One who should be Head of All, and even some of them, tho' chosen by the People, were Absolute; but in 1289, the Doge *Pedro Gradenigo* began to establish a true Aristocratical Government, which is almost the same now as it was then.

The Sovereign Authority is properly lodged in the Hands of the 'Great Council' of all the *Great Council*.
Noblemen (*Collegio del Grande Consiglio*) but *cil*.
no Nobleman is admitted into it, except he be 30 Years old, or it be otherwise order'd. This Great Council consists of about 6, 7, or 800 Nob'es, who must prove their Descent. During the sitting of this Council, all other State-Councils are shut up: Their Business is to make Laws for

For the Good of the State, and to give all the great and small Employments; and they elect the Doge. The *Senate del Pregadi* are, as it were, the Privy-Council to the State: They determine War and Peace, appoint Ambassadors, &c. and consist of 120 chosen by

Senate.

Ballot out of the Great Council. Three Hundred Nobles are allow'd to come and hear the Debates in order to improve. The Doge's six Counsellors can do without him, what he can't do without them. They consult what is to be propos'd to the Senate, or Grand Council, may call them on extraordinary Occasions, &c. The *Council of the Ten*, consists of

Council of the Ten.

Ten Nobles of several Families, who are no Relations to one another: They enquire after Criminals, are chosen Annually by the Great Council, and choose Three of their Number every Month, to receive Informations from Spies, &c. and communicate them to their Colleagues, who, if they believe the Witnesses, put the Accused in Prison, and accuse them to the *Great Council*, without allowing them any Defense. If the Three disagree among themselves, they must have recourse to the *Council of Ten*; but if they agree, they may put the Doge himself to death. They are unmerciful, and so much hated by the Nobles, that they have several Times attempted to abolish it, but without Effect; for their Politicians reckon this Council the chief Corner-Stone of the State, and a constant Watch to preserve their Liberty. All Magistrates, Ambassadors, Generals and Governors are oblig'd to give them an Account of their Conduct.

Doge.

The Doge is one of the *Venetian* Noblemen, chosen by the Great Council with so many Precautions, that it is impossible to Bribe that Honour. He is Crowned with a very great Pomp, but his Authority is so small, that one may say he is a Prince without Power, a Counsellor in the Senate, a King in his Palace and Habit, but a Prisoner in the City. That Dignity is for Life; but if Old-Age or Sickness, should render him unfit for Business, then may he be depos'd: And tho' he be at great Expences, yet his ordinary Salary is but 36000 *Livres*. So that many would refuse that Dignity, if they were not oblig'd to accept of it, on pain of being banish'd, and having their Estates confiscated. In the Doge's Name Letters are sent to Foreign Powers, and Money is coin'd. He gives Audience to Ambassadors, but always in the Presence of his Six Counsellors. He has the Nomination of all Livings that belong

belong to St. Mark's Church, and sees that every Magistrate do his Duty. He is obliged to stand to all Resolutions taken in the Senate, and cannot resist or oppose them, without being immediately declared an Enemy to the State. After his death, Five Correctors, and Three Inquisitors examine his Administration, and if they find any thing amiss, his Heirs must pay for it. His Title is, *The most Serene Prince and Lord, N. N. Doge of Venice.*

The Noblemen of *Venice* may be divided into four *Classes*.

The first *Classis* contains those who are the *Noblemen*. Posterity of the XII *Tribunes*, who elected in 709 the first Duke : Those Families are called *Electoral*, and are, *Contarini, Morosini, Badouari, Tiepoli, Micheli, Sanudi, Gradenigli, Memmi, Valieri, Dandoli, Polani and Barozzi.* These Four that Signed the Deeds of the Foundation of St. George's Abbey in 800, are also of the first *Classis*, viz. *Justiniani, Cornaro, Eragadini and Bembi.* Eight other Families may be added to to these, viz. *Quirini, Delfini, &c.*

The second *Classis* contains those Families which are written in the *Golden Book*, or Catalogue of Nobles, made in 1289, when Aristocracy was established ; such are, *Mosenigli, Capeli, Foscarini, &c.*

The third *Classis* contains about an Hundred Families, which have bought their Nobility for 100000 Ducats when the Republick wanted Money. These Nobles are excluded from the great Employments.

The fourth *Classis* contains those foreign Princes and Lords who have been received by the Common-Wealth into the Number of its Noblemen, such were *Henry III. and IV. Kings of France* ; and such are the King of *Poland*, and Elector of *Bavaria.* Most part of the Princes and illustrious Families in *Italy* are of this *Classis*, as the *Pio, Malatesta, Bentivoglio, Martinengue, Collalto, Benzoni, &c.*

N. B. There is a perpetual Jealousy betwixt the Antient and New Nobility, which keeps the Common-Wealth in *statu quo.* No *Venetian* Nobleman is allowed to visit Foreign Ambassadors ; and if any one of 'em becomes *Clergyman*, he is for ever excluded from all civil Employments. They are called *Excellencies*, and are so proud of their Nobility, that, like other Gentlemen in *Common-Wealths*, they think themselves as good as Kings and Princes.

Some

Some say that the *Revenues* of this Common-Wealth are 8240000 Ducats. In time of Peace a great Part of that Sum is by the good Management of the *Proveditors* or Treasurers, laid by to be made use of in Time of War: For they don't charge the People with new Taxes, but sell their Nobility and other great Honours and Dignities. They borrow Money from Strangers, or Members of the State; they oblige the *Jews* to give great Sums, and foreign Merchandizes must then pay the Duties for imported Goods. The best Part of their present Trade is in *Germany*, where they carry their fine Silk Stuffs, Wines, Glasses, rich Jewels, and other foreign Commodities, especially from *Turkey*.

Those that think its Forces to be very considerable, pretend that there are above 3000000 of Men in this Common-Wealth; but the Militia of Country is only of 80000 Men, 14 or 15000 of them are made use of to keep the People in awe, and are called *Corps cernide*. But their Foot Soldiers called *Capelite*, and consisting of *Slavonians*, *Morlaques*, and *Albanians* keep the Towns which are on the Frontiers of *Turkey*. They have constantly two Companies to keep the Palace of *St. Mark*, and fifteen Companies of Horse on *Terra firma*. Their strong Towns in *Italy* are *Venice*, *Cremo*, *Bergame*, *Brescia*, *Peschiera*, *Chiozza*, and *Palma Nuova*. They look upon their Naval Forces as their chief Bulwark. They have about 30 Gallies, 6 Galleasses, and a great many Brigantines ready to sail. Their Admiral is always a *Venetian* Noble, named by the Council of *Fregadi*. His Power is so great, that he is, as it were, the Sovereign of the Republic, and commands all General Officers and Governors of Maritime Places, but his Authority is only for 3 Years; and when the War is finish'd, then he, and the *Proveditors* General of the Sea, must come to *Venice*, and surrender themselves Prisoners, in order to have their Conduct examined. However, all these Forces are not able to secure them, wherefore they are obliged to beg Troops from foreign Powers, and even then their Army consists but of 30000 Men. They never chuse for their General a Noble *Venetian*, lest he should thereby have an Opportunity to undertake something against the Common-Wealth, and they send two *Proveditor-Generals*, who are to advise the Captain-General, and give to the Republick an Account of his Behaviour.

Interest. The Security of this, as well as of other States, depends on its being in Peace: They must also keep the People under, wherefore they amuse

amuse them with Shews, and hinder them thereby from enquiring into State-Affairs, and they forbid them to carry Arms: They ought also to keep fair with all other foreign Powers, and especially with the Emperor.

But a great Misfortune to them is, that their *Defects*. Trade is considerably diminished, since the *Dutch*, &c. have found out a shorter Way to the *East-Indies*.

Their Clergy is govern'd by the Arch-bishop, Patriarch of *Venice*, who does not depend on the Pope. He, with the rest of their Bishops, must be *Venetian* Nobles. Formerly the Senate had the Nomination to all Church-Livings, either on the Land or Sea-State; but they were forced to renounce it to draw *Julius* 2d from the League of *Cambray* in 1510. There is another Patriarch, viz. that of *Aquileia*, who lives at *Udina*, because *Aquileia* belongs now to the Emperor, who therefore claims the Right of nominating the Patriarch, but the *Venetians* have found out a Way by which that See is never vacant, viz. by impowering the Patriarch to chuse himself his Coadjutor, who is presently confirm'd by the Senate, and called the *Elettod Aquileia*.

The *Venetians* are *Roman* Catholics, but they suffer those of the *Greek* Church, and *Jews*. *Religion*. Their *Inquisition* is intirely under the Common-Wealth, and consists both of Laymen and Clergy-men.

The Republick of *Genoua* possesseth the Eastern and Western Coasts of *Genoua*, formerly called *Liguria*, where are *Genoua*, *Savona*, *Noli*, *Ventimiglia*, *Genoua's* &c. 2. The Isle of *Corse*. That of *Capaia*. 4. The Marquisate of *Final*, bought in 1712 from the Emperor for 1200000 Crowns; but the Principality of *Monaco* belongs to a particular Prince under the Protection of *France*; and that of *Oneglia* belongs to the Duke of *Savoy*.

Its Pretensions are on the Island of *Sardinia*, conquer'd on the *Saracens* by the *Genouese* and *Pisans* about 1012. *Pretensions*.

The Country is about 150 Miles long, and 30 broad. It is mountainous, and its chief Product is Oranges, Lemons, Oil, and excellent Fruit, but little Corn.

The *Genouese* were very famous of old for their Navigation and Conquests. Even now they are skilful in Navigation and Trade; very witty, but extreamly covetous, proud and faithless. The *Italians* say of *Genoua*, *Gente senza Fide*, *Mare senza Pesce*, *Albori senza Frutto*, *Monte senza Ligno*, and *Done senza Vergogna*, i. e. A People without Faith, a
Sea

Sea without Fishes, Trees without Fruit, Hills without Wood, and Ladies without Shame.

The Capital is *Genoa*, Lat. 44. 16. and lies on the Bank of the Sea, partly on a Plain, partly on several Hills. It is very antient, and is justly called *Genoua* the stately, for its magnificent Buildings. It affords a delicate Prospect from the Sea, and looks as if it were built on several Stories, because of the gradual rising of the Hills; the Houses are generally six or seven Stories high in the lower Part, and adorned with Marble. The Town is fortified, and has a large and deep Harbour, but much exposed to the South-West Winds. This City is extremely subject to scorching Heats in Summer, and is said to be the Birth-place of *Christopher Columbus*. Their chief Trade is in Velvets, Points, Gloves, Confections, Anchovies, and several sorts of Fruits. The Government monopolizes the Trade of Wine and Corn. Some of its Inhabitants are so rich, that the others won't allow them any Share in the Government, lest they should seize on it. A part of this City was Bombarded by the *French* in 1684.

Genoua has been subject to the *Romans*, then to the *Goths*, after that to the Emperors of the *East*, to the *Government*. *Lombards*, and to the Emperors of *Germany*, until their Authority being at an end in *Italy*, *Genoua*, as well as several other Cities, became Independent. During a long while they govern'd themselves like a Republick under several Chiefs called by several Names; they kill'd most of 'em, as well as the Governors sent there by the Kings of *France*, by the Viscounts of *Milan* and Marquesses of *Montferrat*. In a word, during 34 Years, there has been 12 Sorts of Government at *Genoua*: So that at last, by their Treachery and Inconstancy, they were become very odious to other Nations, and when their Ambassadors went to *France*, and offer'd their City to King *Lewis XI.* saying, *That their City gave it self to him, and beg'd his Protection*; he answer'd them, *And I give it to its Inhabitants, for they are more dangerous Masters than I.* However, from 1528 *Genoua* is under an Aristocratical Government, very much like that of *Venice*. They have their *Doge*, who is chosen every other Year, and is obliged to remain in his Palace, where he is under a sort of Confinement; but when his Time is out, the

the Great Council meets, and sends him this Compliment; *Your Serenissime Highness has finish'd your Time, and your Excellency must go home.* Assistants to their *Doge* are eight principal Officers, who, with the Duke, are called *The Signory*, and in Matters of great Moment, are subordinate to the Great Council, consisting of 400 Persons, half Noblemen, and half Citizens, or Gentlemen. Most of the Civil and Criminal Matters, are judged by foreign Doctors at Law, who are paid for it, and dismiss'd at the end of two Years.

Tho' some private Men be very rich here, yet the ordinary Revenue of the Publick is but 428264 *Livres*, which are not sufficient to defray the Charges *Revenue.* of the Duke's Troops, and all those that are in Employments; and so the *Procurators* are obliged to find Subsidies for necessary Expences, they commonly apply to some rich private Men, to whom they mortgage certain Lands and Revenues of the State, so that one must not be surprized, if this State be now on the decaying hand.

They have at *Genoua* a Chief General, who commands 40 Captains, all of 'em Nobles, and who have each a Company of 100 Men. The other Companies of the Citizens make 60000 Men under two Generals. They have also constantly 500 *Switzers*, 300 *Italians*, and 100 *Corfes*, besides 500 *German* Horse, who guard the *Doge*. In time of War the Vassals of the State are obliged to maintain a Squadron. Their Arsenal contains Arms for 4 or 5000 Men. Their Sea-Forces consist in 16 or 20 Galleons, and other Vessels. Their strong Towns are *Genoua*, *Mola*, *Savona*, *Novi*, and *Clavis*.

The Republick of *Lucca* lies East of *Genoua*, not far from *Pisa* along the Coasts. It is 25 m. from S. to N. and 27 from E. to W. There is no Town *Lucca*. considerable but *Lucca*, which is about 10 m. N. W. from *Pisa*. It lies in a pleasant Plain near the River *Serchio*, encompassed with rich and well-inhabited Hills. It is 3 Miles round, fine, populous, adorned with fine Churches and Palaces, and has a good Trade in Silks, Silk-Stuffs, and Olives. It is well Fortified. A great many of their chief Families removed to *Geneva* upon the Reformation. It is called by the *Italians*, *Lucca industriosa*. They drive out of the City all idle and lazy People by these Means: During the Holy Week, some Men, whose business is to look for all lazy Fellows, write in a little Note, the Name of the Man they

they think to be such, and then put the Note into a Bag. If the Name of a Man be found written on several Notes, then he is deferred to the Council, and if the two Thirds of the Counsellors condemn him, he must remove immediately fifty Leagues from the City, and never return before 3 Years be expired on pain of Death.

This City has had several Masters until the XIIth Century, when it became a Republick during the long *Interregnum* of the Empire; yet it has always a great Regard for the Emperor, and Great Duke of *Tuscany*. It is under a chief Magistrate called *Gonfaloniero*, or Standard-bearer, who is changed every two Months: He is assisted by Nine Counsellors, called *Ancients*, who are also changed every six Months, during which time they live in the Palace. Superior to them is the Great Council of 240 Nobles, who being equally divided into two Bodies, take their Turn every half Year. As for Civil and Criminal Affairs, they chuse Strangers to decide them, and even with this Caution, that these Strangers must live and be born fifty Leagues from *Lucca*.

The *Revenue* of this little State is about 150000 *Revenues*. Crowns; and its greatest Safety depends on the *Forces*. Care of the Magistrates, and Union of its Inhabitants. Some say they can raise 18000 Men, and that the Number of Citizens is 30000, who in their Turn are the Garison of the City. They have a considerable Quantity of Arms in their Arsenal.

St. Marino is a little, but ancient Commonwealth in the Dutchy of *Urbino*, under the Protection of the Pope. The whole Territory of this small Republick is but one Mountain about three Miles long, and ten round, consisting of the Town *St. Marino*, and of the Castles of *Pennarosta*, *Casolo*, *Serravalle*, *Faetano*, *Mongiardino*, *Fiorentino*, with a Borough called *Piagge*. They have been given to them by Pope *Pius II.* in 1463, except the two first, bought in the Year 1000 from the Earls of *Montefelto*. This Republick contains about 6000 Men; and its Name comes from a Mason canonised, who lived and died there in his Hermitage, about the 3d Century, and in the 7th this Town began to Govern it self like a Commonwealth.

There are several other Sovereigns in *Italy*, but because of the small Extent of their Territories, or because they depend either on the Empire or the Pope, we shall only mention them. The Dukes of *Sabionetta*, *Bozzuolo*, *Guaftala*, the Earls of *Novellare*,

Novellare, and the Marquis of *Castiglione delle Stevere*, in the *Mantuan*: The Duke of *Massa*, and the Marquis of *Malestina*, betwixt *Genoa* and *Lucca*: The Prince of *Masferan* in *Piemont*: The Marquiss of *Toriglia*, on the Coast of *Genoa*: The Prince of *Piombino* in the *Sieneſe*; and the *Switzers* are poſſeſſed of ſome Territories near the Lake *Locarno*: And their Allies the *Griſons* have *Valteline* near the *Milaneſe*.

Q. What is the Situation of *Italy*?

Situation of

A. *Italy* is ſituated betwixt Lat. 37. 45. and Italy.
47. and Long. Eaſt from *London* 11. and 20. ſo that its greateſt Length from S. E. to N. W. is about 760 M. and from E. to W. about 180, but in ſeveral Places it is a great deal leſs. It lies in the fifth, ſixth, and ſeventh North Climates, ſo that the longeſt Day in the N. is about 15 Hours and an half, and the ſhorteſt about 9. The Air is generally pure, temperate and healthful, Air.
except in the *Pope's* Dom. eſpecially in the *Boloneſe* and *Ferrareſe*, where it is ordinarily more groſs and unwholſome, becauſe of the Standing Waters.

Towards the S. Parts it is very hot in Summer. Soil.

The Soil is very fertile, yielding in great abundance the choiceſt of Fruits, Corn, Wines; they have alſo abundance of *Mulberries*, which feed many Silk Worms; the Woods are, for the moſt Part, always Green, and well ſtored with wild and tame Fowl and Beaſts. Its Mountains afford ſeveral ſorts of Metal. They have alſo Quarries of *Alabaſter* and fine *Marble*. In ſhort, this Country, for its fertility, and pleaſantneſs, is call'd *Europe's* Garden; and the Kingdom of *Naples*, the Garden of *Italy*.

Their chief Commodities are Wines, Corn, Commodities.
Rice, Silks, Velvets, Taffetes, Sattins, Grograms, Fuſtians, Gold-wire, Allum, Glaſſes, Brimſtone, all ſorts of Fruit, &c.

Q. What are the Rarities in *Italy*?

Rarities.

A. To reckon all the curious and rare Things which are in *Italy*, would fill up a large Volume: Wherefore, we will mention but ſome of the moſt remarkable. And thoſe which are to be ſeen at *Rome*, 1. Some Amphitheatres, Triumphal Arches and Baths. 2. Several remarkable Pillars, particularly that erected by the Emperor *M. Au. Antoninus*, and ſtill to be ſeen in the *Corſo*, 175 Foot high, and has 206 Steps within, and 56 ſmall Windows. That of *Trajan* is now to be ſeen in *Monte Cavallo*, and is

140 Foot high, including the Base. It contains the History of his Wars against the *Dacians*. To these we may add the two great Obelisks (one before *Port del popolo*, and the other before the Church of St. *John de Latran*) formerly belonging to, and now the chief Remains of the famous *Circus Maximus*. 3. The stately Ruins of the great Palace of the *Roman Emperors*, once extended over the greatest part of *Mount Palatin*. 4. The Ruins of *Templum Pacis*, adorned by *Vespasian*, with some of the Spoils of the Temple of *Jerusalem*. 5. The *Rotunda* or *Pantheon*, built by *Agrippa*, and Dedicated to all the Gods, many of whose Statues are yet extant in the Palace of *Justiniani*. 6. The Plate of Brass, on which the Laws of the ten Tribes were written, is still to be seen in the Capitol. 8. The *Catacombs*, which are here and at *Naples*, are very fine. They consist of vast long Galleries, cut out of the Rock; the *Papists* say that these were the Burial-places of the primitive Christians. 9. The *Grotto* of *Pausylipus* is a large Way, 400 Paces long, 40 Foot high, and 20 broad, cut under Ground, thro' a Mountain, and made as some imagine by *Lucullus*, but according to others, by *Cocceius Nerva*. 10. At the Entrance of the Cave, there is a ruinous Pyramid, call'd *Virgil's Tomb*, but his Urn and Inscription are not now to be seen. 11. The noblest remains at *Puzzoli*, are some of the Pillars and Arches that supported *Caligula's* bridge of 3600 Paces across the Bay to *Baja*: The furthest Pillar on the side of *Puzzoli* is in seven Fathom and an half of Water, and those on the other side are said to be in Water 20 Fathom deep. 12. The *Elysian-fields*, so famous among the Poets, and extremely beholden to them for their Fame, being only an ordinary plat of Ground, still to be seen near the Place where *Baja* stood: Here are also the *Acheron* and *Avernus*, which are only stinking Marshes. 14. *Piscina Mirabilis*, which is a vast subterranean Building, nigh the *Elysian-fields*, design'd to keep fresh Water for the *Roman Gallies*, which used to Harbour thereabouts. 15. The Ruins of *Nero's* Palace, with the Tomb of *Agrippina* his Mother, as also the hot boiling Baths, not far from *Baja*. The Academy of *Cicero* is now metamorphos'd into a Stable for Horses. 16. Near the Lake *Agnano*, 5 Miles W. of *Naples*, there are two remarkable Caves, one call'd *Grotto del Cane*, because its Exhalations choke Dogs in a Moment, when put into it. The other is a Cave of several vaulted Cells, which send forth hot Vapours, and an ill Smell. They immediately

mediately put one into a Sweat, and are said to be a good Remedy against several Diseases. 17. Betwixt the Lake *Agnano* and *Puzzoli*, there is a Valley call'd *Solfatara*, because vast quantities of Sulphur are continually forced out of the Clefts by subterranean Fires. There is a Noise under Ground in some Places resembling that of violent Flames, and in others boiling Water. Naturalists think the Fire is fed by a constant Bitumen, and the force of the Fire is abated by Streams under Ground; for it differs from all other Fire, being Fluid, and can neither be quenched by Water, nor kindled with Sulphur or Tow, and extinguishes any other Light, so that it seems rather a fiery Water than pure Fire, and a Man falling into one of these Clefts, the Flesh was boiled off his Bones in a little Time. In 1535, an Earthquake over-whelmed a Town, and raised an Hill called *Monte Nuovo*, which is about 400 Poles perpendicular, and above 3000 Paces round. 18. Near Lake *Averno* is the amazing Cave, where the Sybil is said to have given out her Prophecies. is hewn out of a hard Rock, is 700 Foot long, 20 br. and 18 high. From hence there is another Cave three Miles long to *Cama*, but the Passage is choaked up. The Marks of the Chizzels appear plain, so that it must have been a Work of many Hands and much Time. Dr. Burnet thinks it to have been the Contrivance of the Pagan Priests that manag'd the Imposture. 19. *Mount vesuvius*, or *Disomma*, eight Miles S. E. of *Naples*, is famous for its *Vulcano*, which has for many Ages thrown out Fire, Smoak, Stones, &c. which proceeds from the vast quantities of Bitumen, Sulphur, &c. under Ground along the Coast; and as the Matter encreases or decreases, the Eruptions are more or less. *Pliny* the Naturalist was destroy'd by an Eruption, when he went to view it. Several dreadful Eruptions are recorded in History, when by the Violence of the Shock, Villages have been overturned, several thousands of People, and vast Numbers of Cattle destroy'd, and *Naples* cover'd with Ashes, and like to have been burnt by Streams of Fire that run from the Mountain to the Sea. 20. Betwixt *Cape Suglio*, and *Messina* are those two dangerous Whirlpools, *Scylla* and *Charybdis*, much like that of *Malfroom* in *Norway*, or those of the *Orcades* in *Scotland*. 21. The *Tarantula* is found in the Territory of *Otranto*. It is a sort of Spider; whose Venom is dangerous, and causes extraordinary and quite contrary Effects: For among the People that are bitten by it, some can't Sleep, others can't be Awoke, some are always Laughing, Dancing, Singing, and others always Complaining,

Mourning and Silent, some Vomit, others Sweat, but all are taken with much one sort of Colour. There is no better Remedy against its Venom than Musick, because it makes People Merry, and causes them to Dance, and thereby the Venom goes off by Transpiration. 22. There are several other curious Things in *Italy*, as Baths, Amphitheatres, *Via flaminia*, *Appia*, &c. but we shall pass them by, as well as the bending Tower at *Pisa*, the whispering Chamber of *Caprarola*, the famous and rich Chapel of *Loretto*, the Treasury of *St. Mark* at *Venice*, and several other fine Things mention'd by several Authors, and especially by the late Mr. *Misson*, in his Travels thro' *Italy*.

Rivers.

The chief Rivers in *Italy*, are

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. <i>Pô</i> with these remarkable Branches running into it | { <i>Oglio</i>
<i>Adda</i> } S. E.
<i>Tesino</i>
<i>Tanaro</i> N.
<i>Sesia</i> } S. E.
<i>Dora</i> } |
| 2. <i>Adige</i> receives <i>Bachiglione</i> S. | 3. <i>Arno</i> receives { <i>Elsa</i> N. W.
<i>Sieve</i> S. E. |
| 4. <i>Tyber</i> receives { <i>Chiana</i> S. E.
<i>Nera</i> S. W.
<i>Teverone</i> .
<i>Quartitio</i> W. | 5. <i>Voltorno</i> . <i>Sabato</i> W. |

The Lakes are those of *Perugia*: 2. *Como*. 3. *Guarda*:

4. Lake Major with several small ones.

The Seaports are *Oneglia*, *Nice*, *Villa franca* in *Piemont*. *Genoa*, *Savona*, *Ventimiglia*, *Monaco*, *Final*, on the Coast of *Genoa*. *Leghorn*, *Perto Hercole*, *Orbitello*, *Piombino*, *Portolongone* on the Coasts of *Tuscany*. *Civita vecchia*, *Ancona*, *Pesaro*, *Ostia* to the Pope. *Naples*, *Gaeta*, *Puzzele*, *Capoua*, *Regio*, *Otranto*, *Brindisi*, *Bari*, *Manfredonia* and *Commachio* to the Emperor. N. B. *Ravenna* and *Rimini* were formerly good Harbours, but the Sea is now retired almost three Miles from those Cities.

The strongest Towns are *Turin*, *Montmelian*, *Susa*, *Aosta*, *Fenestrelles*, *Coni*, *Pignerole*, *Ivrea*, *Asti*, *Verrue*, to the King of *Sardinia*. *Genoa*, *Savona*, *Final*, to the *Genouese*, &c. *Monaco*

inaco to the French. *Milan, Como, Cremona, Mantua, Naples, Capoua* to the Emperor. *Modena, Regio, Mirandola, Parma, Piacenza, Castel gandolphe, Lucca, San Marino, Leghorn, Castle St. Angelo, Perugia, Urbino, Venice, &c.* to several Princes. N. B. Some Towns have these Epithets, *Rome* the Holy, *Naples* the Noble, *Florence* the Fine, *Venice* the Rich, *Genoa* the Stately, *Milan* the Great, *Ravenna* the Ancient, *Padua* the Learned, *Bologna* the Fat, *Leghorn* the Trading, *Verona* the Charming, *Lucca* the Pretty, and *Cassal* the Strong.

6. Q. What sort of Men are the *Italians*?

A. Those of *Lombardy*, whose Ancestors *Inhabitants*. came from the North, are pretty Tall and White, but the others are generally of a middling Size, have black Hair, thin Faces, and their Complexion is a little Tawny. They are now less given to the Art of War and Military Exploits, than most other *European Nations*. They are generally reckon'd Grave, Prudent, Sober, Politick, fit for Arts, Sciences and *Manners*; Trades; they are very Ingenious, especially in those Things they principally apply themselves to now, viz. Sculpture, Architecture, Painting and Musick: They are naturally Eloquent, very Nice, Acute, Obedient to their Superiors, Courteous to Inferiors, Civil to their Equals, and very Affable to Strangers. They have a peculiar genius for Poetry, Antiquities, Law and Politicks, and are in Apparel Modest, in Furniture of Houses Sumptuous, at their Tables Neat and Decent, and very abundant in Promises. Some say that these good qualities proceed from the goodness of the Climate, and the Subtlety of the Air the *Italians* breath in; but how comes it then, that the *Italians* who lived before the *Punick Wars*, i. e. 265 Years before Christ, and those that lived from A. D. 400 until 1300, were not remarkable for the Nicety of their Wits? However, the *Italians* are charged with being given to Dissimulation and Revenge; they are formalists, very greedy of great Titles and Names, given to all manner of Uncleannefs, great Swearers, Blasphemers, Passionate in their Amours, Jealous even to Madness. Their Women are Handsome, Witty and Amorous, which makes their Husbands look strickly after them, and occasions their preferring Strangers to their own Countrymen, when they can have their Choice: A common saying of 'em is that they are *Maggies* at the Door, *Saints* in the Church, *Goats* in the Garden, *Devils* in the House, *Angels* in the Streets

Language. Streets and Syrenes at the Windows. Their *Language* is an Idiom of the Latin, and very smooth and pleasant, especially the Tuscan pronounced by a *Roman*. *Italy* is pretty populous and full of Cities; but it was more populous anciently, but a great many of its Inhabitants have been destroy'd by Wars, and the People being now much given to Luxury, and unnatural Pleasures are not so prolifick; besides, there is a vast number of People, especially in the Pope's Dominions, that never marry, who are useless Members of human Society.

There is no Country where there are so many Princes, Dukes, Marquesses, Earls and Barons. Some of 'em are descended from very ancient and illustrious Families, but a great many are new upstart Men, created Nobles by some Prince, or pretending to be such. Some of 'em are very rich, but the generality are poor.

Clergy. Their Clergy is very numerous and rich; they have a Pope, two Patriarchs, several Arch-Bishops, and so many Bishops, especially in the Pope's Territories, that it would fill a whole Page to name them all; and it is to be noted, that every Town a little considerable, is either an Arch-Bishop's or Bishop's See. The Popes have found it their Interest to multiply them, that they might thereby have the Ascendant in what they call General Councils, as they had in that of *Trent*. **Universities.** They have also several Universities, the chief of them are *Bologna*, *Rome*, *Padua*, *Siena*, *Pisa*, *Turin*, *Naples*, and *Salerno*, where several learned Men have been brought up.

Religion. The *Italians* are zealous Professors of the *Romish* Church, even in her grossest Errors and *Superstitions*, and that either out of Fear of the barbarous Inquisition, or in Reverence to their ghostly Father the Pope, or especially by their being industriously kept in woful Ignorance of the *Protestant* Religion, of which they are taught by their Priests and Monks many false, ridiculous, and absurd Things. *Jews* are tolerated in many Places: There is a weekly Sermon at *Rome* for their Conversion, and one of each Family is bound to be present at it. In some Towns there are some few who believe in, and serve God after the Manner of the *Greek* Church. In the Mountains betwixt *Piedmont* and *Dauphiné*, there are some Protestants called *Vaudois*, who have

have been some of the earliest that declined Communion with the Church of *Rome*, and according to some good Authors, they were never entirely subject to it.

Tho' *Italy* be very large, fruitful and rich, yet its Inhabitants generally speaking are not courageous, and consequently not able to defend themselves, in case they were attack'd by a powerful Enemy, and yet the Goodness of this Country has at several times invited several other Nations to come and plunder it. Another Defect is, that there are too many different Princes, who are most of em jealous of one another. So that their *Interest* requires to prevent as much as possible, any Wars among themselves, lest the Weakest should beg the Help of Foreign Powers; for in that case *Italy* would always be the greatest Loser.

Advantages.
Defects.

Interest.

Sicily was formerly called *Sicania*, *Sicilia*, from *Phenician* Words, as Mr. *Bochart* thinks, signifying Neighbourhood; Perfection, or Grapes, either because *Sicily* was the nearest Part of *Europe* to the *Phenicians*, or one of the best Islands in the World, and very fruitful in Grapes. It was also called *Trinacria*, because of its three Promontories, which render it much like a Triangle. However it is separated from *Italy* by a narrow Strait called the *Faro of Messina*. Some say, that this Separation was made by an Earthquake, or great Flood. It is situated betwixt N. Lat 36, 25, and 38 25. and Long. E. of *London* 12-35, and 16, so that it is about 120 Miles S. to N. and 140 E. to W.

Name of Si-
cily.

Shape.

It is about 600 miles round, without reckoning the Gulphs of *Catanea*, *Patti*, *Termini*, &c.

The *Air* is very pure and healthful, and the Soil so fruitful, that it was called the Granary of the *Romans*. Their chief Product is Corn, Wine, Silks Honeys Sugar, Wax, Oyl, Saffron, and other Drugs, with most sorts of Fruit. It has Mines of Gold, Silver, Iron, Salt, and here are likewise Agats, Emeralds, Jasper, Porphyry, and good Coral. Several of the Hills are very fruitful, even to the Top. They abound in Wood, Grass, Game and Cattle.

Air.
Soil.

Rarities. Near *Syracusa* are some subterranean Cavities, where *Dyonisius* the Tyrant shut up his Slaves.

Over these Cavities stood his Palace; and being curious to know what his Slaves used to talk of among themselves, he had made a Hole cut out in the Rock, from those Cavities to his Palace, which Hole was like the interior Frame of a Man's Ear, and made such a curious Eccho, that the least Noise, yea articulate Words and Sentences, when only whisper'd, could be clearly heard. 2. Known over all the World is that hideous Volcano, the famous Mount *Aetna* (now Mount *Gibel*) whose sudden Conflagrations and sulphurous Eruptions are sometimes very terrible and destructive; as happen'd in 1692, and 1693. When the Ashes thrown out of this Volcano are in small quantity, they fatten the Ground, but very often they burn the Grass, and even the City of *Catanea* it self.

Sicily is commonly divided into three Val-
Division. lies.

Chief Towns with their distance
from *Palermo*.

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| 1. <i>Val di Mazara</i> on the N. W. | <i>Palermo</i> , <i>Mazara</i> , 60 S. W. |
| 2. <i>Val di Demona</i> on the N. E. | <i>Trapani</i> , <i>Girgenti</i> 60 S. |
| 3. <i>Val di Noto</i> on the S. | <i>Messina</i> 105 E. <i>Melazzo</i> , <i>Catanea</i> . |
| | <i>Noto</i> 125 S. E. <i>Syracusa</i> , <i>Augusta</i> . |

Palermo is reckon'd the Capital of the King-
Chief Towns. dom. It is in Lat. 38, 10. Long. 13, 38.
Palermo. near the bottom of a Bay. It is large, the

Houses magnificent, the Streets beautiful, and well provided with Fountains. The Harbour is safe and large, and defended by a strong Castle. *Messina* on a Bay near the North-

East Corner of the Island, 15 Miles N. W. from *Regio* in *Naples*, disputes the Precedency with *Palermo*. It is very well fortify'd, large, neat, populous rich, and its Harbour one of the best in the Mediterranean, is much frequented because of their Trade in Corn and Silk. *Syracusa*

was antiently a very large City, and held out a Siege of three Years against the *Romans*, by the singular Art of the famous Mathematician *Archimedes*. It was almost ruin'd by an Earthquake in 1693. It is so strong by its Situation, that it is reckon'd impregnable, so that

that the *Spaniards* did not attempt it in the last War. Its Sea-Towns are *Palermo*, *Messina*, *Syracusa*, and they have three Arch-Bishopricks, viz. *Arch-Bish. Palermo*, *Messina*, and *Montreal*, and 7 Bishopricks, viz. *Syracusa*, *Catanea*, *Cefale di*, *Pati*, *St. Marco*, *Gergenti*, and *Mazara*.

There were antiently several Republicks and Princes in this Island: The *Greeks* did send hither many Colonies, wherefore it was called *Magna Gracia*. The *Romans* did possess it entirely, tho' not without being obliged to drive the *Carthaginians* out of Government. it. Afterwards it fell into the Hands of the *Vandals*, *Saracens*, and the *French* possess'd it until 1282, when they were all murder'd; which Murther is called by the *French*, the *Sicilian Vespres*, because it was committed during the Evening Prayers on *Easter-Day*. From that time it has been ordinarily under the Dominions of *Spain*, until the Peace made at *Utrecht*, when it was yielded unto the Duke of *Savoy*; but the *Spaniards* having seized again on most of this Island, the Emperor, with the help of the *English* Fleet, did almost conquer it entirely, and has exchange'd it with the Duke of *Savoy* for *Sardinia*.

The *Sicilians* are crafty, cunning, eloquent and jovial; but they are inconstant, great lovers of Revolutions, malicious, suspicious, revengeful, lazy and dissemblers. In a word, they are a dangerous sort of People. Their ordinary Language is the *Spanish* Tongue; but they speak also *Italian*. They are Papists, there is an Inquisition, and yet they suffer some *Greek* Churches, whose Members do acknowledge the Pope's Supremacy.

Inhabitant.

Language.

Religion.

Sardinia is so call'd from a *Phenician* Word, signifying the Sole of the Foot; wherefore it was called by the *Greeks*, *Sandaliotis*, vel *Sandalope*, because it is like the Sole of a Shoe. It lies 6 Miles S. of *Corfica*, and 130 S. of *Rome*. It lies between Lat. 38, and 41. and Long. 8, 30. and 10, 30. So that it is about 500 miles in compass. Its chief Town is *Cagliari*, at the bottom of a Bay on the S. E. It is large, handsome, populous, has a good Trade, is the See of an Arch-Bishop, the Residence of a Vice-roy, the Seat of an University, and

Name of Sardinia.

Chief Town Cagliari.

and defended by a strong Citadel. *Oristagni* 42 N. W. and *Sassari* 95, are also two Arch Bishopricks.

Air. The *Air* in this Island is very unhealthful, wherefore the *Romans* banish'd thither some of their Criminals. The Cause of this corrupt Air is ascribed to the gross Vapours arising from Marshes, or to the multitude of *Muffioni*, (*Maffrenes*, or *Mastriones*) a sort of Deers, which are kill'd and staid, and their Carcasses left unbury'd. The Country is mountainous on the N. but on the S. the Soil is very fruitful in Corn; it abounds also with good White-Wine, Oil, Salt, Allum, Cattle, and Game: They fish Coral on the Coasts, but the Fish is not good. They have no ravenous, nor venomous Creatures, except a sort of Spiders or Ants, called *Lucifuga*, which are in the Silver-Mines, and whose Sting is mortal. They have also an Herb called *Ranuncula*, which if eaten, poisons, and contracts so much the Nerves, that those, who are stung, seem to laugh when they die.

The first Inhabitants were often visited by the *Phenicians*, and have had almost the same Changes of Government, as those of *Sicily*. They were antiently very strong, laborious, and civil to Strangers, but the *Spaniards* have render'd them lazy, rude, uncivil to Strangers, and they are much addicted to Dancing and Drinking. The Duke of *Savoy* has had it with the Title of King in exchange for that of *Sicily*.

Corse. The Isle of *Corse* was formerly called *Cyrne*, from a *Phenician* Word signifying *horned*, because full of Promontories, and *Corfica*, i. e. full of Forests, which abounded here. It lies betwixt Lat. 41. and 43. about 70 Miles S. of the Coasts of *Genoa*. It is 110 N. to S. and 50 E. W. and 300 round. The Isle is not wholesome, and the Soil is mostly mountainous, sandy, rocky, and full of Woods; yet toward *Tuscany* it is more plain, and produces good Corn and Fruit. Their other Products are excellent Wine, Oil, Figs, Rosin and Honey: They have Mines of Allum, Iron, Salt-pits, abundance of Chrystal, Pheasants, Stags, *Muffioni*, or Mufflers. It is not well inhabited, but it is every where difficult of Access, and encompassed with steep Rocks. They have a sort of precious Stone peculiar to this Island, named *Catechites*, which being handled, is clammy like Gum. The Inhabitants are reckon'd courageous and good Soldiers, but ignorant, cruel, clownish, and very revengeful; and in former Times so addicted to Piracy,

cy, that many think the Name of *Corfu* is derived from 'em. This Island, as well as *Sardinia*, has had several Masters, but these 600 Years and above, it is under the *Genouese*. *Bastia* is the Capital, the Seat of a Vice-Roy, the See of a Bishop, and has a very good Harbour, and a strong Citadel. But *Bonifacio*, on the South-point, is the best Town in the Island, has a tolerable Trade and a safe Harbour.

The Isles of *Lipari* lie on the N. of *Sicily*, to which they belong: They are Nine in Number, and have their Names from the biggest, which lies in the middle. The Antients called them *Æolia* and *Vulcania*, because the Poets fancied that *Æolus* King of the Winds had his Seat, and *Vulcan* his Forge here. That next to *Sicily* is called *Volcano*, because of its burning Mountain. They are so little inhabited, that they are not worth insisting upon.

The Island of *Malta* was formerly part of the Kingdom of *Sicily*, from which it is divided by a dangerous Sea of about 60 Miles. It lies betwixt Lat. 35. 45. and 36; and is about 26 Miles long, and 15 broad, and above 60 in compass. The Air is clear, but very hot, because the high Rocks towards the Sea, obstruct the benefit of cool Breezes from the surrounding Ocean. The Soil is soft and chalky, and produceth little Corn, but excellent Grapes, Lemons, Oil, Figs, Cotton, Honey, Cummin and Anniseed, and good Fruit of other sorts. Here is store of Wild-fowl, and Birds of Prey, particularly Falcons; but Wood is so scarce, that it is sold by the Pound, wherefore they burn the Dung of Cattle, and a sort of great Thistles. The Inhabitants pretend, that *Malta* has entertain'd no venomous Creature since the Days of St. Paul, who, as they say, blessed this Island with the shaking of the Viper from his Hand into the Fire. The whole Island has about 40 large Villages, and is able to raise 25000 Men. They have abundance of Springs, and are much infested with Musketoos by Night. The People are seldom troubled with any Distemper but Head-Aches, and sore Eyes, live to a great Age, and always mix Ice with their Wine. The Inhabitants are brown, very civil, and kind to Strangers, witty, patient and courageous, but very jealous and revengeful. Their Women are handsome, cunning, and much given to Love: Whores are here in great plenty. Their Language is a sort of *Arabick*, which

which has been hitherto preserved by frequent Supplies of *Africans* and *Asiaticks*; but the Knights, and People of *Falshion* understand and speak several *European* Languages, especially the *Italian*, which is authorized by the Government, and made use of in publick Writings. They are of the *Romish* Church, and none are suffer'd except those of that Way, and some few *Greeks*.

This Island, after many turns of Fortune, Government. was in 1530 presented by the Emperor *Charles V.* to the Knights of *St. John of Jerusalem*, who had settled at *Augusta* in *Sicily* after the loss of *Rhodes*, on condition that they should always keep some Ships to make War against the *Turks*, and give to the King of *Sicily* 7 Falcons yearly as an Homage: And now it is govern'd by the Chief of that Order, stiled, The Grand Master of the Hospital of *St. John of Jerusalem*, and Prince of *Malta*, *Gozon*, and some other little Islands near it. He has some Councils without whose Consent he can do nothing. The Order of *Malta* consists of three Estates, viz. Knights, who must be Noble by four Descents on both Sides; Chaplains, who must also be Noble, or of considerable Families; and Servants at Arms, who are to be of Families above the Vulgar. This Order has several rich Commanderies in *France*, *Spain*, *Italy*, and *Germany*; and the Knights did formerly consist of eight several Nations or Languages, whereof the *English* was the sixth, but since the Reformation they are only seven, viz. *Provence*, *Auvergne*, *France*, *Italy*, *Germany*, *Arragon* and *Castile*, for under those seven are comprehended most of the Nations in *Europe*.

The City of *Malta* lies on the N. E. of the *Malta the* Island, Lat. 35. 52. and Long. 14. 40. upon several Islands, which together make a very large City. The new Town called *Valetta*, was built in honour of the Grand Master *La Valette*, upon the repulse of the *Turks*, after 4 Months Siege in 1565, and is so well fortify'd, that it is reckon'd one of the strongest Places in the World. The Houses are of white Stone, more commodious than lofty, and have flat Roofs, where they lay their Beds in Summer. The Town is also defended by three Castles of *St. Elmo*, *St. Angelo*, and *Torre di Bocca*. They have two good Harbours. There are large Squares and fine Palaces in the Town; the Chief is that of the Grand Master. Here is a Magazine with Arms for 54000 Men, very well kept. Their Inns are well built; the Hospital is a noble Structure, where there is a Hall for

for the sick Knights hung with Tapestry: They are served in Plate, and attended by other Knights. Poor Travellers are entertained here, till they can get Passage to the Places whither they are bound, and they have Money for their Charge during the Voyage. Each of the seven Nations have their Colleges and Halls, the Heads of which is their Grand Prior. The Number of the Knights is not fixt, they are sometimes more, sometimes less, generally about 4000. The Great Master is chosen by the Chapter of the Great Commanders, who reside at *Malta*; they chuse always one of the conventual Bailiffs, presiding over one of the seven Nations: He is called Eminency, and respected as a Crowned Head; and is supreme with his Council over Religious as well as Civil and Military Affairs. The Knights wear what they please at Home, but have the Habit of the Order when abroad with the Gallies, and a Silver Cross with eight Points, and their Rule of Precedency is the Time of Admiffion. The Grand Master wears a short black Gown, with Hanging-Sleeves, and all are uncover'd before him, except the three Grand Crosses.



CHAP.



CHAP. IV. OF TURKEY in Europe.

I. Q.

Name of
Turkey.



WHAT do you call *Turkey* in *Europe* ?

A. The Dominions the *Turks* are possess'd of in *Europe* : These *Turks* are the Posterity of some wandering Shepherds

in *Tartary* or *Scythia*, who, under the Conduct of one of them, came into *Asia Minor*, where they render'd themselves famous ; wherefore the *Arabians* or *Saracens* implored their Help, and hereby they made great Conquests. But about the Year 1030 these *Turks*, separating themselves from the *Arabians*, elected a General of their own, and defeated the *Saracens*, seized upon *Syria*, and several other Countries, until 1453, when under their Emperor *Mehemet 2d*, they took *Constantinople*, sack'd it, and killed in the Fight *Constantine XV* : So that they have now most of the Provinces of the Eastern Empire. However, if we take in the Provinces under the Grand *Signior's* Protection, and *Hungary*, we shall find that these Dominions are bounded on the N. by *Poland* and *Muscovy*, on the W. by the Gulph of *Venice* and *Germany*, on the S. by the *Mediterranean Sea*, and on the East by the *Archipelago*, the Straits of the *Dardanelles*, and of *Constantinople*, and the *Black Sea*.

At

At first *Byrsa*, then *Andrianople* were the Capitals of this Empire; but since the taking of *Constantinople*, this City is the Capital and the Residence of the *Grand Seignor*. The *Turks* call it *Constantinople*. *Stamboul*, and it was antiently called *Byzantium*, from whose Ruins, as well as of *Troy*, and other antient Cities, it was rebuilt, or beautified by *Constantine the Great*, who gave it the present Name. It lies on the Straits of its own Name, antiently called *Bosphorus Thracius*, Lat. 42. Long. 32. 830 m. E. of *Vienna*, 765 of *Cracow*, and 750 S. of *Moscow*. The Situation is one of the most pleasant in the World, being on the Banks of the Sea in Form of an Amphitheatre, of which its Harbour, one of the best and safest, makes the *Arena*. It runs six Miles along the Shore, from which it rises by a moderate Ascent; so that from the Sea one sees at once an infinite Number of Mosques, cover'd with Lead, and beautified with high Domes and Turrets. What adds to the Beauty of the Prospect is the Castle of the Seven Towers and the *Seraglio*, which are both very large, and have a vast Number of gilt Globes and Spires. In a Word, it lies so conveniently, that it is constantly supplied either from *Asia*, *Europe* or *Africa*; for when the Wind hinders Ships from the *Mediterranean*, it brings them from the *Black Sea*, &c. But all this Glory disappears, when one enters the City, the Houses being generally of Wood, and the Streets dirty, uneven, and so narrow, that 2 loaden Horses can scarce go abreast, and the Houses jet over the Streets so much at top, that in many Places one may step from one to another, which is disagreeable to the Eye, and dangerous in case of Fire; and the Houses are for the most part low, built of unplain'd Wood, and daubed over with red Paint, which is very offensive to the Eye. The close and nasty Streets, and bad Air, occasion frequent Plagues, which carry off abundance of People. The Form of the City is Triangular: It is encompass'd by good Walls, which are double towards the Land, and have Battlements and Towers at convenient distances. On the outside there is a shallow Ditch faced with Stone, so that 'tis in no condition to hold out a Siege. The City is about 12 Miles round. The Castle of the Seven Towers is for the most part used as a Prison of State. The other chief Structures are, 1. The new *Seraglio*, a most magnificent one, and of a triangular Form; and lying on the Straits: 'Tis three Miles round, encompassed with strong Walls, Watch-Towers, and constant Guards. Here are fine stately Apartments, suited

ted to the several Seasons of the Year, for the Sultan, and his Officers of the Household : Here are also some Rooms for Devotion, Schools, Baths, Places to swim, wrestle, shoot at Butts, running of Horses, &c. The *Sultaneſſes* and *Concubines* are kept in Apartments which reſemble a Nunnery, with Bagnio's and other Conveniences for the Sex. There are about 1200 Women old and young about the Court. The Concubines are young beautiful Virgins, ſtole or bought from other Nations, preſented by the *Grandees*, and bred here after the manner of the Court, after being examin'd by the Mother of the Maids. They have large Rooms, where Ten lodge together, and have an old Woman that lies by them, with Lamps continually burning. They have Rooms to ſew and eat in, Schools to breed them in, and are allowed ſome Hours for Walking, and other Recreations.

2. The *Old Seraglio* ſtands in the nobleſt Place of the City, is a quarter of a Mile round, encompaſſ'd with high Walls. This *Seraglio* is ſet apart for thoſe who grow old in the new one, or are ſent from thence for Crimes. They are allowed to Marry, with Conſent of the Miſtreſs of the Houſe, and to carry away what they have got. Upon the death of the Sultan, all his Sultana's, i. e. all the Concubines who have bore him Children, are ſent hither, except the Queen, and are allowed to Marry with the next Sultan's Conſent.

3. The ſtately *Mosque of Sancta Sophia*, formerly a Chriſtian Church : It is 114 Paces long, 80 broad, 80 high, ſquare without, and round within ; has a Dome in the middle, of ſingular Architecture, like a ſquatted Globe. It is large enough to contain 40000 People.

4. The great *Befeſtan*, or Exchange, is a noble Structure, full of Shops and Ware-houſes, with the richeſt Commodities.

5. The *Acmeidan*, or antient *Hippodrome*, where *Turks* exerciſe Archery. The chief Suburbs are 1. *Galata*, ſeparated from the City by the Harbour, and inhabited chiefly by *Greeks* and *Western Chriſtians*. 2. *Pera* is ſeparated from *Galata* by Burying-places, and is inhabited chiefly by *Greeks* of Quality, and Chriſtian Ambaſſadors ; for none but thoſe of the Emperor, K. of *Poland*, and Republick of *Raguſa*, are allowed to reſide in *Conſtantinople*. 3. *Scutari* on the *Aſian* ſide, where the Straits are but a Mile over, is a large Town, where the Grand Seignior has a ſtately *Seraglio*, and fine Gardens.

2. Q. How is Turkey in Europe divided ?

A. Into two great Parts, Northern and Southern. The Northern contains 12 Provinces, Division. and the Southern 6; 18 in all besides the Islands.

PROVINCES. Extent			Chief Towns, and their distance from Constantinople.	
	E.	S.		
1. Romania	200--170.		Constantinople, Adrianople, N. W. Galipoli	135 110.
2. Bulgaria	460--S. W.		Sophia, 300 W. Nicopoli, Verna, Cassuva.	
3. Servia,	220--S. E.		Belgrade 430 N. W. Semendria.	
7 S. OF Dardanelles	{		Venetian Spalato, 550 N. W. Zara, Ciclut.	
			Ragusan Ragusa, Stagno grande.	
			Turkish Narenta, Tubigno, Clicuna.	
5. Bosnia	78--112		Seraio, Faicza, Bagnialuch, but Clin belongs to the Venetians.	
6. Croatia	80--80.		Carlstadt, and the Country over the R. Unna, to the Emp. Wibitz to the Turks.	
7. Sclavonia	230--50.		Pofega, Esseck, Sirmich belong all to the Emperor.	
1. At the Mouth.	{ Bessa {	Tartary {	Oczakow {	Oczakow, Carmint.
	{ rabia {	Tartary {	Budziack {	Bialogrod, Bender, (Tekin.
1. Hungary	288	225	Buda 675 N. W. Presburg.	
2. Valachia	235	105	Tergowitz 350 N. W. Buchoreft	
3. Moldavia	145	245	Fazzi 360 Choczim.	
4. Little Tartary	177	240	Baccasara Przecop. Caffa.	

The Southern contains 6 Provinces called by the Turks Rumelia.

PROVINCES. Extent.			Chief Towns, with their distances from Constantinople.	
1. Macedonia	240	150	Salonichi 340 S. W. Janniza, or Zuckria formerly Pella.	
2. Albania	170	200	Scutari 530 W. Durazzo, Dolcigno, Croia.	
3. Epirus	70	195	Larta, Preveza, Butrinto, Figalo	
4. Thessaly	190	90	Larissa, Jannina, Pharsa.	
5. Achaia	230	70	Lepanto, Athens, Castri.	
6. Morea	225	180	Corinto, Napoli di Romania, di Malvasia, Modon, Coron.	

The Islands are,

In the *Ionian Sea*,In the *Aegean Sea*.

Corfou,
St. Maura,
Cephalonia,
Zante.

Candia,
Cerigo,
Negrepont,
Stalimene.

Of most of which in their Order

Romania (a great Part of the antient *Thracia*)
Romania. has *Bulgaria* on the North, *Macedonia* on the
 W. the *Archipelago* and *Propontis* on the S. and
 the *Black-Sea* on the East It is so called from *Roma nova*,
 or *Constantinople* its Capital : and tho' it be almost in the
 middle of the temperate Zone, yet the N. Winds render the
 Air very cold, and 'tis also unhealthful on the Coast, where
 the Plague is frequent. The Reason of it is, according to
 some, because most of the Inhabitants lying on Carpets in
 their lower Apartments, and very often with their Cloaths
 on, gather Humours, which agitated by the smother'd Air,
 cause the Infection. The Soil is naturally fruitful, but not
 cultivated by the *Turks*. It has plenty of Corn and Pasture,
 Mines of Silver, Lead, and Allum. They have also Fish,
 Oysters, and Turtles ; but Grapes won't ripen here, except
 with great Trouble. Tho' the the ancient *Thracians* were
 very cruel and brutish, yet the present Inhabitants, (which
 are some *Grecians*, and many *Turks*) are very charitable :
 The Language is either *Greek*, *Sclavonian*, or *Turks*. Their
 Mountains are *Rhodope*, *Orbele*, and *Hemus* o *Derwent*.

Andrianople is considerable for its Strength
 and Situation, and the *Grand Seignor* some-
 times resides here, when he is afraid of the Plague,
 or of some Insurrection at *Constantinople*. The
Dardanelle. *Dardanelles* are the Castles of *Ro-*
melia (antiently *Seftus*) and of *Natolia*, (an-
 tiently *Abydos*) and are considerable only because the *Helle-*
spont not being two Miles round here, Ships cannot easily pass
 them without Leave.

Has part of *Walachia*, *Moldavia*, and *Poland*
Bulgaria, on the N. part of the two former, and *Servia*
 on the W. the *Black Sea* on the E. and *Ma-*
cedonia and *Romania* on the S. Its Soil is mountainous, full
 of Desarts, and thinly inhabited.

Cossuva near the Frontiers of *Servia*, is noted for its Plains, where *Lazarus Despot* of *Cossuva*. *Servia*, at the Head of 500000 Men, the greatest Christian Army that ever was brought into the Field, was defeated and killed by *Amurath*, who, as he was viewing the Slain, was stabbed by a Christian Soldier, that was left for dead on the Field. The famous *Huniades* was also defeated in the same Plains, after fighting three Days successively against the *Turks*, with unequal Number. *Verna* near the Black Sea, is noted for the Defeat and *Verna*. Death of *Ladislaus* King of *Hungary*, by the *Turks*, in 1444, when the Great *Turk* finding the Day like to go against him, pulled out of his Pocket, the League that *Ladislaus* had broke at the Persuasion of the Pope, and appealing to Christ (as the Christians God) against that Perfidiousness, obtained the Victory.

Servia has *Hungary* on the N. *Greece* on the S. *Bosnia* and *Dalmatia* on the W. *Walachia* and *Bulgaria* on the E. It is a very pleasant and fertile *Servia*. Country, and was, with *Bulgaria*, called *Mæsia*.

Some think that the Inhabitants of these Provinces came from the antient *Geta* and *Gepides*: They were very Courageous, but now they especially the *Servian* are charged with Cruelty, Drunkenness, and Robbery. Most of them are *Greeks*, but of so little Religion that they steal one another's Children, and sell them to the *Turks*. They had formerly their several Kings, called *Despota*, the last of whom was *Stephen*, who was also *Despota* of *Bosnia*; but *Mahomet* 2d having bribed his Wife, took him and slew him alive. The greatest Part of this Country was yielded to the Emperor by the Treaty of *Passarowitz*.

Belgrade, alias *Greek's Weissenberg*, Lat. 45. 24. and 280 Miles S. E. of *Vienna*, is Capital *Belgrade*. of the Country, and lies on a Hill at the Conflux of the *Save* and *Danube*, on the South-side, and is by Art and Situation one of the strongest Cities in *Europe*. It is large and well seated for Trade, because of the *Danube*, *Save*, *Dave*, *Theysse*, and other navigable Rivers, that bring Goods from the neighbouring Countries. It has undergone many Sieges; was taken by the *Turks* in 1521, and continued in their Hands till 1688, when the Elector of *Bavaria* took it by Storm. The *Turks* took it again in 1690, but was retaken by Prince *Eugene* in 1718, after a great Victory over the *Turks*, who came to relieve it.

Dalmatia: *Dalmatia*, antiently part of *Illyricum*, has the Gulph of *Venice* on the W. *Albania* on the S. *Servia* on the E. *Croatia* and *Bosnia* on the N. It abounds with Corn, Wine, Oil, and Sheep, that bring forth twice *per Annum*. The Coasts belong to the *Venetians*, and the inland Towns to the *Turks*.

Ragusa: *Ragusa*, supposed to be the ancient *Epidaurus*, is a large Town, very well fortify'd, and has a noble, well-frequented Harbour, defended by a Fortrefs. It has the best Trade of any on the Coast; and tho' the Counrry be barren, yet the Inhabitants are rich, because of their Trade, and free Government, which is *Aristocratical*. Their Duke, or Governour, is changed every Month, and the Officers every 6 Weeks. The Gentry do not lie out of Town without Leave of the Senate; and Strangers are locked up at Night. They pretend to be more antient than the *Venetians*, who envied them, and therefore they have for several Ages put themselves under the Protection of the *Turks*, to whom they pay 25000 Crowns of Gold *per Ann*. The *Turks* took care to preserve their Sovereignty by the Treaty of *Carlowitz*. The greatest Length of their Territories is 75 Miles E. to West, but the Breadth is very unequal.

Bosnia. *Bosnia*, so called from the River *Bosna*, was antiently part of *Pannonia*. It has *Sclavonia* on the N. *Croatia* on the W. *Dalmatia* on the S. and *Servia* on the E. The Air is pretty sharp, but the Soil produces some Corn, and Mines of Gold and Silver. It belongs entirely to the *Turks*.

Croatia. *Croatia* lies W. of *Sclavonia*, and was formerly reckon'd part of *Pannonia superior*, or *Illyricum*; it produces Plenty of Corn, Wine, Oil, and other Necessaries. The Inhabitants named *Croates*, *Crabates*, or *Cravates*, are reckon'd hardy, brave, and faithful, and their Horse are frequently made use of by the *German* Princes. Their Foot called *Uskoks* are noted for their Agility. They are reported to be in Manners, like the *Germans*, *Hungarians*, and *Sclavonians*; for, from the first they have learned to Drink, from the 2d to be Proud, and from the last to be Importunate. The River *Unna* is the Boundary on this Side betwixt the Emperor and the *Turk*, by the Treaty of *Passarowitz*.

Carl:

Carlstad is very strong, and always provided with a good Garrison, at the Charge of those of *Carniola*, to whom it serves as a Barrier. It is the Seat of the *Ban*, or Governour.

Sclavonia has lower *Hungary* on the N. the River *Save*, which divides it from *Croatia*, *Bosnia*, and *Servia* on the S. *Istria* on the W. and the *Danube* on the East. The Name comes from the *Sclavi*, supposed to be of *Scythian* Extraction. They were formerly a mighty People, as appears by the Extent of their Language, which is spoken here, in *Hungary*, *Turkey* in *Europe*, *Poland*, *Muscovy*, and *Bohemia*. The *Venetians* first put a Stop to their Conquests, and to keep them under, obliged 'em to hard labour; from whence some derive our *English* Word *Slaves*. The People are strong and martial: They commonly pray to die with their Arms in their Hands, and wish that their Enemies may die a-bed. Those who live on the Banks of the *Save*, as well as the *Servians*, are commonly named *Rascians*. As to their Religion, they are partly *Romanists*, and partly *Greeks*. All this Country belongs to the Emperor. The Air is temperate, and they have Plenty of Corn, Cattle, and Pasturage. It is commonly divided into the 6 following Counties.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. <i>Warasdin</i> —ditto <i>Copranitz</i> : | 2. <i>Kreiss</i> . <i>Kreiss</i> . <i>Ss. George</i> |
| 3. <i>Zagrab</i> <i>Agram</i> . | 4. <i>Posega</i> <i>Poson</i> , <i>Gradiska</i> . |
| 5. <i>Walpon</i> <i>Walcon</i> , <i>Esseck</i> . | 6. <i>Szerem</i> <i>Sirmisch</i> <i>Carlowitz</i> ,
(<i>Salankemen</i>). |

Esseck is famous for its Bridge over the Branches of the *Drave*. It is 8565 Geometrical Paces long, and 17 broad. It was a beautiful and stupendous Work, but destroy'd by the Imperialists in 1688, because the *Turks* used to invade *Hungary* by this Bridge. *Salankemen* near the *Danube*, *Salankemen* is noted for a great Victory over the *Turks* by Prince *Lewis* of *Baden* 1691, and another betwixt this Place and *Peterwaradin*, in 1716, by Prince *Eugene*.

Bessarabia has nothing remarkable but *Bender*, a large and well fortified Town on the *Niester*, where the late King of *Sweden* fled, and resided some Years, after he was defeated by the *Czar* in 1709, near *Pultowa*.

Hungary. Hungary, Part of the antient *Pannonia*, is so called from the *Huns* (a cruel People) who came from *Scythia*, and settled there at two several Times, viz. about 420, and 744. It has part of *Poland* on the N. part of *Moravia*, *Austria*, *Stiria* and *Croatia*, on the W. the *Sava* on the S. Part of *Poland*, and *Transilvania* on the E.

Chief Town *Buda*, or *Offen*, is the Capital, and was formerly the Residence of the Kings of *Hungary*.

Buda. It lies on the Side of a Hill that descends towards the *Danube*, which is here about a Mile broad, It was large, rich, populous, and very strong, and had magnificent Palaces, and other Structures: but it decay'd much, since it was taken by the *Turks* in 1541, and continued in their Hands till 1686, when the Duke of *Lorain* took it by Storm, after defeating the *Turks* that came to relieve it. There is a considerable Island below the City called *Ratzemark* or *St. Margaret* 23 miles long, and 8 broad, which the Emperor *Leopold* gave to Prince *Eugene*.

Division. Hungary is divided into Upper and Lower *Upper Hungary* contains 34 Counties, viz.

1. *Poson*
2. *Transchin*
3. *Turocz*
4. *Arva*
5. *Neytra*
6. *Bars*
7. *Sag*
8. *Sol.*
9. *Lypicza*
10. *Forna*
11. *Gomora*
12. *Hontan*
14. *Pesth*
15. *Zolnock*
16. *Batka*
17. *Czongrad*
18. *Thurtur*

Chief Towns, with their distance from *Presburg*.

- Presburg*, *Tirnanu*, 28 N. E.
ditto on the *Waa*. 60 N.
ditto *Kremnitz*, *Stubna*.
Orawa, *Litsawa*.
dit. 45 N. E. *Schemnitz*, *Leo-*
dit. 60 *Barcam*. (poldstat.
Novigrad, *Filleck*.
Newsol, *Altsol*, 80 N. E.
Liptou, *Sastatt*.
Tornaw, *Zonder*.
ditto, *Muran*.
Agria. 13. *Heweez*, ditto.
Pesth over-against *Buda*.
ditto.
Colocza.
ditto.
ditto.

- | | | |
|-------------|-------------------|--------------------|
| 19 Calo | Debrekzin. | 20 Sambolic, |
| | —Chege, | Petitwaradin. |
| 21 Semlin | 21 Semlin, | Tockay, famous for |
| | Wines. | 22. Barzod, ditto. |
| 23 Abavivar | Cassovia. | 24 Cepus. Leutsch |
| | Kermark. | |
| 25 Saros | ditto, Eperies | 150 N.E. 26 |
| | Unghwar, ditto. | |
| 27 Bereg | Beraglas. Moncatz | very strong. |
| | 28 Moramaruss, | ditto. |
| 29 Ugokph | ditto, Caroli. | 30 Zathmar, |
| | ditto 200 W. | |
| 31 Zarad | Great Waradin, | Giula. 32. |
| | Temeswar. | ditto Orsava. |
| 33 Chonad. | ditto. | 34 Badrock. ditto, |
| | Seged. Pest. | |

Lower Hungary contains 14 Counties.

Counties.

Chief Towns, with their distance from Buda.

- | | | |
|-----------------|------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. Muffon | ditto, 90 W. | Owar, or Alten- |
| | | borg. |
| 2. Sopron. | Oeden- | |
| | burg. | |
| 3. Castrifirren | Sarwar. S. E. | Gottard. |
| | 4 Sa- | |
| | lawar. | ditto, Canisa 120 |
| | S. W. | |
| 5 Vefprim | ditto. | 6. Zigeth. ditto, 80 |
| | South. | |
| 7 Barangvar | ditto, Mobaakz, | Fonfskirkan, |
| | Darda. | 8. Tolna. ditto, |
| | Batteseck. | |
| 9 Simigran | Dambo. | 10. Alba Regalis. |
| | ditto. | 11. Pelicz. Buda. |
| | Pelicz. | |
| 12 Strigonia | Gran. | 13 Favarin, Raab. 14. |
| | Island of Schut. | Comorra. |

Hungary is situated betwixt Lat. 45, and 49, and 17. and 24 Long. E. from London, in the 7th and 8th Climate. It is almost of *Quadrangular* Form, and its greatest Extent S. to N. is about 260 Miles; and from E. to W. 290. The longest Day in the N. is about 16 Hours, and the shortest 8. The

Hungary's
Situation.

Air. *Air* is temperate, but in many Places unwholesome, because of the frequent Fogs, occasion'd by their many Rivers, Lakes, and Marshes ; for the Water of most of their Rivers, except the *Danube*, stinks :

Soil. So that Foreigners are sure to be sick at their arrival into this Country, and even plagued with a *Vermin* peculiar to it. The *Soil* scarce yields to any in *Europe* in Fruitfulness ; so that they have plenty of Corn, Grass, and generous Wine, especially about *Tockay*, and several sorts of Fruits. Oxen, Horse, and other wild and tame Beasts, are also very common here : And there is such a plenty of Fish, that they feed their Hogs therewith. Here are Mines of Gold, Silver, and other Metals. *Salt-Baths*, and medicinal Springs in great Numbers, but the Country in general has suffer'd so much by the Wars betwixt the *Malecontents*, *Turks* and *Germans*, that it is very poor.

They have many natural *Baths*, especially those at *Buda*, reckon'd the noblest in *Europe*, not only for the variety of hot Springs, but also for the Magnificence of the Structures. 2. In several Parts of this Country, there are Waters of a petrifying Nature, and others that corrode Iron to such a degree, that they will consume a Horse-shoe in 24 Hours. 3. Near *Esperies* are two deadly Fountains, whose Water sends forth such an infectious Steam, that it kills either Birds or Beasts approaching the same, wherefore they are walled up, and kept always cover'd.

Their chief Rivers are the *Danube*, *Drave*, *Save*, *Teifs*, *Marisch*, *Raab*, *Kag*, *Gran*, *Sarwihze* from the *Lake Balaton*.

Rivers. They have a vast many strong Towns. *Presburg* on the *Danube*, 48 m. S. E. from *Vienna*, is a pleasant, well-built, and fortify'd Town, with a strong Citadel on the Top of a Mountain, where the Crown is kept, this being the Place where their Kings are crowned, and the States meet. It is populous,

The *Primate of Hungary* (Arch-Bp. of *Gran*) has a stately Palace, and fine Gardens here.

Mohatz. *Mohatz* is remarkable for the defeat and death of *Lewis* 2d King of *Hungary*, who in 1526, with 20000 Men engaged *Soliman* the 2d, who had an Army of 300000 *Turks* : After which they conquer'd most of the Kingdom. And on the same Ground, the Duke of *Lorraine*, and Elector of *Bavaria*, in 1687, obtained a great Victory over the Prime *Vizier*.

The

The *Hungarians* are well-shaped, of a good Size, courageous, great lovers of War and *Inhabitants*. Horses: but are charged with Cruelty, Revenge, Inconstancy and Pride, especially when they get the better. They hate foreign Dominion, and don't like the *Germans*, except to drink with 'em, yet the Nobility seem well-affected to the Emperor, because the *Turks* make no difference betwixt a *Lord* and a *Commoner*: They are great Eaters, and nasty in their Houses; but the Gentry love fine Cloaths, and a great deal (tho' not fine) of Household Furniture. They wear long Gowns, like the *Armenians*. They have a peculiar Language of their own, which has little or no affinity with those of the neighbouring Nations, except the *Sclavonian*, from which it has borrow'd several Words, and which is also spoke in several Parts of this Country, as the *German* is in some. Most of their Gentry and Soldiery speak *Latin*. This Country is very populous, considering it has so much suffer'd by long Wars, and the Plague.

This Country had its own Kings, whom they chose most commonly among the nearest Relations of the Deceased; but since the death of *Lewis* the 2d, that Crown has been as it were, Hereditary in the House of *Austria*, and in 1687 the States declared it so in favour of the Emperor *Leopold*, and his male Posterity. The Estates consist of the Prelates. 2. Barons. 3. Nobility; and 4. Deputies from the Royal Cities. The Prelates and Barons enjoy'd formerly many considerable Privileges. Before 1686 *Hungary* was almost entirely under the *Turks*, but the Emperor is now possessed of the whole Country. The Revenues of this Country consist in the tenth Part of all Metals, *Revenues*. Corn, in Custom-Duties, &c. and in a free Gift granted by the States. The *Forces* consist in several Regiments, that are in Garrison in the best Places, and in the *Militia*, for whose Pay there are certain Funds appointed. In case of War, all the Subjects are obliged to offer their Service, but commonly every Lord and Town is to send a certain Number of Men. The *Hussars* are the Cavalry; they receive no Pay, but must live upon what they can Plunder; the Infantry is not numerous, and is composed of *Heiduques*. The prevailing Religion is that of the Church of *Rome*, especially since they *Religion*. came under the House of *Austria*. Next to it is the *Protestant* Religion, which is zealously maintained by a great many, and even by Persons of Note. Besides these, there

there are to be found most Sorts and Sects of Christians, as also many *Jews*, and some few *Mahometans*. The Protestants have been much persecuted, but 'tis now said, that the Emperor will allow them the free Exercise of their Religion, and that very likely, in order to dispose them to Settle the Succession on the Female Issue of the House of *Austria*, in case there should be no Male.

Transilvania was formerly a Part of *Hungary*, and is so called because incompass'd with Forrests : It was part of *Dacia*, and has *Hungary* and the County of *Transilvania* *Temeswar* on the W. *Poland* on the N. *Moldavia* on the E. and *Valachia* on the S. The Air, Soil, &c. are almost the same as in *Hungary*. The Country is inhabited by *Saxons*, *Hungarians*, and *Ciculi*, who have their particular Districts and Laws. The *Ciculi* inhabit the North Parts of the Country, and are supposed to be descended of the antient *Scythians*, or *Huns*. The *Saxons* inhabit the inland Parts S. of the *Ciculi*, and are supposed to come from some *Saxons*, who went and settled there in *Charlemain's* time. The *Hungarians* are the Noblemen of the Country, and live on the W. of the *Saxons*. Some *Valachians* and *Moldavians*, are also settled on the E. but they speak all the *Hungarian* Tongue.

It was formerly a distinct Kingdom, and afterwards united to *Hungary*. It has been govern'd since by several Princes of its own, most of them Tributary to the *Turks*. The last of them was Prince *Michael Abaffi*, who died in 1690, and with the consent of States resigned the Country unto the Emperor in 1688, and the *Turks* have confirm'd it since by the Treaties of *Carlowitz* and *Passarowitz*, but Prince *Ragotski* still lays Pretensions to it. It is 120 m. E. to W. and 105. N. The Emperor sends there a Governor ; their Civil Government is by seven Judges, who have their particular Districts, and over them a supreme Judge chosen by the Whole, and confirmed by the Prince. The *Ciculi* and *Hungarians* are for the most part *Calvinists*, and the *Saxons* *Lutherans* ; but there is a mixture of *Papists*, *Greeks*, *Photinians*, *Anabaptists*, &c.

Hermanstadt, Lat. 46, 38, is reckon'd Capital of *Transilvania*, and was formerly the Residence of the *Hermanstad*. Prince. It lies on the River *Siben*, which falls into the *Alanta*, is the See of a Bishop, and the Seat of the Governor. It is large, handsome, and very well fortify'd ; but by the Persecution and Severity of the Government,

vernment, its Trade is much decay'd, and the Air being unwholsome, occasions its being ill inhabited : Yet the Courts of Justice, and the General Dyet of the *Saxon* Counties, are held here.

Walachia, part of old *Dacia*, is so called by corruption for *Flaccia*, from *Flaccus* a Roman General, who carried thither a Roman Colony. It has *Transylvania* on the N. *Bulgaria* on the S. *Servia* on the W. and *Moldavia* on the East. It is above 200 Miles East to West, and 100 South to North. The Air is temperate, and the Soil very fruitful in every thing : They have noble Horses.

Moldavia (the County of the *Geta*) is so called from a little River of the same Name, *Moldavia*. and has part of *Poland* on the N *Transylvania* and *Walachia* on the W. part of *Bulgaria* on the S. and *Bessarabia* on the E. It is almost the same as *Walachia*, except that the greatest Part of it lies uncultivated, because of the frequent Incurfions of the *Turks* and *Tartars* : For the same Reason their *Mines* are not wrought in, tho' there be a great Quantity of Gold and Silver.

These two Countries, with many others, were formerly under the Kings of *Hungary*, bur their *Weywoods*, or Governors, having revolted, implored Governrment the Help of the *Turks*, to whom they are Tributary, and pay about 30000 Ducats *per Ann.* Or a certain Number of Horse. Those *Weywoods* (sometimes called *Hospodar*, i. e. General of the *Militia*) are named, chosen, and deposed by the Grand *Seignior* ; few of 'em dye a natural Death, and have never, or seldom their Sons for their Successors. The Inhabitants for the most part follow the Rites of the *Greek Church*.

Little Tartary, (the Northern-part called formerly *Minor Scythia*) is so called, to distinguish it from *Great Tartary* in *Asia*. The Southern Part was *Little Tartary*, called *Taurica Chersonesus*, and now *Crim Tartary*. *Tartary*, from *Crim* once the principal City of this Country, or *Tartary of Precop*, i. e. of the Ditch, because the Inhabitants made a great Ditch just in the *Isthmus*, to secure themselves from the Incurfions of their Neighbours.

It lies N. E. of *Bessarabia*, and S. of the Country of the *Cossacks*. Some make it about 700 Miles from S. W. to N. E. but others not half that Number. However, the *Air* is temperate, tho' not very wholesome; and the Soil is very different according to its several Parts, some Places abounding in every thing, and others being pester'd with undrainable Marshes, and barren Hills. Their Commodities are Slaves, whom they sell to the *Turks*, *Jews*, &c. with Leather, and several sorts of Firs. These *Tartars* are strong and hardy, many of them prove good Soldiers. They are reputed to be very just in their Dealings with one another, but far otherwise with Strangers, and especially with their Enemies. Many of them are much addicted to Jealousy, Lust, Cruelty, and Plunder, and they usually feed on Horse-flesh. Their Language is the *Scythian*, or *Tartaresque*, and differs from the *Turkish* Tongue, as the *Spanish* from the *Italian*. The Country is very populous, because every Man is allow'd to take many Wives, and to put away those he does not like.

They depended upon him called the *Great Cham*, but they set up for themselves about 1400, and were subdued by the *Turks* in 1584; ever since they have been Tributaries and Allies to the *Grand Seignior*. They are govern'd by a *Cham* who as an acknowledgment of his Submission, receives a Green or Purple Standard from the *Porte*. The *Grand Seignior* keeps as Hostage, the *apparent Successor* of the *Cham*: The *Cham* is also obliged, when the *Turk* is at the Head of his Army, to follow him, if requir'd, with 100000 Men, but if his Army is commanded by the *Prime Visier*, then he must send his Son with 40 or 50000 Men, which are commonly made use of to make Incursions into *Peland*, *Muscovy*, &c. To all which the *Cham* readily yields, upon the Account of a daily Allowance from the *Ottoman Court*, and of an antient Agreement, whereby the *Turks* are obliged to maintain the *Cham's* Family on the Throne, and the *Ottoman Empire* is to descend to him, whenever the Male Heirs of the *Grand Seignior's* Family shall fail.

The *Cham's* Revenue consists of some Presents from the neighbouring Princes, to prevent his Incursions, and of some Tribute paid by his Subjects, with the tenth Part of all the Booty which is got by his Army. As the Country is very populous, his Forces must be very considerable; since if he pleaseth he may compel all his Subjects to go to the Army, and so he marches sometimes at the Head of 300000 Men, all Troopers; and if his People were well-exercised in Military

litary Discipline, his Forces would be formidable. They are zealous *Mahometans*, except some who are yet *Pagans*, and intermixt with them are many *Christians*, especially *Greeks* and *Armenians*, besides a considerable Number of *Roman Catholicks*; most of 'em descended from *Genoese* Families, especially about *Cassa*, which was once, viz. from 1100 to 1452, in the hands of the *Genoese*, but now in those of the *Turks*.

Macedonia is the greatest Province of *Greece*, and was formerly a Kingdom, which contained *Macedonia*. *Theffaly*, *Epirus*. and even *Thracia*, according to some. It abounds with Corn, Pasture, Cattle, and Venison; and in some Parts with Oil and Wine. *Salonichi*, the old *Theffalonica*, is the most considerable Town in *Greece*, by reason of its good Harbour, and Traffick in Silk, Leather, Iron, Cotton. Wax, Honey, Wool, Corn, &c. chiefly manag'd by *Jews*. *Janniza*, or *Zuchria*, the old *Pella*, *Pella*. was the Residence of the *Macedonian* Kings. Near *Scydra* are rich Mines of Gold, called for that reason *Chrysites* by the Antients. *Libanova*, antiently *Stagyra*, is the birth-place of *Aristotle*, Preceptor to *Alexander* the Great. Near *Philippi*, *Brutus* and *Cassius* were defeated by *Augustus*. On Mount *Athos*, now *Monte Santo*, are 23 Monasteries of Caloyers, or Greek Monks, who get their Bread by working with their Hands, and are not, like those of the *Romish* Church, a Burthen to the Laymen of their Persuasion.

Albania, called *Arnaut* by the *Turks*, has *Dalmatia* and *Servia* on the N. the *Venetian* *Albania*. Gulph on the W. *Epirus* on the S. and *Macedonia* on the E. This, together with *Epirus*, made up the Kingdom of the famous *George Castriot*, alias *Scanderberg*, who, with a small Army, opposed many Years the whole Power of the *Turks*, defeated them in 22 Battles, and in 1467, left his Country to the *Venetians*, from whom the *Turks* have taken it. Most of the People, are of the *Greek* and *Roman* Church. They have here a Custom, much like that of the *Irish*, about their dead ones. *Scanderberg's* Tomb is at *Alessio*, 30 m. S. E. of *Dulcigno*. The *Turks* do so great Honour to his Memory, that they use Pieces of his Tomb as Charms, to animate them in War.

Epirus,

Epirus. *Epirus*, S. of *Albania*, is now of small Extent in comparison to what it was formerly, when it contained *Chaonia*, *Acarnania*, the Country of the *Molosses*, *Dolopes*, *Amphilochians*, and several other People. It was famous for the Oracle of *Dodone*, and for the Battle *Augustus* won over *Mark Antony* at *Actium*, now called *Figalo*.

Thessaly. *Thessaly*, now *Fanna*, has *Macedonia* on the N. *Epirus* on the W. *Achaia* on the S. and the Gulph of *Salonichi* on the E. It was the Country of *Jason* and *Achilles*. The Air is good, and the Soil produces Corn, Oranges, Lemons, Figs, Pomegranates, Grapes, Olives, &c. Most of the People are Christians, comely and warlike. The *Thessalians* are reported to be the Inventors of the Bridles of Horses, to make use of them in Battles: Hence comes the Fable of the *Centaur*s. *Cesar* defeated *Pompey* at *Pharsale*, now *Farsa*.

Achaia. *Achaia*, part of it now called *Livadia*, was antiently reckon'd the chief Country of *Greece*. It contained on the E. *Megaris*, *Boeotia*, *Attica*, on the W. *Aetolia*, and *Locris* the Country of *Ajax*; and in the middle *Doris* and *Phocis*. Here were the famous Temple of *Delphi*, now *Castri*; the Mount *Helicon* and *Parnassus*, so much celebrated by Poets. *Athenes* now *Setines*. *Thebes* now *Stives*, the Birth-place of *Bacchus*, *Hercules* and *Pindarus*; *Megara* the Birth-place of the famous *Euclides*. All these once so famous Towns, are now almost ruin'd. *Lepanto*, thought to be the *Naupactus* or *Epaetus* of the Antients, is the best City, and has a good Harbour. It is famous for a great Victory near the Mouth of the Gulph, obtained over the *Turks*, by *Don Juan* of *Austria*, who commanded the *Venetian Fleet* in 1571,

Morea. *Morea* the antient *Peloponesus*, lies South from *Achaia*, to which it is joined by the narrow *Isthmus* of *Corinth*, which is about 6 Miles long. Some say it is called *Morea* because of the Multitude of, or because of its likeness to *Mulberry-Trees*, in Latin *Morus*: But according to others, by transposition for *Romea*; or lastly because the *Moors*, who were used to invade it, gave it that

that Name: However, it is about 570 m. round. It abounds with every thing that contributes to the Necessity or Pleasure of Life. Their Mountains so much famed by the antient Poets, abound with Game and Medicinal Plants. The famous *Styx* of the Poets lies in *Arcadia*, on the W. side of the *Peninsula*, and is rather a Well than a Fountain, and the Water so cold, and of so corroding a Nature, that it chills the Blood, and kills the Body of those that drink it. It runs, as well as the *Acheron*, into the River *Alpheus*. In this Country *Hercules* kill'd the *Hydra* with seven Heads; that is, the seven Brothers, who by their Tyranny oppressed this Country: Here also he performed some others of his Exploits. The most illustrious Towns are, *Corinthus*, *Argos*, *Lacedemone* (now *Micistra*) *Olympia* (now *Pisa*) famous for its *Olympick Games*: But the strongest are *Modon* (*Methone*), *Coron*, *Napoli di Romania* (*Nauplia*) *Navarin*, *Maina*; and about it the Country of the *Manotes*. *Morea* is divided into 4 Parts, viz. the Dutchy of *Clarence*, *Sacania*, *Tzaconia*, and *Belvedere*.

Greece is situated betwixt Lat. 34--30, and 42--30; and Long. 38 and 47: So that its greatest Extent from E. to W. is about 370 m. and from S. to N. 480 m. The Air is generally temperate and wholesome; and the Soil abounds in every thing. The chief Commodities are Raw-silks, *Pernocochi*, Oil, *Turkzy* Leather, Cake Soap, Honey, Wax, &c. On Mount *Parnassus* now called *Liacura*, is a pleasant Spring, where there are several Steps descending to it, and many *Niches* made in the Rock for Statues, which give occasion to think, that this was the renowned *Fons Castalius* of the Ancients.

2. In *Livadia* there is a hideous Cavern in a Hill, which was very famous of old, for the Oracles of *Trophonius*.

3. Betwixt the large Lake of *Livadia* and the *Eubæan Sea*, (whose shortest distance is 4 Miles) are above 40 wonderful subterranean Passages, hewn out of the firm Rock, and that quite under a huge Mountain, to let the Water have a Vent, otherwise the Lake being surrounded with Hills, and constantly supplied with several Rivulets from those Hills, would overflow the adjacent Country. 5. At *Athenes*, and several other Places, are yet to be seen some Remains of their antient Glory; which you may see at large in *Wheeler's Spon's*, and *Lucas's Travels*.

The

The *Greeks* were formerly very famous for *The Manner* their Learning and Valour, but now (such is the Inconstancy of the Affairs of this World) they are so wonderfully degenerated from their Fore-fathers, that, instead of those excellent Qualities, which did shine in them, there is nothing to be seen among them, but the very Reverse of these, and that in the highest Degree; for they are meer Slaves, and so ignorant, that there is no possibility for them of becoming again Learned, as long as they shall be under the Pressure of the *Ottoman* Yoke; and as they are never trusted with Military Employments, they will never be Courageous, nor well versed in Military Knowledge, wherefore those of them, who are sensible enough to compare their miserable Condition with the glorious State of their Ancestors, do shew in their Looks a disconsolate and dejected Mind. However, the unthinking Part of 'em do so little mind their present slavish Condition, that there is no People (not even those of *Languedoc* and *Provence* excepted) more jovial and merrily disposed, being extremely given to Singing and Dancing. The Trading Part of 'em are generally very cunning, and so inclined to over-reach (if they can) in their Dealings, that Strangers do not only meet with more Candour among the *Turks*, but if a *Turk* seems in the least to discredit another's Word, or Promise, his reply is soon at hand, *I hope you don't take me for a Christian*: Such is the Blot which these imprudent Professors of Christianity have cast upon our most Holy Religion, in the Eyes of its numerous and implacable Enemies.

The *Turks* speak the *Turkish* Tongue; and the *Greeks* what they call the *Vulgar Greek*, or the antient *Greek* corrupted, and mixt with many Words of different Languages. The Country is not populous, by reason of the bad Usage the *Greeks* meet from the *Turks*, who treat 'em like Drudges, and force them to go and seek their Fortune elsewhere.

There were antiently several Kings in *Greece*, then several Cities governed themselves like Republicks, and were afterwards made a Province of the *Roman* Empire: At last the Emperors of the East having given to their Relations, most part of it, they have been all conquer'd by the *Turks*, and are govern'd by the Grand *Seignior*, who sends *Beglierbegs*, or chief

Chief Governors into some Parts of it; and into others, *Cadis* or *Sangiaks*, i. e. Civil or Military Governors.

The *Greeks* profess the Christian Religion, in a way different from the *Western Churches*. *Religion.*

1. They deny the Procession of the Holy Ghost from the Son, asserting that he proceedeth only from the Father, thro' or by the Son. 2. They deny the Doctrine of *Purgatory*, and yet they pray for the Dead. 3. They believe that the Souls of the Faithful departed this Life, are not admitted into the beatifick Vision until after the Resurrection. 4. They think, that the Torments of the Damned are not to endure for ever; and that no Punishment is inflicted in Hell till after the Resurrection. 5. They celebrate the *Lord's Supper* in both Kinds; but they oblige the Communicants to take three Morsels of Leavened Bread, and three Sips of Wine, in Honour of the Three Persons of the Adorable Trinity. 6. They admit Children to participate of this Holy Sacrament, when Seven Years of Age, because, as they say, they begin then to commit Sin. 7. They allow not of *Extream Unction* and *Confirmation*, and disapprove of fourth Marriages. 8. They admit none into Orders except those that are marry'd; but they inhibit second Marriages when once in Orders. 9. They reject all carved Images, but admit of Pictures, wherewith they adorn their Churches. 10. They observe four *Lents* in the Year, and that so strictly, that many think that to be the Cause of their being so pale, dry, and cholerick. Their publick Service is very long, tedious, and celebrated with many ridiculous and superstitious Ceremonies.

Candia the famous *Creta* of the Ancients, is so called from its chief Town *Candia*, built by *Candia's* the *Saracens* in 823. It is situated betwixt Lat. 33, and 34--30. and Long. 45, and 51. So that its greatest Extent from E. to W. is about 240, and from S. to N. 80, and above 600 m. round. The *Air* is good; but the South Winds are sometimes so boisterous, that they much annoy the Inhabitants. The Soil, tho' mountainous, is very rich and fertile: It produces good Muscatel-Wine, Malmsey, Oil, Corn, Oranges, Lemons, Figs, Sugar, Honey, Gum, Dates, Salt, &c. It abounds with fine Pastures, and curious Ever-greens.

On the South side of Mount *Ida* (now *Rareties*. *Psiloriti*) is a remarkable Grotto cut out of the firm Rock, and full of Windings and Turnings: One of the Alleys is 1200 Paces long, 7 or 8 Foot high, and 4 or 6 broad: Now and then there are Halls or Chambers. Several of our Travellers would fain persuade us, that it is one of the Remains of King *Minos's* Labyrinth, so much talked of by the Ancients. 2. They have no wild Beasts; but the Country is infested with a sort of *Tarantula's* called *Phalangium*, whose Sting is deadly. 3. Along *Istonia* (a little River) is the Tree *Leandro*, whose Wood and Leaves are Poison, which, in Summer-time renders the Waters of this River very dangerous.

The ancient Inhabitants were noted for their *Inhabitants*. Piracy, Lust, and Lying: And their Skill in Sea Affairs was very considerable; but the present Inhabitants, being either *Turks* or *Greeks*, their respective Character, &c. may be seen in another Place. The

Isle is not populous. It had anciently its own Government. Kings, who are most of them much talked of in ancient History. Then it was governed after the Republican way: After that it fell into the Hands of the *Romans*, and the Emperors of the *East* gave it to the Marquis of *Montferrat*; but he did not keep it long, for in 1204, he sold it to the *Venetians*, who have kept it until 1669. when it was taken by the *Turks*, who have there a *Sangiac* and some other Officers.

Candia about Lat. 34. 4. is a large and well-built Town, and the See of a *Greek* Archbishop, and so strong, that it held out a Siege of 24 Years against the *Turks*, and did not surrender till the greatest part of the City was demolished; all the *Venetian* Inhabitants but 5, dead, and no *Greeks* or *Jews* left, but 30 decrepid Persons, who, with the Remains of the Garrison, made up 4000, and obtained honourable Terms. *Retimo* and *Spinalongua*, two strong Towns, are yet in the hands of the *Venetians*.

Negropont, anciently *Eubœa*, is now called *Negropont*. *Egripas* by the *Turks*, very likely from *Euripus*. It is generally reported to have been joined to *Achaia*, and separated from it by Earthquakes, or by the great Ebbing of the Sea, so wonderful here, that *Aristotle* being not able to find out the Cause thereof, dy'd for Grief,

Grief, or according to some, threw and drowned himself in the Sea. It is about 150 m. long, 40 broad, and 400 in compass. The *Air* and *Soil* are very good. Mount *Carista* on the S. E. of the Isle, is noted for its excellent Marble, and the Stone *Amianthos* or *Asbestos*, of which incombustible Cloth is made. The Waters of the Rivers *Cereus* and *Peleus* are said to render the Wool of the Sheep, that drink of the first, *White*, and of the second, *Black*.

Negropont supposed to be the ancient *Chalcis*. Lat. 38. is the Chief Town, and has Communication with the Continent by a Stone Bridge. It is one of the strongest Towns and best Harbours in the *Levant*. The Tides ebb and flow sometimes here 10 or 14 times a Day. When *Mahomet II.* took it in 1469 from the *Venetians*, he put to death all the Males above 12 Years old, and, contrary to the Capitulation, he caused the Body of *Erizzo* the third Governor, to be sawed: And his Daughter he beheaded himself, because she could not endure his Caresses, who had so barbarously put her Father to death.

The ancient *Lemnos* is about 100 m. round, and 60 m. N. E. of *Negropont*. The *Terra Stalimene*. *Lemnia* or *Sigillata* dug up yearly in this Island, yields the *Grand Seignior* a great Revenue: It is good against many Distempers, as Loss of Blood, Poison, &c. They put it up in little Bags, which are sealed with the *Grand Seignior's* Seal, otherwise not to be sold to Merchants.

Cerigo anciently *Cythera* lies East of the *Promontory*, anciently called *Tenarum*, now *Cape Cerigo*. *Matapan*, the most southerly point of the *Morea*. This Island was the Country of *Venus* and *Helena*, and belongs to the *Venetians*. There are several other small Islands in the *Archipelago*, all of them belonging to the *Turks*, but those in the *Ionian* Sea, belong to *Venice*. The most remarkable are,

Corfou, anciently *Corcyra*, *Phaacia* and *Drepano*. It is off of the Coast of *Epirus*, *Corfou* about 50 m. long, 20 broad, and 120 round. It is one of the most populous Islands in *Greece*, has two Cities, near 100 Villages, and produces excellent Honey, Wax, Oil, Wine, Oranges, and other Fruit. Here were the

the famous Gardens of King *Alcinous*. It is deservedly called, the *Port* of the *Gulph*, and the *Barrier* of *Italy*. In the time of *Soliman II.* no less than 25000 *Turks* landed in this Island, under the Command of the famous *Barbarossa*, but they were shamefully beaten off, as it happen'd to them in 1716. when they were obliged to raise the Siege of the Capital.

St. Maura, anciently *Leucadia*, is about 22 m. long, 15 broad, and 70 round, and is almost the same with *Corfu* in Fertility. Betwixt this Island and *Cefalonia* stands *Ithaca*, famous for being the Birth-place of *Ulysses*. *Cefalonia* lies 16 m. S. E. of *St. Maura*, and is somewhat larger than *Corfu*. It abounds in Wool, Silk, Wine, Oil, Honey, and Wax. It was anciently called *Samos*, *Metoina*, and *Teleboa*. *Zante*, anciently *Zacynthus*, is but little, and yet it is one of the richest Islands on this Coast. It produces Muscadine, Cherry, and other choice Wines. They dry most of their Grapes, which we call *Currants*. They have also good Olives, and other excellent Fruit. The Inhabitants (most of em *Greeks*) amount to about 25000. This Island is subject to Earthquakes; and there are several Springs, out of which bubbles up, in great quantity, a pitchy Substance. The Island is mountainous. In the Monastery of *Santa Maria della Croce* is the Tomb of *M. T. Cicero*, and of *Terentia* his Wife, with their two Inscriptions found upon a Stone, which some Years ago was dug out of the Ground.

3. Q. How is *Turkey* in *Europe* situated?

A. From the South Parts of *Candia* to *Aloph*.
The Situation of Turkey. It is situated betwixt Lat. 35 and 49; so that it is about 660 m. from S. to N. and from E. to W. it is not so much, especially since the *Emperor* has conquered some of the Western Parts. As for the Air, Soil, Rareties, &c. see what has been said in the Description of each Province.

Inhabitants. The *Turks* are of a swarthy Complexion; robust Body, good Stature, and proportionably compacted: And tho' they be (especially the *Renegadoes*) addicted to some horrid Vices, yet they are Persons of great Integrity in their Dealings, strict Observers of their Word, very civil to Strangers, extraordinarily charitable, even to Beasts, and so zealous Observators of the various Duties

Duties enjoined by their Religion, (especially that of Prayer) that their Frequency and Attention in the same, may justly reproach the general Practice of the Christians now-a-days. They are generally very sober in their Meat and Drink.

In their ordinary Salutations, they lay their Hands on their Bosom, and incline a little *Customs.* their Body; but accosting a Person of Quality, they bow almost to the Ground, and kiss the hem of his Garment. They account it opprobrious to uncover their Heads; and when they walk in the Streets, they prefer the Left before the Right Hand, as being thereby Masters of his *Cimeter* with whom they walk. In several other things their Customs are quite contrary to those of the Christians, whom they esteem but little. Their chief Recreations are Shooting with the Bow, and Throwing of Lances, at both of which they are very dextrous. Their *Language* is the *Turkish* Tongue, which is originally the *Sclavonian*.

This Country is not populous, either because of the Plague, which is very frequent *Populousness.* here, or of the continual Wars the Grand Seignior is obliged to make, either against the *Emperor* or *Venetians*, Kings of *Poland* and *Persia*, or because of the Tyranny of the Government.

As for the *Turks* Dominions, besides what has been said above, see the Description of *Dominions.* *Turkey* in *Asia*, and then you will see what large Provinces they are possessed of.

Q. What sort of Government is there in *Turkey*?

A. The Government is entirely *Despotick*, i. e. resides in the *Grand Seignior* alone, *Government.* who may, without consulting any Body, do what he pleaseth, yet notwithstanding this illimited Power, he is often deposed, and even put to Death by his *Janissaries*, when any great Misfortune befalls the Empire. He has under him, 1. The *Musti*, who is the Head of their Clergy. 2. The Prime *Vizier*, whose Business it is to enquire into all criminal, civil, and military Affairs: He is constantly at *Constantinople*, and presides in all the Councils assembled at the *Grand Seignior's* Palace (commonly called the *Divan*.) He has under him several other *Viziers*, and all the Governors of the Provinces, called *Beglierbegs* or *Bashaws*. These great Officers, if they be very lucky or unlucky in their Affairs, or esteemed very rich, do seldom die

Nobility. a natural Death, and are all new upstart Men, and most part *Renegadoes*: For in *Turkey* there is no Noblemen; and no Man is esteemed upon another's Account, but merely for his own personal Qualifications, or when he is in great Employments.

5. Q. Who is now *Emperor* in *Turkey*?

A. *Achmet III.* was declared *Emperor* in *September* 1703, after the Deposition of his Brother *Mustapha II.* who died in Prison in 1704. He is Son to *Mahomet II.* who in 1684 was acknowledged *Emperor*, but deposed in 1687 for his bad Luck in War. His Father *Ibrahim* had the same Fate in 1648. and was strangled in the Prison.

The *Grand Seignior* has never a lawful Wife, but he has several Concubines kept very carefully in the *Seraglio*, and all of them who become Mothers of Children (especially Sons) are looked upon as his Wives, tho' never married to him. The present *Emperor* has had by six or seven *Sultana's*, several Children, but most of 'em are dead; yet he has two or three alive, and the eldest is born in *December* 1709: And they say that his Father is to send him to travel, in order to improve himself in Learning.

Title. The *Grand Seignior's* Titles are, *Achmet*, *Sultan*, by the Grace of God Almighty, Lord of Lords, Sovereign Prince in *Arabia*, *Persia* and *Greece*; King of Kings, Great, Invincible, and ever Victorious, *Emperor* of *Constantinople*; to the greatest Princes of the Earth, Distributor of Crowns, Sovereign Lord of the two Seas and Countries adjacent; Lord of the *East* and *West*, Protector of the sacred and august Cities *Mecca* and *Medina*, and of a vast many other Countries, Kingdoms, Empires, Islands, People, and of many Millions of courageous Soldiers, who rest under the Obedience and Justice of I, who am *Emperor*, by the Grace of God, the Help of the greatest Princes in the World, and the Refuge of Honourable Emperors.

Revenues. His Revenues are in proportion to its vast Territories, and commonly amount to 40000000 *l.* of Gold, which he raises from Presents, Tributes, Taxes, and confiscated Goods of great and rich Men, and especially of his great Officers, unless they have disposed of their Estates for pious Uses. He has in his *Seraglio* strong Vaults, wherein are laid up all the Revenues that can be

be spared; and, according to the fundamental Laws of the State, these Riches can't be taken out from thence, except on urgent Necessity.

The *Grand Seignior* has constantly about him 60000 Men Foot and Horse; and in Forces. time of War he may easily have 3 or 400000 Men: His Foot consist of *Janissaries*, who are Children of Tribute, and most of 'em Sons of Christians. Their General is called *Aga of the Janissaries*; but their Cavalry consists of what they call *Spahis*, besides the *Zains* and *Timariots*, who by Reason of the Lands they are possessed of, must go to the Army when required. But tho' all these Troops be very numerous and courageous enough, yet they are nothing in comparison of some *European* Troops, as it was manifest in the last *Hungarian* Wars: So that it would be better for the *Turks* to endeavour to keep what they have on this side the *Bosphorus*, and turn their Arms against the *Eastern* or *Southern* Countries, than to pretend to conquer more Territories in *Europe*. As for his *Sea Forces*, they are not so considerable, his Subjects being not fit for the Sea; yet he has a great many Men of War, or Sultana's.

Good Provision is made here for the Clergy, for they have the third Part of the Empire's Clergy. Revenues. Every Body according to their *Alcoran* is obliged to give somewhat for the Maintenance of the Clergy and poor People, so that their Mosques are very fine and rich; yet the great and rich People don't give much during their Lives, lest the *Grand Seignior* being thereby acquainted with their Wealth, should seize upon their Estates, and put to death the Possessors of them. Their *Musty* or Head of the Clergy is very much honoured and esteemed: He has a great Interest throughout all the Empire, insomuch that some Emperors have been deposed by him; but his Authority is not so great, but that some of 'em are often deposed by the *Grand Seigniors*. However, he has among the *Turks* almost the same Authority as the Pope has among those of his Communion. Their Clergy are pretty well versed in *Mathematicks*, *Plato's Philosophy*, *Astrology*, *Poetry*, and the *Arabian Tongue*.

The *Turks* follow the Doctrine of a certain *Arabian* called *Mahomet*, who lived in the beginning of the Seventh Century, and who compiled a Book called *Alcoran*, to which all his Followers do stick close: Therein they are taught to acknowledge but one

God; and that *Mahomet* is the greatest Prophet. It also commands Children to be obedient to their Parents, and approveth of Love towards our Neighbours: It enjoins Abstinence from Swine's Flesh, Blood, and such Animals as die of Distemper: It promiseth to true Believers (by them called *Musulmen*) all manner of sensual Pleasures in a future State: It allows an unavoidable Fatality in every thing, and favours the Opinion of *Tutelar Angels*. But to be more particular, the Followers of *Mahomet* readily grant, that the Writings both of the *Prophets* and *Apostles* were divinely inspired, but alledge therewith, that they are either useless since the coming of *Mahomet*, or so corrupted by *Jews* or *Christians*, that they can't be received as a Rule of Faith. They further assert and believe, that of all revealed Institutions in the World, those in the *Alcoran* are the most divine and perfect. That God is both essentially and personally one, and that the Son of God was a mere Creature, yet without Sin, and miraculously born of a Virgin: That Jesus Christ was a great Prophet, and that having ended his Prophetical Office upon Earth, he acquainted his Followers with *Mahomet's* coming: That Christ ascended into Heaven, without suffering Death, another having been put in his stead to suffer Death; but that when he came into Heaven, God did chide and chastise him, for saying that he was the Son of God: That *Polygamy* (according to the Example of the ancient *Patriarchs*) is still to be allowed of; but yet they have seldom more than one Wife with some Concubines; and that they may divorce them upon any Occasion, which is seldom practised by them. In short, one may easily perceive, that *Mahomet* was aided by some *Jews* and *Christians* in compiling the several Heads of his Religion; for it is a Medley of *Paganism*, *Judaism*, and *Christianity*, by which Means that Grand Impostor did cunningly imagine to gain Profelytes of all Professions. But let us more particularly consider the chief Precepts of the *Alcoran*, as they relate to the principal Heads thereof, viz. *Circumcision*, *Fasting*, *Prayers*, *Alms*, *Pilgrimage*, and *Abstinence from Wine*.

1. *Circumcision*, This they reckon absolutely necessary to every *Musulman*, esteeming it to be impossible to obtain Salvation without it, wherefore they are very careful to observe the same, and they observe the Performance thereof with great Solemnity, when their Children are thirteen Years old; because *Ismael*, whose Posterity they esteem themselves to be, was circumcised at that Age.
2. *Fasting*, especially that extraordinary long Fast, or yearly

Lent

Lent of theirs, called *Ramadan*, observed every ninth Month, and of a whole Month's Continuance, during which time they neither eat nor drink till the Sun is set; they also abstain from worldly Business, and from smoaking their much beloved Tobacco, yea, even from innocent Recreations; they live very austere Lives, and spend then most of their Time in *Mosques*, frequenting them Day and Night. They think that during this Month the Gates of Heaven stand open, and that those of Hell are shut up. 3. *Prayer*: This Duty is of mighty Request amongst them, their *Prophet* having termed it the *Key of Paradise*, and the *true Pillar of Religion*; and they are so frequent and fervent at their Devotion, that they take no notice of any thing at that time. They are obliged to pray five times every Day, and never fail of that Number, let their worldly Business be ever so urgent. Their most solemn Day is *Friday*, and as they have no Bells in their Mosques, they have some *Munzaes* or *Marabouts*, who by their Voice invite People to go to Church. 4. *Alms*. Every *Musulman* is bound to contribute the 100 part of his Wealth towards the *Zagath* or Alms, for the Maintenance of the Poor: Besides which, they make often large voluntary Contributions; yea, their Charity does not only extend it self toward their fellow-rational Creatures, but even the irrational, as Dogs, Horses, Camels, &c. whom they carefully maintain in a kind of publick Hospitals, when through Age they become useless to their Masters. 5. *Pilgrimage*, viz. to *Mecca* (wherein *Mahomet* is buried) which every *Musulman* is bound to perform once in his Life-time, or at least to send Deputies for him. Thither they resort in vast Multitudes, being commonly 40 or 50000 in Number, over whom the *Sultan* appoints a *Commander in Chief* to redress the Disorders that may happen during the Journey. This Officer is followed by a *Camel* carrying the *Alcoran* covered with Gold Cloth: And this sanctified Animal, upon its Return, is adorned with Garlands of Flowers, and free from any further Labour during the remaining Part of its Life. The *Turks* do likewise visit the City of *Jerusalem*, but that more out of Curiosity than for Devotion's sake. They have also a great Veneration for the *Valley of Josaphat*, believing that it shall be the particular Place of the General Judgment. Lastly, *Abstinence* from Wine is also a Precept of the *Alcoran*, and the *Musulmen* say, that their Lawgiver was along while in doubt whether he should forbid it absolutely, because it is a *Balm* when taken moderately, but a
Poison

Poison when taken with Excess: But that at last considering that Wine may be the Cause why Soldiers should be negligent in their Duty, and undutiful to their Officers, he did forbid it entirely. But of this Precept they are less observing than of any of the former, for several *Turks* (especially the rich sort) are great Lovers of Wine, and will liberally taste of the same in their private Cabals. I have read that the *Grand Seignior* has allowed of late to every Body the Liberty of drinking Wine, and ordered that *Bibles* should be printed in the *Turkish* Language.

Turkey in Europe is a very good and large *Advantages.* Country, and very well situated for Trade; *Defects.* but the *Christians* who inhabit it, don't much

care to manure the Ground, and to grow rich, lest the *Turks* should come and lodge at their Houses: And even the *Turks* themselves are afraid to be esteemed rich, lest their Master or his Ministers should put 'em to Death, to be possessed of their Estates. 2. They are not very skilful in Affairs belonging to the Sea or Trade. And, 3. That Empire is of so great an Extent, that it is hardly possible to keep it a long while in Peace, wherefore the *Grand Seignior*, in order to prevent Seditions and Rebellions, is often obliged to undertake some new Wars, tho' he be sure to lose a vast many Men in the pursuit of it, and he drains thereby his Country of several seditious Men; for in this, as well as in other feverish Constitutions, the best Physick is to let Blood, especially what is corrupted, lest by its Ferment it should endanger the whole Mass.

Interest. The *Grand Seignior's* Interest is to maintain carefully the unlimited Power he has over his People, such as it is and has always been from the first beginnings of that *Monarchy*, and to watch assiduously and severely over the Conduct of his Ministers, to reward them, when faithful, and put them to Death as soon as they have done any thing contrary to his Government, in order to keep all the rest in awe. He must also change frequently the Garrisons of the strong Towns, lest the too long abode of the Soldiers in those Places should encline them to join with the Inhabitants, and tempt them to shake off the Yoke of their Common Master. In order to prevent his *Bashaws* from rebelling, and being supported by the People in their ambitious Designs, he must take care lest his Governors should continue too long in the same Governments, and make themselves

too familiar with the Subjects, especially those that are far off, and therefore he must connive at their Rapine; for Governors that plunder the People are never dangerous to their Master: And at the End of their Governments, he may (at least) squeeze out of the *Bashaw's* Hands the Riches they have unjustly got. Their present Religion is very fit for all these Purposes; and we may say that it has been forged, to be the Support of such a Government as this, every *Turk* being bound in Duty to believe an absolute Passive Obedience, *i. e.* to do and suffer any thing (even Death it self) for their Emperor.



CHAP.



CHAP. V.

Of ASIA.

I. Quest.



Since we have done now with *Europe*, I should be glad to hear somewhat about the other Parts of the World; and first of *Asia*, as being the nearest Part of the World to *Europe*.

Asia's.

as I can, tho' you must not expect to have from me such an ample Account of them all, as of the several other Parts of *Europe*, because it is neither so material and necessary for us to know, nor would it be so easy for me to say, or for you to retain it; besides, such a Work would require a vast deal of Time in the composing of it. How-

Name.

ever, the learned *Bochart* derives its Name from the *Phenician* word *Asi*, i. e. Middle; because *Asia*, especially that Part of it called *Asia Minor*, is in some respects between *Europe*, *Asia*, and *Africa*.

Limits:

Asia has the *Icy Sea* on the N, the *Eastern Ocean* on the S. and E. and the same Limits on the W. as *Europe* has on the E. The chief

chief Towns are *Peking, Nanking, Canton, Meaco, Ispahan, Tauris, Delli, Agra, Surate, Goa, Golconda, Visapur, Narsingue, Bisnagar, Ava, Pegu, Siam, Malacca, Batavia, Bantam, Mecca, Medina, Mocha, Adem, Alep, Smyrna, Mosul, Bagdad.*

Asia is divided into nine great Parts.

Division.

Great Parts.

Chief Towns.

1. *Turkey* in *Asia*, wherein

Smirna, Bursa, Alep, Damas, Scanderon, Mosul, Balfora.

are comprehended *Arabia,*

Mecca, Medina, Mocha, Mascate.

and *Georgia,*

Teftis.

2. *Persia,*

Ispahan, Tauris, Nisapur, Candahar.

3. *Empire of the Great Mogul.*

Delly, Agra, Lahor, Surate.

4. *Peninsula* on this side the *Gange,*

Visapur, Goa, Narsingue.

5. *Peninsula* on the other side,

Pegu, Siam, Malacca.

6. *China,*

Peking, Nanking, Canton, Macao.

7. *Tartary* Northern or *Muscovite,*

Astracan, Casan, Tobol.

8. *Great Southern Tartary,*

Samarkand, Bokora, Kokotan, Soczi.

9. *The Islands* in the *Ocean* are,

1. *Japon,* 2. *Ladrones,* 3. *Phillipines,* 4. *Molucca,* 5. *Lasonda,* 6. *Ceylan,* 7. *Maldives.*

In the *Mediterranean* are,

1. *Cyprus,* 2. *Rhodes,* 3. *Scarpanto,* 4. *Samo,* 5. *Palmosa,* 6. *Metelino:* With several others in the *Archipelago.*

Asia is situated betwixt the *Equator* and 72 Degrees of N. Lat. and Long. E. from *London* 25 and 145: So that its Extent from S. to N. is 4400 Miles, and from E. to W. above that Number. The *Climate* and *Soil* differ according to their *Situation.* But in ge-

Situation.

Extent.

Air.

neral

Soil.

neral the Air is wholesome and temperate. In the main, it may be reckoned the most fruitful and rich Part of the World; for it furnishes not only every thing necessary for Life, but all that Avarice, Vanity, and Sensuality put a Value upon. They have store of Cattel, wild and tame: And it exceeds the rest of the World for Camels, Dromedaries, Elephants, &c. They surpass all Nations in their curious Manufacture of China Varnishes, Lackers, and fine durable Colours. Their most esteemed Commodities are Pearls of Cape Comorin, Diamonds of Golconda, Rubies and Lacker of Pegu, Carpets of Turkey, Hangings of Persia, Stuffs of Bengala, Pepper and Ginger of Malabar, Cinnamon and Elephants of Ceilan, Cloves of Amboina, Nutmeg of Banda, Sandal of Timor, Cedar of Lebannon, Campher of Borneo, Coffee and Frankincense of Arabia, Tea, China-ware, and Varnish of China, Sables and Rheubarb of Tartary, Sabres of Nisapur and Damascus.

Asia has several *Advantages* peculiar to it self, as that Man was created here, and the rest of the *Earth* was peopled by Colonies from hence, who spread the Knowledge of Religion, Government, Arts and Arms into the other Quarters. The *Earthly Paradise* is thought to have been near the Place where the *Tygris* runs into *Euphrates*. It was also the Place of the second Propagation of Mankind by *Noah* and his Family after the Flood: Here God gave his Laws to the *Jews* and *Christians*. The first great Monarchies of the World, as the *Assyrian*, *Median*, *Persians*, *Greeks*, *Parthians*, *Saracens*, and *Turks* were established here.

But with all these *Advantages*, the *Inhabitants* in general seem never to have been very happy: for most of them, except those who live in *Tartary* and other *Northern* Parts, have always been accounted effeminate, and swallowed up in Luxury and Idleness. As it was the first Scene of true Religion, it was

also the first of Idolatry, and they have always been noted for a *flavish* Temper, and a Fondness for *Despotical* Governments, especially the *Eastern* Parts. The greatest Part of them are

Religion. *Mahometans* and *Pagans*. The former are divided into several sorts, and the Divisions of the latter are endless. Here are abundance of *Jews* and *Christians*.

The

The chief *Languages* which have been, and are still, for the most part, made use of, are, *Languages*.
 1. The *Hebrew*, which is look'd upon as the ancientest Language; but neither that nor its three Dialects, the *Samaritan*, *Chaldee*, and *Syriack* are now spoke any where as National Tongues. 2. The *Arabick*, very much used every where in *Asa*. 3. The *Armenian*, much used for Commerce in *Turkey* and *Persia*. 4. The *Chinese*, and that of *Corea* and *Japon*. 5. The *Malayan*, a fine Tongue spoke by Merchants in the *Eastern* Parts. 6. The *Persian* has several *German* Words. 7. The *Turkish* and *Tartarian* differ not much from the *Persian*. And, 8. *Lingua Franca*, a Mixture of several *French* and *Italian* Words (but without any Rule of Declension either in Nouns or Verbs) spoke by the Trading People on this side of the *Indies*.

The chief Rivers in *Asa* are,

Rivers.

- | | | | | | |
|------------|--|--|----------------|---|--|
| 1. In Tar- | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Oby,} \\ \text{Lena,} \\ \text{Gammas,} \\ \text{Kelum,} \end{array} \right\}$ | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{N.W.} \\ \text{N.} \\ \text{E.} \\ \text{W.} \end{array} \right\}$ | 3. In the | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Ganges,} \\ \text{Indus,} \\ \text{Guanga,} \end{array} \right\}$ | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{S.} \\ \text{S. W.} \\ \text{E.} \end{array} \right\}$ |
| tary, | | | <i>Indies,</i> | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| 2. In Chi- | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Hoang,} \\ \text{Kiang,} \end{array} \right\}$ | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{E.} \end{array} \right\}$ | 4. Tur- | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Tygris,} \\ \text{Euphrates,} \end{array} \right\}$ | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{S.E.} \end{array} \right\}$ |
| na, | | | key, | | |

The only considerable Lake is the *Caspian Sea*, about 3000 Miles round. The Water is salt in the middle, but on the Coasts fresh, which is ascribed to the great number of Rivers, which some reckon an hundred, that fall into it. Few sail upon it but *Russians* and *Turks*. It has no visible Communication with any other Sea, but some think it runs underground into the *Persian* Gulph, because in the S. W. Corner of it there are two Whirl-pools, which suck in the Water with such Rapidity and Noise, that Mariners carefully avoid them: And about *Autumn* great Quantities of *Willow-Leaves* are found in the *Persian* Gulph, tho' there be no Tree of that sort in the *South* of *Persia*, but there are great Numbers of them on the Banks of the *Caspian*, near the Whirl-pools above mentioned.

Straits. The most considerable Straits are, 1. Of *Babelmandel*, betwixt *Africa* and *Arabia*.
2. Of *Ormuz*, betwixt *Arabia* and *Persia*.
3. Of *Malacca*, betwixt *Malacca* and *Sumatra*. And 4. Of the *Sunda*, betwixt *Sumatra* and *Java*.

Mountains. The chief Mountains are, 1. *Caucasus*, betwixt the *Black* and *Caspian Sea*. 2. *Taurus* stretching from E. to W. almost the whole
Extent of Asia. 3. *Inaus* in *Tartary*, and *Adam's Pike* in the
Isle of Ceylan.



CHAP.



CHAP. IV. OF TURKEY in Asia.

Q. WHAT do you call Turkey in Asia?



A. The Countries which the Grand Seignior is possessed of in Asia, which Turkey in Asia.

are bounded on the N. by the Black Sea and *Georgia*; on the W. by the *Archipel*, and Sea of *Marmora*; on the S. by the *Mediterranean Sea* and *Arabia*; and on the E. by *Persia*. The Extent is so unequal, that it is hard to determine it: And the Variety of Climates and Soil is such, that we cannot pretend to give any Account of its Product in general, some of it being very fruitful, and others very barren: And many of the fruitful Places lie uncultivated, either because of the Severity of the Turkish Government, or the Incursions of the Arabs, or Laziness of the Inhabitants; so that we refer the Accounts of the several Heads to be treated of to the particular Countries, as we shall describe them. The Asiatick Turks in general are charged with being much given to Sensuality and Idleness. The Inhabitants are for the most part Mahometans, with a considerable mixture of Jews, and a great number of Christian Greeks; and in the Trading Towns there are Protestants and Papists. The Country in general has suffered much by War, Pestilence, and Earthquakes; and is divided into Four great Parts.

Great Parts:	Chief Towns.
1. <i>Natolia</i> ,	<i>Chiutaye, Bursa, Smirna, Angour, Trebifond.</i>
2. <i>Souria</i> ,	<i>Aleppo, Damas Tripoli, Jerusalem.</i>
3. <i>Turcomania</i> or <i>Armenia Major</i> ,	<i>Erzerum, Gars, Betlis.</i>
4. <i>Diarbeck</i> .	<i>Diarbeker, Mosul, Bagdat, Sherefule.</i>
Of which in Order.	

2. Q. What have you to say about *Natolia*?

A. Natolia, formerly *Asa Minor*, was at first so called by the *Greeks*, because of its Eastern Situation, in Respect to them. It is a *Peninsula* longer than broad, betwixt the *Pont Euxine*, the Sea of *Marmora*, the *Archipel*, *Mediterranean Sea*, *Euphrates*, and *Souria*. It contained antiently divers Kingdoms or Provinces, as *Pontus Paphlagonia*, and *Cappadocia* in the N. *Armenia Minor* towards the E. *Cilicia*, *Pamphilia*, *Lycia*, and *Caria* in the S. *Ionia*, *Aolia*, *Phrygia Minor*, *Mysia*, and *Bithynia* in the W. *Phrygia Major*, *Lydia*, *Lycania*, *Galatia*, *Isauria*, and *Pisidia* in the Inland Parts. It is now divided by the *Turks* and most Geographers into four Parts, called *Beglerbeylicks*, *General Governments*, containing several *Sangiac's* or particular ones.

Provinces.	Chief Towns.
1. <i>Natolia</i> } in the N. go- Proper, } ing towards E.	{ <i>Chiutaye, Bursa, Smirna, Angour.</i>
2. <i>Amasia</i> , }	{ <i>Ditto, Trebifonda, Tocat.</i>
3. <i>Caramania</i> , } in the S. go- ing to E.	{ <i>Cogni, Tarsus, Tiagna.</i>
4. <i>Aladulia</i> , }	{ <i>Maraz, Lajazzo.</i>
And the Isles; of which afterwards.	

Situation. It lies betwixt Lat. 35 and 42, and Long. 28 and 41; so that its longest Extent from E. to W. is above 300 Miles, and from S. to N. about 300. The *Air* of this Country differs much, being in some Places very pure and wholesome, and in others gross and pestilential. The *Soil* is extraordinary fertile, and abounds in Oil, Wine, and all sorts of Grain and Fruit. But most of the Inland Provinces lie uncultivated,

vated, a very common thing in most Countries subject to *Despotick* Governments: The *Commodities*. chief Commodities are raw Silks, rough and spun Cotton, fine and bastard Woollens, Nutgalls, Wax, large and ordinary Carpets, Goat's-hair, Soap, Rheubarb, Opium, Aloes, Galbanum, and several other Gums.

Not far from *Smirna* is a kind of Earth, commonly called *Soap Earth*, which boileth *Rarities*. up out of the Ground, and is always gathered before Sun-rising, and that in such a quantity, that several Camels are daily employ'd to carry Loads of it to divers Soap-houses, where they mix it with Oil, and boil them together during many Days, and becomes at last a very excellent sort of Soap. 2. The Waters of the River *Carasu* are so cold, that it is dangerous to wash in it: *Alexander* was like to die of it, and the Emperor *Frederick Barbarossa* did not escape the Danger, when in 1100 he returned from the Wars of the Holy Land. 3. In most Places are yet to be seen the remains of fine *Cities*, *Circus's Theatres*, &c. 4. Near *Smirna* are taken several strange Fishes, especially the *Pulp*, which floats on the Surface of the Water like a slimy Scum, and when turned up, appears to be an Animal with many long Legs like those of a Spider, and at each Leg a Bag full of Liquor as clear as Water. It catches its Prey with its Legs, and frequently drowns Men; who have the Misfortune to meet with it as they wash themselves in those Seas; for it not only holds them fast with its Legs, but by diffusing the venomous Liquor from its Bags, deprives them of Motion, and raises Inflammations in the Parts it seizes.

They have no navigable Rivers, but several Sea-Ports on the *Mediterranean*, called *Eschelles*, or Towns of Trade. *Chiutaie*, Lat. 41. 8, *Chiutaie*. antiently *Cotiacum*, is the Capital and the Seat of the *Beglerbeg* or *Bashaw* of *Natolia*. *Bursa*, antiently *Prusias*, Capital of *Bithynia*, and the Residence of *Asclepiades* the Physician, and of the *Ottoman* Emperors before they settled in *Europe*, is yet very fine and large. It lies near the Mount *Olympus*, the highest in *Asia Minor*, and, seen at *Constantinople*, tho' seventy Miles distant. *Smirna*, called by the *Smirna*. *Turks Ismir*, antiently Capital Town of *Ionia*, is one of the largest and richest Cities, and has the finest Port in the *Levant*. It is the most trading Town of the *Eschelles*

Eschelles or Scales. Its chief Commerce is with the *English*, *French*, and *Dutch*. Some say it is the Birth-place of *Hommer*; but *Rhodes*, *Colophon*, *Salamis*, *Athens*, &c. claim the same Honour. *Smirna* has been often ruined by Earthquakes. *Ancyra*, now *Angour*, formerly Capital of *Paphlagonia*, is famous for the Victory of *Pompey* over *Mithridates* King of *Pontus* in the Neighbourhood, for that of the *Romans* over the *Gauls*, and of *Tamerlane* over *Bajazet*. The Herefiarch *Photin* was born here. *Sinope* near the *Pont Euxine* has a good Harbour, and was once very rich and powerful. *Diogenes* the *Ephesus*. *Cynick* was a Native of this Place. *Ephesus*, like the rest of the Cities in this Country, has now nothing remarkable, but the Ruins of its antient Magnificence. The Temple of *Diana*, one of the seven Wonders of the World, was, according to *Pliny*, two hundred, but others say four hundred Years a building, at the Charge of all *Asia Minor*. *Erostratus* burnt it to render himself famous, just on the same Night that *Alexander Halycarnassus* the Great was born. *Halycarnassus* is now considerable for nothing; but it was the Birth-place of *Herodotus* and *Dionysius* of *Halycarnassus*, and had antiently one of the seven Wonders in the World, viz. the *Mausoleum* or Tomb of *Mausolus* King of *Caria*, built at the Charge of his Wife *Artemisa*. *Trebizonde*. *Trebizonde* is a large but ill-peopled Town, lies on the Shore of the *Black Sea*, at the Foot of a steep Hill, and was formerly the Capital of *Cappadocia*, and of an Empire erected in 1204, and ended in 1461.

As for the Inhabitants, &c. of these Parts, see what has been said in *Turkey in Europe*. Only it is to be observed here, that besides the *Turks*, there are multitudes of *Christians* (especially *Greeks*) of all sorts, as *Armenians*, *Jacobites*, *Maronites*, *Nestorians*, *Melchites*. &c. with a considerable Number of *Jews*.

3. Q. Tell me something about *Souria*.

A. The Country which went antiently by *Souria's* this Name, was of a very large Extent, and 'tis then no Wonder if we find so many *Arams* or *Syria's* mentioned in Scriptures, as *Aram Damesk*, i. e. the Country about *Damascus*. *Aram Saba*, called afterwards

afterwards *Palmyra*, *Aram Bethrehod*, *Aram Mahaca*, were Towns rather in *Canaan* than in *Syria*; *Aram Naharim* of the *Rivers*, i. e. *Mesopotamia*, and *Paddan Aram*, the most Northern Part of this last. It was called *Aram* from *Aram* Son of *Sem*. It is called *Syria* or *Souria*, from *Tsor* or *Tsur*, which is *Tyrus*, Name. antiently the most famous Town in this Country. However *Syria* is now bounded on the Limits. E. by *Diarbeck*, on the S. by *Arabia deserta*, on the W. by the *Mediterranean Sea*, and on the N. by some Parts, (*Cilicia*) of *Natolia*. Division. The *Turks* divide this Country into three *Beglerbeglicks*, viz. *Aleppo*, *Damascus*, and *Tripoli*, containing each of them several *Sangiaks*. But as those Governments are not distinguished on the Maps, we shall follow the Common Division of Geographers, who divide it into three Parts, viz.

1. *Syria Propria*, *Aleppo*, *Alexandretto*, or *Scanderoon*, *Antiochia*.
2. *Phenicia*, *Damascus*, *Tripoli*, *Sour*, *Said*, *Acre*.
3. *Judaea* or *Palestina*, *Jerusalem*, *Naplouse*, *Jaffa*.
Of which in their Order : And 1. Of *Phœnicia*.

Some think that this Country was so called from *Phœnix* Son of *Agenor*, second King of *Phœnicia*. *Sidon*; but others will have it that the *Phœnicians* were so called from *Phœne Anak* Sons of *Anak*, or great and tall Men. These *Phœnicians* are look'd upon as the Inventors of Letters, Writing, and Navigation. However this Country, which was very famous of old, is now in a deplorable Condition; and has undergone such dismal Devastations from the *Arabs*, that it has now nothing remarkable, except some few Cities, which retain yet some small Commerce with Strangers, as particularly *Damascus*, now called *Scham* by the *Turks*, *Damascus*. is famous both in sacred and prophane History.

'Tis situate in a Plain encompassed with Hills, and is watered by the *Pharphar*, or *Chrysorrhoas*, or Golden River. The Town is large, and encompassed with Gardens for thirty Miles round. Several thousand Men are employed here in making *Sword-Blades*, *Scimetars*, *Bridles*, *Knives*, and all sorts of fine Work of Iron and Steel, the Water being

ing excellent for tempering Metals. The chief *Commodities* here are Wines, Fruits, Silks, Prunes, Rose-water; and all the *Commodities* of *Turkey*, *Arabia*, and *India*, are brought hither by *Caravans*. *Tripoli* is so called, either because the People of *Aradus*, *Tyre*, and *Sidon* did build it, or because it consists of three Towns. It is the Residence of a *Beglerbeg*, and lies near *Mount Lebanon*. There are several Towns of this Name. *Sayd* or *Sidon*, *Sour* or *Tyr*, *Acre* or *Ptolemais*, *Sarepta*, *Biroul* or *Berytus*, once very famous, are now but poor decay'd Towns.

The Air in *Syria* is pure and healthful, the *Syria's* Sky being seldom overcast with Clouds; but *Air* in some other Parts it is very unwholesome, and the People being sluggish and nasty, is the Cause that the Plague rages here often: In the Months of *June*, *July*, and *August* 'tis exceeding hot, if it prove either calm or a gentle Wind from the Desert: But as a repeated Miracle of Providence, these Months are generally attended with cool westerly Breezes from the *Soil*. *Mediterranean*. The Soil is deep, level, and pleasant, in some Places mountainous, and feeds vast Herds of Cattel, and particularly Sheep, whose Tails weigh from 25 to 60 Pounds, as Travellers say. It abounds with Corn, Grapes, Figs, Oranges, Lemons, Cotton, Spices, and medicinal Herbs, except towards *Arabia*, where there are Deserts: And if any part of it lies waste, it is owing to the *Laziness* of the People, the *Incursons* of the *Arabs*, the *Tyranny* of the *Turks*, and the frequent Revolts which arise from thence. Their *Commodities* for Trade are Silks, Camlets, Nutgalls, Valanede, Soap, Cotton, Raisins, Cochineal, Indico, Rhubarb, Cassia, and other Drugs.

4. Q. What are the *Rarities* in *Syria*?

Rarities. *A*. In the Desert E. of *Damascus* is the famous *Palmyra* or *Tadmor*, now called *Fayd*, the Residence of the illustrious Queen *Zenobia*, where there are several Remains shewing yet its antient Magnificence. 2. About 4 or 5 Miles from the above-said *Tadmor*, is a large Valley of Salt, which is more probably thought to be that mentioned 2 *Sam.* 8. 13. where *David* smote the *Syrians*, than the other about 12 Miles from *Aleppo*. 3. There is on a Hill near *Aleppo* a Cave or Grotto, remark-

remarkable among the *Turks* for having been the Residence of *Mortis Aly* during some Days, wherein is also the rough Impression of a Hand on the hard Rock, which they believe was made by him. 4. Under one of the Gates of *Aleppo* there is a Place, which the *Turks* hold in great Veneration, because they think *Elijah* dwelt here; and here are Lamps continually burning. 5. In the Walls of a *Mosque* in that Town, is a Stone of two or three Foot square, which is had in the highest Regard by superstitious Christians, because on it is a natural (but obscure) Resemblance of a *Chalice*, environed as it were with some faint Rays of Light. The *Romanists* in those Parts entertain such strange Notions concerning this Stone, that great Sums of Money have been proffered by them to the *Turks* for the Purchase of it, but as gross Superstition in the former did hatch the Proposal, so the same in the latter produced the Refusal, the *Turks* being inexorable to part with any thing that has been once so sacred as to become the constituent Part of a *Mesque*. 6. Betwixt *Aleppo* and *Scanderoon* are the goodly Ruins of several stately Christian Churches, with Variety of *Stone Coffins* lying above-ground in divers Places, and many Repositories for the Dead cut out of the firm Rocks, but without any entire Inscriptions. 7. In the large Plain of *Antiochia* (being 45 Miles long, and 9 broad) is a stately *Cawsey* crossing almost the breadth of the Plain, and passing over several Arches (under which some pleasant Rivulets gently glide) all which was begun and finished in six Months by the *Grand Vizier*, in the Reign of *Achmet*, and that for the speedy Passage of the *Grand Seignior's* Forces, to suppress the frequent Revolts in the Eastern Parts of his Empire. 8. In several hollow Rocks not far from *Scanderoon*, is sometimes found good Rain-Water, petrify'd by the excessive Heat of the Sun. Lastly, In the Eastern Part of *Scanderoon* Bay, is a ruinous old Building, known commonly by the Name of *Jonah's Pillar*, erected (as the modern *Greeks* affirm) in that very Place where the Whale did vomit him out. But it is very uncertain, whether that Monument was erected here upon such an Occasion; however 'tis highly probable that this Part of the Bay was the Place of the Whale's Delivery, it being the nearest to *Niniveh* of any in the *Levant*.

This Country has some small Rivers, and Rivers.
several Harbours, and pretty good Towns.

Aleppo. *Aleppo*, Lat. 35 and a half, Long. 40. lies on four Hills, near a little River called *Crock*, is six Miles round, and is said to contain 250000 Souls. It has a Castle, and Walls, but 'tis not strong for all that. It is the Center of the Commerce betwixt the *Mediterranean* and *East Indies*, as also the Seat of one of the most flourishing *English* Factories abroad. Here are also all sorts of Christians. *Antiochia*, lies near the Mouth of the *Orontes* on the Coast; it was formerly the Capital of *Syria*, and is the first Place where Christians were called by that Name. *Scanderoon* or *Alexandretta* has a good Harbour, but being situated among Marshes, the Air is very unwholesome, and few live there except Merchants and other greedy People.

This Country being subject unto, and successively ruled by the *Seleucide*, *Romans*, *Saracens*, *Christians*, and *Sultans* of *Egypt*, was at last conquered by the *Turks* in 1517, under whose heavy Yoke it has ever since groaned, and is now governed by three *Bashaws* appointed by the *Grand Seignior*. Subordinate to these *Bashaws*, both here and in other Parts of the *Ottoman* Dominions, are several *Sangiacs*, and *Cadis*, or *Judges*, who hear and determine Civil and Criminal Causes: But it is to be observed, that both here and in several other Countries, it is not always the Justice of the Cause, but the Liberality of the Party that determines the Matter. The *Europeans* settled here commonly use the *Lingua Franca*.

5. Q. What particular Things have you to say about *Judea*?

Judea's Name. A. This Country, most remarkable in Holy Scripture, is sometimes called the Land of *Canaan*, from *Canaan* the Son of *Cham*, sometimes the Land of *Promise*, because promised to *Abraham* and to his *Posterity*; and sometimes *Judea*, from the Nation of the *Jews*, or People of the Tribe of *Juda*, and *Holy Land*, because it was the Scene of the Life and Sufferings of the most Holy *Jesus*, who was conceived, born, brought up, dy'd, bury'd, rose up again in this Country, and from thence ascended into Heaven. It has *Syria* on the N. the *Mediterranean* on the W. *Arabia Petraea* on the S. and the *Desarts*

Defarts (part of *Syria*) on the E. The chief Town is *Jerusalem*, a very antient Town, *Jerusalem*. thought by some to have been built by *Melchisedek* King of *Salem*. It was formerly very famous for its fine *Church*, in the building of which 163300 Men were employ'd; and notwithstanding this Number, it was seven Years a building, 1 *Kings* 5. *Vallalpandus* computes the Value of Gold, Silver, and Brass, laid out upon the Temple, at 6904, 822, 500 *l. sterl.* besides the Wages, Diet, and Presents to the Workmen. And the Charge of the other Materials and Jewels is reckon'd to exceed this Sum. He reckons that *David* left towards it in Gold and Silver, £*c.* 911, 416, 207 *l. sterl.* *Solomon's* own Revenue is computed by that Author at 100 Millions of Crowns *per Annum*, besides the great quantity of Gold he had from *Ophir*, and the Presents made him from all the Earth. This glorious Temple was destroy'd, and all its rich Furniture carried away by *Nebuchadnezzar*. The second Temple was built at the End of the 70 Years Captivity, but came far short of the former, tho' finely repaired by *Herod* the *Ascalonite*. But this second Temple was, according to our Saviour's Prediction, destroy'd, together with the City, by *Titus Vespasian*, in the 70th Year of Christ, tho' the Temple was burnt against the Will of that General, who designed its Preservation for the Honour of the *Roman* Empire. *Josephus* says, when *Titus* entred the City, he admired the Strong-Holds and Towers which the *Jews* had deserted, and said, *Surely God assisted us in this War, and drove the Jews from those Fortresses, from which no human Power could ever have forced them.* He adds, that 1100000 People dy'd by the Sword, £*c.* and 87000 were taken Captives, and the City was so totally destroy'd, that not one Stone was left upon another, as our Saviour foretold. As this Destruction happen'd during the Solemnities of the *Passover*, to which the *Jews* repaired from all Nations, the Number of Persons destroy'd here at that time can't seem *hyperbolical*, for *Cestius*, *Nero's* Lieutenant of *Judea*, sent him word, that at a *Passover* in his Time, the High Priests number'd 2 Millions and 700000 People, that came to make their Offerings. A. C. 123. The Emperor *Adrian* began to build the City, and called it *Ælia Capitolina*: The modern Town looks but very poorly, and has nothing worth mentioning, but some few Churches and Monasteries.

*Judea's
Division.*

Situation.

Air.

Soil.

Judea was divided into Tribes, then into six Provinces, viz. *Galilea*, *Samaria*, and *Judea* on this side the *Jordan* towards the *Mediterranean*, and *Trachonites*, *Iturea*, and *Idumea*. It is situated about Lat. 31 and 34, and Long. 35 and 40. So that its Extent from S. to N. is about 180 Miles, and from E. to W. 140, where broadest in the S. but not above 70 in the North. The *Air* of this Country, except those Parts adjacent to the *Dead Sea*, is very temperate and healthful; and the *Soil* was formerly so fertile, that it produced all Things in great Plenty; and maintained such vast Multitudes of People, that it could furnish 1300000 fighting Men, according to the Musters which *Joab* gave to *David*. The Hills were covered with Vines and Olive-Trees: And *Josephus* tells us, that the great Plain by the *Red-Sea* produced such Herbs and Shrubs as fed Bees, which supplied the Country with Honey, as the numerous Herds of Cattel fed, and Fields sown with Corn, in the Vallies, supplied them with Milk, Meat, and Corn: But now the Country is for most part a Wilderness; and there is no forming any Idea of its antient State, when under a Blessing, from its present State, under a visible Curse.

Rarities.

Among the *Rarities* of this Country, we may reckon, 1. The *Dead Sea*, so called because its Water is standing, and has an uncommon Force to bear up Men's Bodies that swim in it. The Water is clear, salt to the highest degree, and extreme bitter and nauseous; and no Fish can live in it. It is also called *Asphaltites* or *Bituminous Sea*; and is not 50 Miles from S. W. to N. E. nor 20 from E. to W. It is the Place where *Sodom*, &c. once stood: And tho' the River *Jordan* runs into it, yet no River does visibly go out of it. The *Air* is hereabout very unwholesome, because of the Vapours which arise from thence in such Quantity, that no Bird is able to fly from one side of the Sea unto the other. 2. Nigh to the Place of antient *Sarepta*, now called *Saphet*, or *Srafendi*, are many Caves and Apartments hewn out of the firm Rock, which some vainly imagine to have been the Habitation of Men in the Golden Age, before they dwelt in Houses; but others with greater shew of Probability, take them for the Caves of the *Sidians*, mentioned in the Book of *Joshuah*, under the Name of *Mearah*. 3. On Mount

Carmel

Carmel is a Monastery of *Carmelite* Friars, with a Church dedicated to the blessed Virgin, and under it is a *Cave*, which is reported to be the antient Dwelling-Place of the Prophet *Elijah*. On the same Mount are found a great many Stones, that have the lively Impression of Fish-Bones on them; as also abundance of petrify'd Fruit, particularly Melons or Plums, or Stones of that Resemblance. 4. Not far from the Brook *Cedron* stands a part of the Pillar of *Ab-salom*, which he erected in his Life-time, out of an ardent Desire to eternize his Name; and nigh to it is a great heap of small Stones, which daily increases, because either *Jews* or *Mahometans* passing by, seldom fail to throw one at the same, and that out of Abhorrence of the Son's Rebellion against the Father. 5. On Mount *Calvary* is the Church of the *Holy Sepulchre*, hitherto visited by Multitudes of *Christian* Pilgrims, who flock to it from all Parts of the World, either out of Devotion, or for Curiosity. It is divided into several Apartments, and contains several Chapels and Altars belonging to several sorts of Christians; and at the Entry of one of those Chapels is the Sepulchre of *Godfrey* of *Bouillan* on one side, and that of his Brother *Baldwin* on the other: Here, as well as in several other Places, they pretend to shew the Places where our *Saviour*, *St. John*, the *Virgin Mary*, *Lazarus*, &c. lived, &c.

The mountainous Parts of this Country are mostly possessed by *Arabs* (of whom in *Ara- Inhabitants.*
bia,) and the Valleys by the *Moors* (of whom *Manners.*
in *Africa*.) The other People residing here are a few *Turks*, and many *Christians*, (especially *Greeks*, of whom in *Greece*) and intermixt with all these are some *Jews*, of which in this Place, The modern *Jews* are generally characterized thus: They have black Hair and Eyes, are of a swarthy Complexion, and stinking, vagabond, treacherous, and obstinate. A People who live now as mere Aliens, not only in most other Parts of the Earth, but also in this (once) their own Country. They are indeed universally given to Trading, where-ever dispersed, but as generally addicted to Cozening and Usury, where-ever they find a fit Opportunity: A People so singularly stigmatized by Heaven, that where-ever they be, they are easily known to be whatever they are in Reality. But if most of them be thus corrupted in their Morals, yet it is to be observed, that many of them are good, honest, and industrious; but of them it may be said, *Rare aves in Silvis.*

The Country is not populous, because a *Populousness*: great many thousand *Jews* have been destroy'd in the Wars; 2. because the Country is often plundered by the *Arabs*; and 3. because the present Government does not encourage People to go and *Language*. settle there. The *Language* spoke here is according to that of the several Nations that are settled here. The *Jews* have now a peculiar Language to themselves, and few of them are able to understand, much less to speak the *Hebrew* Tongue.

How, and by whom this Country was governed, till it became a *Roman* Province, is best learned from the historical Part of the Scriptures, and from the Writings of the noted *Jewish* Historian *Josephus*, who lived under the Empire of *Titus*. *Judea* being brought under the *Roman* Yoke, continued under that State till the beginning of the seventh Century, when it was invaded by the *Persians*, and afterwards made a Prey by the *Saracens*, yet rescued from them by the *Christians* in 1099, under *Godfrey* of *Bullion*; but in 1187 it was retaken by *Saladine* King of *Syria* and *Egypt*, and remained subject to the *Califes* of *Egypt* until 1517, when it was taken by the *Turks*, and is still in their Hands. Some Parts of it are governed by *Arabian* Princes, Tributaries to the Grand Seignior, and the rest is under the *Bashaws* of *Damascus* or *Tripoli*.

The modern *Jews*, both here and elsewhere, *Religion*. adhere still as closely to the *Mosaical* Dispensation, as their present Circumstances, in a dispersed and despised Condition, will allow. Their Service chiefly consists in reading the Law in their Synagogues, together with various Prayers, which they perform with very little, or no appearance of Devotion. Ever since the Destruction of their Temple at *Jerusalem*, they make no Sacrifices. The chief Heads of their present Belief and Practice are as follows: 1. They all agree in the acknowledgment of a Supreme Being, both essentially and personally one; but entertain some ridiculous Apprehensions concerning him, as particularly the great Pleasure they vainly imagine he takes in reading the *Talmud*. 2. They acknowledge a twofold Law of God, viz. a *Written* and *Unwritten* one: The *Written* Word is that delivered by God to the *Israelites*, and recorded in the Five Books of *Moses*; the *Unwritten* was also, as they pretend, delivered by God to *Moses*, and handed

ed down from him by oral *Tradition*, and now to be received with the same Regard and Attention as the former. 3. They assert the Perpetuity of their Law, and believe there can be nothing added to, or taken from it. 4. They believe that the *Messias* is not yet come. 5. They think that the sacred Name of *God* can't be blasphemed by Men, if they but refrain from uttering the word *fehovah*. 6. They condemn all manner of Images, tho' only designed as a bare Representation of Persons to After-Ages. 7. They imagine that the *Sabbath* Day is so strictly to be observed, that Works even of Necessity and Mercy are to be superseded on that Day. Lastly, They have also several other Opinions, which sometimes are very different, according to the several Countries in which they now reside; as you may see more at large in *Buxtorf. Synag. Judaic.* and in several other Books.

6. Q. As *Turkomania* and *Diarbeck* are near one another, could you, to avoid Prolixity, tell me the several Particulars of those two Countries together?

A. Yes; and that under the Name of *Euphratian Provinces*. *Turkomania* is so called from the *Turks*, a *Scythian* People, who broke through the *Caspian* Straits, and possessed themselves of these adjacent Provinces, formerly called *Armenia*. *Diarbeck* is so called, as some think, from an *Arabick* Word signifying the Place of Abode, or the Colony of *Beker*, the Chief of a Tribe among the *Arabians*. These Provinces have *Persia* on the E. *Arabia* on the S. *Natolia* and part of *Syria* on the W. and *Georgia* on the N. *Erzerum* near one of the Heads of *Euphrates*, Lat. 40. is the Capital of *Turcomania*. It is a pretty large Town, and lies in a fine Plain, at the foot of a Chain of Mountains, where it snows in *June*, when the Heats in the Valleys are troublesome. They have but little Spring. It is a Thorowfare and a Resting-Place for the Merchandize of the *Indies*. There are about 18000 *Turks*, 6000 *Armenians*, and 400 *Greeks* in the Town. The *Beglerbeg* of the Province has here an old ill-built *Seraglio*, and the *Aga* of the *Janizaries* lives in a Fort in the highest Part of the Town. *Diarbekir*, Lat. 37-15, on the Bank of the *Tygris*, 180 N. E. of *Aleppo*, is one of the most populous and best Trading Towns of *Asian Turkey*.

It

It is also called *Caramit*, or *Amida* the Black, because its Walls are built with black Stones. Here all the red *Morquens* are wash'd; and they have also a Manufacture of red Cotton Cloth. Here are about 20000 Christians, two thirds of whom are *Armenians*, the rest *Nestorians*, a few *Jacobites*, and some *Capuchins*. The *Bashaw* is one of the most considerable of the *Turkish* Empire.

As for the Division of these Countries, I think they may be divided so; *Turcomania*,

1. into *Turcomania* properly so called, and 2. the *Curdistan*. *Diarbeck*, 1. into *Diarbeck* properly so called, and 2. *Yerack*. I chuse to divide them so (tho' other Authors put *Curdistan* in *Diarbeck*) because by several Relations I have read about the *Turcomans* and *Curds*, methinks they are almost the same People; and besides, they are Neighbours, and intermixt with one another.

Turcomania is divided into

Chief Towus.

- | | |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Turcomania</i> proper, | <i>Erzerum, Cars, Van, Betlis.</i> |
| 2. <i>Turkish Curdistan</i> , | <i>Sheresul, Niniveh.</i> |

Diarbeck into

- | | |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Diarbeck</i> prop. | <i>Diarbekir, Orfa, Birs, Mosul.</i> |
| 2. <i>Yerack</i> , | <i>Bagdat, Babylone, Balsora.</i> |

Of which in their Order.

Turcomania, antiently *Armenia Major*, has on the S. the Mounts *Taurus* and *Niphate*, separating it from *Diarbeck*. It is fruitful in Corn, Fruit, and Cattel, especially Horses; it has a good deal of Silk, Bole *Armeniack*, and *Amomum*. The Country is mountainous, and the Air more inclinable to Cold than Heat. The People are either *Turks* or *Christian Greeks*, under a *Patriarch* residing at *Ischmiazin*: The first mind nothing but their Cattel, and the others are a good and sober sort of People, very laborious, and skilled in Trade. All of them are very hard used by the *Bashaws* and *Janizaries*. *Van* and *Cars* are good and strong Towns, and each the Residence of a *Bashaw*. *Betlis* is a strong Castle, and the Seat of a Prince, who is independant both on the *Turks* and *Persians*, tho' encompassed by their Dominions. He is able to raise 25000 Horse, besides Foot.

Curdistan,

Curdistan, or the Country of the *Curds*, is a part of antient *Assyria*, towards the N. E. *Curdistan* of *Persia*. 'Tis full of Hills and Rivers, and is subject partly to the *Turks*, and partly to the *Persians*; but there are several *Emirs* or *Beys* who join either of those two States, as their own Concerns demand it. Some suppose them to be the Posterity of the antient *Chaldeans*; others pretend that they are of a *Parthian* Extraction, and some will have them to be the same with the *Drusians*, viz. the Remains of the Western *Christians* that fled to the Mountains, when the *Turks* conquered the *Holy Land*, but have so far lost their Religion, that some of them only retain *Baptism*. However, the *Curds* call themselves *Jesides*, or Followers of *Jesus*, but worship the Devil more than God, and gives this Reason, that God is a good Man, and does no Body hurt; but the Devil is a mischievous Fellow, and must be pleased with Sacrifices. These *Curds* are great Robbers and Plunderers of *Caravans*. They roam about from Pasture to Pasture with their Flocks, Children, and Wives. *Niniveh* on the *Tygris*, *Niniveh*. over-again *Mosul*, was antiently the Capital of *Assyria*, a famous and large Town; but 'tis now nothing but Rubbish.

Diarbeck is the antient *Mesopotamia*, which was so called because situated betwixt the two *Diarbeck*. Rivers *Euphrates* and *Tigris*. It belongs entirely to the *Turks*, and has several good Towns. *Mosul* is the Residence of a *Bashaw*, *Mosul*. and of the Patriarch of the *Nestorians*. *Har-ran* is supposed to be the Place where *Thare* and *Abraham* lived; it is also famous for being the Place where *Crassus* was defeated and killed by the *Parthians* or *Syrians*. The Inhabitants of *Ourfa* think it *Ourfa*. the Place, where *Abraham* dwelt, and where the antient *Edeffa* stood. They pretend to shew the Castle where *Abgarus* lived, when he sent a Message to our Saviour, and other Things which smell of the Legend.

Terack is the *Chaldea* or *Babylonia* of the Antients, and is thought to be the Place where *Terack*. God created the first Man, and set him in the Garden of *Eden* betwixt the Place where the Rivers *Euphrates*

phra'es and *Tigris* join in their Waters, and that where they separate again. Here was also the Plain of *Schinbar*, where

Men after the Flood did build the Tower of *Bagdat*. *Babel*. *Bagdat* on the East side of the *Tigris*,

Lat. 47 and a half, is now the Capital of this Country, and is commonly mistaken for *Babylon*. Hereabouts stood *Seleucia* and *Ctesiphon*. *Bagdat* is a large, strong, and trading Town, taken by the *Turks* from the *Persians* in 1638. 'Tis much frequented by Pilgrims of the Sect of *Haly*, who, they say, lived here. *Babylon*, formerly the Metropolis of this Country, and the largest, oldest, and most famous Town in the World, is now so much ruined, according to Scripture Prophecy, for the Wickedness of the Inhabitants, that Geographers cannot agree where its Ruins lie. However, most of them think that its Ruins lie near *Euphrates*, about 40 Miles S. of *Bagdat*. The adjacent Lands are so desolate and barren, that one would doubt of its antient Fertility, and the Largeness of the City, did not the vast Ruins still to be seen banish all Cause of Suspicion. They are a Receptacle for Lions, Jackals, Caracoulacks, which resemble large Cats, but have black Ears half a Foot long; Serpents and other venomous Creatures, among which are reckoned dangerous Lizzards, with three Heads. All this is a visible Accomplishment of *Jeremiah* 50. 3, 13, 19, and 51. 37, 38, 43. *Balsora* or *Bassora*, about Lat. 31, 200 Miles S. E. of *Bagdat*, and 40 from the Sea, at the Conflux of the *Euphrates* and *Tygris*, is a great and rich Town, and has a good and safe Harbour, where the *English* and *Dutch* bring several sorts of Commodities from the *East Indies*, which are sent to *Cairo*, *Smirna*, *Aleppo*, *Damascus*, &c. It had formerly its *Arabian* Prince or *Emir*, but the *Turks* took it in 1688: Some say that they have lost it since that time, and that it is governed by their own *Emir* again.

Balsora. 13, 19, and 51. 37, 38, 43. *Balsora* or *Bassora*, about Lat. 31, 200 Miles S. E. of *Bagdat*, and 40 from the Sea, at the Conflux of the *Euphrates* and *Tygris*, is a great and rich Town, and has a good and safe Harbour, where the *English* and *Dutch* bring several sorts of Commodities from the *East Indies*, which are sent to *Cairo*, *Smirna*, *Aleppo*, *Damascus*, &c. It had formerly its *Arabian* Prince or *Emir*, but the *Turks* took it in 1688: Some say that they have lost it since that time, and that it is governed by their own *Emir* again.

Situation. All these Provinces are situated betwixt Lat. 30 and 40, Long. 40 and 50; so that their greatest Extent from S. to N. is 600 Miles, and from E. to W. about 300. The *Air* is here temperate and healthful, and the Soil very fit for Pasture, especially on the Banks of *Euphrates* and *Tygris*: And in many Places it yields abundance of Grain; but on the S. Parts it is apt to be spoil'd by the overflowing of the Tides. However, these being in-land Provinces,

Air. here temperate and healthful, and the Soil very fit for Pasture, especially on the Banks of *Euphrates* and *Tygris*: And in many Places it yields abundance of Grain; but on the S. Parts it is apt to be spoil'd by the overflowing of the Tides. However, these being in-land Provinces,

do not manage any considerable Trade with foreign Parts; and therefore their Commodities are not numerous; but in *Diarbeck* they get considerably, because 'tis the Thorowfare from *Turkey* into the *Indies*.

Nigh to *Ourfa* is a Hill remarkable for several Grotto's, in which are to be seen very *Rarities*. antient Sepulchres of many Primitive Christians. 2. At *Carasara* are many little Rooms hewn out of the Rock, which were probably some private Cells for antient Christians who affected such Retirements. Each of them has a sort of Table and Bench, with a reposing Place, all artificially cut out of the Rock, and over the Door the Figure of a Cross. 3. Near *Carklequen* in *Tureomania* is a huge Rock, in which are several private artificial Apartments, generally reckoned the Retiring-Place of *St. Chrysostom* during his Exile, as the Christians of those Places alledge. 4. About a Day and half Journey from *Bagdat*, they pretend to have the Selpulchre of *Ezekiel*, which is visited by several Pilgrim Jews. 5. About the same Distance from *Bagdat* (but between *Euphrates* and *Tigris*) is a prodigious Heap of Earth, intermixt with a multitude of Bricks, which are called *Nimrod's* by the Christians and Jews in those Parts, and commonly thought by the vulgar sort to be the Remains of the renowned Tower of *Babel*; but others rather follow the Opinion of the modern *Arabs*, who call it *Agartouf*, and believe it to be rais'd by an *Arabian* Prince, as a *Beacon* or *Watch-Tower*, to call his dispersed Subjects together upon all Occasions. 6. From *Mosul* to *Surat* a dangerous Wind called *Samiel* rages by Land, and is supposed to be the *East* Winds mentioned by *Job*. It is mixed with Streaks of Fire, as small as Hair, which kill those who breath it, so that they fall instantly dead; or if they have time to speak, cry out that they burn within. When they are lifted up, they are as black as a Coal, and the Flesh comes from their Bones. Such as perceive it coming frequently escape, by falling with their Faces flat to the Ground. This is supposed to proceed from sulphurous (or rather *Naphtatick*) Exhalations, that kindle by being tossed in the Wind; but 'tis to be observ'd that 'tis not felt on the Water, those inflamed Vapours being dispersed by the Breezes, or moist Air that rises from the Water.

Language.

The *Turkish, Persian, and Armenian* Tongues are much used in these Provinces, especially the *Turkish*. In *Diarbeck* the *Armenian* is made use of by the Christians in their Divine Service. And next to the *Mahometan*, the prevailing Religion is that of the *Armenians*.

Religion Armenian.

The principal Points thereof are these three:

1. They allow the *Apostolick* and *Nicene* Creeds, but agree with the *Greeks* in asserting the Procession of the Holy Ghost from the Father alone. 2. They believe that Christ at his Descent from Hell freed from thence all the Damned Souls, and reprieved them till the End of the World, when they shall be remanded to eternal Flames. 3. They also believe that the Souls of the Righteous are not to be admitted unto the beatifick Vision, until after their Resurrection, and yet they make Prayers to departed Saints, adore their Pictures, and burn Lamps before them, praying likewise for the Dead in general. They have of late been taught the strange Doctrine of Transubstantiation by *Popish Emissaries*, but they do still give the Eucharist in both Kinds to the Laity, and even to Children, and use unleavened Bread soaked in Wine. They have also a vast Multitude of Festivals and Fasts, which they punctually observe.

7. Q. Pray let me hear somewhat about the *Universities*, &c. in *Turkey* in *Asia*?

Turkey in Asia. A. The *Turks* are such Enemies to Letters in general, that they not only despise all acquired Knowledge, but the very Art of Printing (the most effectual Means of propagating Knowledge) is expressly prohibited by their Law; so that the Reader must not expect to find the Seats of the *Muses* (Universities) among them. The Christians themselves have but very little Knowledge taught them here by their Priests or Monks, who are themselves very ignorant.

Archbishops. As the State of Christianity is very deplorable thro' the *Ottoman* Dominions, and that not only the Heads of the Clergy, but also their very Seats are frequently altered, according as their *Tyrannical* Master (the *Turk*) proposes Advantage by such Alterations: And as also a great many titular Prelates are often created, it is equally vain to expect, as impossible to give, an exact List of all Bishops (whether real or nominal) in those Parts; so that we shall only mention the *Patriarchs*,

triarchs; the Chiefs of whom are, 1. Those of *Constantinople*, *Jerusalem*, *Alexandria*, and *Antioch*; as also two *Armenian* (one of them residing at *Ischmiazin*, and the other at *Sis* in *Aladulia*) and a *Nestorian* one, residing at *Mosul*.

The established Religion is the *Mahometan*; but Persons of all Professions are tolerated on *Religion*. paying some Money; and so there are some *Jews*, and vast Numbers of Christians of all Perswasions, as *Armenians*, *Nestorians*, *Jacobites*, *Maronites*, *Melchites*, &c. But most lamentable is the State of those Christians, not only in respect of that woful Ignorance under which they universally labour, and the *Turkish* Tyranny and Insolence they are exposed to, but also on account of those dismal Heats and Divisions, those numerous Factions and Parties now among them; for they are so bitterly inveterate against one another, and their Animosities frequently come to such a height, as to give fresh Occasion to their common Enemy to harrahs them more and more. However, those called *Melchites* reject Purgatory, *Melchites*. and disclaim the *Pope's* Supremacy, and in the main follow the Doctrine of the *Greek Church*, except that they allow two Persons in Jesus Christ, as it was taught in the Council of *Chalcedon* by the Instigation of the Emperor *Marcian*; wherefore they have the Name of *Melchites*, i. e. *Royalists*, put upon them. Their Patriarch resides now at *Damascus*. The *Maronites* are *Maronites*. so called, either from the Heretick *Maron*, or from a Bishop, or a Town of that Name. They acknowledge the *Pope's* Authority, and yet have a *Patriarch* at *Cannobin* on Mount *Lebanon*. Most of them are *Eutychians* or *Monothelites*. The *Jacobites* are *Jacobites*. so called from *Jacobus Syrus* their Founder, and a great Stickler for *Eutyches* and *Dioscorus*. Their Patriarch assumes the Title of *Antioch*; and some of them have made their Submission to *Rome*. However, they communicate in both Kinds, allow Priests Marriage, reject Purgatory and Prayers for the Dead. The Number of each of those sorts of Christians is about 40 or 50000.

We shall speak of the Isles belonging to the *Asian Turkey*, in the general Description of *Islands*. the *Asian Islands*, after *Muscovy* in *Asia*.

8. Q. As *Georgia* and *Arabia* are by some described as a part of *Turkey* in *Asia*, could you tell me here some Particulars about those Countries?

Georgia's Name. *A. Georgia* in general contained antiently *Iberia*, *Albania*, and *Colchis*, and is thought to be so called from *Georgi*, a People who formerly inhabited those Parts, or as *Gogia* from *Gog*. It has *Circassia* on the N: the *Euxine* on the W. *Turcomania* on the S. and the *Caspian Sea* on the E.

Limits. *Teflis*, Lat. 43, Long. 42. is the Capital. *Chief Town* It lies on the N. of the River *Kur*. It is also the ordinary Residence of a *Prince*, who is subject to the *Sophi* of *Persia*. It was several times taken by *Turks*, but recovered by the *Persians*. This Country is divided into four great Parts.

Chief Towns.

1. <i>Mingrelia</i> ,	<i>Rues.</i>
2. <i>Georgia</i> , { <i>Carduel</i> ,	<i>Teflis</i> , <i>Gory</i> , <i>Suram</i> .
{ <i>Caket</i> ,	<i>Cakers</i> or <i>Zagain</i> .
3. <i>Guriel</i> ,	<i>Gonie</i> , <i>Aalzike</i> .
4. <i>Imiretta</i> ,	<i>Cotatis</i> , <i>Scander</i> , <i>Regia</i> , <i>Scoria</i> .

Of which in their Order.

Mingrelia. *Mingrelia* contains most of the antient *Colchis*, famous for the Expedition of the *Argonauts*. It has on the North the *Abcas* or *Circassians*. The Air is temperate, but unwholesome, because of the continual Wet, which in the Summer breeds Pestilential Vapours. The Natives seldom live above 60, and Foreigners in a Year's time become yellow, dry, and very weak. The Country is full of Hills and Plains, almost covered with Wood, except some arable Lands which they are forced to preserve, by continually grubbing up the Roots of Trees that spread into it. Their Fruits have little Taste, except their Wines, which are good. Their common Grain is Gomm, small as Coriander-seed, and resembling Millet: It makes good cooling, but laxative Bread. Their chief *Commodities* are human Creatures, Silk, Flax, Ox-skins, Martins, Beavers, Box, Wax, and Honey, which the Inhabitants barter for Carpets, Cloth, Cotton, Bows, Iron, and Copper. The Men

Men are well shaped, but extremely wicked, and glory in Theft, Robbery, Murder, Treachery, Adultery, and Ravishing. They have two or three Wives, besides several Concubines. The Women are handsome, witty, and civil, but withal proud, cruel, treacherous, and lascivious. Both Sexes are excessive Drinkers, and sell their Children to the *Turks*; and think it no Crime to kill such as are newly born, (if they have not enough to maintain them) and those who are sick and past Recovery; because they think it frees them from a great deal of Misery. When the Husband surpriseth his Wife in Adultery, he may, and does ordinarily oblige the Gallant to give a *Hog*, which they eat together. The Country is but thinly peopled because of the great Numbers sold to the *Persians* and *Turks*. Their Religion was formerly that of the *Greek Church*, and they pretend to have been converted by *St. Andrew*, Their chief Bishop is called *Catholicos*; but the Prince chuses and deposes him at Pleasure. His spiritual Revenue is great; he has 400 Vassals who furnish him with Necessaries, and many Superfluities; but he is so ignorant, that he can scarce read. Their Religion is properly a Medley of *Christianity*, *Judaism*, *Mahometism*, and *Heathenism*. *Rues* is the most considerable of the ten Castles which are in this Province, because 'tis the usual Residence of the *Prince*: He has about 20000 Crowns *per Annum* for Customs, selling of Slaves, Fines, &c. He lays this up, because his Slaves serve him for nothing, and his Lands furnish him with more Provision than he can spend.

Georgia, or *Gurgistan*, lies S. E. of *Mingrelia*. The Air is hot in Summer, dry and cold in Winter. 'Tis mountainous and woody, except in the middle. It abounds with all sorts of Corn, Fruits, and Herbs. They export much Silk, and very good Wine. The *Georgians* are witty, and capable of Arts, and the handsomest of *Asia*, but drowned in Ignorance and Vice; are perfidious, ungrateful, proud, and implacable when provok'd: And yet the Women are more debauched than the Men. Their great Men make absolute Slaves of their Vassals, who must work for them without Diet or Money. They have a Patriarch and several Bishops, and place all their Religion in Fasts and long Prayers. Their Churches are built generally on the Tops of Mountains, where they bow to them at a Distance, but scarce enter them

them once in ten Years. This Country is Tributary to the King of *Persia*, but the *Vice-Roy* is always a Prince of this Country, and obliged to profess the *Mahometan* Religion. He disposes of the Bishop's Sees. In this and some other neighbouring Provinces, there have been some Alterations made in the Government since the Victories obtain'd by the *Czar's* Troops over the Rebel *Mirimeis's* Army.

Guriel. The Country of *Guriel* is but small, and lies along the Coast, from the River *Phasis* to the Castle of *Gome*, which is garrisoned by *Turks*. As it is on the S. of *Mingrelia*, 'tis much like that Country in all Respect, except that it is somewhat better. Its Prince is Tributary to the *Turks*, to whom he pays 46 Boys and Girls. The *Turks* are also Masters of *Gonie* and *Acalzike*.

Imiretta. *Imiretta*, antiently *Iberia*, is 60 Miles long, 20 broad, full of Woods, Mountains, and lovely Valleys, which yield Corn, Pulse, Herbs of all sorts, and maintain great Herds of Cattel. They have some Iron Mines. The antient *Iberians* were a warlike People, and used to set up as many Pillars about the Graves of the Men, as they had killed Enemies in their Life-time. They were divided into Tribes, who had all things in common, and the eldest was their chief Ruler. They married always in their own Tribes, as the *Jews* did. The present Inhabitants differ but little from the *Mingrelians*.

Situation. All these Provinces are situated betwixt Lat. 40 and 46, along the Coasts of the *Caspian* and *Euxine* Seas, and form a sort of *Isthmus* betwixt them. The *Air* and *Soil* in general are not good. Their chief Commodities are Wax, Honey, Pitch, Silks, Horses, and Wine. They have also Sene, black Hemlock, Scammony, &c. and a vast many Pheasants, so called from the River *Phasus*. Among the Rarities we may reckon the Golden Fleece of the Antients, which some think to be Gold Mines, or Trade of rich Furs: But others say it was nothing else but the Fleeces which the Inhabitants were used to put in the Stream to catch the Gold which the Water brought down from the Mountains. 2. Here especially on Mount *Caucasus* are Tygers,

gers, Lions, Leopards, Jackals, which some will have to be the *Hyana's* of the Antients, because they are so greedy of human Flesh, that they look for it in the Graves. 3. On Mount *Cyâis* are a kind of white Bears, tho' those on Mount *Caucasus*, where there is Snow almost all the Year round, be black. 4. In several Places, where they ride on Horseback, the Earth resounds, because, as they say, there was a subterraneous Communication between the two neighbouring Seas.

The People of these Countries are very ignorant, and great Drunkards, and no wonder if they be so wicked and so poor. The King of *Imiretta* formerly governed *Mingrelia*, *Guriel*, and the *Abcas*, after they shook off the Yoke of the *Greek* Emperors; but falling into Civil Wars, called in the *Turks* to their Assistance, who made them Tributary. But now they have several petty Kings, tributary either to the *Turks* or *Persians*, and of late to the *Muscovites*. They are almost always at Variance against one another. But those Princes are absolute within their Dominions, and boast of their being descended from King *David*. Their Nobility is very numerous, and obliged to serve their Kings with Soldiers. These Nobles are absolute over their Subjects, and often sell them to the *Turks*: And well may they do it, seeing their Subjects do almost the same against one another, especially with young Girls, which they send like so many Recruits either to the *Grand Seignior's* or *Sophi's Seraglio*. They do decide Quarrels among their Vassals amicably, but determine their own by Arms. They have but one Shirt and one Pair of Breeches *per Annum*, which they seldom wash, but shake them once or twice a Week over the Fire, to clear them of the Vermin, with which they are sufficiently pestered.

The Language spoke here is either the corrupt *Greek*, or the *Persian*; for the *Georgians* like the *Persians* and their Manners better than they do the *Turks*. The Low Clergy are so ignorant, and wicked, and despised, that they are but mere Slaves, like the Laity: And tho' their Patriarch-Bishops be look'd upon as Noblemen, yet they are also wretchedly ignorant. Their Religion is *Christianity*; but mix'd with many idolatrous and extravagant Ceremonies and Opinions. They reckon a future Life, the Resurrection, and the Day of Judgment, to be Fables devised by Men. Husbands buy their Wives; give most for a Maid, less for a

Inhabitants.

Government:

Language:

Religion.

Widow,

Widow, and least for a divorced Woman. Barrenness, or an ill Temper they reckon a good Cause of Divorce. But in *Carduel*, the Prince and the chief ones profess *Mahometism*, in order to get Preferments, Pensions, and other Advantages from the *Sophi*.

9. Q. What do you call *Arabia*?

A. Some Countries lying on the S. of *Syria*, so called either from the *Hebrew* word *Arab*, i. e. to mix, darken, or trade; the *Arabs* being a mixture of several sorts of People, of a dark Colour, and much given to Trade. Others say, that *Arabia* is so called from *Arabah* a Solitude near *Medina*; and some derive the Name from the *Hebrew* word *Harabi*, a Robber or Thief, a Practice these People have always been guilty of. However, this Country is a large *Peninsula*, very much like the Head of an Hatchet, and has the *Persian* Gulph on the E. *Palestina*, *Syria*, and *Diarbeck* on the N. the *Red-Sea* and *Isthmus* of *Suez* on the W. the *Arabian* or *Great Indian* Ocean on the S. *Mecca*, Lat. 21 and a half, Long. 42, about 36 m. E. from the *Red-Sea*, and 180 S. E. from *Medina*, is supposed to be *Mahomet's* Birth-place. It stands in a Valley, surrounded with Mountains, and the neighbouring Territory is very barren. They have no Water in the Town but what is brought from elsewhere. However, the Superstition of the *Mahometans*, and the continual Rendezvous of Pilgrims has rendered this Town great and rich, tho' not strong. There are about 6000 Houses, most of them of Brick. Some say, that no Christians are allowed to come within five Miles of it, on Pain of being burnt without Mercy.

The *Arabs* do commonly divide their Country into several Provinces; but the *European* Geographers divide it into three great Parts, viz. *Arabia Petraea*, or *Barnaat*. 2. *Arabia Deserta*, or *Be-riara*, or *Arden*. 3. *Arabia Felix*, or *Yamin*.

Chief Towns.

1. <i>Arabia</i>	{	Northern,	<i>Herac</i> , <i>Montreal</i> , or <i>Petra</i> , <i>Tor</i> ,
<i>Petraea</i> ,		Southern,	<i>Eilan</i> , <i>Mecca</i> , <i>Medina</i> ,

2. *Arabia*

2. *Arabia Deserta*,

Anah, Tangia, Sukana.

3. *Arabia Felix*
contains

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| 1. The K. of <i>Aden</i> , | <i>Aden, Mocha, Zibit, Dol-</i>
<i>far.</i> |
| 2. The K. of the Great <i>Yaman</i> , | <i>Amanzirifdin, Mascate,</i>
<i>Fartach.</i> |
| 3. The Territories of
the Emirs of | } <i>Vodana, Daderca, Sor-</i>
<i>Mascalat.</i>
<i>Lapsa,</i>
<i>Elcatif, Babr.</i> |
| 4. ——— ——— | |
| 5. ——— ——— | |
| 6. ——— ——— | |

Arabia Petraea is the N. W. Part of *Arabia*, so called from the antient Town *Petra*, now *Arabia Petraea*. *Harach*, i. e. a *Rock*, because it is built on a stony Rock. It is a barren and uninhabited Country, where the *Israelites* lived 40 Years, and the *Moabites*, *Amalekites*, *Midianites*, and *Idumeans* inhabited, as well as the *Nabathai*, the Posterity of *Nabajoth*. Here is the Wilderness of *Sinai*, higher than the rest of the Country, and about 150 m. from *Cairo*. Towards the North side lie the Mountains *Horeb* and *Sinai*: The latter is highest, and now called *St. Catherine's Mount*. These Mountains are very steep and high, but not proportionable broad. The *Greeks* have here some Monasteries.

Arabia Deserta is S. and S. E. of *Arabia Petraea*. It is so called from its sandy and barren Desarts, except towards the *Euphrates*, and along the Coasts of the *Red-Sea*, where it is more fruitful and better cultivated; but in other Parts 'tis desert, without Man, Beast, or Bird. The antient Inhabitants are named *Kedarim* in Scripture, from dwelling in Tents. Some say it was the Country of *Job*, and of the Wise Men that came from the *East* to visit our Saviour. There are many Princes Vassals to the *Turks*, but some of them to the *Persians*, to whom the People are most inclined. They are reported to be naturally grave and moderate, and laugh very seldom. They avoid saying any thing that they think contrary to good Manners, are averse to evil speaking one of another, and have a great Veneration for Bread, Salt, and Beards. *Medina*, Lat. 25, *Medina*. Long. 42, 90 m. E. from the *Red-Sea*, is by

the

the *Arabs* called the *City of the Prophet*, because *Mahomet* was buried here. It has about 1200 Houses. Christians are not allow'd to come within 50 Miles of this Place on Pain of Death. All *Turks* are obliged by their Principles to visit *Mahomet's* Tomb once in their Life-time, but the Rich are dispensed with for Money, and the Rabble who do it are reckoned *Saints* ever after. The *Grand Seignior* is not Sovereign of *Mecca* and *Medina*; for the *Cheriff*, or Prince of *Mahomet's* Race, who governs them, is only his Vassal. And tho' the *Turks* have destroyed the Empire of the *Caliphs*, *Mahomet's* immediate Successors, and that upon this the *Grand Seignior* by Right of Conquest succeeded to all the Dignity and Authority of those *Caliphs*, and became the Chief of the Religion which is owned by the four chief *Mahometan* Sects; yet on the Declension and Division of that Empire, *Mahomet's* Race reserved the Sovereignty and the Possession of those famous Towns, and the Country where they lie, without Opposition from the other *Mahometan* Princes, or any Dependence upon them. On the contrary, the most powerful *Mahometan* Princes have an extream Veneration for the *Cheriffs*, and the Places which they possess, and frequently send them Offerings, and very considerable Presents: And among all their pompous Titles, the *Grand Seigniors* call themselves *Servants of the two sacred Towns of Mecca and Medina*.

Arabia Felix is so called because the Country is a great deal better than the two first, and contains several Kingdoms and Towns, some of them Vassals to the *Turks* or *Persians*, and others to *independant Princes and States*. The North Parts are sandy Desarts, and uninhabited Mountains; and along the *Red-Sea*, tis barren. In this Part only of all *Arabia* near *Betelsaguy* an 100 m. N. of *Mocha* are to be found *Coffee* Trees, and chiefly in three or four Districts among the Mountains, which have Store of other Trees and Fruits, good Springs of Water, agreeable Breezes of fresh Air, and almost a continual Spring. This Country was formerly divided into *Femen*, *Higiaz*, *Tahaman*, *Negid*, *Jemaman*, and *Babren*. The King of *Jaman* is very potent, and descends from *Haly*, but not in a Lineal Succession. The King of *Mocha* and *Aden* is also potent; but the other *Emirs* are Tributary to the *Grand Seignior*. *Aden* is a fine, strong, and large Town, has

has a good Harbour. They have Fairs here, but only in the Night-time, because of the scorching Heat of the Sun in the Day-time. *Zibit* is supposed to be the antient *Saba*, from whence came a Queen to visit King *Zibit: Solomon*. *Dolfar* furnishes the best *Frankincense* of all the Country.

10. Q. But what have you to say about *Arabia* in general?

A. It reaches from Lat. 13 to 33, and Long. 35 to 60; so that from S. to N. it is about 1200 Miles, and from E. to W. 900. It lies between the 5th and 14th N. Climate, and their Longest Day in the S. is 14 Hours and an half, and on the N. 18. The *Air* in general is healthful, but very hot (the Sky being seldom or never overcast with Clouds.) The Country full of Sands, Deserts, and Mountains, has few Rivers or Fountains, and it seldom rains here; so that were it not for plentiful Dews, the Natives could not subsist. The Country is best inhabited on the Coasts, and the Trading People (who for the most are *Banians*, that come young from the *Indies*) hold most of their Markets by Night, because of the Heat. The two *Northern Arabias* are extremely barren, one encumbered with formidable Rocks or Mountains, and the other overspread with vast Heaps of Sand; but the Southern, where duly manured, produces every thing, especially along the Coasts. Their chief *Commodities* are Coral, Pearls, Onyx-Stone, Balm, Myrrh, Frankincense, Gum, Cassia, Manna, Coffee, and several other Drugs, Fruits, and Spices. In *Ara- Rareties*.
bia Petraea is the noted Mount *Sinai* (now called by the *Arabs* *Gibel Mousa*, i. e. *Moses's Mountain*) on which were formerly many Chapels and Cells, possessed by the *Greek* and *Latin* Monks, several of which are still remaining, with a Garden adjoining to each of them. At the Foot of the Mountain is an agreeable Monastery, from whence there is a way to the Top of the Mountain by 1400 Steps, which are almost worn out. The Monks residing here pretend to shew the very Place where *Moses* staid 40 Days, received the Tables of the Law, and desired to see God's Face. 2. At *Medina* is a stately *Mosque*, supported by 400 Columns, and furnished with 300 Silver Lamps; 'tis called by

by the *Turks Mosakiba*, or *Most Holy*, because in it lies the Coffin of theit Prophet, supported by a great many small black Pillars (for its being hung in the Air by two Loadstones, is a mere Fable) covered with a Carpet of green Velvet, sent thither annually by the *Grand Seignior*, when the old one is cut into innumerable Shreds, and sold as Reliques to the Pilgrims, by which the Priests grow rich. There is a vast deal of Gold, Silver, and precious Stones in this Mosque. 3. At *Mecca* there is another Mosque, so glorious, that it is accounted by many the stateliest of any in the World. It has above an 100 Gates, with a Window over each, and is adorned within with Tapestries and Gildings extraordinary rich. The *Turks* alledge that *Adam* built this Mosque when he was driven out of Paradise. They go into it by a Silver Gate, which is in a Tower or Chapel, called *Caab*, or *Caba*, because of its square Figure. Near the Door there is a black Stone, as big as a Man's Head, called *Brachtan*, which was, they pretend, brought from Paradise: And as God secured it from the Flood, he ordered the Angel *Gabriel* to carry it to *Abraham*, when he was rebuilding that Mosque. This Stone was whiter than Milk and Snow, and its Light at least equal to that of the Sun, as they contend; but it became black for the Peoples Sins. In it also is the famous Well *Zemzem*, which is supposed by them to be the same Spring which the Angel shew'd to *Agar* and *Ishmael*. 4. In several Places of this Country the Light Sands are blown up and down by Winds, to the great Danger of Travellers, who are obliged to guide themselves by a *Mariner's Compass*. These Desarts are called *Sandy Seas*. 5. The *Coffee-Tree* rises from 6 to 12 Foot high, and the Trunk is from 10 to 15 Inches round. When it comes to Maturity, it looks like our *Apple-Trees* of 8 or 10 Years Growth. The lower Branches, when it grows old, bend downwards, and form a sort of *Umbrella*. The Wood is so pliable, that the longest Branches may be bowed almost to the Ground. The Bark is whitish and something rugged; the Leaves are much like those of the Citron Tree, but of a deeper green, and not so pointed or thick. The Tree is always green, and never loses all its Leaves at a time. They grow two by two, and opposite to one another, and at a middling Distance. At all Seasons of the Year it has Flowers and Fruits, some green, and others ripe; the Flowers are white, and very much like those of *Jessamine*, have fine little short Leaves, an agreeable Smell, and are something balsamick, tho' bitter to
the

the Taste. The Trees come from the Fruit, or from its Husk sown and planted when perfectly ripe. The Foot of a Mountain, or little Hill, in a shady moist Place, is the best for planting them. Their chief Cultivation consists in deriving little Streams of Water round the Root of the Tree.

They have but few Rivers, and those small ones too: And they have some Towns along Rivers: but the Coasts; but the Country can't be called populous, because the *Arabs* have had long Wars, and sent several Colonies into other Countries.

This Country was inhabited at first by *Saba* Son of *Cush*, Son to *Shem*, and *Joctan* Son of *Inhabitants*: *Sem*, and then by the Posterity of *Agar*, *Ishmael*, and *Edom* or *Esau*. Here were also the *Saracens*, so called either from *Shara* a Mountain, or *Sarraka* a Country in *Arabia*, or from *Sara* *Abraham's* Wife, or from the *Chaldaick* Word *Serick*, i. e. vain and inconstant, or from the *Arabick* Word *Sarack* to steal, or as the learned *Pocock* will have it, from *Saraki*, i. e. Eastern, to distinguish them from the *Moorebims* or Western Moors. However, the *Arabs* (formerly great Proficients in *Mathematicks*) are now tawny, of a middling Size, nimble, good Horsemen and Archers, very melancholy, grave, and sober. Some of 'em live in the Fields, are wandering, idle. and so much given to Robbery, that most of the publick Roads in *Asian Turkey* are miserably pester'd with them. They travel commonly in great Troops (headed by one of their Number, whom they own as *Captain*, and call him *Scheique*) and assault the *Caravans* as they pass and repass over the Mountains. These *Arabs* call themselves *Beduins*, *Bengebres*, and *Gordens*, think themselves the noblest Race of Mankind, and avoid mixing with others. They are divided into Tribes or *Clans*, like the *Highlanders* of *Scotland*. But those who live in Towns, especially near *Mascate*, addict themselves to Trade and Sciences, especially *Astronomy* and *Physick*. The Figures we use in *Arithmetick* are ascribed to their Invention.

Their vulgar Language is the *Arabesque*, or corrupt *Arabian*, which is not only used *Language*. here, but (with variation of Dialect) is spoke over a great Part of the *Eastern* Countries. As for the antient *Arabian*, 'tis derived from the *Hebrew*, is learned at School, and used by all the *Mahometans* in their Religious Service, because they allow the *Alcoran* to be read in no other.

Divers Parts of this vast Country acknowledge Subjection to several Sovereigns, and some to none at all. Some, especially in the two Northern Arabias, are under the Grand Seignior; others are governed by their own independant Kings or Princes; and others yield Obedience to certain Cheriffs, Emirs, Scheique or chief Governors, the most considerable of whom is the Cherif of Mecca, much respected by all Mahometan Princes, who send him considerable Presents, not only because he is descended from Mahomet, but also that he may be willing to defend the Pilgrims and Caravans, who go to Mecca and Medina.

Many of the wild Arabs know nothing of Religion, and live like so many savage Beasts, always hunting after their Prey, and frequently devouring one another: But the more sober sort of them profess the Doctrine of Mahomet, who was Native of their Country.





C H A P. VII.

Of PERSIA.

Q.

HAT do you call *Persia*?

A. A very large Country

in *Asia*, so called, either *Persia's Name*.
from one of its antientProvinces named *Perfis*, or from *Perfes*
an illustrious Lord in the Country of *E-*

lam (a Part of *Persia* so called by the Holy Writers) who for his great Merit is said to have obtained the Command over the People, and called both Country and Inhabitants after his Name. But others eagerly plead for an *Hebrew* Etymology, viz. from *Perfim*, i. e. Troopers; for *Xenophon* reports of the Inhabitants of this Country, that before *Cyrus* the Great, i. e. 560 Years before our Saviour, they seldom used to ride, or knew but very little how to manage a Horse; and that such was their Dexterity afterwards in managing Horses, that they were for that Reason called *Perfians*, i. e. Troopers: For a Confirmation of this Opinion it is further observed, that the Word *Persia* is not found in those Books of Holy Scriptures which were written before the Time of King *Cyrus*. However, this Coun- Limits:

try is bounded on the N. by the *Caspian Sea*, and Part of *Tartary*, *Zagathay*, on the E. by the *Tartars*, *Usbeks*, and the Empire of the *Great Mogul*; on the S. by
the

Shape.

the *Indian Ocean* and *Persian Gulph*; and on the W. by *Turkey* in *Asia*, and *Georgia*. Its Shape is almost square.

Chief Town *Ispahan*. *Ispahan*, Lat. 33. Long. 54. is the Metropolis of *Persia*. It is thought to be the antient *Aspadana*, or *Spada*. 'Tis one of the largest Cities in the World, and, with the Suburbs, is about 30 Miles round. It contains 162 Mosques, 48 Colleges, 1802 *Caravanseras* or Inns, 273 Baths, and 12 large Burying-places, within the Walls. The Inhabitants are by many reckon'd one Million; and they who reckon least, make them 600000, and the Number of Houses 38249 in the City and Suburbs. The chief Beauty of the City consists in its great Number of magnificent Palaces, Pleasure-Houses, large *Caravanseras*, fine *Bazars*, Canals, and those Streets which are planted with high Plane-Trees on both sides. The City is washed by the River *Zenderout*, divided into two Branches, one of which falls into the Park, and the other is conveyed by Canals to the Royal Gardens, and by Pipes to supply the City with Water. This River is as broad, tho' not as deep as the *Thames* at *London*; and there are some fine Bridges over it. Their great *Meidan*, or Market-place, is one of the stateliest, and perhaps the most universal Market or Fair in the World. It is 710 Paces long, and 210 broad. The Chief of the Suburbs is *Zulpha*, inhabited by the *Armenians*, who are allow'd a Governor of their own Nation, Liberty of Conscience, and to purchase Estates. It is about 1000 Miles S. E. of *Constantinople*, and 2600 of *London*.

The Houses are not very high, but there are on the top of them *Terrasses*, wherein People may in the Evening breath the cool Air; which is the more pleasant, that this City being on every side surrounded with Hills, the Heat is sometimes scorching. It has a considerable Trade in Raw Silks, Golden, Silk and Cotton Stuffs, Carpets, which are the finest in all *Asia*. There are *English*, *French*, *Dutch*, *Italian*, *Indian*, *Armenian*, and *Jew* Merchants. The King's Palace is near the great *Meidan*, and 'tis very fine. In a little Chapel there is an *Asylum* for all sorts of Offenders, except Thieves, who can stay but two or three Days there. This City has been along while besieged, and at last taken by *Miriweis*.

2. Q. How is *Persia* divided?

A. As the Provinces of this Country are sometimes more or less, according as the King beats or is beaten by his Neighbours, it is difficult to tell exactly the Number of them; yet for Method's sake, we shall divide it into 12 great Provinces, which you may find from W. to E. viz. 4 in the North, 4 in the Middle, and 4 in the South.

Provinces.	Chief Towns, with their Distance from <i>Ispahan</i> .
4 in the North. { <div> 1. { Persian } <div> Arme- nia, Geor- gia, Aderbeitzan, Schirvan, </div> </div>	Erivan. Teflis 600 N. Terki 800. Tauris 640, Ardevil. Shamaki 660, Eretz, Der- bent 700, Baku. Rescht 320.
4 in the Middle. { <div> 2. { Kilan, Mazandaran, } 3. Eftarabath, 4. Chorazan, </div>	Ferabath 300 N. Saru. Ditto, Amul. Herat, Nisapour, 300 N.S.
4 in the South. { <div> Arack Agem, Sablestan, Sigistan, Candahar, </div>	Ispahan, Casbin 180 N. Jeld, 140 E. Bust 600 E. Gazna. Ditto, Masink. Ditto, 640 E.
{ <div> Chusistan, Farfistan, Kirman, Macran, </div>	Souster 150 S. W. Banderrick. Schiras, Lar, Gommron 560, Ormus. Ditto, 560. Ditto, Almanfura, Jasquer.

Of which in their Order.

3. Q. But before we proceed, let me hear something of each of these Provinces.

A. Of *Persian Georgia* we have nothing to say, but that it is like *Georgia* already spoken of in the Chapter of *Asian Turkey*. *Terki* is the Capital of a little Province along the *Caspian Sea*.

nd called *Daghestan*. This Province is inhabited by the avage *Tartars*, and thought to be *Parthians* by Origin. The Czar has subdued this Country.

Erivan. *Erivan*, at the Conflux of the *Aras* and *Chars*, is very strong, and has been often taken and retaken by the *Turks* and *Persians*, and by the latter in 1635; since which they have kept it.

The Governor has 170000 l. sterl. per Annum, and is one of the greatest Men in *Persia*. *Van* is another Fortress, built on the Lake *Van*, which is reported to be 150 m. round, and consequently the greatest Lake in *Asia*. *Nackfivan*

Nackfivan, so called from the *Armenian* Words *Nack*, a Ship, and *Sivan*, rested, is thought to be the antientest Town in the World, because, as the *Armenians* pretend, *Noah* came and rested here, when the Ark remained on Mount *Ararat*, called *Mese Sousar*, or Mountain of the Ark.

Aderbeitzan contains great Part of antient *Aderbeitzan*, *Media*. Its Capital is *Tauris*, Lat. 39. 'Tis or *Media*. the second Town of *Persia* in Rank, Largeness, Beauty, Riches, Populoufness, and Trade.

Here are 15000 Houses, and as many Shops apart from them in long Streets arched, fifty Foot high, in the middle of the City. This Town is frequented by Merchants from all Parts, who have Magazines of all sorts of Goods, that are carried over *Persia*, *Turkey*, *Muscovy*, *Tartary*, and the *Indies*. Here are great Manufactures of Cotton, Gold, and Silk, and plenty of all sorts of excellent Provision. There are many Artificers in Iron; and the greatest part of the *Shagreen* Skins in *Persia* are dressed here. They are made of the hinder Parts of the Skins of Horses, Mules, and Asses: The latter are the best. This City has suffered much by Earthquakes, Inundations, and Wars betwixt the *Turks* and *Persians*. The latter took it by Stratagem in 1603, and have kept it ever since. We had lately in the News-Papers that it was quite ruined and swallow'd up in the Earth by an Earthquake: None were saved except about a thousand *Armenians*, who were at Church near the City.

Ardevik

Ardevil 20 m. E. of *Tauris*, is famous for a Market of Silk, and the truly Royal Mausoleum of *Sha-Seft* I. King of *Persia*. It was formerly the Residence of the *Persian* Kings, and is supposed to be the *Arbella* of *Q. Curtius*. *Ardevil.*

This Country is the western Part of *Media*, and formerly called *Atropatena* from *Atropa*-*Shirvan*.
tes, who was made Governor thereof by *Alexander* the Great. It abounds with Rice, Corn, Wine, wild Beasts, and Fowls; and the Inhabitants use Bufflers instead of Horses, and make excellent Butter and Cheese.

Derbent, so called because it is one of the Gates leading to *Persia*, *Circassia*, and *Muscovy*, *Derbent*.
is a strong Town, has an Harbour on the *Caspian* Sea, and may pass for the Capital of this Province, tho' *Shamakie* has that Honour. It is now in the Hands of the *Muscovites*.

Baku is a good strong Town, and has a good Harbour on the *Caspian* Sea, to which it gives its Name. Within 8 Miles of this Town the Country burns continually, the Soil is so full of *Salt-petre* and *Naphta*. *Kilan* *Beku*.
is so called from its Inhabitants the *Kilks*, and is thought to be the antient *Hircania*. *Kilan*.
The *Mardes* in *Alexander's* Time lived in *Tabarestan*, a part of this Country. This Province; and that of *Mazandaran*, are situated *Mazandaran*.
along the Coasts of the *Caspian* Sea, and abound with Silk, Oil, Wine, Rice, Tobacco, Lemons, Oranges, &c. Here are also many Rivers well stored with Salmon and other Fish; and in their Forest there is plenty of Venison and wild Fowl. Here are also Wolves, Bears, and great Numbers of Tygers, which they tame when young, and make use of them as we do of Hounds and Mastiffs. This Country was unpassable in many Places, because of Marshes, till *Abbas* the Great, who reduced it, and destroy'd most of the Inhabitants, made Cause-ways. N. B. In this Country, as in several others of *Asa*, the Towns are called after several Names, and so 'tis difficult to find them out on Maps.

Estarabath. *Chorazan*. *Bactriana*. *Herat*. *Meschet*. *Nisabour*.

Estarabath and *Chorazan* are the largest Provinces in *Persia*, after *Arack Agem*, and contain the best part of the antient *Bactriana*, *Aria*, and *Margiana*. The North Parts of the Province, East of the *Caspian* Sea, are little known, and full of sandy Desarts; but we may say of the rest, that it is one of the most fruitful Countries in *Persia*, and produces Corn, excellent Manna, Mulberry-Trees, and by Consequence Silk, Saffron, *Assafoetida*, and Sumach. *Heri* or *Herard*, also called *Sargultzar*, or the *Rose-Town*, is the chief Town, tho' *Meschet* or *Tus* be greater and finer, and has the magnificent Tomb of *Iman Riza*, one of their Twelve Saints, which are said to perform miraculous Cures. *Nisabour* is famous for its Sabres or Back-swords, the best in the World. There is also a Mountain in its Neighbourhood which produces very excellent Turquoises.

The Province of *Arack Agem* is also called *Arack Agem*. *Algebal*, and was the Country of the *Parthians*. It is the largest Province of the *Persian* Empire, being 600 Miles long, and 450 broad. The Air is dry and wholesome, but the Soil is not fertile, for want of Water. 'Tis encumbred with Mountains full of Thistles, and governed by the *Persian* Monarch himself. There are several large Towns where the Court retires from time to time.

Sablestan. *Parapomifus*. *Bust*.

Or *Sablestan* was part of the antient *Parapomifus*. It abounds with Provisions, except on the West side, where it is barren. The North Part is called *Gor*, and inhabited by *Gaurs*, Worshipers of Fire, which they preserve on a Mountain. Here are also some *Banians*, tolerated for the sake of Trade but not allowed their publick Worship. Some petty Princes inhabit the Mountains pretty numerous in this Country, and enjoy their Liberty on paying Tribute, and take part with the *Persians* or *Moguls*, as they see Occasion. Here are also some Christians in a mountainous District called *Peria*, but very ignorant. The Capital is *Bust*, with a Castle the strongest in *Persia*.

Or *Segeftan*, lies S. from *Sableftan*. 'Tis fuppofed to be the antient *Drangiana*, and is a very mountainous Country, efpecially on the N. where a Branch of Mount *Taurus* runs; but in the South Parts there is a long Defart.

Sigiftan.
Drangiana.

The Province of *Candabar* contains part of the antient *Arachofia*. The Town of that Name is not large, but the ftrongeft in *Persia*, both by Art and Nature. The Water is bad. The chief Subfiftence of the Inhabitants is from the Passage of *Caravans*. It has been frequently an Occafion of War betwixt the *Persians* and *Moguls*. It was governed by a Prince, who refigned it to the *Persians*, on Condition that one of his Race fhould always be Governor of it. It has been in the Hands of the *Persians* fince 1650, and in its Diftrict there are abundance of wild Sheep, fome Rubies, and Mines of Silver.

Candabar.
Arachofia.

Chufiftan, in which we include *Laureftan*, a fmall Diftrict N. from it. They are commonly taken to be the antient *Sufiana*. The Heats are fo exceffive here on the South fide the Mountains in Summer, that the Inhabitants retire to the Northernly.

Chufiftan.
Sufiana.

This Province is very fruitful. *Sus*, *Sufther*, *Defu*, or *Achuaz*, fignifies *Lilly*, as well as *Shufhan*, in the *Chaldaick* Tongue. It was a very rich and famous Town. At *Jaraene* there are a great many *Jews*, fuppofed to be the Offspring of thofe carried away by *Salmanaffar*.

Sufther.

Jaraene.

Or *Farfiftan* has on the W. *Chufiftan* and the *Persian* Gulph. The North Parts are hilly and barren, but produce fome coarfe Emeralds; the middle is pleafant and fruitful, and furnifhes their Neighbours with Rose-water, and *Cordovan* Skins. Their Woods furnifh abundance of Maffick. It has for its Capital *Schiras*, fuppofed to be the antient *Cyropolis*, fituated in a pleafant and fertile Plain; 'tis famous for its excellent Wines, and for being built not far from the Ruins of the

Fars.
Persis.

Schiras.

antient

Lar.

antient *Persepolis*. *Lar*, Lat. 28. is noted only for being the Capital of a Province of the same Name, included in *Farsistan*, *Gomron*, or *Bander Abassi*, is now the best frequented Harbour of the *Persian* Gulph; but

Gomron.

the Air is so hot from *April* to *October*, that People are forced to retire to the Mountains, three Days Journey from hence: For they that stay during the hot Weather fall into Malignant Fevers, and if they escape Death, have the Yellow Jaundice ever after. The Soil is so sandy thereabouts, that formerly an Herb was not to be seen in the Neighbourhood; but now by watering it frequently, they have some Lettices, Radishes, and Onions. It belonged formerly to the *Portuguese*, and 'tis not strong; but the terrible Rains and Thunders preserve the Town from being taken during the hot Season, when the Inhabitants leave it. The

Ormuz.

Island of *Ormuz* was formerly a Kingdom, which had a large Territory in *Kirman*. The Island is covered all over with good Salt, and lies about two Leagues from the *Persian* Shore. The Town was once one of the richest and most Trading Towns in *Asia*. The *Portuguese* took it in 1501, and built there a strong Citadel; but, thro' their Pride and Avarice, it was taken away from them by the *Persians*, assisted by the *English*; the Citadel was razed, and its Trade transferred to *Comron*.

Kirman.

Kirman lies E. of *Farsistan*, and produces Steel, Turquoises, Tutty, Rose-water, the Herb from hence named *Kermes*, of which the Confection *Alkermes* is made, and its Grain is used for dying Crimson. It also produces Sumach, black shining Stones, good for Distempers of the Eyes, Brasse, Iron, Silver, store of Alabaster, Dates, Myrrh, and Arsenick. The Country is mountainous, but has plenty of Provisions and Wine. Their Sheep bear the finest Wooll in *Persia*.

Caramania.

Macran. *Macran* lies East of *Kerman* as far as the *Mogul's* Country; 'tis very large, but for the most part Desert. 'Tis supposed to be the *Gedrosia* of the Antients. There were also here the People called *Orbitæ*, *Parfire*, and *Rhamnæ*: Some suppose it was here where *Alexander's* Army suffered so much in their Return from the *Indian* Sea. Towards the Coast it produces store of Flax, Hemp, several sorts of Oil, and a Breed of Horses

Horses as good as the *Arabian*. *Jasques* has a Prince Vassal to the *Persian* Monarch.

4. Q. Which is the *Situation* of *Persia*?

—

A. It lies betwixt Lat. 25 and 45, and Long. 50 and 70; so that the greatest Extent *Situation*. S. and N. is 1200 Miles, and the greatest Length from E. to W. 960. It lies betwixt the 3d and 7th Climates, so that the longest Day in the North Parts is 15 Hours and half. As this Country is divided by *Mount Taurus*, the Parts on the South are *Air*. excessive hot for several Months; those on the North more temperate. However, the Air is serene, and refreshed by the Breezes in the Mornings, Evenings, and Nights. The Serenity of the Air makes the Sky look higher, and of another Colour than ours, and makes all the Works of Art and Nature beautiful and durable. It is also very healthful to breath, except in *Mazandaran*, where it is moist, damp, and unwholesome. *Soil*. There are many sandy Plains in this Country, and others full of Stones, Thistles, and Reeds. Some again are very fruitful, and produce Rice, Wheat, Barley, Millet, Lentils, Pease, Beans, all sorts of Fruit, but some say they have no Rye or Oates. In the North Parts there are Mines of Gold and Silver; but they scarce answer the Cost, because of their Want of Wood to purify them. They have also the best Saffron in the World, Salt, Naphta, Iron, and Steel; the latter fine, but brittle. Their chief Commodities are curious Raw Silks, Carpets, *Commodities*. Tissues, Manufactures of Gold, Silver, and Silk, Seal-Skins, Goats-Skins, Shagreens, Alabaster, Myrrh, Saffron, Fruits of all sorts.

This Country, among its chief Rarities, does yet boast of the very Ruins of the once magnificent Palace of *Persopolis*, 30 m. N. E. from *Schiras*: It was destroy'd by *Alexander* the Great at the Instigation of an *Harlot*, and is now called *Chelminor*, i. e. Forty Pillars, which imports that so many were standing some Years ago; but at present there are the Remains and Marks of 200, which are of excellent Marble. These Ruins lie in a charming large Plain, which the Natives say contains 880 Villages, and that there are 1500 within 36 Miles round *Persopolis*. Here are also many subterranean Passages of vast Extent, which are supposed to have a Communication with

that called the Mountain of Sepulchres, at six Miles Distance. The Viziers have destroy'd many of those Remains, to prevent the Expence the Court is at for Guards, &c when Ambassadors go to see them. 2. One of the most remarkable things at *Ispahan* is a Tower, in the middle of the City, built of the Horns and Bones of Beasts, and of Men's Skulls. The Historians do not agree about the Occasion; but it is likely that the Beasts were killed in a Hunting, and the Men in a Rebellion. 3. About 30 m. N. E. of *Gomron* is a most hideous Cave, which for its formidable Aspect, is by our *English* Travellers termed *Hell's Gate*. 4. Within 5 Leagues of *Damoan* is a prodigious high *Peake* of the same Name, from whose Top (covered all over with Sulphur, which sparkles in the Night-time like Fire) one may see the *Caspian* Sea, tho' 160 Miles distant. This sulphurous *Peak* has also hot and cold Baths, much frequented. 5. In several Parts of *Persa* are Mountains of curious black Marble, and Springs of the famous *Naphta*, (a sort of *Bitumen*) with several other Minerals. 6. About 3 Miles from *Hamadan* in *Aderbeitzan*, there's a Mountain called that of the Sun; 'tis above a League long, and high, and joins to other Mountains. The Natives say, it produces Herbs of such Vertue, that several People have lived above 200 Years upon it, and that it bears none of any malignant Quality. Many People go thither in the Spring to recover their Health, which they frequently do by lying only upon the Herbs. 'Tis said the famous *Avicen* studied Simples here a great while. 7. At *Kaschan* the People are much infested by *Scorpions*, but every one is provided with a sovereign Remedy against them, which is a piece of *Copper* Money that they put on the Wound, take it off after 24 Hours, and apply a Plaister of Honey and Vinegar. They have also a sort of *Tarantula*, which lets its Poison fall like a Drop of Water, which causes an insupportable Pain in the Part, communicates the Venom forthwith to the Stomach, and sends up such Vapours to the Head, as immediately cause a profound Sleep, from which the Patient is not to be recovered, but by crushing one of those Creatures on the Wound; or if that can't be had, they pour as much Milk down the Patient's Throat as they can. 8. Not far from *Schiras* there is a Lake of Salt Water 10 Leagues round, filled by Salt Springs that fall from the Mountains, and a Salt River that runs into it. This Lake supplies the Country with Salt. There are also several Aqueducts thereabout. 9. Here are *Mummies* of two sorts: The first is a Petrification

Petrification of embalmed Corpses, buried in burning Sands, some of whom are found 7 or 8 Foot long; the other is a precious Gum, which distils from Rocks. The best is in *Kerman*, and is said to cure all Wounds and Bruises in 24 Hours time. It is all sent to the King's Treasury. 10. Here's a Bird called the *Water of Locusts*, because they make use of them to destroy those Insects in the following Manner. There's a Fountain in *Chorasan*, the Water of which is so much coveted by those Birds, that they smell and follow it in great Numbers wheresoever it is carried; so that when the Provinces are infested with Locusts, the People put this Water into open Vials, hold them on high, and the Birds fly after them to the Places where the Locusts are, which they speedily devour. 11. In the Desarts of *Kerman* there are two dangerous Shrubs, remarkable for their dreadful Properties: The first called *Gulbad Samour*, i. e. the *Flower that poisons the Wind*, bears a sort of Berries full of a ripe and tart Juice, as thick as Cream. It is averred that in the Places where many of those Shrubs grow together, the Wind in the hottest Weather, passing thro' those Trees receives a dead Quality, and kills those who breath it, or it blows upon with Violence. The other is called *Herzebre*, i. e. *Poison for an Ass*; because Asses, or other Animals that eat of that Shrub, die in a little time after. They say likewise, that the Water which washes Root or Trunk of that Shrub, is deadly. 12. Along the Gulph of *Persia* they have, from *June* to *August*, sometimes those deadly Winds called *Samiel*, already mentioned in the Rarities of *Arabia*.

Their Rivers are not many; they have scarce any navigable one but the *Araxes*, and *Rivers*. that only for flat-bottom'd Boats. They have *Sea-Ports*. nevertheless some good Harbours and strong Towns.

5. Q. What have you to say about the *Persians*?

A. The first Inhabitants of this Country were the *Elamites*, the Posterity of *Elam* Son of *Sem*, and lived near the *Persian* Gulph; but *Joktan* and *Mesech* did settle on the N. towards Mount *Taurus*. However, the modern *Persians* are of a middle Size, well set, *Manners*. and somewhat tawney. They are neat, witty, faithful in their Friendship, respectful to their Superiors, great Admirers of *Astrology*, *Physick*, and *Poetry*; but very great Dissemblers, Liars, Flatterers, and Swearers; much

much addicted to the Use of Opium, Tobacco, Coffee and Tea; Lewdness, very jealous of their Wives. They shave their Heads and Chins, but they don't clip their Whiskers. They marry, or rather buy (for they give Money to the Parents, who trouble themselves almost for nothing but to give their Daughters Virgins) many Wives, and have besides several Concubines, being very desirous of Encrease; and Rewards are granted by the King to those who get most Children. If the Man don't find the Tokens of Virginity, he has Power to cut off her Nose and Ears, and send her away. Travellers are here allowed to hire Wives where they please for a Time. Adulterers and Adulteresses may be put to Death by the Husband, if taken in the Fact. Those who let Houses have the Rent every Night, for they give one another no Credit, but in Places of Trade, where they trust for a Month. Persons of Quality ruin themselves by Numbers of Servants. When a *Persian* is dangerously sick, Fires are lighted on his Terrass, to give People Notice to pray for him. When they die, great Numbers of Priests dance about the Corps, and bawl as loud as they can, and he that is loudest has most Money. The Corpse is buried with the Face towards *Mecca*. The Rich set up an Arch with four Pillars over the Grave, and eat and drink over it when they visit the Tombs. They fancy that a good and bad Angel come to examine the Deceased as soon as buried; that at the Day of Judgment they must pass a *Bridge* as sharp as a *Razor*, which Mussulmen do without hurt, but others fall into a Torrent of Fire, among Devils, who tear them with *Tenterhooks*, &c. Some believe a sensual Paradise, as the *Turks*, but others think Happiness will consist in a perfect Knowledge of the Sciences. They never lay two Bodies in one Grave, for fear of disturbing the Dead. What they esteem the most in this World is a handsome Woman, good Wine, serviceable Horses, and well-tempered Swords. They think it a mighty Curse to wish one's Soul no more Rest in Paradise than a *Frenchman's* Hat.

The *Persian*, (having several Words taken out of the *Arabian*, and some few of the *German*.) *Turkish*, and *Arabian*, are spoke by those of the better sort; but that of the Vulgar is a mixed *Gibberish*. The *Arabian* is reckon'd the most eloquent, therefore all their Books are written in it. The

Persian

Persian is sweet and pleasing, but the Gentry mixt it with the *Arabick*, because they reckon the *Persian* barren. The *Turkish* is spoke at Court, and called the *Rhodomontade* Language.

The *Persians* reckon in their Empire 544 walled Cities, considerable Towns and Castles, 60000 Villages, and 40 Millions of Souls: But that is not probable; and some good Authors say, that the twelfth Part of it is not inhabited nor cultivated; that it is commonly well peopled about two Leagues round their great Towns, and then desert for 20 Leagues more. 'Tis worse inhabited in the *South* Parts, because Water is scarce there, tho' they might have enough would they dig for it. The following Causes are assigned for the Decrease of their People, and as they are common to *Turkey* and to some other *Eastern* Countries, it will not be amiss to insist here a little on them. It proceeds on one hand from the immense Extent of those *Monarchies*, and on the other, from the *arbitrary* Government which is exercised there; for the Nations or Provinces which are conquered, being not able to endure to see themselves governed by the (often capricious) will of a Foreigner, whereas they were before governed by some Laws and Customs derived from their Ancestors, do shake off their Yoke, as soon as the Conqueror is removed 7 or 800 Miles from them; wherefore it has been thought adviseable, in order to maintain their Conquests, to banish the better part of them, and to transport the other into far distant Provinces and different Climates, where (like a strange *Plant*) they perish little by little. But to this political Reason some natural ones may be added, especially concerning *Persia*; 1. Their great and long Wars have destroy'd a great many People. 2 The wicked Inclination both Sexes have for unnatural Lusts. 3. Their too early and immoderate Luxury. Women begin there to have Children betimes, but are looked upon as old as soon as they be thirty. Men also begin to visit Women too soon, and even to such an Excess, that tho' they have several Women, yet they have not more Children for it. 4. A great many Women make themselves barren or miscarry, because their Husbands abstain from them when three Months gone with Child. 5. They leave vast Quantities of Ground desert on their Frontiers, to prevent Quarrels with their Neighbours, and to make their Invasions difficult for want of Subsistence. 6. The excessive Heats, Colds, and Rains in many Places, caused

caused by the Diversity of Climates. 7. Within this last Century several Families have removed to the *Indies*; for as they are handsomer, wiser, and more polite by far than the *Mahometan Indians*, they advance themselves easily there; and those who are once well settled, send for their Friends and Relations, who are very willing to go where Fortune invites them.

6. Q. What is the Government in *Persia*?

A. This Kingdom was antiently possessed Government. by the *Assyrians* and *Medians*: But about 560 Years before our Saviour, *Cyrus* having dethroned his Grandfather *Astyages* King of the *Medians*, founded the *Persian* Monarchy, which became very powerful, and a great deal larger than 'tis now. This Kingdom lasted 228 Years under 13 Kings, the last of whom was *Darius Codomanus*, who was vanquished by *Alexander* the Great. Afterwards the *Gracians*, *Romans*, and *Parthians* possessed it one after another, until the Year of Christ 227, when a *Persian* called *Artaxerxes* rebelled against *Artaban* King of the *Parthians*, and begun the second *Persian* Monarchy, which lasted until 632, when *Jezdegird*, or *Hormisdas* IV. was kill'd by *Omar* King of the *Saracens*, who kept it 'till 1051, when the Sultan *Gelaladin* took it away from them. His Successors were Kings of *Persia* when *Tamerlane* conquered it in 1398; but after *Tamerlane*, *Persia* was governed by Kings of several Families until about 1515, when *Sophi Ismael* begun the Empire of the *Sophi's*. Their Government is truly *Despotical*, and Crown Hereditary, for they dispose of the Lives and Fortunes of their Subjects at Pleasure, without being tied to any Law: And some of them have made a very brutish Use of their Power; tho' generally speaking, their Administration is milder than that of the *Grand Seigneur*, and other *Mahometan* Princes. The Subjects obey their Commands without any Reserve, tho' contrary to the Laws of God and Nature, so that Parents and Children become one another's Executioners, if the King order it: And the People think an Oath by the King's Head to be more sacred than if they swear by God himself. Their Kings are so afraid of Rivals in Power, that upon their Accession to the Throne, they order the Eyes of their Brothers and all other Princes of the Blood to be put out, and the Male Issue of their Sisters, and other Ladies of the Blood-Royal to be destroy'd. The Kings are so jealous of their
Wives

Wives and Concubines, that when they travel with them, they are carried so as not to be seen; and a Guard of *Eunuchs* is appointed to clear the Roads, and all Men must remove at so many Miles distance on pain of Death. The Succession goes generally to the eldest Son; but the *Eunuchs* have such an Influence, that they commonly set up which they please: And if there is no lawful Son, then the Crown falls to the Sons of Concubines. But the King's Children, Wives, and Concubines are so strictly shut up and kept during his Reign, that Courtiers themselves don't know their Number, Name, and Age. The *Eunuchs* commonly teach the Eldest to Read and Write, fill his Head with the Miracles of Saints, and Hatred against the *Turks*, are Pimps to his Lusts, and so intoxicate him with Women and Opium, that he's seldom good for any thing. The King's Mother, during Widowhood, goes here before the Queen Regent, and is styled *Novabali*, or Most High, Most Potent Lady; but the Queen Regent is only styled *Cassa*, or first Lady.

The chief Ministers of State are, 1. The *Athmat Doulet*, or Great Chancellor of the Kingdom. 2. The *Sepeh Salor*, or Captain-General, whose Power lasts as long as the War. 3. The *Serdre*, who is the Head of the Clergy, and has a supreme Authority in Religious Matters. The Provinces have their Governors called *Chans*, who are in a manner absolute. The King names and turns them out at Pleasure; for he allows no Hereditary Dignities. There are some other Officers called *Sultans* and *Caleters*, who are Spies upon the *Chans*.

The present King is called *Schah Selim*, and succeeded his Father *Selim III.* in 1694. *King's Genealogy*
He's descended from an *Armenian* Prince called *Hassum Paschah*, or *Ussum Casan*, who died in 1483, after he had vanquished and killed the Kings of *Jaoncha* and *Aien Ali*. The King's Titles are, *N. B.* King of Kings, Son of *Isman*, and *Title*.
Descendant of *Mahomet*, Heir of the Firmament, and Great *Sopbi* of *Persia*: Others say that he styles himself *Schah Solima IV.* King of *Persia*, *Parthia*, *Media*, *Bactriana*, *Cherassan*, *Candahar*, and *Heri*, of the *Tartars* *Usbecks*, of the Kingdoms of *Hircania*, *Draconia*, *Evergeta*, *Parmenia*, *Hydaspia*, and *Sogdiana*, of *Aria*, *Paratomisus*, *Drangiana*, *Arachosia*, *Margiana*, and *Caramania*, as far as the stately *Indus*. Sultan of *Ormus*, *Lar*, *Arabia*, *Susiana*, *Chaldea*, *Mesopotamia*, *Georgia*, *Armenia*, *Circassia*,

caffa, and *Van*, Prince of the imperious Mountains *Taurus*, *Caucasus*, and *Periardro*, Commander of all Creatures from the Sea of *Chorasan* to the *Persian* Gulph, Lord of the four Rivers of Paradise, true Descendant of *Ali*, Governor of all *Sultans*, Emperor of *Musulmen*, Bud of Honour, Mirror of Virtue, and Rose of Delight, &c.

Revenues. His *Revenues* arise from Tributes paid by the *Armenians*, and other his Provinces and Towns, proportionably to their Riches and Trade, from Custom Duties, and Gifts he receives from his Subjects, which are computed at about three Millions sterl. *per Annum*, which, considering that his Army and Household cost him nothing, makes him one of the richest Princes in the World. He has vast Treasures of Gold and Silver, Plate and Jewels of all sorts.

Forces. The *Forces* of his Kingdom are of three sorts, 1. The *Corschi*, i. e. the chosen Troopers. which are always 22000 Men, under a Captain called *Corschi Bachi*. They are the Descendants of the antient *Turks*, and the best Troops in the Kingdom: Wherefore in a Battle they are mixed with others to sustain the Foot. 2. There are other Troopers called *Gulams*, made up of Children of Slaves and *Renegadoes* of *Georgia*. Their Number is 18000, and their General is called *Guler Agasi*. The 3d sort is the Foot, always consisting of 50000 Men, under a General called *Tufenkgitter Agasi*. But in time of War the King has 200000 Horse in the Fields, and as many Foot, which the Governors of Provinces are obliged to send him. The *Persians* are the best Soldiers in *Asia*, and therefore 'tis no wonder if they maintain themselves against their formidable and potent Neighbours the *Turks*, *Moguls*, and *Tartars*: But their military Government is now very much neglected, and they have little naval Force, but only some large Barks in the Gulph of *Ormuz*, and others in the *Caspian* Sea. The usual Re-

Residence. fidence of the Kings of *Persia* was formerly at *Casbin*, but since 1590 it is at *Ispahan*. The Palace is called *Chane Schah* or *Dowlet-Chane*, i. e. The House of the King, and of Felicity. Their

Nobility. Nobility are very much esteemed, and yet they reckon it as great an Honour to be called the King's Slaves, as the *Europeans* do to have the Title of a Duke, &c. Their Clergy is almost the same as the *Turkish*. They have publick Schools

Clergy.

Schools called by them *Medressa*, wherein Arithmetick, Geometry, Astronomy, Astro- *Universities.*logy, Morality, Physick, Law, Natural Philosophy, Eloquence, and Poetry, are taught. Those Universities are at *Ispahan, Schiras, Ardevil, Meschet, Têdris, Casbin, Com, Yezd, and Shamaki.*

Their *Laws* are chiefly taken out of the *Alcoran*, are many, and some of them wicked, *Laws.* for if a Mans offends the Prince, not only himself, but all his Kindred are punished. Murder is not to be bought off. The Kindred of the Person slain, are allowed to torture the Murderer to Death after he is brought before the Judge. Debauchery is punished by throwing the Offenders to Dogs kept on Purpose. Felons are sometimes tied by the Feet to a *Camel's* Tail, and their Bowels ripped up; sometimes interred alive, with their Heads out, and at other times they set them on Horseback, fasten their Legs to a Stick, and lard them with lighted Candles, till they burn their Bowels. When they extort a Confession, they pull off the Criminal's Flesh with hot Pincers, and cudgel their Feet; and if they be Women, put a live Rat into their Drawers. Suits are soon determined. The Sons have two Parts of the Fathers Inheritance, and the Daughters one.

The most Part of them are Followers of *Mahomet's* Doctrine, according to the Explana- *Religion.* tions of *Ali*. They differ in many Points from the *Turks*, and both Parties are subdivided into various Sects. The main Points in Debate between them, is concerning the immediate Successors of *Mahomet*, and some Parts of the *Alcoran*, which the *Persians* pretend have been either adulterated or added by *Omar, &c.* The *Gaurs*, supposed to be the Remains of the *Gaurs.* antient *Persians*, would never embrace the *Alcoran*, and they worship the Sun and Fire. They have a Chief Priest and a principal Temple, to which they must go in Pilgrimage once in their Lives. Their Language and Character differ from the *Persian*. Here are also several sorts of *Christians* and *Jews*, who manage all the Trade. The Governors oppose the Fury of the persecuting Bigots, because they lose their Tribute from such *Christians* as turn *Mahometans*.

This Country is very advantageously situated, being the Thorowfare from *Europe* into *Advantages.* the *Indies* by Land. But as it lies betwixt

Defects. three great Enemies, it is a great Defect: And the Rivers being either few or small; the Inland Towns have but very little Trade.

3. They have Storms of Hail in the Spring, which very much hurt their Corn and Fruit: 4. In the Places about the *Caspian* Sea they have great Earthquakes, and in the Summer Nights there are fiery Meteors, which resemble falling Stars, or Rockets.

Interests. The King of *Persia's* Interest is to live in Peace with all his Neighbours, especially when there is, as now, a Rebellion within his Dominions.

N. B. Most of this has been written in the Year 1722; but now in June 1723, this Kingdom is reported to be under the Dominions of Meriweis, except what is in the Hands of the Czar. The Sophi, as some say, has been deposed and shut up: Others relate, that he has been put to Death with all his Sons, except one or two, who have escaped towards the South.





C H A P. VIII.

Of the I N D I E S.

Q.

H A T do you call the *Indies* ?

A. Under this Name
are commonly understood *Indies*
all the Countries on the *Name*.
E. of *Persia*, and S. of

Tartary; but we comprehend only under
that Denomination the Empire of the

Great *Mogul*, and the two *Peninsula*'s on this, and the other
Side of the *Ganges*. These Provinces are called *Indies* from
the River *Indus*, *East* or Great *Indies*, to distinguish it from
the *West Indies*, or *America*: It is divided into three great
Parts, 1. The Empire of the *Mogul*, or *Indostan*. 2. The
Peninsula on this side of the *Ganges*: And, 3. The *Eastern*
Peninsula, or beyond the *Ganges*: Of which in their Or-
der. And 1. Of the Empire of the *Mogul*, which is a great
Part of the modern and antient *India*, famous in the History
of *Alexander* the Great, and of *Tamerlane*. It
is subject to that mighty Eastern Monarch, com- *Mogul's*
monly known by the Name of the Great *Mogul*, *Name*.
so called, because he is descended from the *Mo-*
gul Tartars, or some other White Men (*Mogul* signifying
White) who came into, and conquer'd this Country with
the famous *Tamerlane*, a *Tartarian* Prince, about *Anna*

1400: Others say, that the Word signifies *Stranger*; and was given to the *Tartars* who invaded this Country: And others, that it signifies a *circumcised* Man. However, this large Empire has on the N. the Kingdoms of *Usbeck*, *Cascar*, *Thibet*, and *Turkestan*, which are a Part of *Tartary*; the Kingdom of *Ava*, and the Bay of *Bengal* on the E. on the S the Bay of *Bengal*, Western *Peninsula*, and the *Arabian* Gulph, and on the W. *Persia*, and River *Gibuti*.

Jeanabad. *Jean*, because built by that Prince in 1625, is now the Residence of the *Mogul*, and the Metropolis of his Empire. It lies on the River *Gemna*, in Lat. 28. Long. 77. about 1200 M. S. E. of *Ispahan*, and 3800 M. of *London*. The City is composed of three large Towns joined together. It is populous when the Court is here, but at other Times ill inhabited. It is about three Leagues round, and lies on the River in Form of a *Crescent*. The Climate is so hot, that by Day the Emperor and all his Lords go bare-legg'd, with thin Slippers, and very slight Garments. The Fortress is half a League in Circuit, and the Palace is very large and stately, with noble Apartments and rich Thrones. There are several other fine Buildings; and the two chief Streets are long, wide and strait, arch'd on both Sides, with Shops and Ware-houses under the Arches, and over them Terras-Walks, for the People to take the Air. These Streets end at a great Square before the Palace, and form a lovely Prospect, but the other Streets are narrow, and the ordinary Houses built of Earth and Canes. *Dehly* is now look'd upon as one of its Suburbs, tho' it is thought to be the Seat of King *Porus*, who fought with *Alexander* the Great.

Dehly. *Dehly* is now look'd upon as one of its Suburbs, tho' it is thought to be the Seat of King *Porus*, who fought with *Alexander* the Great.

2. Q How do you divide this Empire?

Division. A. It was formerly divided into 35 Kingdoms, but now it is divided into 19 general Governments called *Soubah*, which contain all those Kingdoms, and some Provinces belonging to the *Rajas*. Those Governments are in their Order as follows.

Governments.

1. <i>Dehly.</i>	Chief Towns, with their Distance from <i>Dehly.</i>
2. <i>Agra.</i>	<i>Jeanabad, Jenupar, Serenegal</i> , the Residence of a <i>Raia.</i>
3. <i>Lahor, or Pengah.</i>	<i>Agra</i> 150 S. <i>Gualeor, Fetipour, Scanderbanda.</i>
4. <i>Asmere.</i>	<i>Lahor</i> 300 N. <i>Attock</i> 400, <i>Hendown.</i>
5. <i>Guzurate, or Cambaye.</i>	<i>Ditto, Jesselmere, 330 W. Bando.</i>
6. <i>Malova.</i>	<i>Cambaie</i> 600 S. W. <i>Surate, Saholi, Daman, Diu.</i>
7. <i>Patna.</i>	<i>Ratipor</i> 240 S. <i>Ougel. Chitor.</i>
8. <i>Elabass.</i>	<i>Patna</i> 340 S. E. <i>Sambal, Rajapor, 480 E. S. E Bikanor.</i>
9. <i>Haoud.</i>	<i>Halabass, 240 S. E. Narvar, Gehud.</i>
13. <i>Moultan.</i>	<i>Naugracut</i> 270 N. <i>Purbola, Dancalor.</i>
11. <i>Jagannat, or Bengala.</i>	<i>Ditto, 340 W. Cherepore, Chutzan.</i>
12. <i>Cachemire.</i>	<i>Ougely</i> 640 S. E. <i>Soumelpore.</i>
13. <i>Caboul.</i>	<i>Ditto, 580 N.</i>
14. <i>Tatta, or Sinde.</i>	<i>Ditto, 600 N. W.</i>
15. <i>Aurengabat.</i>	<i>Ditto</i> 600 S. W. <i>Lowrebandet.</i>
16. <i>Varuda.</i>	<i>Ditto</i> 630 S. <i>Dultabat.</i>
17. <i>Candisch.</i>	<i>Pitan, Gor. 330 W.</i>
18. <i>Talengand.</i>	<i>Brampour</i> 600 S. <i>Shapour.</i>
19. <i>Baganala, or Decan.</i>	<i>Bider, 800 S.</i>
	<i>Andanager, 800 S. W.</i>

As for *Candahar*, it belongs to the King of *Persia.*

3. *Q.* Now, according to your ordinary Method, I should be glad, that you would tell me some particular Things concerning these several Governments.

A. I would do it very willingly, but concerning some of them we have no particular Things to say.

The Province of *Dehly* abounds with Wheat, Rice, excellent Sugar, good Indico, and Fruits *Dehly* of all Sorts. Here are Camels of several Kinds, Dromedaries, Elephants, Rhinocerosses as big as the largest Oxen, Mules, Asses, Bufflers, Deers, Lions, Leopards, Tygers, Panthers,

Panthers, Hawks of all Sorts, and a good Breed of Horses. Their Elephants go for the most part in Troops, and when they do so, hurt no Body ; but when they straggle, kill and eat such People as fall in their Way. The *Mogul* is chiefly supplied with them from hence, and they are caught either by Pit-falls, or decoying them by tame Females.

Agra, or *Indostan* proper, lies East of *Asmere*.

Agra.

'Tis not so fruitful of Corn and Wheat as *Dehly*, but abounds with Indigo, Silks, &c. which make it very rich. The Town lies upon the *Gemna*, and is very long, and much larger than *Dehly*, and was formerly the Residence of the Emperors ; but the Houses are at a good Distance from one another, and encompassed with high Walls, that their Women may not be seen. Tho' it be very populous, yet 'tis not able to raise 200000 fighting Men, as some have given out. The *Mahometans* are most in Number, and some reckon 25000 Christian Families, besides Heathens. There are great Numbers of Merchants from foreign Countries. The Air is excessive hot in Summer, because the Sunbeams reflect from the Sands which lie near the Town. There are several Palaces, and other magnificent Structures ; but the ordinary Houses are low, made up for the most part of Straw, and ill-inhabited when the Court is not there.

Labor contains several Kingdoms, as most of these Governments do ; 'tis also called *Pengab*, from a *Persian* Word signifying *Five Waters*, because it is water'd by five Rivers, viz. *Rawy*, *Behat*, *Obchan*, *Wibi* and *Sindar*, which are thought to be the *Acesenes*, *Cophys*, *Hydaspes*, *Zorodras*, *Rhuades*, or *Hispalis* of the Ancients. Many will have it that the Kingdom of *Porus* was hereabouts, and that *Labor* is *Bucephalia* it self. Some Parts of this Province are Hilly, inhabited by petty Princes, some of them subject to the *Moguls*, and others trusting to their Fastnesses, refuse him Tribute. The Product is Rice, Corn, Fruit, Wine, Sugar, and in their Towns are Manufactures of every thing made in the Empire. *Attock* upon the *Sindar* is very strong.

Asmere, or *Bando*, lies East of *Sinde*. It abounds with Lions, Tygers, Elephants, Black Cattle, with Bunches in the Fore-parts of their Backs, Opium, Azure, Salt-petre, and Musk. The Country is infested by Scorpions, whose Venom they draw out by holding alive Coal to the Wound. In some Parts the Females Marry at Eight or Nine, and have Children at Ten Years

Years of Age. Oxen are made use of here for Riding, and also to draw Coaches; they are govern'd by Strings through the Gristle of their Nostrils. The Capital lies Lat. 26. has a Castle on a high Mountain, and is strong by Situation, well fortify'd, and the *Mogul* has a spacious Stone Palace, and near it a fine Grotto cut out of the Rock. Near this City lies the Tomb of a famous *Mahometan* Saint, named *Cogeamund*, much frequented by Pilgrims, especially such as want Children. *Eckbar* the Great *Mogul* in 1566, made a Pilgrimage on Foot hither from *Agra*, which is about 200 Miles; order'd a Stone for resting on to be placed at the End of every Mile, fair Houses to be built for his Ladies at the End of every Ten, and Inns for Man and Horse at every Twenty-five, where they are entertain'd by Women, who demand but Three-pence a Meal for Man and Horse.

Guzurate had formerly a King of its own, and contains the Territories of the *Raja's* of *Guzurate*, *Rana*, *Myrsa*, and *Bargant*. It lies S. from *or Cambay*. *Tatta*, over-against *Cape Rasagate* in *Arabia*. 'Tis a very pleasant and fruitful Country. The Inhabitants are descended from the old *Indians*, and blacker than the *Moguls*, by whom it was conquer'd in 1565. They are much given to Trade.

Ahmedabad, a large, populous and strong Town, is the Capital, Lat. 22. though many *Amedabad* give that Title to *Cambaya*, situated on the *Car-* *Cambaya*. *mein*, near the bottom of the Bay, to which it gives Name, but 'tis not so rich, nor so populous as formerly, because their Trade is lessen'd, since the Sea, which formerly came up to this City is now fallen half a League from it. The Inhabitants are mostly *Banians*, and *Rajeputs*, who thinking it unlawful to take the Life of any Creature, the City is pester'd with *Monkeys*, which swarm on the Tops of Houses, and throw Things at the Peoples Heads. It is reported of *Mahomet*, King of *Cambaya*, that he accusom'd himself so much to poison'd Meats, that he made it his ordinary Food: He became thereby so venomous, that a Fly fell dead, when it stung him, and he was obliged to change his Wife every Day, because his Breath kill'd all those he laid with.

Surate, on the East Side of the Gulph of *Gambaya*, Latitude. 21. Longitude 70. is *Surate*. about 115 Miles from *Cambaya*. 'Tis a Town of the greatest Note and Trade in the *Indies*, and lies on the River

River *Tapta*. The Town is not large, but pretty and populous. The *English* have here a very fine and strong Factory, and are as much consider'd here as the *Omrahs* or Lords are, because of our Naval Force. The *Dutch* enjoy also great Privileges. *Surat* is also fortified, and its Harbour is at the Village of *Sovally*, about 30 Miles from it. The chief Trade of the *English* is Cloth, Toys from *England*, Sugar, Tea, China lacquer'd Ware, Quick-silver, Tuthenag, and Copper from *China*, Cowry's and little Sea-shells from *Siam*, and the *Philippine* Islands, Gold and Elephants Teeth from *Sumatra*, &c.

Diou is a Peninsula, or rather an Island on the S. of *Guzurate*, at the entrance of the Gulph of *Cambaya*, Lat. 21. Long. 62. This

Town is very strong, and belonged formerly to the *Portuguese*, who defended it so well, that one of their Soldiers, having no more Bullets, pluck'd out his Teeth, and charged his Gun therewith; an *Indian* who was stuck, and pierced through with the Spear of a *Portuguese*, approached nevertheless so near his Adversary, that he cut his Anles with a short Sword. The last Emperor had given this Town and Island to the *English East-India* Company.

Daman. *Daman* belongs yet to the *Portuguese*. *Nau-*

Naugracut. *gracut* on the *Rawy* has a magnificent Chapel. The *Indians*, who come hither in Pilgrimage, do frequently cut off a Snip of their Tongues, as an Offering to their Idol. *Jaganat* lies near the

Jaganat River *Ganges*. 'Tis one of the best and fruit-
Bengale. fullest Countries in the World, and produces vast Quantities of Rice, Sugar, Spices, Cotton,

Silks, Canes, Lacque, Opium, Wax, Civet, Long-Pepper, Butter, and the odoriferous Wood of *Calamba*. *Bengale* is the Name of a Country, and not of a Town, and abounds in Canals. Here are abundance of Fowls, Sheep, Kids and Pork, fresh and salt Fish. From this Abundance, with the Beauty and good Humour of the Women, it is become a common Proverb among the *Europeans*, that there are an Hundred Gates for entring this Kingdom, but none to come out again. Most of the People are either *Pagans*, or *Mahometans* of the Sect of *Ali*. However, the Islands of the *Ganges* next to the Sea, are now for the most part abandon'd, and full of ravenous Tygers, which frequently leap into the Boats, and devour Passengers : The Rivers are very much infested with Crocodiles ; and the Plains towards the North breed such vast Numbers of Elephants, that they destroy their Harvests, and

and are very troublesome to Caravans, unless frightened away with Fire-Arms. *Ougely*, the Capital lies in an Island opposite to that of *Sandiva*. Lat. 22. It is a large and trading Town. The *Dutch* have a magnificent Factory there, well fortified and defended with Cannon.

Q. 4. What is the Situation, &c. of *Indostan* ?

A. It lies betwixt the Lat. 17. and 35. Long. E. of *London* 65, and 90. So that its greatest Extent from S. to N. is above 1200 Miles, and from E. to W. about the same, but it is very much contracted towards the South. The Temperature of the Air here, as in other large Regions, differs very much. Towards the North it is very cold about *December*, *January*, and *February*; and in the Southern Parts, 'tis very hot all the Year round, tho' they have Rains that last continually during those three Months: But when the Rain is over, the Air is so clear, that 'tis rare to see any Cloud for the other nine Months, at the Ends of which the Ground is so parched by Heat, that it resembles a sandy Desert; but is cover'd all over with Green, after five or six Days Rain. However, the Air is every where wholesome, and the People arrive to Age. The Soil, for the most Part, especially in *Bengale*, and along the Rivers, abounds in every thing that is necessary and pleasant to Life. However, towards *Tartary*, except the Province of *Cachemire*, the Soil is barren, and encumbered with formidable, dry, sandy Mountains, Desarts and Forests. *Alexander* order'd Timber to be cut here for the building of the Ships he sail'd with on the *Ganges* and *Indus*, which Rivers rise on Mount *Taurus*, near *Tartary*. The Water of the *Ganges* is sweet and clear, it weighs an Ounce in a Pint lighter than any other Water of the Country; the *Mogul's* Court drinks nothing else, and the People look upon it as a great Physick, and Object of Devotion, tho' it occasions Gripping and Fluxes; wherefore most *Europeans* boil that Water before they drink it. Their Commodities are Aloes, Musk, Rhubarb, Wormseed, Indico, Lacque, Borax, Opium, Amber, Salt-petre, Silk, Cottons, Sattins, Carpets, several sorts of Metals, Porcelline, Ebony, Spices, Sugar, and several sorts of Fruit; which they sell or exchange for Wine, Beer, fine Hats, Perriwigs for *Europeans*, small Shot, Lead, Iron, Case-knives, Flint-Glasses, Rose-water, Bottles, *Cochinea*.

Cochineal, Red and White Lead, fine Knives, and Sword-Blades, &c.

This huge Empire has but few Remains of *Rarities*. Antiquities, because they have been destroy'd by the *Moguls*; but in several Parts thereof, especially in the Province of *Cambaya*, are divers noted *Volcano's*, which usually smoke, and sometimes break out in terrible Eruptions of Fire and sulphurous Matter. 2. At *Surate* they have Silk Cotton-Trees, and one named *Culga*, which produces Silk, is Red as Scarlet in the Morning, Pale at Noon, and Milk-white at Night. 2. They have a Liquor called *Taddy*, produced by Incisions in the Trunk of a very high Tree. 'Tis as pleasant as any White-wine, if drawn in the Morning before the Sun rises, but otherwise grows tart and unwholesome. It has several physical Virtues, and is particularly good against the Stone. 3. Here are many *Hermaphrodites*, who are obliged to wear a Man's Turbant, and Woman's Apparel. 4. From *Agra* to *Labor* there is a Road planted with Coconuts and Palm-Trees on each side, 600 Miles long, including Turnings and Windings; and each Half-League is marked with a Turret, and there are little Inns for Travellers. At one of those Inns, is an Idol-Temple, one of the fairest in the *Indies*, and an Hospital for Apes, to which the Pilgrims bring Food. *Thevenot* says, this Road is infested with Tygers, Panthers, Lions, and Robbers of both Sexes, who throw Nooses with great Dexterity about the Necks of Travellers, strangle and rob them. They also plant beautiful Women on the Road to ensnare Travellers; and these Sluts have always Bullies at hand to surprize them. 5. At the Imperial Palace at *Agra*, are two Towers cover'd with Gold, and they say this Palace contains two Bushels of *Carbuncles*, five of *Emeralds*, 12 of several sorts of *precious Stones*, and 1200 *Sabres* whose *Scabbards* are of Gold, and cover'd with Jewels. 9. About the same City are the splendid Sepulchres of the Royal Family, and of the *Onrrabs*, particularly that glorious Monument of the *Father* and *Wife* to the Emperor *Jehan Guir*, erected nigh to the *Grand Bazar*, or Market, which is reported to be a very stately Structure, and of so vast a bigness, that 20000 Men were employ'd in building it during 22 Years. 7. But what mostly deserves our Record is that rich and glorious Throne in the Palace of *Agra*, on which the Emperor does usually appear during the Festival of his Birth-Day, where he receives the Presents of the

the *Omrahs* or *Grandeers*, after the yearly Ceremony of weighing himself is over, which lasts five Days. This stately Throne is said to stand upon Feet and Bars, overlaid with enamel'd Gold, and adorned with several large Diamonds, Rubies, and other precious Stones. The Canopy over the Throne is set thick with curious Diamonds, and surrounded with a Fringe of Pearls. Above the Canopy is a lively Effigies of a Peacock, whose Tail sparkles with blew Saphirs, and other Stones of different Colours ; its Body is made of enamell'd Gold set with Jewels, and on its Breast is a large Ruby, from which hangs a Pearl of the size of an ordinary Pear. On each Side of the *Throne* is an *Umbrella* of curious red Velvet, richly embroider'd with Gold, and encompass'd with a Fringe of Pearls, the very Stitches whereof are also cover'd with Pearls, Rubies, and Diamonds. Over-against the Emperor's Seat is a large choice Jewel, with a Hole bored thro', at which hangs a prodigious Diamond, (the biggest in the World, and worth little less than a Million Sterling) with many Rubies and Emeralds round about it. Some say that this Throne cost above 12 Millions Sterl. tho' others assure it is not worth five Millions. However, this Emperor has several Thrones, and a vast many Jewels, and on that Account he can't be match'd by any other Monarch. Lastly. Not far from *Aurengabat* are fine Mosques, &c. cut out of the Rock, and as remarkable as those near *Persepolis*.

The chief Rivers are the *Indus* and *Ganges*. The *Indus*, on the West towards the Frontiers *Rivers*. of *Persia*, has a Course of 700 Miles, besides Turnings and Windings, and is Navigable from *Lahor* to *Sinda*. The *Ganges* is but a small River, when it does not rain. It is famous for the Goodness and Lightness of its Water. The *Indians* say that it sanctifies them, as well when they drink of it, as when they wash themselves in it, which is sometimes dangerous, because there are a great many Sharks, Alligators, and Crocodiles. No less than four or five Hundred Thousand *Indians* are sometimes to be seen about this River, some throwing, others hiding Money in it; for they say it may be useful to them when dead. They have Harbours and other Towns in great *Towns*. abundance.

5. Q. What have you to say about the Inhabitants of this Country ?

A. The *Moguls*, or those who are whiter than the others, are descended from those *Tartars*, which came with *Tamerlane* from *Zagathay* and *Thibet*, and who conquer'd this Country : But the antient Inhabitants called *Hendowns*, or *Indians*, are of the Posterity of *Sem*, and they never were subdued till *Alexander* the Great's Time, tho' it be likely that some Parts of this Country were then in the

Hands of the King of *Persia*. However, they have various Tempers and Customs. They are

generally of a swarthy Complexion, few of them being White, unless they be Leprous ; they are tall of Stature, strong of Body, and live to a great Age. In Behaviour they are civil, especially to the *Europeans*, whom they call *Franguis*, or *French* ; in their Dealings pretty just, and several of the mechanical Sort prove wonderfully In-

genious, but they are covetous, lazy, jealous, and more addicted to the Service of *Venus* than of *Mars*. When they drink, they do it

by letting the Liquor fall into their Mouths, and their Way of Saluting is to take one another by the Beard. When People of Fashion are far from Court, they let their Hair grow, to shew their Grief in being so remote from their Prince. Their Way of Eating is yet according to the antient *Eastern Mode*, viz. by laying down. The Widows formerly used to burn themselves with the dead Corpse of their Husbands, but since the *Mahometans* became Masters of the Country, they have abolish'd this barbarous Custom.

Here, and in the two *Peninsula's*, are several sorts of Languages, but the *Arabian* is made use of in their religious Service. And among the several Languages spoke in the *Mogul's* Dominions, the *Guzurate* Tongue is reckon'd the chief, especially in *Cambaya* and *Bengal* ; and the *Persian* is said to be the Language of the Court.

This Country, especially along the *Rivers*, is very *Populous*, in so much that they reckon forty Millions of People. All the Country is very good, the Inhabitants did never care to go and settle in other Countries ; but several People, especially from *Persia*, come and live here : And were it not for the *Persian* and intestine Wars, the Country would yet be more *Populous*.

ious, and Victuals not so cheap as they are usually,

This Emperor has all these Provinces mention'd in the *Division*, and he claims some *Pretensions* over all the Countries formerly conquer'd by *Tamerlane*; and most of the Princes of the Western *Peninsula* are tributary to him. *Dominions.*
Pretensions.

6. Q. What is the Government of those Countries? *Government.*

A. There were formerly several independant Princes in this Country, but now there is but one Sovereign, whose Government is absolute; for he has both the Purses, Estates, and Lives of his Subjects wholly at his disposal. His bare Will is his Law, and his Word a final Decision of all Controversies. He administers Justice himself, but he has several Officers in his Court, who act under him, as the *Etmadoulet*, or *Chancellor*, the *Great Treasurer*, the Chief of the *Eunuchs*, the principal *Secretary of State*, or *General* of the *Elephants*. The Commander of his Guards, who is also *Lord-Chief-Justice*. The *Vice-Roy*, Governours of Provinces, and Magistrates of Towns, live in great State, and most of them are Tyrants, but none of them can give Sentence of Death till the Cause be reported to the Emperor, and his Consent required three Times, on three several Days, to the Act of Condemnation, before it can be put in execution. Justice is administred here with the least Delay, for every one pleads his own Cause, or by the *Omrabs*, without any Formality; and soon after the Witnesses are heard, Judgment is given as equitable as it is speedy; for all false Witnesses, and corrupt Judges are punish'd with Death. Some of their Criminals are sewed up in moist Hides, expos'd to the Sun, which, as they dry and shrink, crush them to Death: Some have their Eyes put out, some are poison'd, and others hang'd. When Noblemen are condemn'd, for any Crime less than High-Treason, they are allowed to fight a Lion for their Lives. The *Great Mogul* raises to the highest Dignity whom he pleases, there is here no hereditary Dignity, personal Merit alone being the Ladder to Preferments and Honours. *Nobility.*

The present Emperor is but very young, and Grandson to the famous *Aurengzebe*, who dethron'd his Father, and got himself rid of his three Brothers, and other Rivals: And here *Emperors*
Genealogy.

it is to be noted, that the *Indian* Diadem is not always entail'd by *Primogeniture* on the Sons, but is rather ravish'd by Force, or carried by Craft, from such who stand in competition for it; he generally succeeding to the Throne, who has mostly gained the Favour and Assistance of the *Omrahs*, or *Mansebdars*, with other Grandees and Officers at Court. And upon, or before his Inauguration, he sacrificeth all his Rivals, and nearest Relations, reckoning his Throne to be but tottering, unless its Foundation be laid in the Blood or Confinement of such Persons. The Royal Family of the *Mogul*, descends from that famous *Tartarian* King *Tamerlan*, or *Timurlenk*, who, in the space of eight Years, conquer'd more Provinces than the *Romans* could ever do in eight Hundred. He was as Courageous as *Cesar*, and as Fortunate as *Alexander*. He was called *Timur lenk*, i. e. *Lame*, because he was so, as it appears from several Authors, and especially from an Answer he gave to *Bajazet* Emp. of the *Turks*, his Prisoner: This unfortunate Prince was carried before *Tamerlan*, who laughing at the Sight of him, was asked by *Bajazet*, a proud and haughty Man, *Thou laughest at my Misfortune*, *Timur*, *but remember that thou may, perhaps, fall into the same before it be long; for God disposing of all the Kingdoms in the World, may give thine to another Prince. I don't question it*, reply'd *Timur*, *and I don't laugh at thy Misfortune, but at the Thought I have had as soon as I have seen thee, viz. That all the Kingdoms in the World are but a Trifle before God, since he will have a Lame Man to possess what He had given to a Blind one: For Bajazet had but one Eye. The Great Mogul has a Seraglio, wherein are six Sorts of People, most of them Women.*

1. The *Queens*, or *Empresses* of the first Rank, chosen by the *Emperor* out of the chief Families of the *Empire*, and seldom in Foreign Countries. Sometimes he has six of them, whom he marries with great Ceremonies; and sometimes he advances his Female *Musicians*, *Dancers* to that Dignity. None but the Sons of those chief Wives succeed to the Crown, and have the Privilege of being called *Sultans*; and since it was never known that a *Mogul* had above four Sons at a Time, 'tis supposed that all above this Number are destroy'd while Infants.

2. The second Wives, or Concubines are about 2000 in Number.

3. The

3. The young *Princesses*, among whom the young Princesses are kept until they be 14 Years old, and then they have an honourable Allowance, and sometimes so great, that by that Means they have deprived their Father from the Crown.

4. The *Queen's Ladies*, and the Governesses of the young Princesses. Every Body is obliged to court them, for they are, as it were, the first Council to the Emperor, and he extols and depressoeth whom they please.

5. The Women Musicians and Dancers: Their Business is to invent new Diversions for the Emperor and Princesses.

6. The *female Slaves*, among whom live those who are entirely *Eunuchs*. The Emperor is always served by Women himself, and has a Guard of 100 *Tartar Ladies*, arm'd with Bows, Scimitars, and Darts, commanded by a Lady, who has the same Pension as one of his Generals. He is obliged to this Precaution, because the Jealousy of his Queens and Concubines renders them implacably revengeful. He is also attended by 1200 Eunuchs, and the Number of his daily Attendants is reckon'd 12000. And when he goes a Hunting, he is attended by above 100 Elephants with rich Trappings, and 20000 Men belonging to the Court.

The Great *Mogul's* Title is *Padschah*, or Great Lord or Master; but sometimes they take as a Sirname, some emphatical Word, as *Homajon*, Fortunate; *Ghelaleddin*, the Brightness of the Faith; *Almosapher*, the Victorious; *Schah Geban*, King of the World; *Sujah*, Courageous; *Aurengzeb*, Ornament of the Throne. The Princesses take also such Names, as *Nour Mehalle*, the Light of the Palace; *Nour Giam Begum*, the Light of the Earth; *Begum Sabeb*, Princess Mistress; *Rouchenara Begum*, glittering Princess, or the Light of the Princesses.

As this Emperor receives Presents from all his Subjects, when he passes before their Houses, *Revenues*. and is their universal *Heir*, his Revenue must be very large. It is generally reported to be two Hundred and Fifty Millions of Crowns, besides what has been heaped up in the Treasury by several Emperors, especially *Tamerlan* and *Aurengzebe*, which is reckon'd above fifteen Thousand Millions of Crowns, tho' not all in ready Money, but in Jewels, Gold, and Silver Plate, &c. But proportionable to the same are his necessary *Forces*. Ways of employing it; for to awe the prodigious Multitude of People within the vast Extent of his Dominions, he is obliged to keep in constant Pay 50000 Horse, besides

besides as many Foot, otherwise it would be impossible to keep under the turbulent *Raja's*, who are always ready to make Incursions, and disturb his Government. His Guards consist of 20000 Men, most of them *Omrahs*, or Lords. And some give this List of the Men which every Province is obliged to raise, which amounts to 309667 Horse, 619336 Foot, besides the Guards. He has at least 500 Elephants, which are taught to do him Obeissance, and the Art of Fighting. He has no Fleets of Men of War, but tho' his Troops don't want Courage, yet they don't understand true Discipline, and the Use of Arms.

We shall speak of the *Clergy* in the Article of Religion, and tho' they have no Bishops, yet there is a Subordination among them. They have some Places, especially *Benarez*, where they teach Astrology, Physick, and some Mathematics, and the Way of explaining their Laws. The *Bramins* are especially famous for their *Schools*.

Such as are the Inhabitants of the inland Countries, and such as are subject to the *Raja's*, are mostly *Pagans*; and next to *Paganism*, the Religion of *Mahomet* prevails. The *Emperor*, and the *Omrahs* are *Sounis*, i. e. Disciples of *Abubeker*, as the *Turks* are; but there are others who follow the Opinions of *Hali*, or the *Persians*. There are some Thousands of *Christians*, and some *Jews*. Of the *Pagans* there are several Sects or Orders among them.

1. The *Brachmans*, or *Bramins*, are the Disciples of the antient *Gymnosophists*, very much esteemed because of their Learning, Disinterestedness, and Strictness of Living, but as the *Banians* are an Order of them, we shall say no more about the former.

2. The *Banians* believe the Transmigration of Souls, and thereupon do usually build Hospitals for Beasts; and will upon no Account deprive any Creature of Life, lest they should thereby dislodge the Soul of some departed Friend: For that Reason they are unwilling to light Candles, lest some Moth or Gnat should be burnt: And when they see any Creature in danger of losing its Life, they never fail to do their utmost for setting it at Liberty, or out of Danger. But of all living Creatures, they have the greatest Veneration for the *Cow*, to which they pay a solemn Address every Morning, and at a certain Time of the Year, (in the Spring, and even during some Distempers) they drink the Stale of that Animal.

mal. One of them did spend in one Day above 5000 Pounds for the Wedding of his Cow with the Bull of his Neighbour. They esteem so much Matrimony, that they Marry their Children at Seven; and when a young Man dies Batchelor, they set a Girl by his Corpse, and give her a Dowry, as if she were a Widow. Of these *Banians*, there are reckon'd in *India* about 24 different Sorts, and some of them prove good Merchants, or Soldiers, but the chief Pleasure of most of them is to cheat, cuckold, rail upon one another; and they are so implacable, that they study a sure and secret Revenge upon the Lives and Estates of their Enemies. The second Moon in *October*, the *Banian* Women repair to the sacred Wells, where they are very liberal of their Favours, and reckon that the washing themselves afterwards, cleanses them of all Sin. They spend the first Week of *March* in Revelling and lascivious Discourse.

3. The *Persees*, (the Posterity of the antient *Persians*) worship Fire, and have a great Regard for any thing relating to it, as Wood. They have also a great Veneration for a Cock. To kill the one, or put out the other, is esteemed a Crime unpardonable.

Lastly, the *Faquirs* are a Kind of religious Monks: 'Tis incredible what severe Penances some of them patiently endure, being much given to Fasting, and some of them hold their Arms a-cross behind their Heads as long as they live. Others hold one, or both Arms stetcht out in the Air, by which they lose the Use of them. Sometimes they will stand on a Stone for Weeks and Months together. Others lie in Pits for a considerable Time. Some of them never sleep, but as they lean a-cross a Rope; and others beat their Heads with great Stones, to extort Charity from the Idolaters. These, and other Vows once made, they religiously observe, tho' the Observance of them be attended with inconceivable Pains. Some of 'em pretend, that if you bury a Piece of Money for some considerable Time in the Mouth of a live Frog, and then dig it up again at Midnight, this Piece of Money, to whomsoever you give or pay it, will always return to you again. Multitudes of such like ridiculous Fancies they have.

The Advantages which this Emperor reaps from his Dominions are very considerable, as may be seen by what has been mention'd: But a great Defect which is common with all other great absolute States, is, that the Prince is often

Advanta-
tages.
Defects.

dethron'd,

dethron'd and put to Death, as it happen'd to the Great *Mogul Schah Gean*, and to his Grandson Sultan *Schah Alam*, or Sultan *Mahemoud*, who was Dethroned, had his Eyes put out with a red-hot Iron, and was at last put to Death in 1719, because he was suspected of favouring too much the Heathens, for the sake of one of his Wives Daughter to an idolatrous *Raja*. 3. People are obliged to travel in great Numbers, in order to avoid falling into the Hands of Highway-men, by them called *Koules*.

The Interest of this Prince requires to keep up his Subjects Veneration, and thereby their Subjection. 2. To increase every year his Treasure; wherefore he must not let any Body come to his Presence with empty Hands. 3. To maintain a good Correspondence with the *Turks*, as a *Barrier* against any Attacks of the *Persians*. 4. To observe by himself, and by his Confidants or Spies, all the Actions of his Brothers, and other suspected People. And 5. To keep constantly on foot a good Army, to over-awe the *Raja's*, and others who would drive the *Moguls* out of this conquer'd Empire.

7. Q. Now let us see the chief remarkable Things to be consider'd on the *Western Indian Peninsula*.

A. This *Peninsula* is divided by the Mountains Gate, running from N. to S. into two great Parts, the *Eastern* and *Western*, and is somewhat like a *Wedge*, or *Sugar-Loaf*, surrounded on every side by the Sea, except on the North, where it is contiguous to the *Mogul's* Empire. It is divided into five Provinces.

PROVINCES.

1. *Visapur*, part of *Decan*.

2. *Golconda*.

Orixa to the *Mogul*,

Chief Towns with their Distance from Cape *Comorin* in the S.

Visapur 600 N. N. W. *Vingorla*. *Dabul* 750. *Bombay* 850 N. W. *Goa*.

Ederabad 560 N. *Bannagor*. *Masulipatan* 600 N. E. *Colour*. *Condipol*.

Orixa 960 N. W. *Mariguespatan*.

3. *Bisnag*

3. *Bisnagar*. Ditto, 700 N.
Narsingua. Ditto, *Raolconda*.
Canara near *Goa*, not far from them are the *Malleans*, a
Barbarian sort of People.
4. *Coromandel*, } on the E. *Madure*, *Tatucorin*, *Tran-*
quebar, 300 N. E. *St. Da-*
vid. *Pondichery*.
Meliapour, *Fort St. George*,
450 *Paliacate*.
} Coasts.
5. *Malabar*, } *Trancanor*, *Coulam*, *Cochin*,
Cranganor, *Calicut* 300 N.
} on the W. *Cananor*, *Mangalor*,
Barcelor, *Onor* 600.

Of each of them in their Order:

This Kingdom lies South from *Guzurate*, and is also named *Guncan*. The Country in general is fruitful and plain, but towards the Sea 'tis mountainous, and cover'd with Woods. They have Silk, Cotton, Rice, Coconuts, store of Saltpetre, and some Mines of Diamond. The Boundaries are uncertain, because of the Invasions of neighbouring Princes, who sometimes Conquer Parts of it, and lose them again. Their *Idalcan*, or King, was formerly Independant, but is now Vassal to the Great *Mogul*, tho' of late he has in a great Measure shook off his Yoke. He is *Mahometan* of the Sect of *Hali*, but most of the People are *Idolaters*. *Visapour* the Capital, Lat. 17. Long. 75. is a large and populous Town, situated on the *Mandoua*, and well fortified, having a large Garrison, and a thousand Cannons on the Walls. The King's Palace is in the middle of the City, and surrounded with double Ditch full of Crocodiles. The *Dutch E. India* Company have a Factory at *Wingorla*, well fortified, and the Works mounted with great Guns. *Dabul* belongs to the *Portuguese*, as well as *Goa*. *Goa* is on the Coast, Lat. 16, Long. 72. It lies in an Island, is six or seven Leagues round between the Rivers *Mandoua* and *Zuari*, about 8 Miles from the Mouth of those Rivers. It is a large, fine and strong City, but not populous. It was taken by the *Portuguese* in 1510. Its Harbour called *Marmogan*, is one of the finest in *Asia*, but the *Dutch*, and the Neighbourhood

of *Surate* have much diminished its Trade. However, it is yet the Seat of a Viceroy, Arch-bishop, and Tribunal of the Inquisition. The *Portuguese* here, tho' their Trade be decay'd, are as lazy, and proud as ever; and their Wives beg in *Palanguins*, or Coaches. Most of the Inhabitants in the Neighbourhood are *Pagans*. *Bombay* lies in an Island of the same Name, and has several others subject to it. It was given by the Crown of *Portugal* to King *Charles* the Second of *England*, on his Marriage with *Catherine* of *Portugal* in 1662; but King *Charles* II. gave it to the *East-India* Company. Its Harbour is very good, but the Houses are but poor and mean. The Island is about eight Miles long, twenty round, and inhabited by People of different Nations, who come hither as Fugitives, or to enjoy the Liberty of their Religion, which is envied them by the *Moors* and *Portuguese*, but connived at by the *English*: So that the Island contains now about 60000 Souls, whereas in the Time of the *Portuguese* it had scarce 1000. The Island is not able to furnish them with Provisions, but they are supplied from the neighbouring Country at easy Rates.

Golconda's Kingdom extends along the Bay of *Bengal*, from Lat. 16 to 19, in form of a Crescent, and is separated from *Visapour*, by the Mountains. The Country abounds with all manner of Necessaries for Life, but they have no Mines of Gold, Silver or Copper, but abundance of Salt, Iron, and Steel, and many of Diamonds, Topazes, Amethysts, Agats, Garnet, Christsals, &c. The Inhabitants Trade much to *Arabia*, and to all Parts of the *Indies*. Lewd Women are publicly Licensed here. The King administers himself Justice, and is Tributary to the Great *Mogul*. Some say he is little inferior to this Emperor in Riches, or Magnificence. He, and most of his People are *Mahometans*, of the Sect of *Hali*. Most of the *Omrahs*, or great Lords, are *Persians*: The other Inhabitants are *Moors*, *Pagans*, *Armenians*, with some *English*, *Dutch*, *Portuguese*, and a few *French*. *Golconda*, or *Heiderabad* the Capital, Lat. 16. Long. 77. is one of the finest and strongest Towns in the *Indies*, but is liable to Inundations from the neighbouring River and Mountain. The King's Palace is very magnificent, and is so large, that it resembles a City; nothing almost is to be seen in it but Gold, but they say that the Palace at *Bagnagor* is as fine as this.

Masulipatan, at the Mouth of the *Nagund*, is large, encompass'd with a Mud-Wall, and a stinking Morass. The Harbour is pretty good, and the Town is inhabited by *Moors*, *Persians*, *Pagans*, *Armenians*; and the *Danes*, *Portuguese*, *English*, *Dutch*, and *French* have Factories here; but the Air does not agree with new Comers, and during the hot Season, they are infested with Swarms of Ants, Musketoes, Flies, and stinking Chints, like our Bugs: So that they must take a great deal of Trouble to sleep at ease; and their Bed-posts are set in Pans of Water, to prevent the Ants from creeping up.

Masulipatan.

Condopoli lies 120 Miles E. of *Golconda*, 'tis the principal Fortrefs of the Kingdom, contains six Forts one above another, each of them having their Conveniencies and Lands sufficient to maintain the Garrison, which make almost 12000 Men.

Colour, or *Cani* has a Mine of Diamonds, but those of *Raolconda* are the finest and most esteemed in the World.

Colour.

Orixa belongs to the Great *Mogul*.

Orixa.

Bisnagar comprehended formerly *Canara*, the Coasts of *Malabar* and *Coromandel*. Their King, who was also *Raja* of *Velou*, was very potent, and called himself King of Kings, and Husband to a Thousand Wives. Some new Relations say that this Kingdom, and *Coromandel* belong now to the King of *Golconda*. *Bisnagar*, or *Chandegry*, Lat. 14. is a fine, rich, strong and large City. It lies on a Hill, and has a very strong Fort.

Bisnagar.

Narsingua, 30 Miles further North, is a fine and large Town, formerly the Residence of its King.

Narsingua.

Canara, betwixt *Visapour* and *Ma'abar*, is a small, but very fertile Country, especially in Rice. The Inhabitants are very courageous, but so superstitious, that they willingly throw themselves to be crush'd to death under the Waggon which carry their Idols. When a Man has committed some notorious Crime, they strip him stark naked, tie and expose him to the Sun to be eaten by Flies. The *Malleans*, who live in the Mountains are the most Warlike of the *Indians*, are more honest, good-natur'd, and ingenious than their Neighbours, have but one Wife at a time, and differ in Complexion from the *Ma-*

Canara.

labars. They have Captains and Judges, who have five or six Thousand People in a District.

Coromandel is so call'd from the Rice it produces in great plenty; yet sometimes for want of Rain the Crop fails, so as the poor Natives sell themselves Slaves for Food. Their chief Manufacture is fine Callico, Silk and Muffin. Here are many commodious Harbours, most of which are in the Hands of *Europeans*. Most of the Country is plain, and they have but few Mountains, or Trees. Geographers don't agree about its Extent, some saying it is larger, and others lesser: However, they have several Princes or *Naiques*. The Natives are very subject to the Small-Pox. Most of the Inhabitants are *Mahometans* or *Pagans*, and many of them are likewise Christians of St. *Thomas*. They are for the most part Black, and of the Size of *Europeans*. The *Mahometans* possess the North-parts, and the *Pagans* the South. These have a great Esteem for Serpents and Cows. When any of them are at the point of Death, they lay them behind a fat Cow, lift up her Tail, provoke her to stale, and if her Urine fall upon the Patient's Face, they reckon their Souls will be Happy, but if otherwise, are full of Sorrow. Their Religion is comical. They pretend that there are no less than 33 Millions of Gods; and they say, that the World is upheld by a Serpent, which has a thousand Heads; and that this Serpent is upheld by eight Elephants, resting upon a Tortoise-shell, which is upon the Surface of the Waters. They alledge that there are several sort of Seas. 1. Of Water. 2. Milk. 3. Cream. 4. Butter. 5. Salt. 6. Sugar. And 7. Wine.

Madura, or the Fishing Coast, so called from the great Pearl-fishing there. This Country was formerly subject to the *Portuguese*, who were invited hither by the People called *Parons*, to assist them against the *Moors*; but now belongs to the *Dutch East-India Company*, who keeps a good Understanding with the Prince of the Natives, who has several other Countries, with Governours under him. This Country bears no Herbs or Plants, and so they have their Provisions from the neighbouring Coasts. They are much infested with Mice as big as Cats, for which they are an Over-match. The Natives are black, strong, deceitful, and make little Account of their Wives. Their ordinary Food is Meal and Rice; they drink nothing but Water. Further North on the Coast, lie

lie the *Parava's* and *Marava's*, a barbarous sort of Robbers. Hereabouts are also several little Islands, as *Manar*, *Ramanancoil*, &c. where the Natives have Castles, and very rich Idol-Temples : But the Passage between those Islands is very difficult, because of the Sand-Banks, and Stones sunk by the Inhabitants on purpose.

Tutucorin belongs to the Dutch, who took it from the Portuguese in 1653.

Trangebar to the Danes. St. David and St. George's Forts to the English. *Pondichery* to the French. *Meliapour* is about six Miles South of Fort St. George. The Moors took it about 1661 from the Portuguese. It was one of the finest, richest, and best fortified Cities in the Indies. It is also called St. Thomas, because it is pretended that that Apostle was bury'd here. In 1619 the Dutch took *Paliacate* from the Portuguese ; they have made it very strong, and 'tis their chief Factory on this Coast.

Malabar lies along the Coast, from Cape *Comorin* to *Canara*. The Country is healthful and fruitful, and the Inhabitants rich. Here's little Wheat, but plenty of Rice, Maiz, Pepper, Ginger, Spices, Rhubarb, Sugar, Cotton and Coconuts. It is a very low Country, and consequently subject to be overflow'd with Water, especially from *June* to *November*, which is their Winter ; for it Rains then continually, and they have dreadful Storms of Thunder and Lightning, and the Wind blowing hard from the Sea, brings also a great deal of Water and Sand upon the Main Land ; but in their Summer-time, which is from *March* to *June*, a contrary Wind blowing carries away both those Things. This Country is also Water'd by several, tho' not deep Rivers, which fatten the Earth, are of some use for Trade, and breed a great many Crocodiles and Alligators, whose Flesh is eaten by the Natives. It contained formerly several Kingdoms, which in the time of *Sarama Perimal* were all subject to one Sovereign ; but that Prince above 700 Years ago, embracing *Mahomet's* Doctrine, divided his Kingdom amongst his Relations, and went to *Mecca*, where he dy'd. The People are either *Arabians*, settled here for many Ages, or *Mahometan Malabars*, most of them being Pirates or Merchants, and constantly armed. But those that are *Pagans* are of an Olive-colour, well-proportion'd, and affect long

Ears. Some of them are Nobles, and called *Nairo's*, which are trained up to War from their Youth, and the others are, as it were, their Drudges. All of 'em can easily be a Day without eating, by taking a *Bolus* or two of a certain *Paste*, called *Rusian*, or *Amfion*, which they have from *Cambaya*, and makes them giddy ; but when they have once made use of that *Paste*, they must not leave it off, else they would dye in four Days. Here Children don't succeed to their Father's Right, but to their Mothers ; for they say these have the best Right, because in a Country as this is, where Women may have three Husbands at once, and where many *Nairo's*, never marry, because they are allowed to go and lie with the Wives and Daughters of their Neighbours, it is very likely, that the Children are none of their Mother's Husbands. However, when any one goes to see his Neighbour's Wife, he must leave his Arms at the Door, that the Master of the Family seeing them, may not enter and disturb them.

The *Zamorin*, or Emperor of *Calicut*, is the most powerful of the *Malabar* Princes, and pretends that the other Kings of *Malabar* are tributary to him. The Inhabitants must be great Bigots to worship Beasts. They have consecrated a Temple to the *Monkey* ; and tho' they have a great Veneration for the *Elephant*, yet they have a greater for the *Cow*. They believe that the Soul of Man goes into that Animal, as the *Jews* thought that the Souls of wicked People went into the Bodies of *Camels* to suffer. Their Priests called *Brahmins* have here a comical Occupation : One of them is obliged to lye with the Queen on the Wedding Night, and very likely they don't chuse the oldest for that Porter's Business, as *Charles II.* used to call it. The King sends him next Day a Present worth 500 Ducats for that Trouble ; and when he goes on a Journey, he trusts his Wives to one of those Priests, who to be sure don't fail to comfort them as well, and perhaps better than if the King was there. Wherefore the Sons don't succeed to their Father, for very likely they may be spurious ; but after the King's Death they usually take his Brother, or his Sister's Son, who very often has no other Title to the Crown, but by his Mother's side,

The rest of the Towns mention'd in our *Division* are pretty large and fine, and have each their own Kings. The *Dutch* and *English* have also Factories in them ; And the
Dutch,

Dutch, who conquer'd most of them from the *Portuguese*, are, as it were, Sovereigns in some of them.

8. *Q.* Which is the Situation of the *Western Indian Peninsula*?

A. It lies betwixt Lat. 8. and 22. Long. 70 and 85, and is about 800 Miles from South to North. The Air is hot, but every Day temperated by cool *W. Penin-*
Breezes from the Sea, and from the Mountains. *sula's Sit.*
The *Soil* is for the most part very fertil, produ- *Soil.*
cing all sorts of Fruit, Roots and Grain; and
vast Quantities of Medicinal Herbs. The chief Commo-
dities are Silk, Cotton, Drugs, Coconuts, Rice, Pepper, Tim-
ber, Cardamoms, Aloes, Honey, Wax, Gum-lack, Salt-petre,
Canes, &c.

In several Parts of *Decan* is a noted Tree called by Tra-
vellers, the *mournful Tree*, whose Nature is such, that every
Morning 'tis full of stringy red Flowers, which in the Heat
of the Day fall down in Showers to the Ground, and Blos-
soming again in the Night, it daily appears in a new Li-
very. 2. In *October*, *November*, and *December*, the Winds
are in *Madura* as hot as if they came from a Furnace,
and blow the Sand with such violence from the Mountains,
that there's no holding up one's Eyes, and People are fre-
quently suffocated by it. 3. In the Island *Salsette*, adjacent
to *Goa*, are vast Receptacles cut out of the main Rock, one
above another, some of 'em as large as a Village of 400 Hou-
ses, and adorned throughout with strange frightful Statues
of Idols representing Elephants, Tygers, Lions, Amazons,
&c. 4. In the Island *Canorein* (near *Bombay*) belonging to
the *Portuguese*, is a City of the same Name, having divers
large Heathen Temples, and several other fine Structures,
all cut out of the firm Rock. 5. In another adjacent Island,
called *Elephanto*, from a huge artificial Elephant made of Stone,
bearing a young one upon his Back, is another Temple, of a
prodigious Largeness, all of it cut out in the Rock. 'Tis
supported by 42 Pillars, and open on all sides, except on the
East, where stands an Image with three Heads, adorned
with strange *Hieroglyphics*, and the Walls are set round
with monstrous Giants, whereof some have no less than 8
Heads. 6. At *Raolconda* are the best Mines of Diamonds;
and the finest Pearls are fished near *Cape Comorin*.

Rivers. They have a great many Rivers and Canals but not deep. And it is observed of their Towns, that those ending in *Patan* are considerable for their Trade and Harbours, and those in *Pour* have been so called in remembrance of King *Porus*, vanquished, and then much esteemed by *Alexander the Great*.

Inhabitants. The Inhabitants that live in the most Southern Parts, are blacker than the rest; but they have naturally long Hair, and go naked, except that they have a piece of Linnen tied about their Waists.

They have each of them their particular *Government*. Language and *Government*; but for the Benefit of Trade, all Merchants speak *Malayan* or *Portuguese*: And one of their Kings is, in some measure, the Chief of all the rest, as it was formerly in *England*. The *Dutch*, *English*, *Portuguese*, and *French*, have Factories in most of the Maritime Towns.

Rivers. Most of the Inhabitants on the Sea-Coasts are *Mabometans*, but those that live in the inland Parts, are gross *Idolaters*, and Worship not only the Sun and Moon, but also many Idols of most ugly and terrible Aspects; and in some Parts of *Decan* they look upon the first Creature they meet with in the Morning, as the proper Object of their Worship on that Day, except it be a Crow, the very Sight of which will confine them to their Houses during the whole Day.

9. Q. What do you call the *Eastern Indian Peninsula*?

Eastern Peninsula. A. That Part of *India*, which is situated on the other side of the *Ganges*, and is bounded on the E. by *China*, and the *Indian Ocean*, on the North by part of the Empire of the *Mogul*, and Great *Tartary*, on the West by the *Mogul's* Empire, and the Gulph of *Bengala*, and on the South by the *Indian Ocean*: So that it is surrounded with the Sea on three Sides, wherefore it is called *Peninsula*. It is divided into three great Parts, 1. Northern. 2. Southern. And 3. Eastern.

The Northern Part contains the Kingdoms of,

KINGDOMS.

Chief Towns, with their
Distance from Pegu.

- | | |
|------------------------------------|---|
| 1. <i>Asem</i> , or <i>Achem</i> , | <i>Kennerouf</i> 720 m. N. <i>Azo</i>
<i>Lake Chamay</i> . |
| 2. <i>Ava</i> . | Ditto N. 300 <i>Brema</i> , <i>Tipray</i> ,
<i>Melintay</i> , <i>Totay</i> . |
| 3. <i>Pegu</i> . | <i>Pegu</i> , <i>Martaban</i> 60 S. <i>Manar</i> ,
<i>Tangu</i> . |
| 4. <i>Aracan</i> . | <i>Arracan</i> 300 N. W. <i>Sandar</i> ,
<i>Coromora</i> . |

The Southern Part contains the Kingdoms of,

- | | | |
|--|------------------|--|
| 1. <i>Siam</i> , | } Upper
Lower | <i>Corazema</i> 300 E. <i>Sangueloue</i> 200 N. E. |
| | | <i>Siam</i> 260 S. W. <i>Tanassorim</i>
<i>Lugor</i> 600 S. |
| <i>Peninsula of Malacca</i> , | | <i>Malacca</i> 960 S. <i>Pera</i> , <i>Patana</i> , <i>Ihor</i> . |
| 2. <i>Cambodia</i> , or <i>Camboya</i> | | <i>Camboia</i> , 450 S. E. <i>Tarvana</i> , <i>Corol</i> , <i>Candor</i> . |

3. The Eastern Parts contain three Kingdoms,

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. <i>Tunkin</i> . | <i>Checho</i> 600 N. E. <i>Cuasay</i> .
<i>Bodego</i> . |
| 2. <i>Laos</i> , | <i>Langion</i> , 500 N. <i>Bao</i> , <i>Cio</i>
<i>cango</i> . |
| 3. <i>Cochin China</i> , with
<i>Chiampa</i> | <i>Faifo</i> , 600 E. <i>Sinoe</i> . The
<i>Pracel</i> .
Ditto, or <i>Pulacocen</i> . |

Of all of them in their Order.

It is to be observed, That several of the Towns mentioned in our *Division*, are Capitals of several distinct Kingdoms, and that of most of them we have nothing to say, because we have no Description of them that may be depended upon. It is also to be noted, That some of these Countries are sometimes Tributary to one, and sometimes to another State, as the Fortune of War decides it.

This

This Kingdom had formerly a very potent King, but is now under the King of *Pegu*. It *Ava*. has several Rivers, which over-flowing the Country, as the *Nile* does *Egypt*, render the Soil very fruitful: But their bad Water occasions the Inhabitants to have great Wens in their Throats. The People are Idolaters, worship Fire, and are meer Slaves to the King, and must work in the Mines of Silver, Copper, Lead, Rubies, &c. *Ava*, or *Minan Kiou*, Lat. 21. is very large, fine, and govern'd by a Deputy. It has a great Trade in Jewels and Musk; and the King of *Pegu* lives often here.

The Kingdom of *Pegu* lies South from that of *Ava*, and was once so large, that it contained several Kingdoms; but most of them *Pegu*. have been ruin'd by long Wars: Its Limits are uncertain, according as their Prince, or his Neighbours extend, or keep their Conquests. The Soil is water'd with several Rivers, and abounds with Rice, Wine made of Rice and Sugar, Long Pepper, and Benjamin: They have also Camblets, Tape-fries, and Silk Stuffs: But their principal Wealth is from their Rubies, Topazes, Saphirs and Amethysts. The People are rawny, and debauch'd to the highest Degree. The Women have but little Modesty, and go almost quite naked. They turn off their Wives upon any Disgust, and expose them and their Daughters to Strangers for Hire. They live in nasty Huts, together with their Hogs and other Cattle. Causes are determin'd here by the contending Parties going with the Judges to a River, where he that dives longest under Water carries the Suit. The King appears twice a Day in publick, partly for State, and partly to administer Justice; but People must neither speak to, nor look at him. He is reckon'd by some the most powerful Prince in the East, next to the Great Mogul, and the Emperor of China. The People worship the Devil, and several other Gods; but the white Elephant is very much consider'd by them, and has been frequently an Apple of Discord betwixt the Kings of *Pegu*, *Ava*, and *Siam*. They feed him in Silver Vessels, and is lodg'd in gilt Houses. *Pegu* the Capital lies in Lat. 17. and Long. 96. It is a large Town, and divided into the old and new Town. The King lives in this, and has a large Palace divided from the City by its Fortifications, and a Moat, in which they keep Crocodiles for its farther

farther Security. At *Martaban* is a good Harbour, and they make there *China* Wares.

Siam. The Emperor of *Siam* is Tributary to the Emperor of *China*, and has also for his Tributaries the Kings of *Cambodia*, *Malacca*, and *Champa*. This Country is also divided into *Upper* and *Lower Siam*, containing eleven Provinces, viz. *Siam*, *Mattawan*, *Siara*, *Tanacerim*, *Keda*, *Pera*, *Ihor*, *Juncalam*, *Paarn*, *Patana*, and *Ligor*, with Capitals of the same Name. The Country abounds with Rice, and all the Fruits of the *Indies*; But is infested with Pismires, Gnats, Palmer-worms, Locusts, Crocodiles, and dangerous Insects. The Commodities of this Country are Gum, Elephant's Teeth, Wax, Flax, Silk Stuffs, Wood, Musk, Pearls, and other precious Stones. The King of *Siam* is absolute, and is allowed to marry his own Daughter, as well as his Sister; because they think he can't have a suitable Match out of the Royal Family; yet his Brothers succeed to him before his own Sons. He appears magnificently in publick in *November*, when the Inundations begin to decrease, which they ascribe to his Influence. He styleth himself *King of Heaven and Earth*, the *Sun's Brother*, and the sacred Member of the *Almighty*. None but the *Mandarins* of the first Classis dare look at him, or pronounce his Name. Publick Employments are given here more according to the Merit and Worth of the Man, than according to his Birth. It is forbidden for any Kinsman to plead against one of his Relations.

The State-Maxims of this King are,

1. To keep up that wonderful Respect his Subjects have for him, looking upon him as a God.
2. To keep his *Mandarins* under, and to deprive them of their Dignities, Estates and Lives, when they are treacherous, or negligent in their Offices.
3. To keep a good Friendship with the *Chinese*. And,
4. To take, as he does, upon him, the whole Trade of his People, which is the only Way of disposing of them as he pleases. He has very large Revenues, and his Land-Forces are very considerable, but he has no Sea-Forces, his Subjects being too lazy and dispirited to venture on such a troublesome Way of living.

The Inhabitants are a Mixture of different Nations from the *East*, and are more chaste than those of *Pegu*, &c. but they have also long Ears and Nails, and their Complexion

is a coarse mixture of Brown and Red. The King, and most of his People, are gross Idolaters ; but all sorts of Religions are tolerated here, tho' the *Talapoins*, the heathenish Priests, be very much against such a Toleration. These Priests have here a great Interest. The King has of late been very much desirous to embrace Christianity, or *Mahomet's* Doctrine ; but his Answer to the *Christian* and *Mahometan* Missionaries has been the same, viz.

" That God who rules over every thing, seems to have
 " left Mankind the liberty of chusing any one of the several
 " Ways, which are made use of to worship him ; which Ways
 " are no less a Mark of his Wisdom, than the various Li-
 " neaments in every Man's Face. *And he added*, That if
 " God did like so much an Uniformity of Belief and Wor-
 " ship, he would certainly by reason of his infinite Good-
 " ness and Power, have effected it long ago, by pouring
 " it into the Souls of Men as soon as they come into the
 " World, "

Siam, *Judia*, or *Odia*, i. e. the excellent Town, Lat. 14. is the Capital of this great Empire. It is situated in an Island of the River *Menam*, i. e. *Mother of Waters*, which is here large and deep. *Siam* is eight Miles round, and the Suburbs are very fine and large. Canals are drawn from the River through most of the Streets, many of which are over-flow'd during the rainy Season. The Palaces and Temples are very fine, most of them gilt : The King's Palace is as big as a large City, and impregnable when the River over-flows. The Country in the Neighbourhood is very fruitful. The *English*, *French*, *Dutch*, *Portuguese*, *Chinese*, *Turks* and *Mahometans*, have the Privilege to live in the City ; they have Factories here and in other Places ; but other Nations live in the Neighbourhood, each Nation having its particular Camp.

The *Peninsula of Malacca*, supposed to be *Malacca*. *Ptolomy's Chersonesus aurea*. lies betwixt Lat. 2. and 8. It contains several Kingdoms, but the most considerable of them is the King of *Malacca*. This Country is the Staple for all rich Commodities from *Siam*, *Coromandel*, *Pegu*, *Banda*, and other neighbouring Countries and Islands, for all Ships passing betwixt *Japan*, *China*, *Tonquin*, *Cambodia*, *Manillas*, &c. are obliged to pass the Straits of *Malacca*, where the *Portuguese* formerly exacted ten *per Cent.* for every Ship, till the *Dutch* abolish'd it. The *Malayans* are tawny, brave, lascivious proud, and great

great Dissemblers. Most of them are *Mahometans*, except some Pagans, with a few *Jews*, and a great many Christians settled here for Trade. There's a sort of People here who can see nothing by Day, which they sleep away for most part, and do all their Business in the Night. They are like *Europeans* in Shape and Complexion; their Hair inclines to Yellow, and their Feet turn inwards. *Malacca* the Capital, Lat. 3. Long. 100, is a large and populous Town; the Harbour is one of the best in the *Indies*, and safe in all Seasons. The *Portuguese* took it from the King of *Ibor*, in 1511, and the *Dutch* from the *Portuguese* in 1641, and have since fortify'd and stock'd the Town with Inhabitants, and all other Necessaries. It has several Forts. The Inhabitants are *Dutch*, *Portuguese*, *Chinese*, *Moors*, and a few *Armenians*. The Natives live in the Suburbs and out-parts.

The Kingdom of *Cambodia* is Tributary to *Siam*, and a very good fertile Country, but *Cambodia*. little known to any *Europeans* but the *Portuguese*, who have the chief Trade here.

The Kingdom of *Tunkin* lies East of *Laos*, has *China* on the N. and E. and *Cochin China* *Tonquin*. on the S. This Country with *Cochin China* revolted from the *Chinese* some Hundred Years ago; but still retain much of their Language and Customs. The Air is very temperate by reason of the several Rivers, the Country is water'd by, and of the frequent Winds and Rains: They have never any Frost or Snow, Pestilence, Gout, Stone, or such other Diseases as are frequent in *Europe*: But once in seven Years, as in other Parts of the *Indies*, they have terrible Hurricanes, but they seldom last above 24 Hours. The Country is for the most part level, except in the North, where 'tis mountainous. It abounds with Rice, Oranges, Sugar and Silk; but their chief Riches is, in this last, and *Lignum Aloes*, of which the best sort is worth 1000 Crowns per Pound. They have several Trees and Fruits unknown in *Europe*. Here are no Lyons, Asses or Sheep, but abundance of black Cattle, Hogs, Tygers, Deer, Apes, Tortoise, and Fowl of most sorts. Their Horses are well-shaped, and their Elephants the nimblest and tallest in *Asia*. They have multitudes of Cities and Towns, and great Numbers of their People live upon their Rivers in Boats, with their Families.

lies. The King is very powerful. When he made War against *Cochin China* in 1649, they say he had 94000 Foot, 8000 Horse, 722 Elephants and 319 Gallies; but his Soldiers live very miserably. He maintains 80000 standing Men, most of them on the Frontiers, and he has always 30000 about him. Here have been several Revolutions, and they are govern'd by two Kings since the last Rebellion. The first, or King by Succession, called *Boua*, has only the Title, and must not stir from his Palace but on certain Days. But the other, who is the General, and called *Choua*, has all the Power and Authority. The King gives Audience almost every Day to judge Appeals, but his Decisions must be ratified by the *Choua*. The Eunuchs have the greatest Interest at Court, and with the *Choua* appoint which of the King's Sons shall succeed. The rest are shut up in the Palace. Nobility is attained here by War or Learning. The *Tonquinese* are naturally mild and peaceable, have good Memories, and a soft and florid Language. Both Sexes are well-proportion'd, and of an Olive Complexion. Their Faces and Noses are not so flat as the *Chinese*. They all affect black Teeth and long Nails. None being shaved here but Criminals, they are known presently if they escape, and nailed to a Cross. The *Mandarins* are excessive proud, and the Soldiers insolent. They are very exact in Justice, and are more fair in Dealing than the *Chinese*. When a Murderer is carried before a Judge, they make him hold a Whisp of Grass in his Mouth, to shew that he is turned a Beast. Tho' they allow Polygamy, and let out their Daughters for Strumpets, yet a Woman convicted of Adultery is trampled to Death by Elephants. Their Learning consists in Law, Rhetorick, Mathematicks, Politicks, and Astronomy, in all which they have good Proficients. Their Religion is almost the same as the *Chinese*, but they hearken very willingly to Christianity. They have a very good Custom, viz. Their Scholars are examined every Year before the King and his Court, and those who perform the best, and to the Satisfaction of the King, are admitted into the Number of his Courtiers, and made *Mandarins*, or Noblemen. Moreover, every *New-Year's-Day*, they celebrate magnificently the Memory of those, who during their Life have done great things, even against their King. The King, Prince, and all the People, make Sacrifices upon some Altars, on which the Names of the Heroes are written, and bow before them, except before those Altars on which the Names of the Traitors are

are written, against whom the King shoots five Arrows.

Kecho the Capital, Lat. 22. upon the River *Chale*, is said to be twenty Miles round, *Kecho*. and contain a Million of People. 'Tis divided by the River, and not fortify'd. The King has three very large Palaces of Timber. All Handy-crafts-men, except such as are Burghers of this Capital, must work three Months in a Year in the King's Palace, and two Months for the great Lords.

Cochin China has *Tunquin* on the N. *Cambodia* on the W. the Sea on the S. and E. It is so called, because on the W. of *China*. The Country is *Cochin Chi* plain, and shut up by Hills on the W. which are inhabited by Savages named *Kemois*, of the same Lineage with the rest, but live Independent, because their Mountains are inaccessible. Tho' it be in the same Latitude as *India*, yet 'tis not so hot. They have 4 Seasons, tho' not so distinct as in *Europe*. Their Summer is in *May*, *June*, and *July*, when 'tis violently hot; but during their Autumn, *Sept. October* and *November*, the Air is temperate because of the continual Rains, which overflow the Country and drown most of the Rats, which pester their Rice-fields. They abound with Rice, all sorts of Fruit, wild and tame Cattle, Fish, Silk, Pepper, Cinamon, Gold and Silver Mines; and they have also the *Calamba* Wood, reckon'd the best Product of the Country. 'Tis so fragrant that one may smell it tho' buried a Yard and a half under Ground. The young Trees of this sort are called *Eagle-Wood*, grow exceeding high, strait and very big. They have the finest Timber in the World, and among others the *Incorruptible Tree*, so called because it never rots under Earth or Water. The King is able to raise 80000 Men, and yet is Tributary to the King of *Tunquin*. He rewards military Men for their Performances, with a proportionable Number of Vassals, who are obliged to serve them as they do his Majesty. The Governors of Provinces or Towns hear Causes twice a Day, and pronounce Sentence according to the Advice of the Standers-by, which is executed immediately without Appeal. False Witnesses are punish'd *Lege Talionis*. Thieves have a Finger cut off for the first and second Offence, an Ear for the third, and their Head for

for the fourth : And Adulterers are trod to Death by Elephants, to whom they read the Sentence. A Man is only allow'd a Wife at a time. but they keep many Concubines, who are chosen by the Wife, and must wait on her. Divorces are not obtained here, without convicting the accused Party of many Offences.

The People who live on the Coast are of an Olive-Colour, but those within Land are as white as most *Europeans*. They have flat Noses, little Eyes, are of a midling Stature, strong, active, naturally courteous, and have a great command of their Passions, are very liberal, never deny Alms, or any thing, almost, that is asked them; but are as apt to ask what they have a mind to, and take it as an Affront to be deny'd. They never cut their Hair, Beards, or Nails, because they think Nature design'd them for Ornament, only their Mechanicks cut their Nails for Conveniency. The Womens Habits are the most modest of any in the *Indies*. Both Sexes wear Fans. They are very fond of *European* Clothes, and value Coral above all things else. The *Portuguese* are the most favour'd of any *Europeans*. Their chief Learning is Ethicks, Oeconomy and Politicks, which are taught in their Universities. Their Language is much the same with the *Chinese*, but softer, more copious in Tones and Accents, and is easy to be learned by those that have a musical Ear. Their Religion is Heathenism, and they believe the Transmigration of Souls; and when some of their Relations are dying, they strike the Air about their Mouths with their Scimetars, to hinder the Devil from hurting their departing Souls. They tell very odd Stories of their Sorcerers, and of the Devil's appearing to them. They have very few considerable Towns.

Chiampa is lookt upon as a Part of *Co-chin China* on the South thereof, and is but a small Country.

10. Q. What have you to say concerning this *Peninsula* in general?

A. It lies betwixt the *Equinoctial* and North Lat. 25. without including the Kingdom of *Lassa* or *Boutan*, which rather belongs to *Tartary*; and 'tis about 1500 Miles from S. to N. and 750 from E. to W. The *Air* is temperate enough for the Latitude of its Places. and

Places; and the *Soil* is so good, that the South-parts thereof (*viz. Malacca*) is esteemed by many to be the Land of *Ophir*, to which King *Solomon* sent his Ships for Gold. Their chief Commodities are Gold, Silver, Jewels, Silk, Cilemba and Eagle-wood, Aloes, Porcellane, Musk, Ivory, Rice, &c.

Commodities.

Among the *Rarities* we may reckon some peculiar *Trees*, as the *Cocomut Trees*, affording to Men something to eat, drink, and cloth themselves with. The *Banians* are a sort of *Trees*, whose branches bending towards the Ground, take root, and extend themselves very far. 2. The eatable Bird-nests are one of the greatest *Rarities* of *Tonquin* and *Cochin China*. The Birds are as big as Swallows, and compose their Nests of a certain Gum or Froth in form of an Onion, with several Tunicles one upon another. The Natives steep them in warm Water, and mix them in all Sauces; to which they give an excellent Relish, as if it were a Compound of all the Spices in the *East*. 3. In most Parts of this *Peninsula*, the *Elephants* are the Executors of Justice: For when a Criminal is to receive Sentence, the *Elephant* is there, and never misses one jot of the Sentence; so that he will throw up with his Trunk, three, four, and ten times the Criminal in the Air, and then crush him under his Feet, till dead, just as the Judge orders it. These Beasts are also of very great use in Conflagrations of Towns, overturning with a great deal of Skill and Readiness the Houses near which the Fire is. 4. The *golden House* is also a great Rarity, being a large Hall, in the Centre of the Palace of *Arracan*, overlaid intirely with Gold within; and there's a Canopy of massy Gold, from the Edges of which hang above 100 *Cambalenghe*, or large Wedges of Gold in form of Sugar-loaves, weighing 40 Pounds each. Here are also 7 Idols of massy Gold, as high as an ordinary Man, whose Fore-head, Breast and Arms are adorned with very large Jewels. In the middle of the Hall there's a large Gold Stool, which supports a Cabinet of the same, overlaid with precious Stones. In this Cabinet are kept the two famous *Caneques*, or Pendants of *Rubies*, in form of Pyramids, as long as one's little Finger, and the circumference of the Base as large as Pullets Eggs. These are mention'd in the King's Titles, and by reason of them he claims Dominion over the neighbouring Princes, which has occasion'd a great deal of Blood-shed; and all that from a

Rarities.

vain Opinion, that the possession of these Jewels carries with them a just Claim over the neighbouring Provinces.

Rivers. This *Peninsula* abounds with Rivers, the largest of which are the *Menan*, *Mecan*, *Chaipoine*, or *Pegu*, which over-flowing the Country render it very fertile, and are of great use to carry things from one Place to another. They have many Sea-Towns. Ports and strong Towns.

Inhabitants. Most of the Inhabitants differ but little from those of the Great *Mogul's* Empire, except that they are generally more civil, learned, and not so lazy and addicted to Lasciviousness. Those that live on the Coasts are more tawny than the others. As they never did send Colonies out of their Country, it must not be strange, if it be so populous, and if there be so many different Nations. In each Country they speak a particular Tongue, but that called *Malayan* is mostly used in *Malacca*, and among learned People : And both here, and in the rest of the *Indies*, the *Portuguese* is commonly understood and spoke in the trading Towns.

Government. The Government is *Monarchical* and Absolute, as it is in all *Asia* ; but the most potent Kings, as it is also usual in other Places, endeavour to subdue the weakest. Their Nobility is more regarded for their Merit and Vertues, than for their Pedigree and Birth. Most of them are Idolaters, but

Religion. in *Cambodia* Paganism is mixed with *Mahomet's* Doctrine. Some have also embraced Christianity ; but I believe the Number is not so great as is commonly reported.



C H A P. IX.

Of C H I N A.

I. Q.

H A T do you call *China* ?

A. One of the largest
and the most *Eastern Empire* of our Continent. *China's*
Name.

The ancient *Hebrews* did call it *Siu*, the modern, *Zin*, the *Arabs*, *Essin*; the *Turks*, *Persians*, and *Tartars*, *Tschin*; the *Italians*, *Spaniards*, *Germans*, and *English*, *China*; so called, according to some, from one of its antient Monarchs called *Cina*, or *Chinc*: Others say, that the *Chinese* call themselves not *Chinese*, for they don't know any such Name, but *Chung*, and their Kingdom *Chungghoa*, i. e. *the People*, or *Kingdom of the Middle*, because they think that their Country is in the middle of the World; as the *Jews* did of *Judea*, the *Greeks* of *Delphi*, and the *Moors* of *Grenada*. Those of *Siam* and *Cochin China*, call this Country *Cin*, *Chin*, or *Sina*, i. e. *excellent Country*; and the *Tartars*, *Chini*, i. e. *Eastern*. Others will have this Word to come from *Cin Cin*, Words made use of by the *Chinese* when they salute one another, or from *Chen*, i. e. *Perfect*; or perhaps from *Shem*, whose Posterity they are; and in honour to him several Words of their Languages have a near affinity to that. However, this Country has had seve-

ral other Names, for when the Government falls from one Family into another, and even from one Prince to another, then it receives a new Name. Some make it of a circular

Shape. Figure, but according to our Maps it is quadrangular. It has *Tartary* on the N. *Laos*, *Limits.* *Tonquin*, and *Tartary* on the W. and the *Sea* on the S. and East.

Capital. *Pequin*, which in the *Chinese* Language signifies the *Northern Court*, is the Capital of *China*, and the Residence of the Emperor ever since 1404. The *English* Maps place it Lat. 40. and Long. 116, but according to the *Royal Academy's* Memoirs, it lies Lat. 39. 54. and Long. E. of *Paris*, 136, 46, 30". However, it lies in a fertile Plain, not far from the famous Wall. 'Tis square, and had 18 Miles in compass, but since the last *Tartarian* Invasion, the *Chinese*, drove out of the old City by the *Tartars*, have built a *Suburb* or new City; so that these two Cities have about 25 Miles in compass, and are about one third bigger than *London*, and are said, but upon what Grounds I don't know, to contain 2000000 People. The Streets are all strait, and the longest are 120 Feet broad, but the Houses are not very well built, nor high enough, and the Streets are either very dirty or very dusty. The Palace stands in the middle of the City, and is encompass'd with a double Wall. It is very large and very fine. The Temples, triumphal Arches, Bridges, and Gates, are large and magnificent. The Town is always crouded with Soldiers and People. The *Tartars* call it *Campala* or *Cambalu*, i. e. the *Town of the Great Lord*. And I take this to be that famous Town so much spoken of by several Authors, under the Name of *Cambalu*, a City in *Cathay*, or North *Tartary*, or *China*: But we must not too easily believe all the fine things which are said about this and other *Chinese* Towns; for the *Chinese* are great Boasters; excessively credulous, and tell strange Stories of their Country, and so we suppose that they have imposed upon the Authors of a great many Relations, &c.

Division. *China* is divided into two Parts, to which we may add the *Peninsula* of *Corea*, and the *Islands*.

I. The

I. The *Northern China*, otherwise called by the *Tartars*, *Cathay*, i. e. *Great Eastern Country*, because it is on the E. of the *Western Tartary*. It contains seven Provinces, which you will find thus beginning at the North-West going to South-East, on the North of the River *Kiam*, i. e. the *Son of the Sea*.

PROVINCES.

1. *Leaotung*,

2. *Pekin*,

3. *Xamfi*,

4. *Xensfi*,

5. *Suchuen*

6. *Honan*,

7. *Xantung*.

Chief Towns with their Distance from *Pequin*.

Leaoyang, or *Xinyam* 260 N. E. *Ningyuen*, *Kiancheu*.

Ditto, or *Xuntieu*, *Paoting*, 80 S. *Hokien*, *Patchou*.

Taiyvan 200 S. W. *Fuenceu*, *Poucheou*.

Cingan, 600 S. W. *Fungciang*, *Hanchung*.

Singu, 900 S. W. *Chunkin*.

Cnsung over-whelm'd, 320 S. *Queite* 360.

Cinan, 220 S. *Tentcheou*, 300.

II. The Southern called *Mangy*, or the *Country of the Barbarians*, contains nine Provinces, viz.

PROVINCES.

1. *Kiangnan*,

2. *Houchan*,

3. *Queicheu*,

4. *Younan*,

5. *Quansfi*,

6. *Quantung*,

7. *Kiansfi*,

8. *Fukieu*,

9. *Tchekian*,

Chief Towns, and their Distance from *Nankin*

Nankin, *Soutcheu*, 150 N. *Hoetcheiou*.

Houchan 300 W. *Hanian*.

Queyan, 640 W. *Sucheu* 600.

Ditto 900 W. *Teli* 1000.

Queilin 600 S. W. *Lieutcheu* 680.

Canton 600 S. *Macao* 680.

Nankan, 300 W. *Taocheu*.

Fotcheu 340 S.

Hantcheu, 160 S. E. *Ningpo*.

III. The *Peninsula* of *Corea*, on the East of *Leoftung*, has a King of its own, but Tributary to *China*, and contains several large Cities. *Sior* or *Pingor* are the Capitals

IV. The Isles of $\begin{matrix} \S & \text{Hainan,} & \text{Kiontcheou.} \\ \S & \text{Formosa,} & \text{Tayoa,} \end{matrix}$

2. What is the Situation of *China* ?

A. It lies betwixt Lat. 20, and 45, and Long. E. of *London*, 100, and 125 ; for it appears now that

Situation. Some Geographers have placed it several Degrees too far East. Its Extent from S. to N. is about 1500 Miles, and from E. to W. above 1100. The

Air. Antipodes to *China* are the South-Parts of *Brazil*, and the East Parts of *Paraguay*. The *Air*

is here temperate, except on the N. where it is sometimes very cold, and that by reason of the Snow which covers the Tops of their Mountains : However, there and elsewhere, the *Air* is very wholesome ; and contagious Distempers are never, or but very seldom felt in this Country. The *Soil* is very rich and fertile, and produces sometimes two or three Crops in a Year.

Soil. The South Parts are low and watery. They have plenty of Fish in their Lakes and Rivers, Store of Fowls and Wood on their Mountains. In a word, the whole Country in general is lookt upon as one of the finest, richest, and best in the World. Their chief

Commodities. *Commodities* are Gold, Silver, precious Stones, Quick-silver, Porcelline, China-wood, Sugar; Silks, Cotton, Rhubarb, Salt-petre, Musk, Iron, Tin, Lead, Calamba-wood, Vermillion, Allum, Camphire, Fans, and Drugs of all sorts.

Peculiar to this Country (near *Kinboa* in *Rarities.* *Tschekiang* especially) is a Tree called *Kiau-yen*, i. e. *Tallow Tree*. Its Fruit is large and round as a Cherry, the Kernel is white, and being boiled with Water, they use it instead of Tallow to make Candles.

2. The Tree that bears *Tea* is an Ever-green, as high as a Rose-Tree. The *Bohea*, *Green* and *Imperial* Tea, proceed from one and the same Plant, and only differ in the Soil and Season of gathering. The *Bohea* (so called from Mountains in *Fokien*, where it chiefly grows) is the first Bud

Bud gather'd in the beginning of *March*, and dried in the Shade. The *Bing*, or *Imperial*, is the second Growth in *April*; and the *Singloe*, or *Green Tea*, the last in *May* and *June*; both are dried in Pans over the Fire.

3. They have many remarkable Herbs, the chief of which are, 1. That called *Petfi*; 'tis woolly, and grows under Water; it bears several Heads, which taste like Nuts, and 'tis said to soften Brass, and render it eatable, if put into the Mouth with a Piece of the Plant. 2. *Ginseng*, i. e. *Man-Plant*. The learned *Chinese* call it the *Panacea*, and the Medicine that dispenses Immortality. The Root is as thick as half one's little Finger, and twice as long: 'Tis divided into two Branches, resembling the Legs of a Man, which occasion'd the Name. It grows in the Shade, in a moist Soil, and comes not to Perfection in many Years. It is commonly found under a Tree resembling a *Sycamore*. The *Chinese* think it the best Cordial in the World. It purges the Blood, fortifies the Stomach, quickens the Pulse, excites natural Heat, &c. 3. The *China Root*, is, as they say, produced by Juice that drops from the Pine-Trees, and brings forth an Herb that Roots under Ground with knotty Roots like Cocoa-Nuts, but is thinner and softer. 'Tis a sovereign Remedy against the *French-Pox*, Itch, Tremblings, Gout, weak Stomachs, and the Stone in the Bladder. The best Sort is large, heavy and sound, without Worm-holes. 4. They have another called *Huchun*, which the *Chinese* think to prolong Life, and turn Grey Hairs into Black, by drinking its Infusion for some time.

4. They have the clearest and whitest Wax, made on the Branches of certain Trees, by Insects no bigger than Fleas, which lay Eggs on the Trees, that turn in the Spring to little Worms. The Owners of the Trees gather this Wax, and make it into Cakes, which are transparent. That Wax is nothing else but the Pith of the Trees, purify'd and thrust up by these Insects, thro' the Holes they have made, to the Surface, where it congeals.

5. On Mount *Tiexe* in *Souchuen* are found Stones, which, when burnt, yield a Metal fit for Swords and other Arms.

6. On one of the Mountains in *Kiansi* there is a certain Stone, which changes its Colour according to the Quality of the Air, so that they foretel the change of Weather by it.

7. In *Fokieu* there is an Animal exactly like a Man, but all over Hairy; it feigns Laughter, and whilst Travellers li-

sten to it, sets upon and devours them. In *Quansi* they have another with a Bird's Head, and a Fish's Tail, that always turns towards the Wind; and Crabs which soon petrify when taken out of the Water. They have also Serpents thirty Foot long; large Hogs with great strong Bristles, which they dart like Porcupines.

8. They have several *Volcano's* which throw up Fire and Ashes with such a violent Force, as to cause Storms. *Kamsi* abounds with natural Fire-Wells: They close up the Mouths of 'em to the bigness of a Pot, and boil their Meat on them. The Flame is thick, carried about in Stoves, and does not consume Wood.

9. They have several Springs, which come out of the Earth, hot and cold at a very small distance from one another, and some whose Top is very cold, and the Bottom very hot. In *Fokien* there is a River, whose Water is Green, and turns Iron into Copper.

10. Their *China-Wares* are made of a dry Sand mixed with Water, and that Sand is dug out of Mountains in several Provinces. They first dry it well in the Sun, then bake it in Ovens close stopp'd fifteen Days, after which they let it lie fifteen more without Fire, for otherwise it would break, and lose its Gloss. They paint their blue Figures with Indico, and conceal the Art from all but their nearest Relations.

11. Fine Statues and triumphal Arches have been erected in most Cities to the Honour of Men famed for their Virtues, Knowledge, and Valour, and of Virgins renowned for Chastity and Courage.

12. They have several remarkable Bridges, especially that over the River *Saffrany* in *Xenfi*, which is of one Arch bewixt two Mountains, being 400 Cubits long, and five Hundred high. It was built by one of their Generals, to make the Way thro the Mountains more easy.

13. At *Nanking* there is a Porcellane Tower, which exceeds all in *China* for Cost and Architecture. It has nine Rounds, each adorned with a Gallery, full of Images and handsome Windows. The out-side is glazed and painted with several Colours; and the whole cemented so, that it looks like one Stone: And at the Corners of the Galleries, there are multitudes of little Bells, which chime pleasantly when moved by the Wind.

14. At

14. At *Pequin* is that prodigious Bell of 120000 Pound weight. It is about 13 Foot high, 44 round, and one thick. That of *Nanking* is 50000 Pounds weight, and is almost double of the great Bell of *Erfurt* in *Germany*, weighing 25400 Pounds.

15. The High-roads are so good, that instead of Coaches drawn by Horses, they make use of *Shaifes* with Sails, and driven by the Wind.

16. Their great Wall on the *North*, running from E. to W. about 1200 Miles, deserves to be mention'd. It is full six Fathom high, and in some Places, 1730 Foot, and so thick, that six Horse-men may easily ride a-breast on't: It is all built of large hewn Stones, and there is not the least Weed or Filth upon it; though some say it was built two Hundred and fifty Years before Christ by the Emperor *Chius*, who begun it with three Men out of every ten, and then with two out of every five of his Subjects. It is strengthen'd all along by great Towers, two Bow-shot from one another, in order to stop the Incursions of the *Tartars*.

3. Q. What have you to say about their *Rivers*.

A. They have a great many Ponds, Lakes, and Rivers: Their chief Rivers are, 1. *Kiang*, i. e. the Son of the Sea. It rises in the West-parts, runs S. and then E. divides the Empire into S. and N. and is very deep. It is half a League wide about *Nankin*, but its Streams are exceeding rapid and dangerous. 2. The *Hoang* or *Yellow River*, so called because the Water is of that Colour, and always muddy. It runs twice thro' the Wall, and has a Course of about 1800 Miles. They have also several Canals, but the most considerable are the Great Canal in the South Provinces, 245 Leagues long, and the Royal Canal, whereby *Pekin* is commodiously supply'd with Goods brought out of *Sea-Ports*. the South Provinces to *Pekin*. No wonder *Str. Towns*. then if there be so many *Sea-Ports*, or Towns, on navigable Rivers. The strong Towns are also in great Number; but to avoid being prolix, we shall observe here, first, that they distinguish four sorts of Towns,

1. Those of the first Rank are Capitals of Provinces commonly called *Chem*.

2. Those of the second, *Fu*.

3. Those of the third, *Chou*.

4. And those of the fourth, *Hien*: Wherein resides a *Tetuan*, *Lauye* or *Quonfu*, which is the *Mandarin*, or Commander.

mander of the *Portuguese*. When the Word *Chy*, i. e. *Governor*, is joined to one of the abovesaid Names, it signifies a Governour of such a Town. For example, *Chy fu* signifies *Governour of a Town of the second*, and *Chy chu* of the *third Rank*.

Nankin. *Nankkin* on the *Kiang*, Lat. 32. Long. East of *London*, 117 and a half, according to the *New Atlas*, but according to the *French Academy Royal*, Lat. 35. and Long 139. It lies pleasantly in a very fruitful Country. Some say it is above 50 Miles in compass. It has a double Wall, and a Garison of 40000 *Tartars*. The principal Streets are broad, strait, and neatly paved. This Town exceeds all the rest in *China* for largeness, stately Idol-Temples, Towers, Triumphal Arches, &c. Their antient Kings had a large noble Palace here, which was ruin'd by the *Tartars* at their last Invasion. The *Tartars* leave this City to the Natives for the encouragement of Trade, and live in a Plain by it. From this Town one may go by the *Hiang* and *Royal Canal* either to *Pequin* or *Canton*, landing only at the Hill *Muylin*. No other Town should better deserve to be the ordinary Residence of the Emperor than this, if their Presence was not necessary near the Frontiers, that they may be nearer at hand to prevent the Incursions of the Western and Northern *Tartars*.

Canton. *Canton*, Lat. 23-7-46" and Long. 110, but according to the *French Academy*, Long. of *Paris*, 133-134-15" It lies on the North-side of the River *Ta*, and is walled in for three Miles up the River, has several rich and populous Suburbs, equal to ordinary Cities. It is strongly fortify'd. The *Tartars* took it by Treachery, after a Year's Siege in 1650, when they destroy'd it by Fire and Sword for three Weeks together, but in a few Years after it was restored. The People have a very good Trade. Most of the large Streets have high Gates at each end, which are not open'd after ten at Night, without Order of the *Mandarin* of the Quarter upon extraordinary occasion. The Vice-roy of this Country takes place of all others in *China*.

Macao. *Macao* is a sort of Peninsula at the Mouth of the Bay of *Canton*, has a fine Harbour, is strongly fortify'd, has been possess'd by the *Portuguese*.

tuguese about 130 Years. They trade chiefly in Pepper, Cinnamon, Cloves, Saunders, Ebony, Wine, and eatable Birds-nests.

Hainan lies Lat. 19 and 20. Long. 108, is almost circular, 60 Miles S. to N. &c. It has 13 Cities, a good Pearl Fishery, and produces store of A- *Hainan*. loes. They have Calamba Wood, abundance of Corn, and wild and tame Animals. The Inhabitants are savage, and depend for the most part upon the *Chinese*.

Formosa, so called from the beautiful Aspect of the Isle, is an Island called by the *Chinese*, *Pacande*, or *Talieu Kieu*. It is East of *Fokien* about 100 *Formosa*. Miles. The Tropick of *Cancer* cuts it about the middle: 'Tis about 200 Miles from S. to N. and about 70 from E. to W. 'Tis full of Hills, fruitful Vallies, fine Streams, and abounds with Rice, Sugar, and all the usual Fruits, Birds and Beasts of the *Indies*; but the Island is very subject to Storms and Earthquake. 'Tis very populous, and besides the Natives, has above 30000 *Chinese*, who fled from the *Tartars*, do till the Ground, and keep up the Trade, which the Natives despise and neglect. The Natives are of an Olive Complexion, fat, strong, well-limb'd, and many of them so swift, as to out-run Stags. They are reckon'd friendly, faithful, and quick-witted. The Men don't use to marry till fifty Years of Age, and they won't allow a Woman to be big with Child before she be 37: They think that thereby their Children will be stronger, and more quick-witted, and that themselves shall live longer. The People were formerly free, every Village being a sort of *Common-Wealth*, govern'd by twelve Men chosen for Life, but *Collinga*, a Taylor's Son, and a Pyrate, a great Enemy of the *Dutch*, did with the Help of the *Chinese* drive the *Dutch* out of this Island in 1662, and seized upon it. The *Portuguese* were driven out of it by the *Dutch* in 1635.

4. Q. Who are the Inhabitants of *China*?

A. They are the Posterity of some of *Shem's* Sons, or Grandsons, and were formerly called *Inhabitants*. *Cine*, or *Sine*. Most of them have a broad *Manners*. Face, dusky Complexion, short Noses, small black Eyes, very thin Beards, middle-siz'd, but strait Stature, and a proud Mien. They are great lovers of Sciences, and

and generally esteemed very ingenious. They are civil, great Politicians, magnificent in their Clothes, very laborious, and excel at Invention. They boast to have had Printing, Guns, Bells, and Posts, a long while before the Use of them was known in *Europe*. It is certain that the Use of Printing, Guns and Mariner's Compass was first known in *Europe*, after the return of *Marc Paolo*, *B Oderic*, and of some other *Europeans*, from an Expedition they made with the *Tartars* into *China* about 1275. But many of their Gentry ruin themselves by studying Alchimy, and seeking after Drugs to make them immortal. They are so conceited, and have so mean Thoughts of other People, that speaking of themselves, they do commonly say, that they have two Eyes, the *Europeans* one, (because they have invented *Clocks*, &c.) and the rest of the World none at all. They are also very covetous, jealous, great Slovens in their eating, slow to resolve, and great Formalists

Customs. They who apply their Minds to study, and have made such Improvements as to be Doctors to others, are distinguish'd by their long Nails, as being the true Characteristick of a Scholar, and the distinguishing Mark betwixt them and Mechanicks. They are also so much taken with long Hair, that several of them had rather dye than cut it according to the Proclamation of their late Emperor, who would thereby take away the Difference which appears thereby publicly betwixt his ancient Subjects, the *Tartars*, and the native *Chinese*. They take also a special care that their Women have very small Feet, to prevent them from going abroad. They are great lovers of Swine-flesh. The Man gives to the Woman he will marry, a Portion, and she gives it to her Father for his Trouble in bringing her up. And they say, that in some Provinces, as it was anciently at *Lacedemon*, and in some Parts of *Perfia*, the Magistrates give the handsome Maids, to rich People, and the Money which is given them, is apply'd for marrying the ugly. When they salute any Body, they don't pull off their Hats, but they make only a Bow, and put their Hands across on their Breasts. Every Father is like a Prince in his Family; and if he accuse his Children of a Crime, there needs no other Proof, but immediate Punishment is inflicted. If a Son mock, or lay violent Hands on his Father, the whole Empire is alarm'd, the Mandarins of the Town are turned out, the Neighbours reproved, the

the Criminal is chop'd to pieces, his House is burnt, and all about it laid waste. They mourn three Years in White for Parents and Husbands, but Men not above one for their Wives. If any Fire happens by the Carelessness of the Master of the House, he is put to Death for occasioning such a Fright to his Neighbours.

Most of their Laws are very just, and severely put in execution, especially against idle Drones, *Laws.* and Adultery, and yet they have many Wives.

Their *Language* differs from all others, both as to its Nature, Pronunciation, and Way of Writing :

1. Its *Nature* : They use no *Alphabet*, as *Europeans* do, and are amazed to hear that by 24 Letters we can express our Thoughts, and fill Libraries *Language.* with Books. Instead of an *Alphabet* they formerly used *Hieroglyphicks*, setting down the Images of Things, for the Things themselves ; But this being extremely tedious, and likewise defective, (there being no such Resemblance of abstracted *Ideas*) they then made Characters to signify Words, numbring them according to the Number of Words, and sometimes of Phrases as they need to express their Ideas by : But these Characters arise to such a prodigious Multitude, that not only Strangers, but even the Natives themselves find it a very difficult matter to understand them all. However, none is reckon'd Learned among 'em, who is not able to read 15000 of them.

2. Its *Pronunciation*. Tho' all the original Terms of this Tongue be only about 323 Monosyllables, yet such is their particular Way of pronouncing them, that the same Term admits of various, and even contrary Significations, according to the various Tunes or Accents of those that speak. Moreover, the Pronunciation thereof is accompany'd with such a variety of Motions with their Hands, that a *Mute* Person can speak intelligibly with his Fingers.

3. Their *Manner of Writing*. Whereas the *Latin*, *French*, *Brittons*. &c. write from the Left to the Right-hand, and the *Hebrews* and most other *Eastern* Nations from the Right to the Left, the *Chinese* usually make their Lines from the Top of the Page down to the Bottom.

China is so populous, that many considering the Number of Inhabitants, thought that the *Populous-* Women did bring forth several Children at *ness.* once ; and for the abundance of Towns they did look upon all the Country to be but one Town. Some last

last Relations say that they have two Cities bigger than London or Paris; above 80 as large as Lions or Bourdeaux, among the 260 of the second Rank, there are above 100 as large as Orleans or Dublin; amongst 1200 of the third, there are 600 as large as Canterbury, Coventry, or Rochelle. And that there is a prodigious Number of small ones, as large as Colchester, Norwich, or Angoulesme. They reckon the Number of Men only at 59788364. It is not hard to know the Number of them, because every Master of a Family is obliged to fix a Board over his Door, which contains the Number and Quality of the People he has in his House. And there are Officers called *Ti-fangs*, appointed over every ten Houses, to see that the Rate be true. Their Lakes, Rivers, and Canals, are cover'd with a prodigious Number of Boats, in which there are a vast many Families, which have no Habitation on Land: So that many think that China contains about two Hundred Millions of People; but this looks fabulous to me.

5. Q. What have you to say about the Government, &c. of China?

A It is Imperial; and the first of their Emperors, they speak of with any certainty, is *Foki*, who began to Reign about two Hundred Years after the Deluge. In 1278 the Tartars, after 73 Years War, subdued the Empire, and set up a new Family, which in 1368 was turned out by a Priest called *Cheu*, who influenc'd the People to rebel, drove out the Tartars, and set up himself. His Race continued till 1644, when the Tartars conquer'd again the Country, and set up their great *Cham Xunchi*, from whom the present Emperor is descended. The then Chinese Emperor, to avoid falling into the Hands of one of his rebellious Subjects, hang'd his Daughter, and then himself. It was then very easy for the Tartars, who came to the Help of the Chinese, to conquer the Country, because the Natives, and especially the Mandarins were then divided, and each of them pretended to set up himself Independent.

2. The Chinese being entirely given up, and minding nothing but Books and Learning, had left off the use of Arms, and fought only with their long Nails; and they thought themselves sufficiently reveng'd, when they could take away their Antagonists Fan, or pull him by his long Hair, wherefore the Tartars did call them by Derision, *The soft Men*.

Men: They confess themselves that their Horses (we may add their own Persons) could not abide the Sight of those of the *Tartars*.

Tho' the Fortunes and Lives of all his Subjects, the Princes of the Blood not even excepted, be at the disposal of the Emperor, yet there's something of an *Aristocracy* in the Government; for tho' he ratifies every thing, he cannot do it till desired by his Council, nor are his Revenues subject to his disposal, but deliver'd into the Treasury, from whence he has a Sum paid for his Family Expences; and he is obliged by Law to use his Power moderately.

Tho' he has the sole Right of Peace, War, and Treaties, it is always with a Proviso that they be not dishonourable to the Empire: For 'tis a standing Maxim of their Government, that Kings are properly Fathers to their People, and not Masters of Slaves. This has been so inculcated by their Philosophers, that if he neglects this Maxim, he incurs the Hatred of the Subjects; besides, every *Mandarin* has liberty to tell him of his Faults with due Submission: So that he finds it his Interest to observe the Laws, otherwise all would run into Confusion. For in such Cases, every *Mandarin* thinks himself a petty Sovereign, as was the Case in 1643. He nominates his Successor, but may afterwards exclude him for good Reasons, and appoint another, with the Consent of the sovereign Court of *Pekin*. For the better managing the Affairs of this mighty Empire, he has two sovereign Councils; the one called *Extraordinary*, which consists of the Princes of the Blood; the other is composed of them, and other Ministers, who examine all Affairs of State, and report to the Emperor, who gives a final Decision. There are six Sovereign Courts at *Pekin*, whose Authority extends over all the Empire, and they have different Matters assign'd them, but the Concurrence of all must be had in Matters of Importance. The Assistants are commonly half *Tartars*, and half *Chinese*, but the President is always a *Tartar*. There are Courts of the same sort in the Provinces and Towns, which are subject to these. There are also Vice-Roys in the Provinces, who inspect the Conduct of the *Mandarins*, as they do theirs, and have a liberty to impeach one another. The Emperor has also so many Spies, that every thing is in good Order. Moreover, every public Officer is bound to take an Account of his own Mis-carriages in the Management of publick Affairs, from time to time, and humbly acknowledging the same, is bound to send

send them in Writing to Court : Which Task is undoubtedly very irksome on one hand, if duly performed, but yet more dangerous on the other, if wholly neglected. It is also to be observed, that there is no Appeal from the first Court of *Pekin*, yet if a Man thinks fit to lodge an Appeal to the Emperor, he must first receive so many Strokes with a Stick, but the Emperor remits often some Parts of the Punishment. And if the Emperor sees that those Appellants have been wronged, then the Judges are sometimes put to Death, and always dismissed.

Genealogy. The present Emp. called *Cham hy* was born about the Year 1654, and is the Son of *Xunchy*, the 1st Emperor of the 22d Family called *Cim*. As Emperor he has commonly fifteen Wives, who are all styled Queens, tho' they don't enjoy the same Rank and Privileges. He has three chief ones, the first called *Cinfi*, or *Perfect Queen*, the second *Tumfi*, or *Eastern Queen*, and the third *Sifi*, or *Western Queen*. These two may speak, but upon their Knees, to the first Queen, but the others have not that Liberty, and must apply to the two others, when they want any thing from the first. The Emperor, if he pleaseth, keeps several other Women; and respects those most, who bring him most Children, but especially the Mother of his first Son. The Children of all those Queens have no Pre-eminency one above the other, for the Emperor chooseth him whom he pleaseth, for his Successor. When the Emperor dies, they do usually kill a Counsellor, a Priest, and a Concubine to wait upon him in the other World. They burn also with his Corpse all that was appointed for his Use, Plate, Jewels, &c. and that amounts sometimes to several Millions.

They call their Prince *Chaotim*, or *Hoangfi*,
Title. Emperor, or *sovereign Monarch of the World*.
 The Ladies, Eunuchs, and others of his Court call him *Chu*, i. e. Lord, or *Tienceu*, i. e. Son of Heaven. Before any Ambassadors be admitted into the Emperor's Presence, they are obliged to go into the House where his Seal and Coat of Arms are kept, and to make there the same Obeysance which they are to do to the Emperor himself. The Emperor's Children are called *Kiumvam*, i. e. belonging to the King.

Revenue. 'Tis not easy to compute his Revenue, much of it being paid in Goods, as well as Money, but we may say that it is very considerable, and

and larger than that of the Great *Mogul*. Some say that he has at least two Hundred Millions Sterling, but others give him only forty Millions. Out of these Revenues he pays Governours of Provinces, his Troops, and the rest is employ'd to keep in good Repair the High-ways, Bridges, in Rewards for Learned Men, or laid up in the Treasury. Nothing can be more magnificent than his Court, when he goes abroad; and especially when he goes to the great Temple to sacrifice to Heaven.

The Guards on the Frontiers are above 900000, and the Auxiliaries always ready against the *Tartars*, are near a Million of Troopers. In the other *Forces*. Garrisons there are above seven Hundred Thousand Men, and he keeps always 564900 Horse for his Troops, Messengers, and Posts. Besides three Thousand Towers; or Castles without the great Walls, he has 4400 fortified Places, Civil and Military, some of them appointed for the Refuge of People and Cattle in case of Invasions, and others to save them from the Disorders of their own Army when they march. The Number of their Ships is prodigious, but they are not to be compar'd with our *European Ships* in Strength.

They have no other Nobility but what is founded on Merit, except the Princes of the Blood, and the Posterity of their famous Philosopher *Confucius*. Their Clergy is very numerous; and their *Bonzes*, or Priests, are the greatest Enemies to the Christian Religion. In every considerable Town they have an University, where- in Astrology, Morals, Physicks, Mathematicks, and Navigation are taught.

Nobility:
Clergy.

Universi-
ties.

The prevailing Religion is *Paganism*, or gross Idolatry; and in some Parts, especially where the *Tartars* live, the Doctrine of *Mahomet* is entertain'd.

Religion.

Of the several Idols to whom they pay their Devotions, there are two chief ones, *viz.* one like a *Dragon*, whom the Emperor with his *Mandarins* do religiously worship, prostrate themselves, and burn Incense before. The other is called *Fu*, set up, as it is conjectured, in honour of *Confucius*, who lived about 500 Years before Christ, and was a good-natur'd, prudent, subtle Man, and a great lover of his Country. Tho' he was very much esteem'd, he met with great Opposition, and dy'd of Sorrow, when he saw that he could not reform the World.

But among the *Chinese*, there are three different Sects, viz.

1. The Followers of *Li Loakum*, who lived before *Confucius*. They are a Sect of *Epicureans*, who admit the Art of Conjuring, and are very fond of *Gymnistry*.

2. Another Sect worship an Idol called *Fo*, and admit the *Metempsychosis*. And,

3dly, That of the Learned, or Courtiers, who are Deists. However the *Chinese* think that their departed Friends are always present with them, and narrowly viewing their Deportment. If we may believe the Writings of Papist Missionaries, there are a great many Christians in *China*, if we may call such those Converts, to whom the Jesuits allow the liberty of mixing God with *Belial*, and the Idols with Christ. However, it is confidently reported, that from A.D. 650 to 770, the *Chinese* Emperors, with most of their Subjects, were Christians.

This Empire is one of the largest in the World. 1. Most of what has been said before, may be lookt upon as so many *Advantages* to this Country. *Advantages.* half part of it being surrounded by the Sea, and all its Provinces abounding with so many

Commodities, that there is enough for Exportation. But as there is nothing perfect under the Sun, this

Defects. Country has also some *Defects*, for it is very obnoxious to Earthquakes, which destroy the Canals, Bridges, and High-ways. 2. The antient Inhabitants look upon the *Tartars* their new Masters, as upon so many Enemies, they would be very glad to be rid of upon any account. Wherefore it is very probable that there will be intestine Broils as long as there shall remain any *Chinese*, or *Tartars* in *China*. 3. The Governours having large Provinces, will certainly in a convenient Time, render themselves independant, as they were like to be just before the last *Tartarian* Invasion.

The chief political *Maxims* of this State, are,

1. To unite perfectly the *Chinese* and *Tartars*, to establish betwixt the two Nations an intire Conformity of Manners, Uses and Clothes, and to blot out thereby the odious Notion of a Foreign Government.

2. The Emperor must order the Matter so, that his *Tartar* Subjects may never be wronged or subdued by the *Chinese*.

3: *When-*

3. Whenever he appears abroad, he ought to do it always with all the Splendor that may attract the Respect of the People ; wherefore his Predecessors rarely shewed themselves to the People, but the present Family observes a Medium, to please both the *Chinese* and the *Tartars*.

4. To give all manner of Incouragement to the People who petition him, when he visits every Province in Person to hear the Complaints of his Subjects ; for thereby he will keep every thing in good Order.

5. To employ no Man as a great Officer in his own Province, lest if of mean Parentage he be despised, and if otherwise, lest he may be prompted to Partiality, or Rebellion.

6. To bring up their Children at Court, as Plèdges of their Fathers Loyalty.

7. To bestow Posts on Merit, not for Money ; on Men of Probity, and skill'd in the Laws, who have sufficient Salaries, but must take no Fees.

8. Lastly, all Lands being held in Soccage, and obliged to pay Contributions. This encreases Trade, and the Emperor's Revenues, and hinders consequently any Family from engrossing Popularity, and keeps all in Subjection.

N. B. When the Description which some Jesuits are making of this Country, by Order of the *Chinese* Emperor, shall be published, then it will be more easy to know all the Particulars of this Country, which are now very confused, and little known.



CHAP. X.

OF TARTARY.

I. Q.

H. A. T. have you to say about *Tartary*?

A. As this Country is not well-known, because few People have travell'd thro' it, I shall not speak so much about it as may be expected from the Largeness of the Country. Some say that it is so called from a River and Country named *Tatar*; others derive the Word from *Tatar* or *Totar*, which signifies Remnant in *Syriack*, imagining that the *Tartars* are the Remainers of those *Israelites*; who were carried away by *Salmanasser*. But the most probable Signification of the Name is *Innaders* or *Robbers*, which Name was given them by their Neighbours. Their Name came first to be known and formidable in *Europe*, about 1168, 'when they subdued Part of *Muscovy*. and settled in the *Taurica Chersonesus*, now the *Crim*. It is called *Great Tartary*, to distinguish it from *Little Tartary* in *Europe*; and well may it be called *Great*, since it comprehends about the third Part of *Asia*. Its more antient Name was that of *Scythia*. It has the main Ocean on the E. the *Tartarian*, or *White Sea* on the North, *Muscovy* on the West, *Persia*, the Dominions of the *Mogul* and *China* on the South.

Samar

Samarkand Lat. 40, Long. E. of London 66, may be lookt upon as the chief Town, having been so for a long time. *Ptolomy* calls it *Maracanda*, Chief Town and *Strabo* *Paracanda*. *Bessus*, one of *Darius's* *Samarcand* Murderers, was seized here, and deliver'd to *Alexander*, who put him to death. It was in this Place, where he also cut off his Friend *Clytus*, who saved him at the Battle of *Granicus*. It was the Place of the Birth, Seat, and Death of the great *Tamerlane*, who enriched it with the Spoils of the E. and made it a magnificent City; but 'tis now much decay'd. It was also the Birth-place of the Philosopher *Avicennes*.

Tartary is commonly divided into two Parts, Northern and Southern. The Northern *Tartary* belongs almost intirely to the *Czar*, and is again divided into Southern and Northern *Muscovitish Tartary*, Division. which contains several Provinces or Kingdoms.

The Southern *Muscovite Tartary*.

PROVINCES.

	Chief Towns, with their Distance from <i>Astracan</i> .
1. <i>Furmen</i>	<i>Salacinit</i> 300 E.
2. <i>Circassia</i> and <i>Daghestan</i>	<i>Jessauloff</i> , 400 N. W. <i>Asof</i> to the <i>Turks</i> , 500 W. <i>Terki</i> 200 S. <i>Andreof</i> newly built.
3. Kingdom of <i>Astracan</i> and <i>Nogais</i>	<i>Astracan</i> , <i>Czaritza</i> .
4. <i>Tartars</i> <i>Kalmouks</i> on the N. E. live in Tents or Huts.	
5. The Dutchy of <i>Bulgaria</i>	<i>Bulgar</i> 500 N. <i>Samara</i> !
6. <i>Fucoria</i>	<i>Serponon</i> .
7. Kingdom of <i>Cazan</i>	<i>Cazan</i> , 600 N.

The Northern *Asiatick Muscovy* contains chiefly the
Provinces of

PROVINCES,

With their Capitals, Latitude
and Longitude E. of Lon-
don.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. <i>Pegaorda</i> | <i>Weliki Perma</i> , Lat. 60 and a
half, Long. 54. |
| 2. <i>Siberia</i> | <i>Tobol</i> 56, 62. <i>Tumen</i> 57, 61. |
| 3. <i>Baida</i> on the West of <i>Si-
beria</i> | |
| 4. <i>Condora</i> , or <i>Obdora</i> | <i>Vergaturia</i> , 59. |
| 6. The <i>Samojedes</i> | <i>Kamsatka</i> , 71, 123. |
| 7. <i>Grutinski</i> | <i>Surgut</i> 71. 66 <i>Narum</i> . |
| 8. <i>Ostiacks</i> | <i>Makouski Horoda</i> . |
| 6. <i>Tongusi</i> | <i>Jenizeskoi, Ilinskoi</i> , 55: and 87. |
| 10. <i>Jakutisians</i> | <i>Jakutkoi</i> 66, and 101. |
| 11. <i>Bratski</i> | <i>Talembi</i> 53, and 104. <i>Seli-
gisk</i> , 51 and 95. |
| 12. <i>Dauri</i> | <i>Argun</i> 51 and 105. |

And several other East and North, whose Names are un-
known to us.

II. Southern *Tartary* contains several Independant Provinces,
the chief of whom are,

1. The *Ufimsi* and *Baskirsi*, N. E. of *Astracan*.
2. The Black, Brown, and Fugitive *Kalmouks*; live S. E.
of the *Ufimsi*, about the City *Serachick* upon the *Cas-
pian* Sea.
3. *Usbecks*, *Zagatay*, or Independents, have for their Ca-
pitals, *Samarkand*, *Bochara* *Balch*.
4. *Turquestan*, or *Cascar*, just on the North of *Persia* and
China.
5. *Tangu* and *Thibet*, has *Barantola* 34. 95.
6. The *Moguls*, where is the Defart of *Xamo*.
7. *Bogdois*, or *Nieuche*, or East *Tartars*, subject to the
Chinese.

2. Q. What have you to say about the Situation, &c. of
Tartary?

A. It

24. It lies from Lat. 34 to the frozen Ocean, and from 45 to 125 Long. So that its greatest Length from South to North is about 2220 Miles, and from East to West 3000, The opposite Places of the Globe to *Tartary* are part of the *Pacifick* Ocean, as also the Countries of *Chili*, *Paraguay*, and *Terra Magellanica*. The Air is very cold in the North, temperate in the middle, and warm in the South-parts. And the Soil must be also very different; for towards the North it is extremely barren, and incumber'd with unwholsome Marshes, large Forrests, or uninhabited Mountains, and the People are forced to plunder the neighbouring Countries, or to live upon the Milk and Flesh of their Goat, Sheep, or Horses: But in the Southern Parts, the Soil is indifferently good for Tillage and Grazing, especially the latter: And towards the East and South-West, 'tis reported to be, when duly manured, abundantly fertile in Corn and other Things. But in general the Soil of this vast Country is none of the best, and full of sandy Desarts. However they have some *Commodities* to sell or exchange, as rich Furs, Camblers, Flax, Musk, Manna, the best Rhubarb, and other medicinal Herbs. It is said that in the North and East Parts of *Tartary*, there are some *Volcano's*, which is the only *Rarity* I have to mention about this Country.

Situation.
Extent.

Air.

Soil.

Commo-
dities.
Rarities.

They have several considerable *Rivers*, but their Names are so barbarous, so often changed, and the Rivers themselves are of so little use to Trade, that it is almost impossible, and certainly needless to reckon them all up. As for *Sea-Ports*, they are needless to a Nation which does not care for Trade.

Rivers.

Strong Towns they have but very few, and most of them belong to the *Czar*; for these People have almost no other Houses than moveable Tents, cover'd with Bear's Skins, which they pitch up in great Numbers, in the form of a Town, by them called *Hoarda*; and they move'em (as they please, when the Grass thereabouts is eaten up, and the Country barren) to another Place, and so those *Hoarda's* can't properly be called Towns, much less fortify'd Cities. And it may be observed here, that even the Name of those several People inhabiting the several Parts of this large Country, is as uncertain as their Mansions are unstable; those People calling themselves sometimes by the Names

Towns.

of the Places or Rivers where they pitch their Tents, or their cover'd Chariots, and sometimes by the Name of the Colour of their Cloaths.

3. Who were the antient Inhabitants of this Country ?

A. If we compare what the antient Historians and Geographers relate about the Manners, and Places of abode of the *Scythæ, Alani, Saca, Huns,* &c. with the Customs and Places of Abode of the modern *Tartars*, we shall find them to be of the same Origin, and all of them the Posterity of *Magog*, Grandson to *Noah*; for even the Word *Caucasus*, a great Ridge of Mountains in this Country, seems, according to the learned *Bochart's* Conjectures, to take its Name from the Hebrew Word *Gog-chasan*, i. e. *Gog's Fortification*, these Mountains being a good Fence to some Parts of this Country; and *Georgia* on the South of Western *Tartary* is nothing else but *Gogarenia* of the Antients. The same learned Man thinks also, that the Name *Scythæ* is derived from *Shooting*, and even in the German Tongue *Shooters* are called *Scutten*. Now any body that is but a little acquainted with History knows, that the *Scythians* were famous of old for their Skill in the use of the Bow and Arrows, and that the *Germans* are an Offspring of the *Scythians*. However the *Tartars* are now of a middle-siz'd Stature, of a swarthy Complexion, and have large Shoulders, broad Faces, crooked and flat Noses, hollow little Eyes, long Hair and Beards, thick Lips, and consequently are very ugly. Their Speech is boisterous and clamorous, their Behaviour rude and barbarous. They do usually devour the Flesh of their Enemies, and drink their Blood, to quench their Thirst and Hunger, when they can't have their ordinary Food, i. e. Horse-flesh, which they greedily tear and eat raw like so many ravenous Beasts; their ordinary Drink is either the Milk of their Sheep and Goats; or that of their Mares mixed with their Blood. The Housing of their Horses, spread on the Ground, is their ordinary Bed. In strength of Body they exceed the common Power of Man. Their Lust is excessive, and confined to no Species nor Sex. Many of them make good Soldiers, being not only willing and able to endure great Fatigues, but also very dextrous in time of Engagement; but most of them are Robbers.

Their

Their Language is not much different from that used in *Crim Tartary*, and both have a great affinity with the *Turkish*. The Country is not populous; 1. Because several Colonies are gone at several Times, to settle in several Parts of the World. 2. Vast Numbers of them have been killed in the long Wars which they have had against their Neighbours.

Language.
Populous-
ness.

This vast Country is subject to several petty Princes, and some of them are Tributary to the *Czar*, others to the *Chinese*, others to some more potent *Tartarian* Prince. As for what's said of the *Great Cham*, to whom the rest are wholly accountable, tho' it has been a current Opinion, yet it is now lookt upon as a piece of romantick Story. It is true that in *Tamerlane's* Time there might have been such a Prince, but how long it lasted after, is not known. However they have Laws of their own, and they soon decide their Controversies. *Cham* is a Title of very great Honour amongst 'em: Some of their first Captains, or Leaders being probably of that Name. Their Forces, if united, would be very numerous, and if well-disciplin'd, would be formidable. Their *Revenues* are not very considerable, no wonder then if their Court be so poor, and their Ambassadors so ragged.

Govern-
ment.

The *Tartars* are partly *Pagans*, partly *Mahometans*, and partly *Christians*. *Paganism* does chiefly prevail in the Northern Parts, tho' there be some *Christian Muscovites*. In the South the People are mostly *Mahometans*, the *Usbeks* especially are so zealous for *Omar*, that they hate the *Persians* who follow *Ali*; and when they travel to *Persia*, they commonly bind themselves by Oath, to kill any one that curses *Omar*, tho' they should dye for it: But towards the *Caspian* Sea are found a considerable Number of *Jews*, thought by some to be the Offspring of the ten Tribes led away Captives by *Salmanasser*. Those of the Christian Religion, being most of them *Nestorians*, are scatter'd up and down in several Parts of this Country, especially towards *Tanchut*, or *Tangut*: And it is to be observed, that near *Barantola*, the chief Town of this Province, is the Fortrefs of *Beatalae*, wherein lives the *Dalae Lama*, or Great *Lama*, the Head of all the *Tartarian Lama's*, or Priests. He is worshipped like a Deity by several of them, and their great Men take it as a great Favour to have some of his Excrements, which they carry

carry in Boxes round about their Necks. They think he never dyes, but that he renews his Age like the Moon; and the Priests about him carry on the Cheat, by having always in readineſs one as like him as they can: They bury the *Lama* ſecretly when he dyes, and ſet up the other in his ſtead. This *Lama* is in the Language of the Country called *Preſtigiany*, i. e. *Apoſtolick*, which *Europeans* not underſtanding, called him *Preſty Janni*, and afterwards *Preſtre Jean*. And becauſe moſt of what has been related about this might be thus apply'd to the *Lama*; 'tis thought more reaſonable to acknowledge him to be in *Tanchut*, where he has always been, than in *Abyſſinia*, where he never was.



CHAP.



CHAP. XI.

Of the Asiatick ISLES.

I. Q.



AS we have done with describing the Continent of *Asia*, let us see what remarkable Things there are in the *Islands* belonging thereunto.

A. Those *Isles* are usually divided into those which are in the *Indian Ocean*, and those that are in the *Mediterranean Sea*. Those in the *Ocean* are again reduced to six general Classes, viz.

The *Japan*
Philippine
Ladrones

} Islands on the E.

The *Molucques*
Sunda
Ceylan & Maldiva

} on the
S. of
Asia.

Of all of them in their Order.

The *Isles* of *Japan* are so called by the *Chinese*, as being the *beginning of Light*, for they lie on the East of *China*. The three chief *Islands*, to which all the rest may be look'd upon as appertaining, are,

1. *Nippon*
2. *Ximo*
3. *Xicoco*

Chief Towns.
Yedo, Meaco, Surungo.
Nanguasaki, Bungo, Satsurna.
Tosa, Avo, Yio.

Nippon,

Nippon, the largest, lies above sixty Miles East from *Corea*, wherefrom it is separated by the Strait of *Sangar*. It is of an irregular Form, and runs up with a narrow Slip toward the North, but whether it joins any other Country, is not known. The greatest Length East and West is about five Hundred Miles, and about three Hundred North to South, and twelve Hundred round, so far as is yet discover'd. It contained formerly fifty-four Kingdoms, but is now divided into five Provinces, which you will find from West to East.

1. *Jamaistera*
2. *Jetsingo*
3. *Jetsegen*
4. *Quanta*
5. *Ochia*

Amanguci, Nangato, Aqui.
Meaco, Farima, Ozaca.
Findo, Fedchu.
Surunga, Ximano, Micava:
Tedo, Ava, Devano.

Tedo on the River *Tonkaw*, and in a Bay [near the South-East Corner of the Island, Lat. 36, and Long. 141, is a fine, rich, large, and populous Town, nine Miles long, and six broad. The Castle is above four Miles round, and well fortify'd. It has three Inclosures. In the middle are the Palace and Seraglio, whose Apartments shine with Gold and Jewels; but subject to be set on Fire, because all the Houses are made of Wood.

Meaco, Lat. 35, Long. 134, was formerly the Residence of the Emperor, as it is now of the *Dairi*.
Meaco. It was a very fine, large, rich and populous City, but it is now fallen to decay.

Ximo is also called *Saycock*, i. e. Nine Kingdoms, which it contained formerly. It lies on the S. W. of *Nippon*, and is separated from it by a narrow Strait. It is about 160 Miles long, 90 broad, and 450 round.

Xicoco is also called *Tococksi*, i. e. Five Kingdoms. It lies on the East of *Ximo*, and is about a Hundred Miles long, forty broad, and two Hundred and Fifty round.

2. Q. What is the *Situation* of Japan?

A. It lies betwixt Latitude 30, and 38, and Longitude 128, and 142. It is much like *Situation* *Great Britain*, if that Part which is on the East be put on the South. The Extent from South to North is about five Hundred Miles, and from East to West about the same length. The *Air* is very wholesome, but the Climate is very cold, toward the North, by reason of the Snow they have during *December, January and February*. The *Soil* is much over-spread with Forests, and incumbered with large Mountains, but in other respects the Country is pleasant and fruitful, well water'd, and abounds with all manner of Necessaries. They have plenty of Rice and Tea, and in some Parts Wheat and Barley. They have also rich Mines of Gold and Silver, and very good Tin, a Fishery of Pearls, red for the most part, but much valued by the Natives. They have also Elephants, Camels, &c. but black Cattle is scarce. Their chief *Commodities* are Rice, Tea, Gold, Silver, Ivory, and most sorts of Minerals. *Commod.*

In these Islands are several hot Springs.

2. They have a very high Mountain, generally supposed to equal (and by some to surpass) the famous *Pike of Teneriffe*, being, as they say, visible at thirty Leagues off at Sea, tho' eighteen distant from the Shore. *Rarities.*

3. In this Cluster of Islands are commonly reckon'd no less than 8 different *Volcano's*, whereof some are very terrible.

4. They have a Tree, which being water'd, dries up; the best thing to preserve it, is to lay at the foot thereof, Iron Dust, with dry Sand.

5. At *Meaco*, in a stately Temple, is a *Colossus* of gilt Copper, whose Chair is seventy Foot high, and eighty broad; his Head is big enough to hold fifteen Men, and his Thumb, forty Inches round, and the rest of the Body of that monstrous Idol is proportionable to that.

The

Rivers. The Country is full of Rivers, Lakes, and has several good Harbours. The Inhabitants derive their Origin from *China*, from whence they were banish'd for Rebellion, and the better to conceal that Disgrace, they affect many

Towns. Customs quite contrary to the *Chinese*. However like the *Chinese*, they are of an Olive-Colour, of a tall Stature, of a strong and vigorous Constitution, and consequently fit to be Soldiers.

Inhabitants. They are said to be quick of Apprehension, and to have a good Memory, Imagination and solid Judgment (three Qualities necessary to make a very learned Man.) They love Magnificence in Clothes, Feasts, &c. are patient in Adversity, fair and just in their Dealings, but ambitious, uncharitable, revengeful, deceitful, and jealous of their Wives: For tho' the Men are allowed Concubines, yet Husbands on the least Umbrage may kill or divorce their Wives. Adulteries betwixt two married Persons are severely punished. They hate all Nations, who are not of their own Religion, and admit none to Trade with them but the *Dutch*; and even as soon as their Ships arrive, all the Men are obliged to land, and every thing is taken out of the Ships, but restored when the Ship is loaded with what they please, and then they give them leave to sail away. And as their Customs are very odd, it will not be amiss to relate some of the most remarkable. They shave their Heads, and leave a Tuft behind only. In their Salutations, they touch almost the Ground with their Breeches; and to honour those they meet with, they throw their Shoes before them. Amongst them Black and Red are Signs of Joy. They get on their Horse by the right-side; and when any Body is with them, they sit on the Ground. They drink warm Liquor at all times, and wear a Cloak at home, and none abroad. They give nothing but salted Meat to their sick People; so that those that have called them the *Antipodes of our Manners*, have not advanced a false thing.

Customs. The *Japonesse* Tongue is said to be very polite, grave and copious, abounding with many synonymous Words, which are commonly used, not only according to the nature of the Subject, but also according to the Quality, Age, and Sex, both of the Speaker and Person to whom they speak. Their Way of Writing is Fourfold:

1. As the *Hebrews*. 2. As the *Europeans*. 3. As the *Chinese*. And 4. As the antient *Greeks* according to this Way,

The Country is very populous, full of Towns and Villages, but it would be more, if several of their Women did not make themselves miscarry, or did not murder their Children; which is reck-
Populous-
ness.
on'd no Crime in poor or unmarried People, unless the Children be Males, for then the Emperor breeds them for War. 2. They have several Princes whose Authority reaches sometimes no farther than the Walls of a City. And when any one of them loseth his Estate, his Subjects must forfeit their Goods. 3. Most of their Houses are of Wood, and so easy to be set on Fire: They have few of Stone, because of Earthquakes, on which account all their Structures are low.

About the Year 1000, the *Chinese* that were banish'd hither, did set up a Monarch over themselves, whom they called *Dairi*. He behaved himself so
Governm.
well, that they ador'd him as a God; and the like Respects were paid to his Successors for some time, but one of them abandoning himself to Luxury, his chief Minister rebell'd and usurped his Power. Upon which the Lords of the Country set up for Kings in their several Districts. The Usurper to prevent the ill Consequence of this, restored the *Dairi*, by which he ingrossed all the Power: This occasion'd their present Form of Government, so that the *Dairi* is only a Phantom of a Monarch, and the Successor of that usurping Minister has all the Administration and the Title of *Cuba*, or Emperor.

And

And there are yet several Lords, who have power of Life and Death, over their Vassals. The *Dairi* only gives Titles of Nobility, which is worth several Millions to him, and he is lookt upon as the *Nobility* Chief, like the *Boua* in *Tunquin*, and particularly of their Religion: His Ministers, or Counsellors, are called *Bungis*, and together with him determine all Matters of Religion. He has also an Arch-Priest under him, who has the only Right to consecrate Bishops, or Heads of their Clergy: So that tho' he has neither Land nor Revenue, he is richer than the Emperor himself, and he gets vast Sums by impowering the Priests to sell Pardons. He honours these Priests or *Bonzees* very much, because most of them are Sons of Princes, and Great Men, who can't be otherwise provided for, than by taking this Office or Dignity upon them.

Forces. Some say that the *Cuba*, or Emperor is able to raise 386000 Foot, and 38800 Horse by his *Revenue.* Deputy-Kings, besides a Hundred Thousand Foot, and Twenty Thousand Horse, that he always keeps in his own Pay. And his Revenues are so great, that two Months Income is enough to discharge his Annual Expence.

Religion. The *Japanese* are gross Idolaters, and have several Idols, to whose particular Service great Numbers of Men and Women consecrate themselves. The chief of these Idols is called *Amida* and *Foquieux*; the Votaries of the former are said to assert the Soul's Immortality, and the *Pythagorean Metempsychosis*; and those of the latter imagine, that the frequent repetition of certain Words, will atone for all their Misdoings, and procure to them the enjoyment of compleat Felicity at last. At certain Times they light Fires under the great *Colossus* before-mention'd, and when 'tis very hot, they throw into his Arms a Child that dies in those Torments. And at the New-Moon they offer to their Idols the handsomest Maids they can find. Virginity must be very much regarded by them, and consider'd like a very sacred Thing, seeing they keep it for their Gods, but the Priests do often what the Statue could not do. Their Priests, especially the *Xenxui's*, pretend to a very great Austerity, but are great Villains, they frequently foretel Fires, which they say will be raised by the Devil, whereas they themselves are the Incendiaries, that they may have an Opportunity for Plunder. They rob People

People of great Sums, by pretending to give them Bills of Exchange to receive it in the other World, which those poor Wretches firmly believe.

These Islands were discover'd by some *Portuguese*, that were cast away here in a Storm in 1542, and Christianity was afterwards preached by St. *Francis Xavier*, and others, who made Multitudes of Converts; but the Emperor considering that these Missionaries and their Converts would perhaps destroy his Government as well as his Religion, caused all the Christians to be put to Death. And some charge the *Dutch* as being the Cause thereof. However, certain it is, that since the beginning of the last Century no Person dares openly avow the Doctrine of Christ; all *Europeans*, (except the *Dutch*) and all others professing Christianity, having been then murder'd, or expell'd out of that Country, and they are not likely to have any more Access there for the future.

3. Q. What do you call the *Philippine* Islands?

A. Several Islands, also called *Lusson* by the *Spaniards*, because they were conquer'd by *Philippine Lewis de la Gualpe*, sent by *Velasco Rice-Roy* *Islands* of *Mexico*, in the Name of *Philip* the II^d, then King of *Spain*. *Magellan* had discover'd them before in 1520, for *Charles* the Vth, to whose Court he had retired, because the King of *Portugal* would not augment his Pay by Five Shillings more in a Month.

Some say that the Number of those Isles is about twelve Hundred, but as some of them are very small, and others not inhabited, we will name but the chief ones, beginning on the North.

1. *Dusson*, or *Manilha*.
2. *Mindora*.
3. *Masbate*.
4. *Samor*, or *Matan*.
5. *Leyta*.
6. *Cebu*, or *Los Pintados*.
7. *Tandaya*, or *Philippine* proper.
8. *Panay*.
9. *Paragoa*.
10. *Mindanao*.
11. *St. John*, &c.

Lusson, the Northermost and biggest of those lies betwixt Latitude 14 and 19, and Longitude 118. It is about 360 Miles from South to North, and 180 from East to West, and about a Thousand round, but much indented by Bays. This Island abounds with every thing necessary to Life. The chief Town *Manilba*, near a Bay on the West-side of the *Manilba*. Island, is the Residence of the *Spanish* Vice-Roy, who commands the Islands, and is the See of an Arch-Bishop. 'Tis well-built, strong, has a good Cittadel and Harbour, but of difficult Entrance, because of the Rocks that lie at the Mouth of the Bay. There is a great Number of *Chinese* and *Japanese* Artificers. Ships from *China*, *Portugal* and *Spain*, Trade hither; and two large Ships from *Acapulco* in the West-Indies, come hither once a Year, which are said to gain 400 *per Cent.* by their Trade.

Mindanao betwixt North Latitude 5 and 10. *Mindanao*. is not as large as *Lusson*, but 'tis more populous, fertile, well water'd, and has some Gold Sand in the River *Butuan*. It has Nutmegs, Cloves, &c. The Inhabitants are of different Nations and Languages; tawny, but lighter than most other *Indians*. Their Stature is low, their Eyes small, their Noses short, their Mouths large, their Lips thin and Red, their Teeth Black, and their Hair of the same Colour. They are ingenious and nimble, but lazy, and implacable when provok'd. They offer their Women to Strangers for small Presents, and have expelled the *Spaniards*, dead the *Dutch*, but like the *English*. Most of the People are *Mahometans*, but those of the inland Countries, called *Alfours*, are Pagans. They have their *Sultan*, who is absolute. Several other Islands about this have also their own Kings.

These Islands North of *Molucca* lie betwixt *Situation*. North Latitude 5 and 19, and extend about 16 Degrees in *Longitude*. The *Air* here is very hot, with little difference of Seasons, but the Rains begin in *May*, and last three Months, which is their Winter. The *Soil* is generally fertile, and produces Rice, Saffron, Honey, Wax, Gold, the usual *Indian* Fruits, Beasts, &c. long Pepper, and other *Spices*; but the *Spaniards* don't cultivate them, lest it should tempt the *Dutch* to attack them, if they should happen to discover both their Riches and Weakness.

Rarities. In the Sea surrounding these Isles is frequently seen a sort of Fish, or Sea-Monster, about the bigness of a Calf, which in Shape does much resemble the antient *Sirenes*, or *Mermaids*, whence Sailors call it a *Woman-Fish*, because its Face, Head, Neck, and Breast, are somewhat like those of the fair Sex.

2. They have many Medicinal Herbs, good for Wounds, and especially one very good against Poison, and much valued by the *Dutch*.

3. In several of these Isles are *Volcano's* and Hot-Baths.

4. At *Mindanao* they have a Tree called *Libby*, whose Pulp being beaten and put in Water, makes good Bread.

5. Serpents called *Ibitin* of a great length, that hang by the Tail on Trees, draw Men and Beasts that pass by them with the force of their Breath, and the only Way to prevent it is to beat the Air betwixt them and the Serpent.

The Inhabitants are very likely the Posterity and Offspring of the *Malayans*, being almost the same in Constitution and Manners, and their Language has also great affinity with the *Malayan*. Most of these Islands are subject to the King of *Spain*, and are ruled by a Vice-Roy, but he spends more than he receives from hence, wherefore the King of *Spain* had once a mind to abandon them, but he was advised to retain them, as being well-situated for a Trade with *China* and the *Molucca's*. Some of those Islands have their own *Sultans*, who being absolute, and taking away what they please from their Subjects, are the Cause that they don't much care to have any thing but what's necessary for the present, and so they are in a poor Condition. Those that live in the Mountains and Woods are Black, have no Laws nor Government, but obey the Heads of Families. They live miserably, feeding on Fruits, Roots, Monkeys, Rats, Snakes, and lie at Nights in hollow Trees, &c. They are meer Heathens.

The Islands of *Ladrones*, so called by the *Spaniards* because of the *thievish Temper* of the Inhabitants, lie East from *Manilha*, betwixt Latitude *Ladrones*, 13 and 22, and about Longitude 140. *Magel-* or *S. Mary's* *lan* discover'd them in 1520. The Chief of them are fourteen in Number, which you will find thus going from South to North.

1. *Guam*, or *St. John*, about 36 Miles long, 12 broad, and 120 round:

2. *Rota, Sapana, or St. Ann.*
3. *Aguigan, or St. Angelo.*
4. *Tinian, or Mary Ann, Bonavista.*
5. *Saipan, or St. Joseph.*
6. *Anathaban.*
7. *Sarigan.*
8. *Guaguan.*
9. *Alamagan.*
10. *Pagan.*
11. *Arigan.*
12. *Songson.*
13. *Tunas.*
14. *Urac.*

They are all small, some of them barren, and subject to Earthquakes or Hurricanes. The People are tall, tawny, go almost quite naked, and have no Government. They worship the Devil.

4. Q. What have you to say about the *Moluccas*?

A. Those Isles which have *Borneo* on the West, *New Holland* on the South, *New Guinea* on the East, and the *Philippines* on the North, are so called from the Word *Moloc*, which in the Language of the Country signifies the *Head*, because they lie at the *Head* or *Entrance* of the *Indian* Archipel. They are a great many in Number, and commonly divided into three Classes.

1. The *Western*, viz. *Celebes, Salayer, Cabona* and *Boutan*.

2. The *Eastern*, viz. *Gilolo, Ternate, Tidor, Machian, Motir* and *Bachian*. (These five last are properly the *Moluccas*) *Ceram, Amboina, Banda*.

3. The *Western, Timor, Ende* or *Flores, Solor*. There are some others that have been lately discover'd, but they are not large. They are called the *New Philippine*, or *Molucca's*.

Celebes or *Macassar*, lies East from *Borneo*, is as large as *Lusson*; lies on each side of the *Equator*. It is well inhabited, the South Part is very high Land, the Country abounds with Rice, and Cocoas. and they have Gold Mines. The Inhabitants are of a whitish Complexion, much like the *Siamese* in their Features and Customs. They had formerly several Kings, but are now Tributary to the *Dutch*. The principal Town is *Macassar* near the South-West Corner of the Island,

Island, South Latitude 5. Longitude 118. The *Dutch* took it from the King and *Portuguese* in 1660, and have made it a Place of good Trade. They have a Fort mounted with 70 Guns, Garisoned by 700 Men, by which they keep the King in awe.

Gilolo lies also under the Line, but most of it on the North-side. It is about 750 Miles round. The Air is unwholsome. The Product is Rice *Gilolo*. and *Sago*. They have prodigious Tortoises. The People are govern'd by a King of their own, but subject to the *Dutch*.

Ternate, *Tidor*, *Motir*, *Machian*, and *Bachian*, are on the W. of *Gilolo*, and are but small, each about thirty Miles round, but abound in Spices, which are of great Revenue to the *Dutch*, who are possessed of them, and give a small Pension to the King of *Ternate*. *Ternate*, *Tidor*, &c.

Timor, South Latitude 9. abounds with Corn, Cattel, Fowls, Wax, Ginger, Cinamon, and other Fruits.

Amboyna lies near the S. W. Corner of *Ceram*, South Latitude 4. Part of it is subject to the *Dutch*, and the rest to the King of *Ternate*. *Timor*. *Amboyna*.

The Product is Millet, Tobacco, Cocoa Nuts, Potatoes, Pinang, Oranges, Lemons, Citrons, Bamboos, Nutmegs and Cloves. The Air is not very wholsome. The *Dutch* have several Forts in this Island, which is reckon'd their best Settlement in the *East-Indies* next to *Batavia*. Our Writers insist much upon the Treachery and Cruelty of the *Dutch* to our Factory here in 1623, but their Writers lay the Blame upon our Factory, the chief of whom plotted against theirs, and confessed it, for which they were punished: But perhaps both Sides were in the wrong, in presuming to supplant and destroy each other.

Banda, *Nera*, *Gunapi*, *Lantor*, *Puloway* *Pulorin*, &c. are a Knot of Isles South from *Ceram*, betwixt South Latitude 4 and 9. As they are at a considerable distance from one another, the *Dutch* have rooted up all the Nutmeg-Trees that grew in such as they don't inhabit, to prevent other Nations from settling there, and have erected Forts in the rest. *Banda* produces without Cultivation, very good Nutmegs, Mace (which is the Bark of those Nuts) and Drugs, more than any other Place in the World. Their other Fruits are Banana's, Oranges, Olives, &c. *Banda* is about thirty Miles round.

The *Molucca's* lie betwixt South Latitude 10. and North Latitude 4. The *Air* is unwholsome, very hot, subject to *Grains* or *Hurricanes*, and occasions Dropsies, for which the Inhabitants use the Palm-Tree Wine mixed with Ginger and Cloves, and the *Dutch* use the Juice of Lemons. The *Soil* is so dry and spongy, that it immediately swallows up Rain, and so is almost continually verdant. They have no regular Rains, tho' they come more from the North-West Quarter, than from the South. The general Product is Bananas, Cocons, Oranges, Lemons, Aloes, Sandal-Wood, Cinamon, Mace, Nutmegs, Cloves, and other useful and pleasant Fruits. They have no Corn nor Rice, but make Bread of a Tree called *Sagu Palm*.

In the Islands *Timor* and *Solor* grows a Tree which stinks exactly like Man's Excrement.

Rarities. 2. In most of these Islands are several hot Springs, and Volcano's, particularly that near *Banda*, called *Gumanapi*, which some Years ago made a dreadful Eruption, not only of Fire and Brimstone, but also of such prodigious Numbers of Stones, that they cover'd a great Part of the Island, and so many of 'em dropt into the Sea, that where it was formerly forty Fathom deep near the Shore, 'tis now a dry Beach.

3. At *Ternate* there's one yet more terrible, especially about the Equinox.

4. Here are Serpents of above thirty Foot long, and large in proportion. They creep very slowly, and are not venomous. They eat a certain Herb, after which they get upon Trees, by the Banks of the Sea or Rivers, and vomit up the Herbs. This brings Fish about them in great Numbers, which the Herb intoxicates, makes them float on the Surface of the Water, and become the Serpent's Prey.

5. They have also a Bird termed by the Natives, *Manucodiata*, i. e. God's Bird, and by the *Europeans*, the Bird of *Paradise*. It is a very fine Bird, and as it is always seen upon the Wing, it was currently reported that it had no Feet: But that Opinion is now found out to be false.

6. To these Rarities may be added, that rare attractive Quality of the Cloves, when laid near any Liquids; being able to drain a Hoghead of Wine, and Water in a short time, whereby some unwary Commanders of Ships have been most unexpectedly deprived of their beloved Liquor.

They

They have few considerable Rivers, but they have abundance of *Creeks*, and Places fit for Harbours, except on the East, where they are not safe, because they are too much exposed to the Eastern Winds, which blow frequently here.

Some say that these Islands were first possessed by the *Chinese*, afterwards by the *Persians*, and then by the *Spaniards* and *Portuguese*. The Natives *Inhabitants* are very strong, much given to War, long-liv'd, kind to Strangers, but very lazy, importunate Beggars, cheating, and suspicious. They have large Eyes, and long Hair on their Eye-brows, which they paint. They are of a brown or yellowish Complexion. They think it their Duty to incourage Propagation, and for that End have *Clapper-men*, or Officers to beat Drums at break of Day, to awake and advise married People not to forget their matrimonial Engagements. Their Habits are like the *Turks* and *Chinese*. The *Malayan* is their general Language; but those that Trade, understand also the *Portuguese*. Those on the Coasts are *Mahometans*, and the rest *Pagans*.

These Islands have several Kings of their own, but they are now all Vassals to the *Dutch*, who won't allow the *Inhabitants* to Trade with other Nations. And they transport thither many of their Criminals to be there employ'd as perpetual Slaves. And lest the too great Plenty of the Spices should lower the Price of them, the *Dutch* themselves destroy a good part of the Crop.

5. Q. And what have you to say about the Islands of the *Sunda*?

A. They are so called because they lie near *Iles of la* the Strait of the *Sunda*, betwixt the Isles of *Sunda*, *Java* and *Sumatra*. They are in great Number, but only three of them are considerable, viz. *Borneo*, *Sumatra* and *Java*. Of which in their Order.

Borneo lies North from *Java*, East from *Borneo*. *Sumatra* and *Malacca*, West of the *Molucca's*, and South of the *Philippines*. It is thought to be the largest Island in *Asia*. Its Form is almost round, and some say that its Circumference is about sixteen Hundred Miles, tho' others will have it to be only twelve Hundred. It is situated betwixt South Latitude 4, and North Latitude 8. The *Air* is extreemly hot, and unwholsome, by reason of the sudden and frequent change of Weather, and because

of the Vapours arising from the marshy Ground, and from the Insects, which lie dead, infect the Air. And the *Soil*, especially on the South-West is good, and produces store of Pepper, and the best Camphire (a sort of Gum taken from a Tree much like our Willow-Trees) in *Asia*. They have also Mines of Gold and Diamonds about *Landa* and *Sambas*. They have also Bezoar, Aloes, Musk, Brasil-wood, Japan Wax, Frankincense, Mastick, Agarick, and other Gums. They have a great Number of little Horses, but few Sheep or black Cattle. The *Dutch* have some Places on the Coast, and the chief Trade of this Island. They import hither Mercury, Glass, Red-Lead, Linnen Cloth, and Iron, much valued here; and have Camphire and Pepper in exchange. There are several Kings, but that of *Borneo*, North Latitude four and a half, is the best known. It, and those on the Coast, are *Mahometans*, but the rest *Pagans*. The chief Towns are *Borneo*, *Bandermassen*, *Hormata*, *Landa*, *Samba*, &c.

Sumatra lies South-West from the Peninsula of *Malacca*, and is separated from it by the Strait of that Name, which in the narrowest Place is about thirty Miles broad. It extends from South Latitude 6, to North Latitude 6, lies North-West, and South-East, is about 900 Miles long, but about 180 Miles broad.

The Equator passes thro' the middle of it. The great Heats make the Air very unwholsome, especially during the rainy Season from *June* to *November*, when most Evenings they have sudden Tempests and Calms, during which time the Sun raises stinking Vapours, which, with the inconstancy of the Weather, occasion putrid Fevers, and other languishing Distempers. The West-part of the Island is the most unwholsome, but those who remove to the East-side are cured of those Distempers. However, the Island is diversify'd by Mountains, Valleys, fruitful Plains, Forests and Rivers. And the *Soil*, especially in the North-parts, would abundantly furnish them with Corn, but they sow only Rice, Barley, and Millet. They have also Honey, Cotton, Sugar, Pepper, Cinamon, Mace, Cloves, Bezoar, Camphire, and Cassia. Their Mountains are high and woody. have Mines of Gold, Silver, Tin, Iron, Brass, Copper, and Sulphur. They have Oxen, Buffalo's, Horses, and Fowl of all sorts. Their wild Beasts are Elephants, Tygers, Rhinocerosses, Bears, Boars, Deer and Goats. Their Rivers are pestered with Crocodiles.

The

The Inhabitants are generally *Mahometans*, and some of them Pagans and Canibals. They are bold, treacherous, bloody and thievish. They have several Kings, who make War against one another and who won't allow Foreigners to build Forts. The King and Queen of *Achem* is the most powerful, and that of *Manicanbo* the richest in Gold. Some Places on the West Coast are under the Protection of the *Dutch East-India Company*. And the *English* have their chief Pepper Factories at *Jambi*, on the East-side of the Island, South Latitude 2. Longitude 102; and at *Palenban* South Latitude 4. Longitude 104. The *English* are much esteemed by the Natives, and yet several of them were lately cut in pieces at their Fort *Bencouli* on the W. Coast, about South Latitude 4. *Achem* North Latitude 6. Longitude 95. *Andragiry*, *Jambi*, *Palenban*, *Menancabo*, and *Indapoura*, are Capitals of so many Kingdoms.

Java, lies East from the South-part of *Sumatra*, betwixt South Latitude 5 and 7. It is *Jaua*, about seven Hundred Miles from East to West, and about a Hundred from South to North. The Air is hot, and accounted unwholsome, but the Soil abounds with Pepper, which is reckon'd the best of any, especially about *Bantam*. It abounds also with Sugar, Rice, Benzoin; has Mines of Silver, Gold, Copper, and some Diamonds, Rubies, Emeralds, &c. but is infested with Serpents, Crocodiles and Gnats. It has abundance of commodious Creeks, Bays, Harbours, and goodly Towns on the North Coast, with many small Islands near the Shore. It had formerly many Kingdoms, but is now divided chiefly betwixt the *Dutch* who possess the West-side, and the Emperor of *Maturan* the East. The Natives are of a brown Colour, have flat Faces, thin, short, black Hair, large Eye-brows and Cheeks. They have two or three Wives, besides Concubines; and are barbarous, proud, given to lying and cheating. Those on the Coast are generally *Mahometans*, but the others Pagans.

Batavia lies at the bottom of a Bay, in South Latitude 6, 10. but according to Capt. Rogers 5, 50" and Longitude 107, East from *London*. The Town is about 5 Miles round, fine, neat, rich, very populous, built after the *European* Way, and the Center of the *Dutch East-India Trade*. It is very well fortified, and secured by a strong Citadel. The Harbour and Road are very good, and can contain above a Thousand Vessels. The *Dutch Company* sends every
Year

Year hither ten or twelve Ships, with *European Goods*, proper for this Country; from whence they bring back Gold Silver, Diamonds, Pearl, Ivory, red Copper, Tea, Porcellane, Pepper, Mace, Cinamon, Ginger, Cloves, Silks, Cotton, Stuffs of all sorts, with other Products of all Parts of *Asia*, by which they make considerable Profit; for the Town is the Ware-house where the *Dutch* lay all the Merchandizes they import into, or export out of *Asia*. The Streets of it are all on a strait Line, most of them being thirty Foot broad, well paved, with Canals in the middle, and most of the Houses have handsome Gardens, adorned with Springs. Their Halls for the several Trades, their Hospitals, Printing-Houses, and publick Schools, are very fine, but the Town-House is a noble Structure. There are three Churches, one for the *Dutch*, one for the *Portuguese*, and one for the *Malayan* Converts. The *Dutch* built it in the place of *Jacatra*, in 1619. They have plenty of Provisions, and very cheap. Here are a great many Strangers, who pay Tribute for liberty to Trade here, but the *Chinese* are the most numerous. There are abundance of fine Houses in the neighbouring Country, belonging to the Governour, to other Officers of the Company, and to rich Merchants. The *Dutch* Governour keeps a Royal Table, and lives every way like a King. There are six general Governments, or Factories, which depend on this of *Batavia*, viz. Those on the Coast of *Coromandel*, of *Amboina*, *Banda*, *Ternate*, *Ceylan*, and *Malacca* besides particular Factories which depend on these. The Discipline, Industry, and Order of the *Dutch* here and elsewhere, is not only to be admired, but imitated. They have all Necessaries for building and careening Ships, as well as in *Europe*, &c.

As for the Situation, Air, &c. of these Isles in general, we can add nothing to what has been already said about each of them in particular.

In *Java* is a remarkable *Volcano*, which does sometimes burn with great rage. They have also, as they say, Oysters of three Hundred Pounds weight, and Reeds so long and thick, that they make Boats with them.

2. The Water of the River *Indapura*, on the West Coast of *Sumatra*, South Latitude 3, Longitude 100, is so red, that it dyes the Sea for two Leagues: This is ascribed to the Bark of Oaks, which grow on its Banks. Its Water is unwholesome; and the Air is so pestilential about this River,

River, and another called, *The Devil's Isle*, that it kills Men and Beasts almost as soon as they come ashore. Towards the middle of this Isle, there is a *Volcano*, and near it a sulphurous Spring, which issues Water resembling Balm, or Oyl : It is good against Lameness. They have also some mournful Trees. 3. In the Isle of *Borneo* is a Creature very much like a Man, both in Shape, Stature, and Countenance, walking frequently upright upon its two hinder Legs. It is extremely strong and swift.

The Inhabitants of these Islands are so near, and so like unto the *Malayans*, that these are *Inhabitants*. generally thought to have sent Colonies thither.

They are of a middle but well-proportion'd Stature, tawny, have black Hair and Eyes, broad Faces, but agreeable enough if their Teeth were not so black with their so much eating or chewing *Betel*. They think themselves thereby distinguished from Brutes, whose Teeth are white. They are reckoned ingenious, but proud, lazy, cruel, and revengeful, when provoked. The Women are fair and well shaped, but have no Notion of Chastity. They have several Kings, but most of them Vassals to the *Dutch*; and the People are such Slaves to their Princes, that they rather chuse to be under the *Dutch*. Those who live on the Coasts are generally *Mahometans*, and the others *Pagans*. They have several Languages, but most of them understand the *Malayan* or *Portuguese*.

The Isle of *Ceylan*, suposed to be *Ptolomy's Taprobane*, lies on the South-E. Corner of the *Ceylan*. Western Indian *Peninsula*, betwixt Latitude 6 and 10. Its Form is like a *Pearl*, or a *Pear* : 'Tis about 280 Miles from South to North, and about 150 from East to West. It was formerly larger, till lessen'd by Inundations. The Air is here the purest and wholesomest of all the *Indies*; and the Island is extraordinary fruitful. It abounds in Rice, and all the usual Fruits of the *Indies*. They have Grapes almost all the Year round. Here's also plenty of Ginger, Pepper, Nutmegs, Sugar-Canes, Cotton, and Mangoes; but their Staple Commodity is Cinnamon : They sell also Cardamon, Oil, Arack, Turmeric, Salt, Rice, Betelnuts, Musk, Wax, Pepper, black Coral, Pearl and Amber. The Country likewise produces Gold, Silver, and other Metals, with all sorts of precious Stones, except Diamonds. The Goods imported are Velvets, Silks, red Caps, Porcellane, Spices, Opium, China-Roots, Camphire, Musk, Sandal-Wood,

Wood, Lead, Copper, Tin, Salt-Petre, Brimstone, gilt Looking-Glasses, Glass-Bottles, and printed Callicoos.

Here's that remarkable Mountain called *Adam's Pike*, which is very high, and said to send forth sometimes Smoke and Flame.

2. Several Authors pretend that *Adam* was created here; that his Foot-steps are yet to be seen on Mount *Columbo*; that he was bury'd there; and that the salt Lake on the Top of that Mountain, has been caused by the prodigious Quantity of Tears, which our Mother *Eve* shed during a Hundred Years for the loss of her Son *Abel*.

3. They have several remarkable Trees.

The Inhabitants are tall, strong, black, ugly, very active, and ingenious. Formerly, when the Fathers did give their Daughters in Marriage, they were used to lie with them the Night before the Wedding, alledging, That it was but just, that they should gather the First-fruits of the Tree they had set. They have a peculiar *Jargon* of their own; but those on the Sea-Coasts understand the *Dutch*, or *Portuguese*.

This Island was formerly divided into nine Kingdoms, but is now under one, who is absolute, and lives at *Dig-legy*, or *Nellemby* near the middle of the Island; but the Sea-Ports are all in the Hands of the *Dutch*. The King is *Mahometan*, but most of his Subjects are *Pagans*. They had so great a Veneration for a white *Ape*, that when it was taken by the *Portuguese*, they proffer'd three Hundred Thousand Crowns for their God's Ransom.

These Isles are called *Maldives*, from *Male* the Chief of them, and the Residence of their King, and *Maldives*. *Dive*, which in their Language signifies *Isle*. They lie on the South-West of the Western Peninsula, betwixt South Latitude 3, and North Latitude 8. about 660 Miles from South-East to North-West, and ninety in breadth. Some make them 12000, and others but 1000. The Natives say, many of them have been swallowed up by the Sea, which lessens them daily. They are very small, the biggest being not six Miles round, and are divided into 13 *Atollons*, or Provinces, consisting of a great many Islands. Those *Atollons*, or Clusters, are surrounded with Rocks and Sands, so that it is very difficult to approach them. Some of the Canals betwixt them are so shallow, that one might easily wade them, but that the Bottom is rocky

rocky and sharp, and they are pester'd with Crocodiles, Water-snakes, and dangerous Fishes, which devour Men. The Climate is very hot, but temper'd with cold Dews by Night, which are often mortal to Strangers. The Vapours arising from the standing Waters of the Creeks are also very unwholesome, and cause malignant Fevers. Their Winter begins in *April*, and continues till *October*, during which they have perpetual Rains, and boisterous Winds. Their Summer begins in *October*, continues six Months with E. Winds, excessive Heat, and no Rain. Many of these Islands are desert, and produce nothing but Coco-Trees and Grass. Others are overflow'd at High-water. They have neither Corn nor Rice, but Honey, some good Roots, and Indian Fruits, black Coral, Ambergrease, and fine Shells. They are infested with ravenous Crows, large Bats, Rats, Gnats, Ants, and other Vermin; so that they build their Granaries on Piles two or three Hundred Paces in the Sea.

The Natives are of an Olive Complexion, ingenious, cautious, and sharp in Trading, brave, and good Fishermen. They go almost naked, To wear long Hair is the Privilege only of the King and Soldiers. They are *Mahometan*, and every Man has three Wives if he can maintain them, but no more. The Women begin to be marriageable about eight Years of Age, are lascivious, and Divorces are here frequent and voluntary.

The King is absolute, and has several Governors under him. The King and Nobility live in the North-parts, and he banishes Criminals to the South. He engrosses imported Goods, and sells them to his Subjects at what Rate he pleases. All Wrecks and Ambergrease are his; and he has also the fifth Part of the Fruits.

As we have done with the Description of the Isles of *Asa* in the *Ocean*, let us consider those that are in the *Mediterranean*.

They all belong to the *Türks*, and lie on the South or West of *Natolia*. The chief of those Islands are in this Order, beginning from East, going to North-west.

1. *Cyprus*. 2. *Rhodes*. 3. *Scarpanto*. 4. *Stampalia*. 5. *Coos*, or *Lango*. 6. *Lero*. 7. *Palmosa*, or *Pathmos*. 8. *Nicaria*. 9. *Samo*. 10. *Schio*. 11. *Metelin*. 12. *Tenedo*. And several others nearer *Greece*.

Of some of them in Order.

Cyprus

Cyprus lies near the bottom of the *Mediterranean Sea*, about sixty Miles South of *Natalia*, and West of *Syria*, Latitude 33 and 35. It is about 200 Miles East to West, and a Hundred from South to North. It was antiently called *Amathusa*, *Aspelia*, *Cryptos*, *Serastis*, *Macaria*, *Ophiusa*, &c. Some imagine it has been called *Cyprus* from *Κίτερος*, i. e. *Copper*, where with this Island did mightily abound in former Times, others from *Cyprus Trees*, and others from *Cypris*, the Name of *Venus*, who was born here. The *Turks* divide it into seven *Sangiaks*, but *Geographers* into eleven Territories, viz. Six on the South, *Bassa*, *Audimo*, *Limisso*, *Basoro*, *Salina* and *Mesarea*. And five on the North, viz. *Crosoco*, *Pendaya*, *Gerines*, *Carpassa*, and *Delviscontado*.

As there are here a great many Marishes, and some natural Salt-pits, from which abundance of noxious Vapours do daily arise, these intermixing with the *Atmosphere* render the Air very gross and unwholsome, especially during the sultry Heat in the Summer. *Cyprus* was antiently blessed with so fertile a Soil, that because of its Fertility the *Greeks* bestow'd upon her the Title of *Macaria*, or blessed, but now 'tis otherwise, being in most parts barren, but very likely because of the Laziness of the Inhabitants. They made formerly great store of Sugar, till one of their *Bassa's* burnt all the Canes. The Cotton Wool is the chief Material of their Trade. They have also some Silk, but not good; Oil, Honey, Saffron, Rhubarb, Coloquinta, Scammony, Turpentine, white and black Allum. Its Wines must be very good, seeing some relate it was conquer'd by *Solyman* the 2d merely on that account.

On the Eastern Parts of this Island lies in a Valley betwixt two Capes, the famous *Famagusta*, remarkable at present for its modern Fortifications, and eternized in Fame for the unfortunate Valour of the *Venetians*, Anno 1571, under the command of Signior *Bragadino*, who, contrary to the Capitulation, had his Ears and Nose cut off, and his Skin flead off at the Sound of the Trumpets. The *Turks* besieged it ten Months, and lost eighty Thousand Men. *Hieronymus Magi* of *Angbiry* in *Tuscany*, a famous Doctor at Law, and an able Mathematician, render'd useless most of the Works the *Turks* did in order to take this Town: He was carried Prisoner to *Constantinople*, and there strangled, March the 27th 1572. During his Confinement, and tho' he had no Books,

Books, yet he made two *Latin* Treatises much esteemed, one *De Equuleo*, and the other *De Tintinnabulis*.

2. Near the Promontory, commonly called, *The Cape of Cats*, are the Ruins of a Monastery of *Greek Monks*, which Cape had its Name from a remarkable Custom these Monks were obliged to, viz. to keep a great Number of Cats to destroy the many Serpents that infested those Parts of the Island; for Cats are great destroyers of Serpents, as well as of Rats. Some relate that those Serpents were bred here, because no Rain fell during seventeen, and some say thirty Years.

3. Near *Salines* is a remarkable Lake, or natural Salt-Pit, of a considerable Extent, whose Water is congealed into Salt by the Sun-beams.

4. This Island is much infested with Locusts, which hover in the Air like Clouds during the Heats, and sometimes destroy all their Corn and Fruit; but are frequently drove into the Sea by northerly Winds.

They have several small Rivers, but the Water of them is salt, and they say there is but one Spring of fresh Water in the whole Island, and even very near the Sea.

This Island is ill inhabited, because of the Severity of the *Turks*, and so they have few *Nicosia* Towns. *Nicosia* the Capital, lies about the middle of the Island, in a plain and fruitful Country; before the *Turks* took it in 1571, it was large and strong, and for Situation, Magnificence, and Number of People, was compared to *Florence*, but the *Turks* have pull'd down the *Venetian* Palaces, in hopes of finding Treasure, and destroy'd most of the Inhabitants.

This Island receiv'd Colonies from the *Cretans*, *Athenians*, *Arcadians*, *Phenicians*, *Ethiopians*, and *Italians*. The Inhabitants have always been noted for Lasciviousness; the present Inhabitants are accounted warlike, strong, nimble, hospitable to their Neighbours, civil to Strangers, except *Jews*, whom they don't suffer in the Island. They boast that the Poets *Asclepiades* and *Xenophon*, the Philosophers *Zeno* and *Apollonius*, *Barnabas*, *St. Paul's* Companion, and *Epiphanius*, Bishop of *Salamis*, were Natives of this Island. Their Language is either *Turk*, or *Greek* vulgar, but *Lingua franca* is made use of here and in other Parts of the *Levant* to talk with Foreigners.

This

This Island has been subject to the *Greeks*, Government. *Egyptians*, *Romans*, Emperors of *Constantinople*, and to the *English* in 1181, when conquer'd by *Richard* the First, who gave or sold it in 1191, to *Guy de Lusignan* titular King of *Jerusalem*. It continued in his Posterity till 1473, when *James*, Bastard of *John* the Third, usurped it from *Charlotte*, Daughter and Heiress to that King. She married *Lewis* of *Savoy*, wherefore the Dukes of *Savoy* claim the Title of King of *Cyprus*. But *James* marrying *Catherine* Daughter of *Marco Cornaro*, a *Venetian*, and being adopted by the Senate, when the Son, she had by *James*, was dead, she gave the Island to her adopted Fathers, who have possess'd it till 1571, when conquer'd by the *Turks*, who have here a *Beglierbey*. Most of the Inhabitants are *Greeks*, or *Turks*. The *Marquites*, *Armenians*, *Copticks* and *Nestorians*, Religion. have also the freedom of their Religion.

This Island is called *Rhodes*, either from *Rhodanim*, or *Dodanim*, the Posterity of the 4th Son of *Javan*, who settled here, or from the *Sariack* Word, *Rhod*, i. e. *Serpent*, or *Dragen*, which were in great Number here. It lies on the South-West Corner of *Natolia*, from whence it is about twenty Miles South, almost at the entrance into the *Archipel*. It is about fifty Miles South to North, and twenty East to West.

The *Air* is here very wholesome, and as some say, so serene, as never to be so cloudy as to hinder the Sight of the Sun.

The Country abounds with *Wheat*, *Honey*, *Wax*, *Olives*, *Citrons*, *Figs*, and excellent *Wines*. Their Manufactures are *Soap*, *Camblets*, and *Tapestry*. They have also some *Mines* of *Iron* and *Copper*.

This Island is famous all the World over for that huge *Colossus* of *Brass*, seventy Cubits high, and of so monstrous a Size, that two Men were scarce able to fathom one of its Thumbs. It was reckon'd one of the seven Wonders of the World. It carried a *Light-House* in one Hand, and a *Scepter* in the other. Its Head resembled the Image of the Sun; Ships easily passed betwixt its Legs. It was twelve Years a making, and was finished about 222 before our Saviour: And they say that after it had stood fifty-six Years, it was overturn'd.

turn'd by an Earthquake, and remained on the Ground till about *A. D.* 650, when the *Saracens* are said to have broke it in pieces and their General *Mavia* sold the Metal to a *Jew*, who loaded 900 Camels with it, and sold it at *Alexandria* in *Egypt*. It stood at the entrance of the Harbour.

2. A Dragon did so great a Havock here, that the Shepherds durst no longer go into the Fields, and so several *Knights* of *Jerusalem*, now of *Maltha*, resolved to rid the Country of this Monster, but with no other Success than to become themselves its Prey : The great Master *Helion de ville neuve*, to spare the Life of his Kts. did strictly forbid every Body to go and fight it. But *Deodat of Gozon*, who dy'd in 1353, and who was gone often with some of his Brother-Knights, who were all kill'd, did always return unhurt, and was suspected as a Man who had not Courage enough to attack it ; and so to clear himself of so odious a Charge, he went into *France*, where he made a wooden Dragon just of the same Form, as the natural one he had often seen at *Rhodes* ; and at a certain Noise he brought up two furious Dogs to rush under the Monster and seize it by the Belly. After that he returned to *Rhodes*, and went strait to the Place where the Dragon lurked. As soon as he saw it, he made his usual Noise, and his two Dogs went and seized the Dragon by the Belly, and thereby gave *Gozon* an Opportunity to kill it. He having performed this Exploit, entred the Town, and was received with great Applause. But the Great Master degraded him for having transgressed his Orders ; but he was soon after restored to his Dignity, and the Great Master dying some time after, he was chosen in his Place.

As for the Inhabitants, &c. we may say the same as of *Cyprus*. Only it is to be observed here, That the *Rhodians* were antiently very remarkable for their Power and Government ; and their Laws were made use of to determine Maritime Causes, till succeeded by those of *Oleron*.

This Island was taken from the *Saracens* by the *Knights* of *St. John* of *Jerusalem* in 1308, who defended it gallantly afterwards, and repulsed *Mahomet* the Great with Shame and Loss in 1480. But *Soliman* the Second conquer'd it in 1522, with two Hundred Thousand Men, and 300 Ships. However the *Turks* did so much Honour to the Valour of the *Knights*, that they still preserve their Houses,

Houses, Arms, Statues and Inscriptions in the same State as they left them.

Rhodes, the City lies on the North-East of the Isle, has two Harbours, and is small, but strong and well fortified, with good triple high Walls, and good Towers at proper Distances. The Streets are broad, well paved, and cover'd with Penthouses on each side. The middle of the great Street is paved with white Marble. It gave Birth to *Cleobulus*, one of the seven Sages; to *Chares* who made the famous *Colossus*; and contends for that of *Homer*. No Christian is allowed to lodge in the Town, but only in the Suburbs.

Scarfanto. *Scarfanto*, antiently *Carpathos*, is about seventy Miles round, and ill peopled, because infested by Pyrates.

Stampalia. *Stampalia*, about ninety Miles West from *Rhodes*, is barren, and without fresh Water.

Lango. *Lango*, antiently *Cos*, or *Caris*, is famous for the Temple of *Aesculapius*, the Birth of the Physician *Hippocrates*, the Painter *Apelles*, and of *Pamphylia*, who found out the Way of making use of Silk-worms.

Lero is only remarkable for its Aloes.

Lero. *Palmosa*, or *Pathmos*, is very barren, and ill-inhabited, but famous for the Banishment of St. John hither.

Nicaria. *Nicaria*, was antiently called *Icaria*, because *Icarus* Son of *Dedalus* was drowned near it.

Samo. *Samo*, so famous of old, is yet a very good Island. It was the Birth-place of *Pythagoras*. 'Tis thought that the making of Earthen-Ware was here invented.

Scio. *Scio*, or *Chios*, is a very fertile Isle, noted especially for its *Mastick*, the best in the World. 'Tis a sort of Gum distilling from Trees about ten or twelve Foot high. The Ladies of the Grand Signior's Seraglio consume a great deal of it; they chew it by way of Amusement, or in a Morning to sweeten their Breath. 'Tis good for Distempers of the Stomach; stops Bleeding, and fortifies the Gums. The Inhabitants were talkative, and those of *Cos* eloquent, whence the Proverb, *Chius Coum loqui non snit*. They boast that *Jon* the Tragick Poet, *Theopompus* the Historian, and *Theocritus* the *Sophist*, were born here as well as *Homer*.

Metelino,

Metelino, antiently *Lesbos*, was famous for generous Wine, beautiful Women, and good Musicians. *Pittacus*, one of the seven Wise-men, *Alcaeus* the Poet, *Sappho* the Poetess, *Diophanus* the Rhetorician, *Theophanes* the Historian, and several others were all Natives of this Island. *Epicurus*, *Diogenes Laertius*, and *Aristotle* did also reside here.

Argentire, antiently *Cimolus*, is inhabited by about 500 Women, and seven or eight Priests. Merchants and Pirates, chuse what Women they please, *Argentire*, and the Women keep the Girls, and when the Boys are twelve Years old, give them to the first Ship that arrives:





C H A P. XII.

Of A F R I C A.

I. Q.

WHAT do you call *Africa*?

A. The Third Part of our Continent, so called, as some say, *quasi Aprica*, i. e. *Africa's exposed to the Sun*; or *Name*. from *Apeix* i. e. free of

Cold. Or from *Afer*, Son to *Hercules*, (or according to some) to *Abraham*. Or from *Ifric* an *Arabian King*. Or from *Apher*, i. e. Dusty or Sandy. Or from the *Arabian Word faracha*, i. e. Separated, because it is separated from *Asia* by the *Nile*, and from *Europe* by the Strait of *Gibraltar*: But Mr. *Bochart* will have it to be so called, from the *Arabian Word Pheric*, an *Ear of Corn*, because it was antiently famous on that respect. However, its Form is somewhat like a *Cap*, or *Pyramid*, and 'tis a *Peninsula* separated from *Asia* by the *Isthmus of Suez*, which is about 80 Miles long. It has on the North the *Mediterranean Sea*, and the Straits of *Gibraltar*, which is about 12 Miles broad; the Western, or *Atlantick Ocean* on the West; the Sea that separates it from *Terra Australis* on the South, the *Indian Sea*, the Straits of *Babel-mandel*, the *Red Sea*, and the *Isthmus of Suez* on the East.

Africa

Africa is usually divided into 16 Parts, from North-East to South-West, &c.

1. Egypt.	<i>Le Cairo, Alexandria, Suez, Damietta.</i>
2. Barbary	<i>Barca, Tripoli, Tunis, Algiers, Morocco.</i>
3. Bildulgerid	<i>Darba. or Tefuf, Tafilet, Fazzen</i>
4. Zaara, or the D	<i>Goga, Borno, Berdoa, Lempta, Targa, Zuenziga.</i>
5. Nigritia	<i>Enbut, Cano, Mandinga.</i>
6. Guinez	<i>Benin, La Mina, Tomba, Bogia.</i>
7. Congo	<i>Biafara, San Salvador, Loanda, St. Paolo.</i>
8. Cafraria	<i>Malemba, Cape of Good Hope, Zofala.</i>
9. Zanguebar	<i>Mozambic, Mombazo, Quiloa, Melinda.</i>
10. Ajan	<i>Brava, Magadoxo, Adea, Adel.</i>
11. Abex	<i>Suaquem.</i>
12. Nubia	<i>Dancala, Nubia, Galva.</i>
13. Ethiopia, or Abyssinia.	<i>Amba Marjan, Axum.</i>
14. Monoemugi	<i>Chicoua, Sacumba, Irambane,</i>
15. Monomotapa	<i>Ditto Mossapa, Butua.</i>
16. The Isles.	

} Coasts of

2. Q. What have you to say about *Africa's* Situation.

A. It lies on the West of *Asia*, South of *Europe*, and East of *America*, betwixt South Latitude 35, and North Latitude 37. Longitude West of *London* 18, and East 51 Degrees. So that from *Cape Non* on the North to the *Cape of Good Hope* on the South, 'tis about 4320 Miles, and from *Cape Verd* on the West, to *Cape Guardafu* on the E. 4500 Miles. It is smaller than *Asia*, but larger than *Europe*.

Most of it is in the Torrid Zone, and the Air is so very hot, that the Antients thought, that for this Reason this Country could not be inhabited. But 'tis observed that the Air is more temperate, under,

under and about the *Line*, than under or near the *Tropicks*. The reason of it is, that under or near the *Equator*, they have very often great Showers of Rain, and the Days and Nights being always equal, does very much cool the Air; besides, the Sun passes lightly, and stays but little perpendicular over the Inhabitants under the *Line*, whereas, when it comes to the *Tropicks*, it makes the Days longer than the Night, and stays longer thereabout, which

Soil. warms the *Air* and *Soil*, or rather *Sand*. The *Soil* in general is very dry, and so sandy, that in several Places People are over-whelmed, when the Sand is blown to and fro by the Winds, and no Water is to be found for some Hundreds of Miles; But the Sea-Coasts are not subject to this Inconveniency. Hence it is that they are much better peopled, and more fruitful.

Their chief *Commodities* are Ivory, Gold, Dust, Sugar, Salt, Skins of wild Beasts, Horses of *Barbary*, and *Negroes*, which are sold and bought here like other Creatures, and most of them transported to *America* where they are kept at work on Sugar and Tobacco especially. They have also excellent Fruits, admirable Drugs, and several wild Beasts, as Lions, Leopards, Panthers, Elephants, Rhinoceroses, Camels, Dromedaries, Tygers, Crocodiles, wild Asses, Monkeys, Civet-Cats, Ottriches, and monstrous Serpents.

The most considerable *Rivers* are, 1. The *Niger*, the greatest River in *Africa*. It rises in Latitude 9, and Longitude East 25, in the Kingdom of *Mujac*, and falls into the Western Ocean at *Sennegal* Bar, Latitude 16, Longitude West 16, after a Course of 2800 Miles in a direct Line, thro' several Lakes, as *Borno*, *Nubia*, and *Gambia*. Some ascribe three principal Mouths to it, viz. The River of *Sennegal*, *Gambia*, and *Niger*, call'd otherwise the River of *St. Domingo*. It increases and decreases as the *Nile*, and fructifies the Country, and has Grains of Gold. 2. The *Nile*, of which in *Egypt*. 3. The *Nubia* rises in the Desert of *Gbir*, and runs North-East into the *Nile*. 4. The *Zaire* comes out of the Lake *Zaire*, runs West, and falls into the *Ethiopian* Sea in the Kingdom of *Congo*. 5. The Rivers *Del Spiritu Sancto*: *Zambeze*, and *Cuama* do run South-East through the Coasts of *Cafraria*.

The chief Gulphs are, 1. That of *Arabia*, or the Red Sea, which is above 1200 Miles from South to North, and about three Hundred broad.

broad. 2. That of *St. Thomas* on the West Coasts near *Guinea*. 3. *Sidra*, or *Lés seches de Barbarie*, antiently *Syrtes*, along the Coasts of *Tripoli*. There is but one Strait called *Babelmandel*, i. e. *The Gate of Affliction*, joining the Red Sea with the *Eastern Ocean*.

Africa has many famous Mountains, viz.

1. *Atlas* had its Name from a King of *Mauritana*, so addicted to *Astronomy*, that the Poets feigned he supported the Sky with his Shoulders. This Range of Mountains runs from West to East, separates *Barbary* from *Bildulgerid*, and has several Branches.

2. The Mountains of the *Moon*, or *Beth*, are higher than those of *Atlas*, and have also several Branches; but the most considerable Branch runs betwixt *Abyssinia* and *Monomotapa*.

3. Those of *Sierra Liona*, separate *Guinea* from *Nigritia*, and are subject to Lightning and Thunder, from whence called the *Chariots of God*.

4. The Pike of *Teneriff*, which the *Dutch* make their first Meridian, is one of the highest in the World, but does not much exceed three Miles, in height. The Summit is always cover'd with Snow.

The most remarkable Capes, or Promontories, are,

1. *Cape Non*, or *Spartel*, on the Coast of *Bildulgerid*, so called, because it was thought formerly to be the Boundaries of the Earth.

2. *Cape Verd*, so called because the Land is always cover'd with green Trees, and mossy Ground. It is the most Western Point of the old Continent.

3. The Cape of *Good Hope*, so called, because Ships which arrive there, are in a fair Way to get into the *East-Indies*. It was discover'd in 1480, by *Bartholomy Diaz*, a *Portuguese*, but *Vasquez de Gama* was the first that went round it in 1498.

4. Cape of *Gardafu*, or of the Spices, is so called because Ships that brought Spices from the *Indies*, went by it into the Red Sea.

3. Q. Who were the first Inhabitants of *Africa*?

A. The Posterity of *Cham*, to whose Lot it fell. Some ascribe their black Complexion to the scorching Heat of the Sun; and others to their being *Inhabitants*: descended of the cursed Race of *Cham*, because Strangers in this Country preserve their white Complexion,

and some *Afians* and *Americans*, who live in the same Zone, are nothing so black. Most of them are black, and others very tawny, but all of a good Stature, and strong : Some of them want neither Wit nor Judgment, but in general they are not good Soldiers, but very cruel, treacherous, revengeful, and apt to cheat. 'Tis reported of them that they are either very good, or very bad.

Most of the Countries and Nations in *Africa* have their several Languages, the chief of which are, 1. The Language *Abimalic*, spoken among the antient Inhabitants called *Bereberes*. 2. The *Barbarian*, spoke on the Coasts of *Barbary*. 3. The *Arabian* is also spoke here. 4. The *Ethiopian*, a Dialect of the *Chaldean*, or *Arabe*. 5. The *Songay* and *Guber* are peculiar to some People of *Nigritia*. 6. The *Zinb* used in the Countries situated along the *Niger*. And, 7. the *Abyssinian* in *Abyssinia*.

Africa is not populous proportionately to *Populoufness*. its largeness, either because the Sun being too hot, does too much evaporate the prolifick Strength of the Inhabitants, or because the People destroy one another in Wars, and sell one another to be sent into other Countries. And 3dly, Because several of the Provinces are desert, and have nothing to invite People to go and settle there. Another Defect of this Part of the World is, that it is much annoy'd with wild Beasts, and odd Creatures. Monsters are more frequent here than elsewhere, because the Country not abounding with Rivers, it happens that several sorts of Beasts go to drink in the same River, and mixing with some of another kind, their little ones partake of the Nature of both, and so are monstrous.

As to their Religion, many of them are *Religion*. Mahometans, especially along the Coasts of *Barbary*, but the greater Number is Pagans ; and there are some Christians, especially in *Abyssinia*, and where the *Europeans* have Settlements.

Most of this Country was antiently under the *Government*. Kings of *Egypt*, *Numidia* and *Ethiopia*. The Republick of *Carthage*, a Colony of *Phenicians*, became also very famous, and was for some Scores of Years the Rival of *Rome*, by which it was at last destroy'd. The *Romans* subdued and possessed also *Egypt* and *Numidia*, until the Vth Century, when *Genseric* went thither from *Spain* about 428, and erected the Kingdom of the *Vandals*, which

which lasted until 534, when it was destroy'd by *Belisarius* and *Cilimer*, Generals of the Emperor *Justinianus*, who divided *Africa* into seven Provinces. The *Saracens* and the *Arabs* drove out the *Romans* in the seventh Century. The *Turks* have also conquer'd some Provinces, and some others, especially along the Coasts of *Barbary* are Tributary to them. Here are also some Emperors and independent Kings, the Chief of which are those of *Morocco*, *Abyssinia*, *Monomotapa*, *Tombut*, *Benin*, *Monoemugi*, *Angola*, and *Nubia*. *Algiers*, *Tunis*, and *Tripoly* are governed somewhat like a Common-Wealth. The *English*, *French*, *Spaniards*, *Portuguese*, *Dutch*, and *Danes*, are Masters of some Islands, Towns, and Forts along the Coasts.





C H A P. XIII.

Of E G Y P T.

1. Q.



H Y is this Country thus called ?

A. Some think it is so called from *Egyptus*, Son to *Belus*, and Brother to *Danaus*, others *Egypt's* Name. from a Greek Word denoting

their black Colour; and others from the *Cophti*, or *Cupti* the Name of the antient Inhabitants, who are the Posterity of *Misraim*. But the proper Signification of *Mesr*, *Egypt*, or *Memphis*, is a populous Province, or great City. The *Hebrews* call it in the Dual, *Misraim*, alluding to the Upper and Lower *Egypt*, or the Eastern and Western, as it is divided by the Nile.

Egypt has *Nubia* and the Kingdom of *Sennar* on the South, the *Red Sea*, and *Limits*, Isthmus of *Suez* on the East, the *Mediterranean Sea* on the North, and a Chain of Mountains, and the Desarts of *Lybia* on the West. The chief Town was antiently *Memphis*, then *Alexan-* Chief Town, *dria*, but now it is *Cairo*, Latitude 29, 50. *Cairo*. Longitude 35, about three Miles from the Nile, whereas the old *Cairo* which is almost uninhabited, was just on the Banks of that River; but the Castle, where the *Bassaw* resides, was perhaps too far to command the old City.

City. However, 'tis one of the greatest Cities in *Africa*; but what some have written concerning its vast Extent, is meer Fable, for if it be separated from Villages and Ruins that lie about it, 'tis no larger than *Paris*. 'Tis true, that it was perhaps larger before the decay of its Commerce, since a Way to the *East-Indies*, by the Cape of *Good Hope* has been discover'd. The Ruins of the antient *Memphis* lie a little below it on the other side of the *Nile*.

The antient *Geographers* divided *Egypt* into *Higher* and *Lower*; the first contained the *Delta*, (that Part contained betwixt the two furthermost *Division*. Branches of the *Nile*, from *Cairo* to the Sea, formerly called by the *Arabs* and others, *Raab* or *Pear*, but by the *Greeks*, *Delta*, because its Shape is like their Δ) and the other the *Thebais*, or into five Parts, the *Delta*, *Eastern Egypt*, *Troglodytis*, *Thebais*, and *Cyrene*, or *Pentapole*. The *Arabs* divide it now into three Parts, *Elrif*, or *Western Part* of the *Delta*; *Beheira*, or the *Eastern*, towards *Damietta*; and the *Saydi*, or higher *Egypt*. Some add to it the *Fium* above the *Elrif*. But with most of the modern *Geographers* we shall divide it into three Parts, *viz.*

PROVINCES.

	Chief Towns, with their Distance from <i>Cairo</i> .
1. Lower from <i>Damietta</i> and <i>Alexandria</i> to <i>Cairo</i> .	<i>Alexandria</i> 100 N. W. <i>Rosetta</i> , <i>Damietta</i> , 120 N. E. <i>Cairo</i> , <i>Suez</i> 80 N. E. <i>Fium</i> 160 N. W.
2. Middle from <i>Cairo</i> to <i>Ben souef</i> .	<i>Girge</i> 300, <i>Insne</i> (<i>Antinopolis</i>) 160. <i>Siouth</i> 210. <i>Cassar</i> , <i>Andera</i>
3. The higher reaches as far as <i>Nubia</i> , and the Kingdom of <i>Sennar</i> .	<i>Hermant</i> , <i>Asna</i> or <i>Siene</i> , <i>As-souan</i> .

Lucas, in his new Voyage to *Egypt*, says, that it lies betwixt Latitude 23 and half, and 32, and
Situation. Longitude from *Fero* 48 to 52. So that from the Kingdom of *Angola*, *Fungy*, or *Sennar*, or from the Cataracts near *Asouan* to the *Mediterranean*, it is about six Hundred Miles; but its largest Extent from *Alexandria* to *Damietta*, is but a Hundred and Fifty Miles: From the *Cairo* up to the *Tropick*, we may say, that *Egypt* is but a Valley betwixt two Ranges of Mountains, and the *Nile* in the middle. The Distance from the Mountains on the

the East to the River, is not for the most part above thirty Miles, but on the West towards *Lybia*, they have Plains 120 Miles long or broad. The *Air*.

Air of this Country is unhealthful, because of the great Heats, and of the nauseous Vapours ascending from the Slime left by the *Nile*, after it has over-flown the Country. Yet People generally live here to a very great Age, either because of their frequent Bathing, or of the perpetual Serenity and constant Spring they enjoy here; for in *June*, *July*, and *August*, they have a northerly Wind which cools the Air. However, they are not subject to Rheumatisms, Gouts, Gravels, Stones, Pleurifies, and other Distempers, which are frequent in the Countries where there is an inequality and inconstancy of Seasons.

The *Soil*, tho' sandy, is made very fruitful by *Soil*.

the Inundations of the *Nile*. It abounds with

all sorts of Grain, and was for that reason *Commodi-*
antiently called the Granary of the *Romans*. *ties*.

as it is now of the *Turkish* Empire. It likewise produces Rice, Flax Salt, Balm, Senna, *Cassia*, Dates, fine Plants, and excellent Simples. Here is also abundance of Cattel, and good Grapes, but they dare not make Wine with them. They had formerly in higher *Egypt* some Mines of fine Emeralds.

In or near *Alexandria* are many considerable Remains of Antiquity, particularly divers stately *Porphiry*

Pillars, and several curious *Obelisks* of pure *Rarities*.

Granite, especially that called *Pompey's* Pillar.

The Pedestal is fourteen Foot high, and has 1828 Cubic Feet; the Chapter 9, and 485 Cubic; and the Pillar it self, of one intire Piece, is 69 high, and 3347 Cubic. In all it is 94 Foot high, and 5663 Cubic Feet. What they call *Cleopatra's* Needle, is a square Pillar, and full of Hieroglyphick Figures 54 Feet high out of the Earth, That of *Matarea*, about seven Miles East from *Cairo*, is yet higher and finer.

2. In the Castles of the old and new *Cairo*, thought to be the Palaces of the *Pharaohs*, are several curious Things, which the Christians (not without some difficulty) obtain leave to see. But nothing is so remarkable as that called *Joseph's* Well, in the Castle of the *New Cairo*. It is intirely cut out in the Rock, and its Mouth, according to *Lucas*, is 18 Foot broad, and 24 long, and 276 Foot deep. One may go to the Bottom of it by a Stair-Case, 6 Foot broad,

broad, and nine high : The Separation betwixt the Well and this Stair-Cafe is but six Inches thick, and is full of little Windows. The Water of it is brackish. The Inhabitants say, That at the upper-part of the Well, 146 Foot deep, there were two Holes, one of them leading to the Pyramids, and the other to the Red Sea.

3. About eight Miles West from *Cairo*, near *Gize*, are the *Egyptian* Pyramids (called by the *Turks*, *Pharaon's Dag-lary*, and by the *Arabs*, *Dgebel Pharaon*, i. e. *Pharaon's Hills*) those famous Monuments of Antiquity. The biggest is five Hundred and twenty Foot high, upon a Basis of six Hundred and 82 Foot on each of the four Sides. On the Top of it, to which one may ascend by two Hundred and ten Steps, there is a fine Platform able to contain 30 Men. The inside is full of long, high, but narrow Vaults, all made of Stone. *Pliny* says, that this Pyramid was built in twenty Years time, by three Hundred and seventy Thousand Men; and that eighteen Hundred Talents, i. e. a Million and eighty Thousand Crowns, were laid out only in Onions and Radishes for the Builders. It is generally thought that these *Pyramids* were built by the *Egyptian* Kings, to be the Place of their Burial, wherein they shewed more Magnificence than in their Palaces, which they consider'd only as transitory Habitations. But others say, that they were consecrated unto the Gods. Others, that they were built by *Joseph* as Granaries for Corn : But according to *Pliny*, they were erected to hinder the People from being lazy. *Aristotle* thinks, that these Kings did it to strengthen their Tyranny : For by impoverishing their Subjects, exhausting them of Money, and oppressing them with continual and hard Labour, they incapacitated them thereby to rebel. Others have said, that those Pyramids are only a Sign of the Vanity of those Kings; or at most, to be *Gnomons*, or to shew, by their Shade, the Sun's conversion in the *Solstice*. However, these Pyramids were formerly reckon'd one of the Wonders of the World; more, perhaps, because of what is bury'd under the Sand, than of what appears out of it. There are many such Pyramids in *Egypt*, especially on the western Part of higher *Egypt*.

4. Near the largest of the above-mention'd, on the East-side, stands a monstrous Figure of a prodigious Bulk, called *Sphinx*. The Bust is all of one Stone, and represents the Face and Breast of a Woman, but is at present bury'd under the Sand to the Neck; the rest, as they say, represents

a Lion: The Head is 26 Foot high, and fifteen from the Ear to the Chin. *Pliny* says, that it was the Grave of *K. Amasis*. Others assure, that *Oracles* were rendred by it : But others pretend, that *this*, for the City of *Memphis*, and another near Lake *Maturea*, for that of *Heliopolis*, served to the *Egyptians*, as so many Marks to measure the Inundation of the *Nile*, and the Time when it did happen, viz. *July* and *August*, when the *Sun* is in *Leo* and *Virgo*.

5. Near *Abouzira*, *Sakara*, and in several other Places, are several deep subterranean Cavities, (hewn out of the firm Rock, and having variety of Hieroglyphicks inscribed on the Walls) in which repose the so much talk'd of *Mummies*, or embalmed Corpse, which keep, as they say, two or three Thousand Years in those Pits. In some of those Repositories certain Lamps, called *Sepulchrales*, are said to have been found, which constantly burned, till exposed to the open Air.

6. About twelve Miles North-West from *Fioum*, near *Epcheck roman*, is the Lake *Meris*, or of *Caron*, about forty Miles round, and, as *Herodotus* says, three Hundred Feet deep. It is the Work of an antient King of *Egypt*, for to receive the Waters of the *Nile*, and distribute them afterwards by several Canals in the Places which wanted it. There is an Island in the middle about three Miles round, where stood some Pyramids. Its Waters are bitter on the West, and soft on the Eastern Shore. They say, there is about twelve Miles further, another Lake called *Gara*, bigger than this. As most of the *Egyptians* were buried beyond the Lake *Meris*, and carry'd in a Boat by a Man called *Charon*, hence the Fable of *Charon Portitor Averni*.

7. In Upper *Egypt*, are several magnificent Buildings; especially the Temple of *Jupiter* at *Hermant*, the curious Palace, or Temple at *Andera*, or *Tintyris*; but the famous Labyrinth on the S. S. E. of the Lake *Meris*, deserves to be spoke of here, near the Place where *Arsinoe*, or the City of the Crocodiles stood formerly : It is a prodigious Building, whose Apartments above and under Ground, contain'd no less than three Thousand Rooms, most of them built with fine white Marble, and adorned with Figures and other Ornaments of Architecture. Some of those Rooms are long, others square, and others triangular. The Marble Stones for the Cieling of some of those Rooms, are twenty-five

five Foot long, and three broad. This Labyrinth was very likely a huge Temple, containing a vast Number of Chapels consecrated to the several Gods of the *Egyptians*, but especially to the *Sun*, and perhaps they bury'd under Ground their sacred Animals, especially their Crocodiles.

8. In most Parts of *Thebais* are several Grotto's cut out in the Rock, where the *Cophta* live. Some are natural, and others artificial, and supposed to have been the first Habitations of Men in those Parts. Some say, that those Grotto's are nothing else but the Pits where the Stones and Marble made use of in the several famous Buildings, were dug out, and some of them Channels to carry through the Mountains the Water of the *Nile*. However, most of the antient *Anachorets* lived here.

9. In *Egypt*, and especially in the *Nile*, are *ist*, abundance of *Crocodiles*, those terrible Animals, and so great Enemies to Mankind : They are amphibious Creatures, much like a *Lizzard* ; and though they grow up to thirty Feet, yet their Eggs are not much bigger than those of Geese.

2dly. The Rat of *Pharaon*, or *Egypt*, called *Ichneumon* by the Antients, it is as big as a Cat, but with white, yellow, and brown Spots ; its Snout is like that of a Pig ; his Ears are short, Legs black, and his Tail like a Fox's. He lives upon Lizzards, Cameleons, Rats, Serpents, and other Vermin. Some say that it is very greedy of *Crocodile's* Liver, and that it slips into their Belly whilst asleep, to devour it ; but certain it is, that it destroys their Eggs, whenever he finds any.

3ly, *Ibis*, a Bird peculiar to *Egypt*, and much like a Stork. It likes so well this Country, that it won't eat any thing, when carry'd out of it. It feeds on Snails, Locusts, and Serpents, especially those which the Wind brings from the Desarts of *Lybia*, and which have Wings and four Feet like what we call Dragons. These Birds go to the Frontiers of *Egypt*, and there catch those Serpents when they fly in the Air. Some other Birds like Lap-Wings enter sometimes into the Crocodiles Mouths, and there feed upon what there is betwixt their Teeth ; and when the Crocodile shuts up his Mouth, the Birds, to force him to open it again, prick it with a sharp Point at the end of their Wings.

The

The River *Nile*, for several Reasons, may be reckon'd among the Number of the *Egyptian* Rarities. The *Hebrews* call it *Nahal*, i. e. River, because the principal and almost only River in *Egypt*, whence the *Phenicians* and *Egyptians* have formed their *Neel*, and the *Latins* their *Nilus*. As to its Fountains, they were antiently esteemed so far unknown as to become a proverbial Saying, made use of to denote a Thing not to be found out, or unknown; and even now we must leave it to an Uncertainty, for some *Jesuits* say, that it has two Fountains, and that they are twenty Paces asunder, at the foot of a Mountain in the Kingdom of *Gojam*, Latitude 12. Longitude 30, 28. But others assure, that it has but one Fountain, and rises in a Plain, twelve Days Journey from *Gonthar*, the Capital of *Ethiopia*. What is most to be depended on, is the Course of it from its famous Cataracts, the first of which is not far from the Lake *Dambea* and the others near the City *Afsouan*. Philosophers are not agreed as to the Causes of the Inundation, but the most probable Account is, That it proceeds from the great Rains that begin in *Ethiopia* about *April*, and continue four or five Months, which fill all the Lakes of that Country, and the rest discharges it self into the *Nile*: So that *Ethiopia* first, and then *Egypt*, are then all under Water. And what was at first but a River, by spreading on both sides over its Banks, becomes a little Sea, or large Lake, till fair Weather returning, in *Ethiopia* at the beginning of *October*, the Water begins to decrease, which if it staid too long, would hinder their Sowing: After it has left behind it a rich Mould, it discharges it self into the *Mediterranean Sea*.

It is to be observed about this River, i. When it rises to twenty-four Foot, 'tis look'd upon as a certain Sign of a fruitful Year: but if more or less, 'tis a sign of Scarcity; and if it don't overflow at all, which seldom happens, 'tis a certain Token of Famine, because there's seldom any Rain in *Egypt*, and what they have, is not sufficient to fructify the Soil.

2. Wonderful in this respect is the Providence of God, to send at a certain time Rain in *Ethiopia*, which not only serves to moisten *Egypt*, but which affords also to its Mud such a Fatness as enriches the lean and sandy Soil of this Country; so that the People, before they sow any thing, are obliged to throw Sand upon the Earth, to correct the excessive Fatness of the Slime, which the Water leaves behind when it runs off.

3. Ano-

3. Another thing remarkable in this Providence, is, That from the beginning of *June* to the end of *September*, the North-East Wind blows, and hinders the Waters from discharging themselves too soon into the Sea.

4. The Water of this River is very good and wholesome, tho' not at first, because it is then full of several Eggs, which breed little Worms, &c. These Eggs are washed off by the first Inundation.

5. They say that the Waters of this River have the Virtue not only to render the Soil very fertile, but even Women and Sheep, who commonly have two or three little ones at a time.

Their *Sea-Ports* are *Alexandria*, *Damietta*, *Rosetta*, *Mansoura*, *Suez*, and some others on *Sea-Ports*. the Coasts of the *Red Sea*. These with *Cairo* are also the chief Towns. They had antiently a vast many more, as *Heliopolis* or *On*, *Memphis* or *Noph*, *No* or *Diospolis*, or *Thebes*, &c.

The antient Inhabitants were reckon'd very witty; and the Invention of Geometry, *Inhabitants*. Arithmetick, Astronomy, Physick and Magick is ascribed to them: But the modern Inhabitants are of a middling Size, very tawny, especially towards *Nubia*, sober, and perhaps the best Swimmers in the World, but are charged with being idle, ignorant, cowardly, superstitious, proud, covetous, Dissemblers, and given to Robbery, cheating and Lying. In a word, they are much degenerated from their Ancestors in every thing, save only in a vain Affectation in *Divining*, which some as yet pretend unto. And this has given occasion to Vagabonds and Stragglers of other Nations, who pretend to be Fortune-tellers, to assume the Name of *Egyptians*; or, as it is usually pronounced, *Gypsies*. Some divide the Inhabitants into *Moors*, the greatest in Number, and descended from *Arabians*; *Cophti*, supposed to be the Race of the antient *Egyptians*, *Franks*, or *Europeans*, who live chiefly about *Cairo* and *Alexandria*; *Greeks*, *Turks*, and *Jews*. The *Moors*, *Cophti*, and *Christians* are very much kept under by the *Turks*, who possess most of the Offices.

The chief Language used in this Country is the *Turkish*, *Arabick*, or *Moresk*, especially the *Language*. latter; But the *Cophti* still retain their old *Egyptian* Tongue (very different from all *European* Languages) especially in their religious Worship. In Trading Towns,

Towns, several of the *European* Tongues are understood and spoke, especially by the *Drogomans*, or Interpreters. The Number of People was antiently very great, but 'tis not so now, because of the Tyranny of the Government.

Populous-
ness.

Most of the Inhabitants are strict Observer's of *Mahomet's* Doctrine. Here are also some *Jews*, and the *Cophti*, who have some Remains of Christianity, but are very ignorant. They have a Patriarch, styling himself Patriarch of *Alexandria*, and residing at *St. Macair* in Upper *Egypt*.

Religion.

The *Egyptians* have had several Kings, then they fell under the Domination of *Cambyfes*, King of *Persia*, of *Alexander* the Great, of the *Ptolomei*, and of the *Romans*, who, after Queen *Cleopatra's* death, subdued this Country, and kept it till 637, when *Omar*, second *Caliph*, and Successor of *Mahomet*, drove them out by his General *Omar*. In 1164 *Saladin* set up the Empire of the *Mammelus*, which lasted till 1516, when the Grand Signior, *Selim I.* killed the *Soudans Kampson* and *Tomumbey*. Ever since that Time *Egypt* has been govern'd by a *Turkish Bashaw*, or *Pacha*, which Office is esteemed the best in the *Turkish* Dominions. He has under him several Governours, and *Checks*, or *Arabian* Princes.

Govern-
ment.





C H A P. XIV. Of B A R B A R Y.

1. Q.



HY do you call this Country *Barbary* ?
A. Some will have it to be so called from the *Saracen* Word, *Barbar*, *murmuring*, because these People seemed at first to their Conquerors to pronounce their Language after a strange *murmuring*

Way. Others think, that the *Romans* having conquer'd this Country, called it *Barbaria*, and its Inhabitants *Barbarians*, because of their *Barbarity*, *Cruelty*, and of their uncivil *Manners*. However, it has *Egypt* on the East, the *Mediterranean* Sea on the North, part of the western Ocean on the West, and *Bildulgerid* on the South. It is commonly divided into six chief Kingdoms, or Provinces, which are situated from East to West.

K I N G D O M S.

1. *Barca*

2. *Tripoli*

3. *Tunis*

Chief Towns, with their Distance from their Capitals.

Ditto 32 and a half, 22 and a half. *Cairoan* 180 E.

Ditto 32 and a half, 16. Capes 180 W.

Ditto 37. -- 11 *Biserta*.

R 2

4. *Al*

4. *Algiers*

Ditto 37 Long. 4. *Bugia* 120
E. *Oran* 240 W.

5. *Fez*

Ditto, 34. 4 W. *Miquenez*
80 W. *Tetuan* 120 N.
Ceuta, Salee.

6. *Morocco*

Ditto 30 -- 6 *Mazagan* 180
N. W. *Tarudant* in *Sus*,
120. S.

N. B. The Cyphers after the Capitals, denote their Latitude and Longitude. Of all these Provinces in Order, and then of *Barbary* in general.

2. Q. What have you to say about *Barca* ?

A. It lies on the West of *Egypt*, and is from East to West about six Hundred Miles, and from South to North 120. The Air is here very hot, and the Soil almost barren, because of its Sands and Rocks. Here was the antient Temple of *Jupiter Ammon*. 'Tis divided by the *Nakel* into the Eastern, which is barren, and depends from the *Bassaw* of *Egypt*; and the Western, where are *Barca*, *Cairoan*, the antient *Cyrene*, and *Bernick*, supposed to be *Berenice*. The Inhabitants are ugly, brutish and poor, especially the *Arabs*, who live upon what they can get from the Western *Caravans* that go to *Mecca*. This Country was formerly a Dependence from *Tripoli*, but it belongs now to the *Turks*, who have a *Cadi* at *Barca*, now *Tolometta*, antiently *Ptolomais*.

Tripoli was formerly Part of *Tunis*, is somewhat larger and better than that of *Barca*; for it has abundance of Dates; and on the western Coasts it has Corn, Citrons, Oranges, Figs, Olives and Saffron reckon'd the best in the World. The River *Salines* divides it into *Eastern*, where are *Colbene*, *Larcudia*, *Zedico*, *Ile of Sydra*; and the *Western*, where are, *Tripoli*, *Porteti*, *Capes* and *Zoara*. *Tripoli* the Capital has a convenient Harbour, defended by two Forts. 'Tis not large, nor fine, but very populous, and its greatest Riches come from the Pyracies of its Inhabitants. It was Bombarded by the *French* in 1685. It is Govern'd somewhat like a Common-wealth. The *Divan*, or the *Senate*, consists of the Officers of the *Fannisaries*, and of the richest Citizens. He who has the Management of the Treasury, and of the Country Militia, is called *Bey*. *Barbarossa* went to the Help of the King of this City in 1533, killed him, and made

made himself King; but the Emperor *Charles V.* drove him out, and gave the Town to the Knights of *Malta*, who kept it till 1551, when *Soliman* Emperor of the *Turks* took it away from them, and his Successors possessed it till 1600, when the Janissaries revolted, and the Government was settled on the Foot it now is, but under the Protection of the Grand *Seignior*. The *Bey's* Revenue amounts to a Hundred Thousand Pounds. The Christians are allow'd here freedom of Worship.

Tunis. The Kingdom of *Tunis* is now 460 Miles from S. to N. and 200 from East to West, but was formerly larger. Here are many Vallies which abound with Corn and Fruit. In their Mountains are many wild Beasts. *Hannibal*, *Asdrubal*, *Terence*, *Tertullian*, and *St. Cyprian*. were born in this Kingdom, which is divided into eight small Provinces, each having the Name of one of these Cities, *Tunis*, *Gouletta*, *Biserta*, *Suza*, *Africa* or *Elmedia* on the Sea-shore; *Cairoan*, *Mahometa*, *Byrsa* within the Country, which were a part of *Numidia* and *Lybia* properly so called. *Tunis*, the Capital, is considerable by the Number of its Inhabitants, the Commodiousness of its Harbours, and the Residence of their chief Men. But Water is sometimes very scarce here. *Tunis* and *Gouletta* were taken by *Charles* the Vth in 1555, but retaken by the *Turks* in 1570. *Byrsa* is thought to be built in the Place where *Carthage* stood, and *Biserta* near *Utica*, a Town famous for the Death of the Great Roman Patriot *Cato*. At *Mahometa*, or *Adrumet*, thirty French Knights, are said to have fought with, and beaten two Thousand *Moors*, or *Arabians*.

The Government is almost the same here as at *Tripoli*; and it is to be observed, that from 1600, to this present Year 1722, most of the *Deys* of *Tunis*, as well as those of *Tripoli* and *Algiers*, have been either deposed, or put to death. The *Dey's* Revenues are very considerable here; and the *Turkish* *Bashaw* sends every Year an Hundred Thousand Pounds as a Tribute to the Grand *Signior*.

Algier. The Kingdom of *Algier* is one of the largest in *Barbary*, being above six Hundred Miles from East to West, and two Hundred and Fifty South to North. Here's abundance of barren Ground and Mountains, especially that Part called for that reason *Telefin*, or *Tremesin*, but the Country in general has plenty of Corn, Cattle, Game, Dates, Figs, Olives, Almonds, and Raisins.

The Air is very temperate : In some Places about *Algiers*, they have two or three Harvests in a Year. The Inhabitants are chiefly *Moors*, who settled here after their expulsion from *Spain*, and are now the richest and most noted Rovers in *Africa*. They are cruel, treacherous, and so greedy, that they violate or keep Treaties, according as they find it for their Interest. It is divided into five Provinces, which lie thus, from East to West :

- | | | | |
|-------------------------|------------|--|------------------|
| 1. <i>Constantine</i> . | or New Nu- | <i>Constantine</i> , or <i>Cirta</i> . | <i>Bone</i> , |
| <i>midia</i> | | or <i>Hippo</i> . | |
| 2. <i>Bugie</i> | | Ditto, <i>Gigery</i> . | |
| 3. <i>Algier</i> | | Ditto, <i>Melafuz</i> . | <i>Tedelez</i> . |
| 4. <i>Tenez</i> | | Ditto, <i>Brisch</i> . | |
| 5. <i>Telefin</i> | | Ditto, <i>Oran</i> , which was taken | |
| | | by Cardinal <i>Ximenes</i> , in | |
| | | 1490, and by the <i>Moors</i> in | |
| | | 1707. | |

This Kingdom was antiently subject to the Kings of *Mauritania*, to the *Romans*, *Goths*, *Arabians*, to the King of *Bugia*, and of *Castile*, and to *Barbarossa*; but now 'tis govern'd like *Tunis*, but more after the Republican Way. The *Bashaw*, sent hither by the *Grand Seignior*, has almost no Authority ; and the Power of the *Dey* and *Bey* is so small, that in all publick Transactions the Preamble runs thus :

WE Great and Small of the potent and invincible State of War of Algiers, &c.

This Council consists of the Officers, and the *Aga* is the President. The Revenues of this State are very considerable, because of its Extent, Trade, or rather Piracy : Wherefore Cardinal *Ximenes* used to say, That if the Fleet of the King of *Spain*, his Master, should but take *Algiers*, he would find there Money enough, wherewith to conquer the rest of *Africa*.

Algier, the Capital, is one of the largest, strongest, finest, richest, and most populous Towns in *Africa*. It lies on the Sea-shore, upon the Front of a Hill, and 'tis square ; most of the Houses are of Brick, and form a sort of agreeable Amphitheatre. Its Harbour is large, safe, and secured by several Forts, and by an Island joined to the Continent by a Mole. *Charles V.* besieged it in vain in 1541, and the *French* Bombarded it in 1682, and 1688, but without much effect. It is the Receptacle of a great many Rovers.

The

The Kingdom of *Fez* lies next to the Straits of *Gibraltar*, and has the River *Mulvia* on *Fez*. the East, separating it from *Algier*, the Strait of *Gibraltar* on the North, the *Atlantick* Ocean on the West, and Mount *Atlas*, and the River *Ommirati* on the South, separating it from *Morocco* and *Segelmesse*. Tho' the Country, especially in the Province of *Garet*, be mountainous and desert, yet the Soil produces abundantly all manner of Grain, Almonds, Figs, and very large Grapes. It abounds also in Cattle, and they have the best Horses in all *Barbary*. The Lions, Leopards, &c. of the Province of *Temesne*, are the fiercest in all *Africa*. It belongs all to the Emperor of *Morocco*, except some few Towns now in the Hands of the *Spaniards*. It is divided into seven Provinces, three on the East, and four on the West.

- | | |
|-------------------|---|
| 1. <i>Garet</i> | <i>Chafuza, Jaffarina, Melilla</i> to the <i>Spaniards</i> from 1497. |
| 2. <i>Chaus</i> | <i>Tezza, Teurent.</i> |
| 3. <i>Errif</i> | <i>Gomera, Penon de Velez</i> to the <i>Spaniards</i> . |
| 4. <i>Habat</i> | <i>Arzilla, Tetuan, Tangiers, Ceuta.</i> |
| 5. <i>Afgar</i> | <i>Larache, Elgiumba, Cebir.</i> |
| 6. <i>Fez</i> | <i>Fez, Mequines, Salee, Mamora.</i> |
| 7. <i>Temesne</i> | <i>Anfa, Almanzora.</i> |

Fez, the Capital, lies near a River of the same Name, and another called *Sebou*. 'Tis about twelve Miles round, but comprehends several Gardens. The Streets are narrow, and most of them shut up with Gates in the Night-time. The best *Maroquens* are made here. It contains about three Hundred Thousand People, among whom are five Thousand *Jews*, and many rich Merchants : But as the Air is not wholesome, the late King resided at *Mequines*, about fifty Miles West from *Fez*. It is well-built, the Streets handsome and large, the Inhabitants civil. It has abundance of Aqueducts, Temples, and Hospitals. The Emperor's Palace is very large, and exceeds all the Structures in this Country ; but 'tis not strong. *Ceuta*, with a good Harbour, near the Straits of *Gibraltar*, is the only *Portuguese* Town, which at the Revolution of *Portugal* in 1640, remained to the *Spaniards*, who have fortified the same. 'Tis

chiefly noted for having stood out a Siege, or rather a Blockade, against the *Moors*, from 1690, till 1720, when the *Spaniards*, under the brave Marquis *de Lede*, did beat the *Moors* from before this Place. *Tangiers* was once a considerable City, taken by the *Portuguese* in 1472, and given to *Charles II*, of *England*, with *Catherine* of *Portugal* in 1662. But not being duly taken care of, nor answering Expectation, he order'd it to be blown up in 1685. *Cebir*, or *Elcassar*, is famous for the Death of *Dom Sebastian*, King of *Portugal*, with ten Thousand of his Men, in 1578. *Sale*, or *Sally* on the Ocean, is a pretty, good, and strong Town, near the Mouth of the *Burragrag*. It was formerly a free and independent City, but is now subject to the Emperor of *Morocco*, who has a Governour here; and he, with some *Alcaids* chose out of the Townsmen; has a Right to make Peace and War. Their Jurisdiction extends only over a few Villages. Its Inhabitants are the most famous *Corfsairs* in the Ocean; but as its Harbour is shallow, they commonly harbour about the Isle of *Fedala*, which is not far from them.

Morocco and *Fez* are the *Mauritania Tingitana* of the Antients. It has *Fez* on the North-East, the Ocean on the West, part of *Bildulgerid* on the South, and *Tafilet* on the East 'Tis three Hundred Miles from North-East to South-West, and 180 broad. The Air is here very hot in Summer, and the Soil more fruitful than in *Fez*, and has some Mines of Gold, Silver, and Copper, and abundance of Cattle. Their chief Commodities are Wax, Oil, Sugar, Almonds, Copper, Hides, Camel's-Hair, or Mohair, and Pastel. 'Tis divided into seven Provinces, the three first on the Ocean, and the rest in the inland Country.

- | | |
|-------------------|---|
| 1. <i>Sus</i> | <i>Tarudant, Tagavost, Sancta-Croce.</i> |
| 2. <i>Hea</i> | <i>Tednest, Teculeth, Amama.</i> |
| 3. <i>Duccala</i> | <i>Saffie, Mazagan to the Portuguese.</i> |
| 4. <i>Tebles</i> | <i>Tebza on the Derna.</i> |
| 5. <i>Hascora</i> | <i>Elmadina, Elgiumbua.</i> |
| 6. <i>Morocco</i> | <i>Morocco, Agmet,</i> |
| 7. <i>Guzzula</i> | has no considerable Towns. |

The Inhabitants are Moors, *Bereberes*, or antient Inhabitants, a great many *Jews*, who pay a considerable Tribute to the Emperor, as well as the *Arabians*, who for Trade's sake go from Place to Place, and dwell in Tents. They are divided into Tribes, and each Tribe has its Chief, and a *Mahometan* Priest. They are obliged to pay Annually to the Emperor, the tenth Part of their Goods, as soon as they are fifty Years old. The King *Dominions* of *Morocco* possesseth not only *Fez* and *Morocco*, but also some Parts of *Bildulgerid*; as *Tafilet*, and *Darba*. He has also *Tangiers*, *Oran*, *Zafarina* and *Tetuan*. He's absolute over all his Subjects, and puts them to Death when he pleases; and sometimes himself's the Executioner. His chiefest Maxim of State is to prevent Rebellion, and to have a watchful Eye on his Sons and Brothers. Some of his People have rebelled, because they are almost ready to starve for want of Bread, &c.

They say, that the Royal Family descends from *Fatima*, Daughter of *Mahomet*, and *Hali's* Wife. The last Emperor who dy'd about two Years ago, was born in 1643, and began to Reign in 1672. In 1693 it was reported he had no less than 118 Sons, and 200 Daughters, yet the publick News in 1720, mention'd but six Sons. The Emperor may have four Wives, and several Hundreds of Concubines. His *Revenues* are very considerable, for he's the Proprietor of all his Subjects Goods, and he lays very great Duties upon all imported *Commodities*. It is generally affirmed, that he has at least four Millions *Sterling per Annum*, wherewith he maintains an Army of forty Thousand Men; and he has had sometimes seventy Thousand Horse in his Army. He has no Fleet, but a great many Rovers, and the best part of their Booty falls into the King's Hands. The last Emperor took these Titles: *Mula Ismael*, Emperor of *Barbary* and *Morocco*, King of *Fez*, *Tafilet*, and *Sus*; Lord of *Gago*, *Darba* and *Guinea*, Cherif or Sherif (*i. e.* illustrious Prince) of *Cherifs*, Successor of *Mahomet*, Prince of the Believers, born of the Family of *Hachem* and *Hassan*. His Ambassador to the late Queen *Anne*, in a Speech he made to that Princess, said, That his Master was the greatest Emperor in the World, and esteemed all other Princes to be his Slaves and Tributaries.

Morocco. the Capital, lies in a large Plain, near the River *Tensif*, is large, said to contain about an Hundred Thousand Inhabitants, *City*.

and has a good high Wall. Its Mosques, Colleges, and about four Hundred Aqueducts, are all the Remains of its antient Splendor.

3. *Q.* Now let us return to our general Description of *Barbary*. What Account can you give of it ?

A. *Barbary* comprehends *Africa propria*, *Lybia* and *Mauritania*, lies betwixt Longitude West from *London* 15, and East 30, and Latitude 23, and 37. So that from Cape *Non* to the Frontiers of *Egypt*, 'tis above 2200 Miles, and from *Tesset* to the Straits of *Gibraltar*, 'tis six Hundred Miles.

The *Air* is hot, but temper'd by the Winds from the *Mediterranean*. The *Rains*, which is their Winter, begin about the middle of *October*, and continue to the middle of *March*.

They have seldom any Frost or Snow, except on the Mountains. Tho' the *Soil* be full of Mountains and Forests, yet it abounds with Corn, Fruit and Cattle. Their chief *Commodities* are Wax, Skins, Wool, Coral, Ostrich Feathers, Oil, Flax, Hemp, Cordevants, Dates, Almonds, Copper, Gold Ducats, Figs, Raisins, Olives, Honey, Horses, some Silks of their own Manufacture, and Marroquins : And the Trade of import consists in *Cochineal*, *Vermillion*, Cloth, Silks, Spices, Iron-Wire, Brass, Steel, Drugs, Looking-Glasses, Arms, Ammunition, Allum, Earthen-Ware, Toys, Cotton, Quick-silver, Opium, Tartar, Paper, red Woollen Caps, Fustians, Combs, Brocades, Damask, Velvet, Callicoes, Linnen-Cloth, and Guinea Cowries, which pass in this Country for Money.

In several Places along the *Mediterranean* Coasts are yet to be seen some Remains of *Rarities*. *Roman Magnificence*.

1. In the Royal Palace of *Morocco* is a stately Mosque, with a high Turret, on whose Top are four Apples of pure Gold, which altogether do weigh seven Hundred *Lib.* and in another Court of the said Palace is a prodigious High Tower, so contrived that the Emperor can go to the Top of it on Horse-back. 2. In the City of *Fez* is that stately Mosque called *Caruven*, half a Mile in compass; it has 30 huge Gates, and above nine Hundred Arches, with marble Columns, and a Lamp at each, and four Hundred Cisterns for the People to bathe in before they go to Prayers. 3. Some Miles from *Tangiers* there's a narrow Descent of many Fathoms deep, (resem-

(resembling that of a Coal-pit) which leads unto a large subterranean Apartment, from whence are Passages into several other Apartments, all of them done with Marble; and there's no doubt but that they were designed by the Antients for Repositories for their dead People, for there are as yet many *Urns* and *Statues* with Inscriptions in the *Punick* Language.

4. At *Constantine* there's a Way cut in the Rock, leading under Ground to the River *Suffegmar*; and near the Town is a hot Spring.

There are several Rivers in *Barbary*, but none navigable. They have also many Harbours and strong Towns. The Inhabitants are a mixture of several Nations, but the Chiefs are the *Moors*, so called from a *Phenician* Word signifying, *last* or *Western*. They are of a good Stature, strong, tawny, active of Body; some understand Philosophy and Mathematicks pretty well, and are dextrous with Bows, Arrows, and Lances within Land, and those on the Coast handle their Fire-Arms well enough. But for want of good Education, and because of their cholerick Temper, they are ignorant, cruel, fierce, deceitful, idle, and addicted to Theft, Piracy, and all sorts of Crimes. They are also very jealous of their Wives, tho' they have several and many Concubines. Dispersed throughout these Countries are *Arabians*, who (especially in *Barca*) exercise their ordinary Trade of robbing and molesting Travellers on the High-way.

In most of the Sea-ports the prevailing Language is *Arabesque*, or corrupt *Arabick*. The Inhabitants of *Morocco*, and some other Places, do yet retain their antient Language, or rather they speak a corrupt Dialect of the old *African*. The trading People especially, in their dealing with Strangers, use a certain *Jargon*, a Compound chiefly of *Spanish* and *Portuguese*, much like the *Lingua franca*.

Barbary is the most trading and populous Part of *Africa*. It was successively govern'd by the *Carthaginians*, *Romans*, *Vandals*, or *Goths*, *Saracens*, *Arabs*, *Moors* and *Turks*.

Most of the People are *Mahometans*, but those of *Morocco* differ from others in several considerable Points, particularly those maintained by the Followers of *Hamet*, the first of the Race of the Emperors of *Morocco* who at first was a Monk, but quitting his Retirement in 1514, began publickly to preach, That the

Doctrine of *Hali*, *Omar*, and other Interpreters of *Mahomet's* Law, was only human Tradition. He did also teach several other things, which have occasion'd such Animosit-
 ties betwixt the *Turks* and *Morocco's*, that a *Turkish* Slave
 with them, is no better used than a Christian. There are
 also several People about *Algiers*, who differ also from other
Mahometans in divers Particulars : Some of 'em maintain,
 That a Fast of seven or eight Months deserves eternal Hap-
 piness ; That Idiots are God's Elect ; that Sins against Na-
 ture are Vertues ; and that the *Marabouts*, or Priests, are
 Wizzards or Conjurers, and yet they account it honourable
 to be defiled by them. There are also a great many Hea-
 thens, many *Jews*, and some *Christians*.



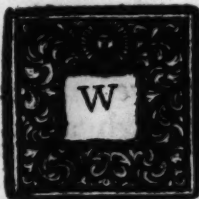
CHAP.



C H A P. XV.

Of *BILDULGERID*, and *ZAARA*.

I. Q.

H A T have you to say about *Bildulgerid* ?

A. Many will have it to be so called from some *Bildulge-Arabic* Words, signifying *rid's Name*. the *Country of Dates* ; but

others say we should spell *Beled al gerid*, the *Country of the Branches of Palm-Trees*, whose Leaves are wither'd and fallen by reason of the excessive Heat. It has part of *Barca* on the East, *Barbary* on the North, the Ocean on the West, and *Zaara* on the South. *Ta- Chief Town*
filet Latitude 29, and W. Longitude 10 Mi- *Tafilet*.
 nutes may be lookt upon as the chief Town.

It consists of about two Thousand Families, and is defended by a Castle. It is the Place from whence the Emperor of *Morocco's* are come. This Country is divided into nine Provinces, which you'll find thus from West to East.

PROVINCES.

Towns.

2. Tefset,	Ditto, Non, Buzadora.
2. Darba,	Ditto, or Tefuf, Tamegurul.
3. Tafilet,	Ditto.
4. Segelmefse,	Ditto, Fegigh, Cha faira.
5. Tegorarin,	Ditto, Tefebit.
6. Zeb	Teolacha, Mezzab.
7. Techort,	Ditto.
8. Bildulgerid, proper,	Fazzen, Gademes, Guargala.
9. Part of Barca.	Berdeoa, formerly Ammon.

N. B. Most of these Provinces change their Names as they change their Masters.

2. Q. What is the Situation ?

Situation. A. It lies betwixt West Longitude 15, and East Longitude 30, and Latitude 25 and 30. So that its Extent from West to East is two Thousand four Hundred Miles, and from South to North three Hundred Miles. The *Air* is very hot here, but abundantly wholesome. The *Soil* is for the most part very sandy and barren; but in some low Vallies, especially in *Segelmefse*, *Tegorarin*, and *Bildulgerid* proper, they have Corn and Dates in plenty. Their Commodities are Camels, Dates, Indigo, and Ostrich Feathers.

Soil. The River which runs from Mount *Atlas* through *Tecolacha*, has a Current very warm, and therefore called by *Europeans*, the Hot River.

Rarities. The River which runs from Mount *Atlas* through *Tecolacha*, has a Current very warm, and therefore called by *Europeans*, the Hot River.

2. Among the *Rarities* of this Country we may reckon the *Ostrich*, which is a Bird said to be as high as a Man on Horse-back : Its Wings being very short, serve it only to run swifter. They say that this Bird does not sit its Eggs, but only looks attentively on them to have them hatched, and when the Time of Hatching is near at hand, then it breaks four of its Eggs, which being rotten and full of Worms, serve for Food to the young ones. They eat Iron, but can't digest it, it serving only for *trituration*, or grinding the Food they take. The *Arabs*, who hunt 'em with Dogs, eat the Flesh, sell the Feathers, make *Portmantaus* of their Skins, use their Hearts in conjuring, their Fat as Medicine, and make Ear-rings with their Talons, or Hoofs.

They have some small Rivers, we may say the same of their Towns.

Rivers.

Most

Most of the Country is the *Numidia* of the Antients, and inhabited by the *Arabs*, who are tall, tawny, slender, and hire themselves to any Princes that will employ them. They are generally very cruel, ignorant, lecherous, and much given to Robbery. Most of them are pur-blind; for to prevent their Eyes from being hurt by the Sand tossed about by the Wind, they shut them. The Dates which they eat, make them lose their Teeth betimes. All that I could learn about the Language used by the Natives, is, that it is very rough; and the Country not populous, but a very poor one. They are subject to several little Princes, frequently at War with one another, and some of them are Tributary to the *Turks*, and others to the *Morocco's*; As for their Religion, we may say the same as of *Barbary's*, with this difference, that the *Pagan* prevails here.

3. Q. What do you call *Zaara*?

A. 'Tis an *Arabick* Word, signifying *Desart*, and so called because 'tis very barren, and thinly inhabited. It has *Nubia* on the East, *Bildulgerid* on the North, the Ocean on the West, and *Negroeland* on the South. This *Desart* is divided into seven others, thus situated from West to East.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. <i>Zanbaga</i> , or <i>Senega</i> , | Ditto, <i>Tegassa</i> , <i>Alhemara</i> ,
<i>Goadin</i> . |
| 2. <i>Zuenziga</i> , | Ditto, <i>Gogden</i> , <i>Ghir</i> . |
| 3. <i>Targa</i> , | Ditto, or <i>Zagbara</i> , <i>Hair</i> , or
<i>Benezzer</i> . |
| 4. <i>Lamta</i> , | Ditto, <i>Agades</i> . |
| 5. <i>Bordoa</i> , | Ditto. |
| 6. <i>Borno</i> , | Ditto, <i>Kaughai</i> . |
| 7. <i>Gaoga</i> , | Ditto. |

It lies betwixt Latitude 21, and 28, and has almost the same Extent as *Bildulgerid*; but these *Desarts* are insupportable, because of the Heat of the Sun, which reflects from the Sands. About *August* the Weather is so hot, that the People are forced to hide themselves in Dens, and are sometimes six or seven Days without drinking any Water. This Country is infested with *Scorpions*, which obliges them to wear Boots, to prevent their biting their Legs. They have several wild Beasts, and some Gold Dust.

The

Rarities.

The Desarts are so vast in this Country, that Travellers are frequently reduced to great Extremities, being liable either to be buried in the Sands, (if a Storm of Wind arise) or to perish with Thirst, if it chance not to Rain. To prevent the last of these (the first being unavoidable in case of Wind) they commonly kill one of their Camels, and drink the Water there is in its Stomach, those Creatures taking in so large a Quantity at one time, as sufficeth Nature for a Fort-night. 2. In the Desarts of *Aroan*, in the Road from *Darha* to *Gombut*, there is to be seen the Tomb of a rich *European* Merchant, who gave 10000 Ducats for a Cup of Water, and died soon after he drank it, as the *Carrier* did who sold it him. 3. North of *Caoga*, are some Remains of the antient *Cyrene*, the chief City of *Lybia Cyrenica*, and formerly one of the famous *Pentapoles*.

Rivers.

Through some Parts of this Country, the Rivers *Niger* and *Nubia*, or *Gbir* flow, make several Lakes, and overflow like the *Nile*. There are but some few Towns.

Inhabitants.

Most of the Inhabitants are *Arabs*, who are Shepherds, or Hunters, make War on their Neighbours the *Negroes*, and sell them as Slaves in the Kingdom of *Fez*; and on the other hand, the *Negroes* cut them to pieces when they have an Opportunity. They are so undaunted as to encounter a Lion or a Tyger. As for the rest, see what has been said concerning *Bildulgerid*.





C H A P. XVI.

Of NIGRITIA, or NEGROELAND.

Q.

H A T do you call *Negroeland* ?

A. A large Country in *Africa*, so called, either from the River *Niger*, which runs through it, or from the black Colour of its Inhabitants; or of its Soil,

which in some Places is scorched up by the Heat of the Sun. It has *Nubia* and *Abyssinia* on the East, *Zaara* on the North, the Ocean on the West, and *Guinea* on the South.

Nigritia's
Name.

Tombut, Latitude 15 and a half, Longitude W. 6; may be look'd upon as the Capital, it being the largest and best Town. Its King

Chief Town
Tombut.

is said to have always a Guard of three Thousand Horse, and a prodigious Number of Foot. The Inhabitants are reckon'd of a mild Temper, and are much pleased with Dancing.

Nigritia may be conveniently divided into *North* and *South Nigritia*, the River *Niger* and *Gambia* dividing it so from West to East.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Galata, or Geneta, | Ditto, <i>Angra, Arguin.</i> |
| 2. Genchoa, | Ditto, <i>Fourmalic, Grand Pal-</i>
<i>mite.</i> |
| 3. Tombut, | Ditto, <i>Tocroy, Beriffa, Mecza.</i> |
| 4. Agador, | Ditto, <i>Degbir, Catumba.</i> |
| 5. Cano, | Ditto, <i>Cassava, Germa.</i> |
| 6. Cassena, | Ditto. |
| 7. Gangara, | Ditto, <i>Marasa.</i> |
| 8. Several People lying be-
twixt <i>Senega</i> and <i>Gambia</i> ,
viz. | |

1. The most considerable are the *Jaloffes*, whose Prince is very potent. Their Country is about 20 Miles along the Sea-Coasts, and 300 far in the Land. 2. The *Seireres* have such another Country parallel to this, and their best Town is *Portugady*. 3. The *Barbecins* on the South of these. 4. There's another Nation, the Posterity of those *Portuguese*, who were the first Discoverers of these Countries: They are mixed with *Portuguese* Fugitives from *Cape Verd* and *Cachea*, on one of the Branches of *Gambia*. They are half *Jews* and *Papists*, but treacherous and malicious, having all the Vices of the *Portuguese*, and none of their Vertues. These Places are very populous, and the *French* have a good Trade here, and possess the *Isle Gorea*.

The Southern *Nigritia* contains the following Provinces from East to West:

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. <i>Zanfara</i> , | Ditto, <i>Reghebil.</i> |
| 2. <i>Bito</i> , | Ditto. |
| 3. <i>Zeczec</i> , | <i>Zeczac, Chanara.</i> |
| 4. <i>Guber</i> , | Ditto, <i>Masel, Tussa.</i> |
| 5. <i>Gago</i> , fruitful in Rice,
Millet, and Cattle. | Ditto, <i>Tomby, Bongani</i> , a
People. |
| 6. <i>Mandinga</i> , or <i>Songo</i> , where
are the <i>Souso's</i> . | <i>Mandinga</i> , a good large Town,
<i>Caceres, Boge</i> , Nations. |
| 7. <i>Cantory</i> , | Ditto. |
| 8. <i>Melly</i> , | Ditto. |

With the People *Casangas* and *Bisagos*, near *San Domingo*.

Nigritia lies South of the *Zaara*, and has about the same length, but from South to North 'tis about six Hundred Miles broad, between the 10th and 23d Degrees of Latitude. The Air is very warm here, and so very wholesome, that sick People soon

soon recover when brought here. The *Soil* is barren, but along the *Niger* 'tis fruitful in Rice, Cotton, and Cattel. Their Commerce is in Skins, Ivory, Gums, Ambergrease, Cotton, Gold-Dust, Red-Wood, Civet, Senna, but especially in selling Slaves, whom they take from their Neighbours; and when they have none such, they sell their own Wives and Children. The *Spaniards*, and other *Europeans*, transport great Numbers from hence, to work in their Mines, &c. in *America*.

Near *Sanieng* in the Country of the *Faloffes*, is a Well ten Fathom deep, whose Waters are so very sweet, as to differ but very little in Taste *Rarities*. from ordinary Sugar. 2. In the Province of *Gago*, their sandy Desert is of such a Nature, that human Bodies buried in the same, don't corrupt, but grow hard like *Egyptian Mummies*. They have also some *Palm Liquor*.

Their chief Rivers are the *Niger* and *Rio san Joan*; and there are a great many Towns *Rivers*, &c. along those Rivers.

The *Negroes* are dull, ignorant, brutish, much addicted to beastly Pleasures, and very lazy, whence the Proverb, That if you would have a Negro to *Inhabitants*. serve you well, you must give him enough to eat, enough to work, and beat him often. However, 'tis observed, that the People S. on the *Niger* are very black, strong, well-shaped, and the Country fertile, whereas on the North, the People are only tawny, slender and more cunning, but the Soil barren. They have several sorts of Languages, the Principal of which are the *Songa's*, *Guber's*, *Gualata's*, and *Guangara's*. The *Faloffes* speak the *Bolm* and *Tinna*, the first being hard to pronounce, and the other reckon'd very sweet and easy. Those who live in Towns, are a mixture of *Mahometans* and *Pagans*, but those in the Deserts, seem scarce to have any Religion or Law at all. They have many Kings, who are absolute in their own Territories; but all, or most of them, Tributary to the King of *Tombut*, who is reckon'd the most powerful of them all. Next after him are the Kings of *Madingo*, *Gago*, and *Cano*.



CHAP. XVII.

Of GUINEA.

1. Q.



HY do you call *Guinea* by that Name?
A. Because of the *Dryness* of the Soil,
 and excessive Heat of the Country, the
 Name signifying *Hot* and *Dry*. It has
Nigritia on the North, *Congo* and *Abyssi-*
Guinea's *nia* on the East, and the Ocean on the South
Ch. Town and West. The Castle of *St. George del Mina*
S. George may be consider'd as the chief Town, being the
del Mina. finest and most considerable on the Coast, and
 has a Village of the same Name adjoining to
 it. It is very strong, and has good Batteries of Canon with-
 in, and on the Outworks. It was built by the *Portuguese*
 in 1482, and called by the Name of *Las Minas*, because of
 the Gold Trade, which they found in its Neighbourhood.
 It lies Latitude 5, Longitude East 10 Minutes. The
Dutch took it in 1637. *Guinea* is divided into three great
 Parts.

- I. *Western*, or *Malaguette*, or *Grain-Coast*.
- II. *Middle*, or *Guinea* proper.
- III. *Eastern*, or the Kingdom of *Benin*.

I. The

I. The *Western* contains,

1. The Coast of *Sierra Lione* Tomba, Buga, and Petty Diep. West.
2. *Malaguet*, or Grain- Gorea, the great and small Coast. Sestro, Sangreen, Boffoe,

II. The *Middle* contains,

1. The *Ivory Coast* West- Botteua, Sino, Drouin, Jaque wards. Lahoe.
2. The *Gold Coast*, in the Las Minas, Conradsburg, Nas- middle, saw, Cormantyn, Crevecœur, Latitude 6, belong to the Dutch. Sherboro, Cape Corfe, Anamabo, Queen Ann's Fort to the English; Christiansburg to the Danes; Tacrama, and Fredericksburg to the Prussians, sold to the Dutch, but seized by the French.
3. The *Slave Coast* Eastward contain the Kingdoms of Great Ardra, Fida, Popo, &c.

III. *Benin*, or Eastern Guinea, Benin, Ouveiro, Adra.

Some divide *Guinea* proper into several Provinces, each of them having their own Kings.

1. *Axim*, Ditto, and St. Antony to the Dutch; Fredericksburg, and Dorothea to the Prussians.
2. *Hante*, Infuma to the English, Batenstein, Orange, and St. Sebastian near Chama to the Dutch.
3. *Fabi* belongs to its own Prince.
4. *Adi*, govern'd by 6 Chiefs, whose Cruelty and Avarice are the Rules of their Government.
5. *Commami*, Vredenburg, and las Minas to the Dutch.
6. *Fetu*,

- | | |
|----------------------|--|
| 6. <i>Fetu,</i> | <i>Conradsburg</i> to the Dutch,
<i>Castel Cabo</i> , or <i>Carolusburg</i>
to the English. |
| 7. <i>Saboe,</i> | <i>Fort Nassau</i> to the Dutch. |
| 8. <i>Fanjin,</i> | <i>Anamabou</i> to the English,
<i>Amsterdam</i> to the Dutch. |
| 9. <i>Acroun,</i> | <i>Fort Patience</i> to the Dutch. |
| 10. <i>Agonna,</i> | <i>Simpas</i> to the English. |
| 11. <i>Aquamboe,</i> | <i>Ditto</i> , to the English, <i>Creve-</i>
<i>coeur</i> to the Dutch. <i>Chri-</i>
<i>stiansburg</i> to the Danes. |

Malaguete, so called from the long Pepper *Malaguete*. with which it abounds, reaches from Cape *Palmas* on the South-East, to *Rio Sangwin* 130 Miles; but if to Cape *Sierra Liona* to the North-West 450 Miles. Little of it is known but the Coast. The French discover'd it in 1366. The Soil is low, fat, and water'd with Rivers, and Marshes, wherefore the Air is unwholesome. The Inhabitants go bare-headed, and like Iron-work. They have several sorts of Fruits, and Fowls, with Palm-tree wine.

Guinea properly so called is divided into two great Parts, viz. The *Western*, *Ivory*, or *Teeth* *Guinea* *pro-* Coast, so called from the great Trade which *per.* is made here of *Elephant's Teeth*. 'Tis inhabited by the *Adaous*, distinguished by the Name of *good* and *bad* People. 2. The *Eastern*, or *Gold-Dust*, so called either because of its Gold Mines, or Gold-Dust which is found here. It is larger, richer, and more populous than the other. At *Fetu*, the Residence of a Negroe King, there's a good Trade of Slaves.

The King of *Benin* is reckon'd the most powerful Prince of *Guinea*, and has several neighbouring Kings for Vassals. The Natives are more polite than the other Negroes. They are neither Thieves nor Drunkards, but very lecherous. They go naked from the Girdle upwards. They own a God, who has created the Heaven and Earth, and is a good Being; therefore they give him no Worship. They have many Idols and Conjurors, and have a great respect for Snakes. Towards the North-East there's a wicked People named *Calbengo*, who are very treacherous, and cruel to their Neighbours. *Benin*, the Capital, lies Latitude 8, Longitude 9, and is reckon'd one of the most considerable Towns of *Africa*,
ca,

ca, tho' 'tis not now so large, or populous, as it was formerly, because some of the Inhabitants are retired to other Places.

2. *Q.* Which is the Situation, &c. of *Guinea*?

A. It lies betwixt Longitude West 15, and East 15, and Latitude 4, and 12. So that from East to West it is about 1600 Miles, and from South to North about 500. The Air is extremely hot, and the frequent Rains and stinking Mists, make it very unhealthful, especially to Strangers. That Unwholesomeness seems also chiefly owing to the great Heat of the Day, and Coolness of the Night, which sudden Change occasions great Alterations in the Body. Besides that, the Negroes lay their Fish for five or six Days to putrify before they eat it; and what is further obnoxious, they ease their Bodies round their Houses, &c. The Soil is watered with several small Rivers, which make it very fruitful; so that in some Places they have two Harvests in a Year. The Product is Rice, Barley, long Pepper, and Sugar. Here are also Mines of Gold. The principal things transported from hence are Gold-Dust, Amber-grease, Skins, Slaves, Ivory, Red-wood, *Guinea* Pepper, and Wax, in exchange for Linnen and Woolen Cloth, Arms, Glass-work, and Hard-ware.

In several Parts of *Guinea* there grows a Tree called *Inig-nolo*, which, when tapp'd, yields an excellent Liquor, which is more pleasant, strong, and nourishing for the Natives, than the choicest of Wines.

2. In some of the inland Parts is sometimes seen that remarkable Creature, termed *Savage* by the *Portuguese*, and *Quoja Marrow* by the Natives. In *Angola* they call it *Ourang outang*. It very much resembles Man, so that many of the Negroes take them for real Men, and think that by their long stay in Woods, they are become *Demi-Brutes*; or they look upon them as the spurious Issue of unnatural Commixtures. Some of our modern Travellers would fain persuade us, that such Creatures are the Offspring, either of the antient *Satyrs* or *Pygmies*, so famous among the Poets, and so often mention'd by *Pliny*, who spoke much of these, and other things by *Hear-say*. But others, with a greater appearance of Truth, reckon them to be the same with the Apes of *Borneo*.

3. They have several sorts of Monkeys, but those called *Baris* are reckon'd the strongest and most cunning: When

taken young, and bred up, they are made use of as Servants, to bring in Water, to turn the Spit, and wait at Table.

They have several small Rivers, a great many Towns, but none of 'em strong, except those which belong to Europeans.

The Natives are of the blackest sort, strong, *Inhabitants.* dextrous, and witty ; most of them go stark naked, and eat raw Flesh with the Guts ; are proud, cheating, revengeful, lazy, great Thieves, and very nasty. Their Women are likewise extream nasty and lascivious, and must Till the Ground, &c. In some Places they have a remarkable Custom, *viz.* That every Person is obliged to betake himself to the same Employment which his Fore-fathers follow'd : Such is also the Custom of the *Guebres* in *Persia*. To kill a considerable Number of Slaves at the Funeral of great Persons, was a Custom almost universally practis'd in these Countries, but 'tis now much worn out, either because they sell them, or because they know it to be useless. Those of *Bida*, *Ardra*, and *Benin*, are more civil, but most of them are very jealous of their Wives.

Their chief Language is that called *Sungais*, *Language.* spoke also in *Tombut* and *Melli*. On the *Gold Coast* they have several, but the principal is that of the *Acanistes*, which is current all over *Guinea*, except in *Antin*, *Ancara*, *Ninco*, and *Singo*, the trading People understand the *Portuguese*.

Guinea is not so large as *Nigritia*, but 'tis more fertile, rich and populous, because most of it is situated along the Sea-coasts. 'Tis govern'd by several particular States, some have Kings who are absolute, and others live in a sort of Republick, govern'd by chosen Men, called *Caboceroes*.

They are Pagans, believe the *Metempsychose*, *Religion.* and offer a yearly Sacrifice to the Sea, reckoning to appease thereby the Waves, and procure calm Weather. By an antient Tradition they circumcise all their young Ones, Male and Female. They believe that Man was made by *Anansi*, i. e. a great Spider, and think that God offer'd two sorts of Gifts, *viz.* Gold, which the *Black* chose, and the Knowledge of Arts and Sciences, which was left to the *White*. They have their *Oath-Draught* much

much the same as the *Bitter Water* spoke of in the Old Testament.

3. Q What do you call *Congo*?

A. A vast Country, called by some *Lower Guinea*, which has part of *Negroeland* on the North, *Ethiopia* on the East *Cafraria* on the South, and the Ocean and *Guinea* on the West. *St. Salvador*, Latitude 6, Longitude 19, contains an Hundred Thousand People, is the Residence of the King of *Pemba*, and the *Portuguese* have a Factory here. *Loando S Paolo*, Latitude 12. Longitude 15. has a good Harbour, and is defended by a Castle, where the *Portuguese* Governor resides. 'Tis also the See of a Bishop. But the King of *Angola* resides usually at *Mapongo* on the River *Coanza*. *Congo* may be divided into two great Parts, viz. one on the North of the Equinoctial Line, and the other on the South. The Northern contains several Kingdoms.

1. *Medra*,
2. *Biafara*,
3. *Capons*,
4. *Catombo*,
5. *Gabon*.

Chief Towns, with their Lat. and Long. E. of London.

Ditto, 11. 24. *Tebeldora*.
Ditto 8. 15. on the R. *Camarons*, *Ambosins*, *Camarones* People.

Barca 4. 14.
Corisco on the *Angex* 2. 14.
Maceira near the Line. *Mosonles*, *Amboes* People.

As these Parts are much in the Inlands, they are but little known.

The Southern *Congo* contains several Provinces.

Chief Towns.

1. *Loango*,
2. *Cacongo*,
3. *Congo proper*.

Loangiri, *Loango longo*, *Cy-longo*, and *Piri*.

Ruchameda.

Sonbo on the *Zaire*, *Palmarino*, *Malemba*.

Ditto, *Motolo*, *Marsoula*.

San Salvador, *Pemba*, *Bomby*.

Ditto, *Cangon*, *Agessymba*.

Sundo, *Betiqua*, *Iri*.

Ditto, *Cundy*, *Angosa*.

4. *Dongo*,

4. *Dongo*, or *Angola*,

Lounda St. Paolo, Engaza, or Dongo, Maitagan, Mochima, Benguela, Mapongo, the King's Residence.

5. *Mataca*, or *Anzico*, on the East of *Loango*, is not known. Some of these People are Cannibals, and eat one another, without distinction of Sex or Kindred; and others are called *Bakke Bakke*, and said to be Dwarfs.

Congo lies betwixt South Latitude 15. and North Latitude 14. Longitude 10, and 25. So that its greatest Extent along the Coasts is about 1100 Miles, and from North-East to South-West, 1700. The *Air* is extremely hot, and would be intolerable, were it not qualified by frequent Showers of Rain, and violent Winds, which frequently blow from the Western Ocean. The *Soil* is very fertile, because of the several Rivers which overflow the Country in the rainy Season. It abounds with Rice, Millet, Long-Pepper, and Sugar. Lemons, Citrons, Cassia and Tamarinds, are very good here. Along the River *Lelunda* there are several *Cedars*, and other odoriferous Trees. Their chief Commodities are Rice, Millet, Cattle, Ivory, Cassia, Slaves, &c.

In the Kingdom of *Angola* is found the *Rarities*. *Quoja Marrow*, of which mention has been made in *Guinea*.

2. Their Serpent called *Minia* is reported to be so prodigiously large, as to swallow up a young Deer at one Morsel.

3. In several Lakes of *Angola* are frequently seen some Water-Monsters, called *Sirenes* by the *Europeans*, because they are much like a Woman, and when taken, they fetch heavy Sighs, and cry with a dolorous Tone, much like the mournful Voice of a Woman.

4. On the South Shore of the River *Coanza*, are considerable Mines of Rock-Salt.

5. The Teeth of their Wild-Boar *Engalo* are much valued, because being pulverized and mixed with Broth, they are a good Remedy against Agues.

6. They have on their Trees a little pretty Creature, called *Entiengli*, which never goes down on the Ground, and is always accompanied by several small black Creatures, called *Embis*, which are its Guards. Its Skin is spotted, and so much esteemed, that none dare wear it, except by their King's Leave. This Country is water'd by several Rivers, the

the chief of which are the *Zaire*, or *Coango*, *Coanza*, and *Cunene*. They have many Towns and Villages.

The Inhabitants are very Black, but not so ugly as other Negroes. They are proud and cruel to their Neighbours, but civil and courteous to Strangers. They are quick of Apprehension, but great Cowards. In some Places they are said to be Canibals. The Inhabitants of *Congo* and *Angola* have each of them a particular Language. Most of them are Idolaters, and at *Malemba* they set apart every fifth Day for publick Worship, at which Time one of an approved Integrity makes a publick Discourse, which tends to deter them from Murder, Stealth, Impurity, Witchcraft, &c. They use Circumcision, admitting their Children into their Religion by that Ceremony, which is performed by one of themselves set apart for that Office. Some are Christians.

Their Kings are absolute; the most considerable of them are, 1. The King of *Congo*, whose Titles are, *Mani Congo*, by the Grace of God, King of *Congo*, *Angola*, *Macumba*, *Ocanga*, *Cumba*, *Lulla*, and *Zouza*; Lord of the Dutchies of *Batta*, *Sunda*, *Bamba*, *Amboilla*, with the Dependencies of the Counties of *Songo*, *Ango*, *Cacongo*, and the Monarchy of the *Ambondes*; Ruler of the great River *Zaire*. It was formerly customary at the King's death, that twelve young Maids should be bury'd along with him. 2. The King of *Lovango*. His Brothers and not his Children, succeed to him. They live in the nearest Towns to the Capital, each according as he's near, or remote Successor. 3. The King of *Angola* lives usually at *Mapongo*, on the River *Coanza*.





C H A P. XVIII.

O F C A F R A R I A.

*Cafraria's
Name.*

1. Q.



HY do you give that
Name to this Coast?

A. It is so called from
an *Arabick* Word deno-
ting, those who serve
more Gods than one,
or who live without

Laws; most of the Natives being such. This Coast is like
a Semi-circle, or rather an U. It has the Kingdom of *Ma-
tanian*, *Chieva*, *Abouta*, *Monomotapa*, the Coast of *Zan-
guebar* on the North, the Ocean on the East, South and
West.

The most noted Place is the Cape of *Good
Hope*, S. Latitude 34, Long. 21. and 30 m. or
rather, according to *Philosophical Transactions*,
Cape of Good Hope. Longitude East from *London*, about 15--30 m.
'Twas so called, because when the *Portuguese*
doubled it in 1498, they hoped soon to arrive at the *East-
Indies*. 'Twas formerly called the *Cape of Tempests*, which
are very frequent in its Neighbourhood.

The

The *Dutch* Fort is in Latitude 34, and was founded in 1651, when they bought from a petty King, a League round, for which they paid in Brandy and Tobacco. In 1680 they made it a regular Fortrefs of hewn Stone, with five Bastions, on which they planted above sixty Guns. Within Musket shot there is a Village of about two Hundred Houses, handsomely built after the *Dutch* way. Here's a fine Garden belonging to the Governor, with all the curious Trees and Plants in the four Parts of the World. A great many Ships, most of 'em *Dutch*, put in here annually for Refreshments, where they have good Water, Mutton, Fowls and Wine. The *Dutch* have extended their Plantation above seventy Miles into the Country, and encourage Planters, who live in Ease and Plenty, especially abundance of *French* Refugees. The Governor lives in great Splendor. The Winds blowing here are *Monsoons*; for between *March* and *September* (which is their Winter, or rainy Season) the Wind blows for the most part between the North and the West, but during the other half Year, the Wind blows generally between South and East, with very fair Weather.

South-East from the Cape of *Good Hope*, about thirty Miles, there are two other Capes, one called *Cape False*, because 'tis often mistaken for the Cape of *Good Hope*; and the other the Cape of *Needles*, because the Compass has very little Variation here.

This Country is commonly divided into, 1. *Western*, reaching from Cape *Negro* to Cape *das Voltas*, i. e. from South Latitude 15. to South Latitude 30. 'Tis but little known. The inland Kingdoms of *Chicova* and *Abouta*, which some place here, are said to have rich Silver and Gold Mines. The *Southern* reaches from Cape *das Voltas* to the River *St. Esprit*, This Coast is better known than it was before the frequent Voyages which the *Dutch* have made thro' it. 3. The *Eastern* Coast reaches from about the River *St. Esprit* about Latitude 26, to the River *Zambeze*, about Latitude 20. It is more fertile than the two others; and some say, that on the Mountains near *Manica*, they have the best Gold in the World. Here are the Provinces of *Queronda*, *Ximba*, *Sonha*, and *Sofala*, which belongs to the *Portuguese*. The Natives are also more civilized here than in the other Coasts, and some of them are subject to the King of *Monomotapa*. The *Portuguese* have a great Trade here of Gold and Ivory.

2. Q. Which is the Situation of *Cafraria* ?
 Situation. A. It lies betwixt Latitude 25 and 35, and

from 35 to 20. So that it extends two Thousand eight Hundred Miles South-East, and North-West, but the Breadth from East to West, is not so considerable, for there are few *Cafras* which inhabit Countries distant above three Hundred Miles from the Sea-shore. The *Air* is in most Places temperate, and the *Soil* is good, and produces good Corn, and White-wines, especially near the Cape of *Good Hope*. They have store of Oxen, Sheep, wild Boars, Stags, Elks, Buffalo's, Lions, Tygers, Rhinocerosses, and Elephants. The Goods imported here are Iron, Copper, Latten, Hatchets, Knives, and Coral; besides Brandy and Tobacco, especially among the *Hottentots*.

They have a Root called *Dacha*, which infused in Water inebriates like Wine.
 Rarities.

2. In some Parts they catch Lyons, and tame them so well, that they carry them every where like Dogs, and in a Fight they let them loose against their Enemies.

Their chief Rivers are *Cumissa*, or *los Infantes*, *Spiritu Santo*, *Guama* and *Zambeze*. They have but few Towns; most of the People live in Woods, Tents, or Mountains.

The Natives are distinguished into several *Inhabitants*. Nations; the chief of 'em near the Cape of

Good Hope are the *Cochequas*, or *Soldanbars*, *Gorachouquas*, *Goringhaiquas*, *Cariguriquas*, and *Hasaas*, all of them commonly called *Hottentots*, from the frequent repetition of that and such like Words; but the *Cbainouquas*, *Cabonas*, *Sonquas*, *Hamaquas*, *Heusaquas*, *Brigoudis*, and *Hancunquas*, are far from the Cape. Most of them are very tawny, ill-shaped, have flat Noses, thick Lips, and frightful Looks, and are very ignorant, savage, lazy, and nasty. In some Places they are Cannibals. They have a very odd Custom, viz. Whenever the Father deceaseth, all his Children cut off their little Fingers, and bury it with him: Wherefore in order to put off the Performance of that painful Custom, they are very tender of their Parent's Health, and take all imaginable Care to prolong his Life, which was probably the original Cause of so strange a Practice. But

the *Hottentots* are miserable Savages, and not distinguishable from Beasts, but by their Form and Speech. They commonly besmear their Bodies with Grease, or some worse stinking Stuff, which occasions their ill Smell; and by exposing their Bodies to a

warm

warm Sun, they make their Skin of a tawny Colour: They wear the Skins of Sheep like Mantles, live chiefly on Roots, Cockles, or what dead Fish they find on the Shore, and eat the Entrails of Animals without cleaning them. Those of better Fashion wear Rows of Thongs about their Necks, which when dry, with the inside out, look so like Sheeps-Guts, that most Strangers mistake 'em for such; yet they like so well this nasty Way of living, that two of 'em having been for several Years in *Holland*, and fed and clothed like *Europeans*, were no sooner carried back to their Country, but they fled to their first nasty Way of living. Some Travellers talk of a certain inland Cannibal People called *Cabonas*, who make frequent Incurfions into the neighbouring Countries, and spare none of those they catch, not even the swinish *Hottentots* themselves, who (it would seem) should make but a very unsavoury Repast. Their Language seems to be but a confused inarticulate Noise or Bellowing.

These Countries are not populous, because the People destroy one another. Most part of *Government*. them know little or nothing of Government, yet they have their Captains or Elders. Some say that they live without Religion, yet they acknowledge a supream Being, which they call *Hamma*, but they do not worship him, except when they have fine Weather. They dance and sing at the New and Full-Moon. The Ceremony of Marriage is performed among the *Hottentots*, by the eldest Person in the Company, sprinkling the Persons to be married with his Urine, upon which, and cutting out one of the Man's Testicles, the Business is over. When a Woman bears Twins, she exposes one to death by Hunger or Cold, lest their Nation should grow too numerous.





C H A P. XIX.

*Of the Coasts of ZANGUEBAR,
AJAN, and ABEX.*

Barbary's 1. Q.
Name.



HY do they call this Coast
Zanguebar?

A. From an Arabick Word
which signifieth, *The Land of
Black People.* It has *Ajan*

on the North, the Ocean on the East, *Cafraria* on the South,
and *Monoemugi*, and part of *Ethiopia* on the
Ch. Town, West. *Mozambique*, Latitude 15, Longitude
Mozam- 37, lies in a barren and unhealthful Island, at
bique. the Mouth of the River: However, the Town

is populous, because of the Trade it has with
the *Portuguese*, to whom it belongs. 'Tis defended by a
good Fortrefs, and has a commodious Harbour, where the
Portuguese Ships put in and refresh, as they come from, and
go to the *Indies.* *Mombaza* lies also in an Island
Mombaza. Latitude 4, Longitude 38. 'Tis large, well-built,
has a strong Fortrefs, and a commodious Har-
bour, and well-frequented. Their King turned Christian in
1510, after the *Portuguese* had took his Capital; but in
1631 he drove all the *Portuguese* out of this Town,
put most of 'em to death, because of their Cruelties, and
he turned Mahometan.

Zanguebar,

Zanguebar is divided into the Southern Coast of *Mozambique*, and the Northern Coast of *Melinda*, each containing several Kingdoms ; and the most considerable are,

		Chief Towns, with their Latitude and Longitude.
Southern contains,	<i>Mongala,</i>	Ditto, on the <i>Moma</i> , 17 and a half, and 32. <i>Quiloama</i> .
	<i>Mozambique,</i>	Ditto, <i>Serincapa, Angoche</i> .
	<i>Quiloa,</i>	Ditto, 9 and 36. It pays Tribute to the Port.
Northern contains,	<i>Mombaza,</i>	Ditto.
	<i>Melinda,</i>	Ditto, 2 and a half, and 38 and a half.
	<i>Chelicia,</i>	<i>Barraboa, Lamon, Pata, Sian</i> near the Line. They have each their <i>Mahometan</i> Pr.

Zanguebar lies betwixt South Latitude 19, and the Equator ; so that it is about twelve Hundred Miles from South to North ; but from East to West 'tis about three Hundred Miles. The *Air* is very hot here, and unhealthful, because the Country is full of Marshes ; and it is barren in many Places ; but in others, as in *Quiloa* and *Mombaza*, there's store of Rice, Millet, Citrons and Oranges. Their chief Riches consist in Ambergrease, Gold and Ivory.

The Natives are Black, but of a more tractable Temper than their Neighbours. They are much addicted to South-saying. They have several Languages, but the *Arabic* and *Portuguese* are understood by the trading Part. This Country is govern'd by several petty Kings, and most of the Places on the Sea-Coasts, are Tributary to the *Portuguese*. Most of the People are *Mahometans*, or *Pagans*, and some few *Christians*.

The Coast of *Ajan* lies North from the Line as far as the Mouth of the *Red Sea*, i. e. to the 12th Degree of North Latitude ; so that 'tis about seven Hundred and forty Miles from South to North. *Brava*, Latitude 1. Longitude 40, is a handsome, strong, and populous Town. Its Government is *Aristocratical*, under the Protection of the *Portuguese*. This Country contains from South to North,

1. *Brava*,
2. *Magadoxo*,
3. *Adea*,
4. *Adel*.

Ditto,
Ditto, *Bandelvelho*.
Ditto.

Aucagazela, the Residence of
the King of *Daoro Zeila*.
Guadafu Cape.

The *Air* is here, and in *Abex*, very hot, and the *Soil*, except on the North, is very good. They have Gold, Ivory, Wax, Ambergrease, and good Horses. Most of the People are White, and either *Mahometans*, or wandering Savages. The *Arabick*, with variation of Dialect, prevails here and in *Abex*. They have several Princes, some of them Tributary to the *Turks*, and others to the *Abyssines*.

The Coast of *Abex* is in the *Troglotis* of the Antients, and was formerly part of upper

Ethiopia. It has the *Red Sea* on the East, *Ajan* on the South, *Abyssinia* and *Nubia* on the West, and *Egypt* on the North. *Suaquem*, Latitude 20, Longitude 38, is a strong Town. The *Turks* keep a strong Garrison here, that they may be Masters of the *Red Sea*, and of the Passage from *Egypt* to *Zyde*, and then to *Mecca*. *Abex* is divided into two Parts, viz. The upper Part of *Beixa*, or *Beglierbeg* of *Habeleth*, where are *Suaquem* and *Ercoco*; and the lower Coast of *Abex*, or Kingdom of *Dancali*, where are *Degileldara*, and *Degibelcora*.

It lies betwixt Latitude 13, and 21, and is about four Hundred Miles from South to North, but is very narrow from East to West. The *Air* is hot and unhealthful, and the *Soil* very sandy and barren. Most of the People are *Mahometans*. The upper Part belong to the *Turks*, and the rest to the *Moors*.

2. Q. From whence comes the Name of *Nubia*?

A. Some think it comes from its antient Inhabitants the *Nubi*; and according to others, the *Nobadæ*, or rather *Nuba*, or *Nobæ*; or from *Nubia*, once the Capital of this Country. It has the *Red Sea*, and part of *Abex*

Nubia. on the East, *Egypt* on the North, *Zaara* and *Nigritia* on the West, and *Ethiopia* on the South.

As this Country is little known, we shall content ourselves with saying, That *Nubia*, Lat. 19, Long. 32, and *Dancala* on the *Nile*, are the chief Towns. This Country lies betwixt the 15th and 23d Degrees of North Latitude, and is about 5 Hundred Miles S. to N. and something more from

from East to West. The *Air* is very hot, but wholesome, and the *Soil* so very dry, and incumbred with so many Mountains of Sand, that it produces little, except on the Rivers *Nile*, *Nubia*, and *Tacaze*, where 'tis said to be very fertile. They have store of Elephants, wild Beasts, and Horses, and some Gold Mines. The Commodities brought from hence are Gold, Musk, Ivory, Sandalwood, and Sugar. Their chief Traffick is with *Cairo* in *Egypt*.

Most remarkable is that Poison here to be found, which operates very quick, and one Grain of it will kill ten Men in fifteen Minutes. It is sold for *Rarities*. an Hundred Ducats *per* Ounce, and never to Strangers, unless they take an Oath never to use it in that Country.

2. They have some fine Ruins of antient Christian Churches.

3. This Country is also remarkable for being the Birth-place of the famous *Nubian* Geographer, who lived in the XIIth Century.

The *Nubians* are very black, strong, courageous, laborious, cunning, civil, and said to be very rich because of their Traffick. They have a particular Language of their own, which has some resemblance to the *Arabic*, and *Chaldean*, and some affinity with the antient *Egyptian*. They have their King, who is said to be very powerful, and to have conquer'd *Sennar* from the Emperor of *Abyssinia*: He's continually at War, either with the *Turks*, or with the *Abyssines*. One of the *Nubian* Kings, called *Cyriacus*, being informed, that the Christians were oppressed in *Egypt*, raised an Hundred Thousand Horse for their Relief. The *Nubians* were once Christians, but the Ministry failing, they, for want of Pastors, did soon fall off from Christianity, and in process of time, became either Mahometans, or Idolaters. Some say that they are now a sort of Christians, like the *Abyssines*, and others pretend that their Religion is a mixture of *Judaism* and *Mahometanism*.

3, Q. What do they call *Ethiopia*?

A. Under this Name are comprehended most of the inland Countries in *Africa*, especially *Ethiopia*. those which are within the *Torrid Zone*. 'Tis supposed to be so called from a *Greek* Word, signifying, *burning of the Face*, because most of the People are tawny, and Sun-burnt. It contains several Nations, and large Kingdoms, the chief of which are *Abyssinia*, *Mujacc*, *Zen-*
dere,

dere, Alaba, Gingiro, and Macaco; but as we know nothing of these five last, except their bare Names, we shall speak of the first only. It is to be observed here, that all those People, that were Black, were antiently called *Ethiopians*.

Abyssinia, the most considerable and best known Part of *Ethiopia*, is so called either from the River *Abas*, or from the Coast of *Abex*, once a Part of this Country, or rather from its Inhabitants, once residing in *Arabia*, and called by the *Arabs*, *Abassi*, i. e. *scattered People*. However the Natives call themselves *Ethiopians*. *Abyssinia* has *Nubia* on the North, the Red-Sea on the East, the Coast of *Ajan*, and the Kingdoms of *Alaba* and *Zingiro* on the South, and the Kingdoms of *Zendra*, *Nigritia*, and *Mujaco* on the West.

As the King of the *Abyssines* keeps his Court under Tents, in time of Peace as well as War, there's no capital Town; and some say, that there are no Towns in this Country, but 'tis so full of Villages, that it looks like one continued Town. The present Emperor lives at *Gontar*, and his Camp takes up a vast Tract of Ground, because the *Suttlers*, and others, who attend, are more numerous than the Soldiers. 'Tis so well order'd, that it looks like a City, with regular Streets, Places, &c. The King's Tents, or Palace, lie in the middle, and when he marches, every Body, except *Mechanicks* and *Labourers*, must follow.

The famous Mr. *Ludelf*, in his Description of *Abyssinia*, says, That it is divided into thirty Kingdoms, or large Provinces; to which may be added, that of *Dancala*, whose King is a Mahometan. All these Kingdoms, some few excepted, are but small, and do not belong to the King of *Abssinia*; for the *Galles* do possess several of them; *Dancala* has its own King, and *Tigra* is now an Aristocratical Government: But these following belong to the *Abyssines*.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. <i>Ambara,</i> | <i>Ditto, Lalibela.</i> |
| 2. <i>Egamedri,</i> | <i>Amadboro, Alata on the Nile.</i> |
| | <i>Maket on the Takase.</i> |
| 3. <i>Dambea,</i> | <i>Amba Marjan, Dancas, Jenda.</i> |
| 4. <i>Shoa, or Sewa,</i> | <i>Debra, Libanos, Wenthit.</i> |
| 5. <i>Gojam,</i> | <i>Leda negus, Debra semona, Selalo.</i> |
| 6. <i>Bugna.</i> | <i>Egala, Arguan.</i> |
| 7. <i>Samen,</i> | <i>Waldeba, Toraf.</i> |
| 8. <i>Gonga, and</i> | |
| 9. <i>Walaka,</i> which are but thinly inhabited. | |

Ambara lies almost in the middle of *Ethiopia*, on the South, Near the Lake *Haik*, *Ambara*. there are two very high Mountains, and on the Top of them, 2 Fortresses, called *Cesben* and *Anbareb*, (but that where the present King was kept is called *Vek-na*) where the Kings Sons, and nearest Relations, are kept till he dies, that they may not disturb the Government. The Town *Amba Marjan* in *Dambea*, (but rather another called *Gontar*) may be esteemed *Dambea* as the Capital of *Abyssinia*, because the King's Camp is often pitched thereabouts. They say that the *Nile* has its Source in *Gojam*, and makes a Peninsula of that Country. The other King-*Gojam*. doms have but some Villages, are mountainous, and thinly inhabited. The *Gulles*, *Gallanes*, *Galles*. or *Giaks*, are come from South *Ethiopia* near *Monomotapa*; and from 1537, they have conquered several Provinces from the *Abyssines*. They are courageous, and live upon Milk and raw Meat. Most of them are Idolaters, and some few Christians like the *Abyssines*. The first Provinces, which they have conquer'd from the *Abyssines*, are, *Gambe*, *Dawaro*, *Ghedm*, *Ifat*, *Hangor*; and after that, *Bozanno*, *Gafut*, *Damot*, *Cento*, *Schat*, *Enaria*, *Zet*, *Guraghe*, *Cambate*, *Gombo*, *Ganz*, *Wed* or *Ogge*, *Fatigar*, and *Balli*; all of them on the South of *Abyssinia*: And had it not been for the inaccessible Mountains, which are reckon'd *Abyssinia*'s chief Defence, they would have perhaps conquer'd a great many more

The Kingdom of *Ancala* is on the *Red Sea*, and on the East of *Hangete*, there are good *Dancala*. Mines of Salt. Its King, tho' Mahometan, is

Ally to the *Abyssines*. *Baylur*, a Sea-port, is the only considerable Town.

Tigra is of late Years a Republick, and extends it self towards the *Red Sea*. *Axum*, or *Chaxumo*, formerly the chief Town of *Abyssinia*, and the Place where the Kings were crowned, is in this Province, as well as *Arquico*. This last has an Harbour and Fort : It belongs to the *Turks*, as well as the Isle of *Matzua*. But the Isle *Dalaca*, or *Dabalac*, has its own King, and the People are Christians, but great Rovers.

4. Q. What is the Situation of *Abyssinia* ?

A. Authors differ very much about the Situation of this Country, some making it larger, others smaller; *Abyssinia's Situation*. the reason of it is, because some Parts of this Empire have been subdued and dismembred. However, 'tis generally said, that it lies from North Latitude about eight Degrees to 18 : So that from South to North, 'tis about six Hundred Miles, and a little more from East to West. The *Air* is generally very hot, yet in some Places 'tis temperate, because this Country has abundance of high Mountains, and a great Quantity of Rains. Along the numerous Branches and Windings of the *Nile*, the Soil produces Miller, Flax, Cotton, Salt, Sugar, Wine, and Fruits of all sorts. Here's also store of Honey and Wax, and all sorts of *Commodities*. tame and wild Beasts. They have also Mines of Gold, Silver, Copper, Iron, Lead, and Sulphur, but the Inhabitants know not, or care not to improve them to their Advantage.

Many are the natural *Salt-Pits* of excellent *Rarities*. *Rock-Salt* in this Country; and in the Confines of *Dancala* and *Tigra*, there's a large Plain, of four Days Journey, one side is intirely crusted over with pure white Salt, which serves the Inhabitants of the Country both far and near.

2. In the Mountains of *Gojam* there's a great natural hollow Rock, and there's another opposite to it, so situated, that if we may believe Travellers, a Word whisper'd on the top, is heard at a considerable distance, and the Noise of several Persons speaking at once, appears as loud as a great Shout of a numerous Army.

3. In several Lakes, especially in that called *Dambea*, and in the River *Nile*, are often seen Crocodiles, and that amphibious Creature, called by the *Ethiopians* *Bibat*, and *Hypopotamus*.

potamus by the *Greeks*, because it somewhat resembles a Horse. Some take it to be the *Behemoth* mention'd in the Book of *Job*.

4. In some other Lakes and Rivers is sometimes taken the *Torpil-Fish*, in *Latin*, *Torpedo*, whose Nature is such, that if a Man touch it, he's suddenly seized with a great Cold and Shaking. The Natives allay the violent Heat of burning Fevers, by touching the Patient therewith.

5. Of the several curious Birds in this *Country*, the *Pipis* is the most remarkable, as being the Guide to the Huntsmen to find out their Game; for when it has discover'd any Beast in its lurking-place, he flies to the Hunter, and crying *Fontonketre* (which imports that he should follow) it flies softly before, and certainly conducts him to the desired Prey.

6. Great is the variety of strange Animals to be seen in the several Parts of *Abyssinia*, the most noted of which are these three, 1. That Creature commonly called *Arwehans* by the Natives, *Harish*, or *Harsham* by the *Arabs*, which has one Horn on its Forehead; whereupon some conclude, that 'tis the famous *Unicorn* of the Antients. 2. The *Camelopard*, so called, because its Head and Neck are like a Camel's, and its Body is spotted like the Leopard's. Its Legs are so long, that a Man riding on an Horse, may easily pass under its Belly, without touching it. Lastly, The *Zecora*, which is generally reckon'd the most comely Creature of all *Quadrupeds*.

The most considerable Rivers in *Abyssinia* are the *Nile*, the *Tacaze* and *Maleg*, both of *Rivers*. them fall into the *Nile*. 4. The *Hawash* has its Source in the Kingdom of *Wed*, flows near *Aucaguzele*, and loseth it self in the Sand sixty Miles lower.

5. *Q.* What have you to say about the Inhabitants, &c. of this Country?

A. Those who are the Posterity of the *Arabians*, are tawny, but the others are very black; but all of them are much handsomer than the *Ne-Inhabitants*: groes. They are said to be witty, courteous, lovers of Hospitality, very faithful to their King, respectful to their Clergy, and very devout in their Way; but they are nasty, lazy, and take little care of what is to come. Some say they are not to be credited, unless they swear by the Life of their King. They generally hate a Smith as the Devil. The *Abyssine* Tongue seems to have

some affinity with the *Hebrew* and *Arabick*.
Language. Some say it may be easily learned, and that it is soon understood by the *Chinese*. However 'tis divided into a great many Dialects, (the chief, and most refined of which, is the *Amans*.) This Country is very populous, because few People go out of it.

This Country is subject to one Sovereign,
Government. by the *Ethiopians* styled, *Naggasi*, i. e. Lord, or Ruler; otherwise *Negusch Nagaesche*, King of Kings. As for the *European* Title of *Prestre John*, 'tis now reckon'd as one of the many vulgar Errors in the World. His Government is *Despotic*, all his Subjects, high and low, being treated as so many Slaves. He commonly wears a little Cross in his Hand, as a Mark of being a Deacon, which Order is always conferred upon him, and some other great Lords, that they may communicate with the Clergy in their *Chancels*, or *Choir*. His chief Maxims of State are,

1. To let his People fancy, that he has something Divine and Supernatural in him, which will never fail to cause them to respect and dread him.

2. Not to provoke his Neighbours, especially the *Nubians* and *Galles*.

3. To promote and encourage Trade, that the superfluous Commodities of his Country may be exported, and other necessary ones imported,

John Aclaf Saghed was Emperor in 1680, *King's Genealogy.* *Tustos* dyed in 1716, and was succeeded by *David* Son of *Sam*, then 22 Years old: Tho' he professes Christianity, yet he has several Wives and Concubines, pretending to imitate *Solomon* in that respect, whose Lineage he claims. But of all his Wives, one only is Queen, under the Title of *Inte ue*; which Title she can't assume her self, but only when she has been proclaimed such by the King's Order; and then all the Honours due to a Queen are render'd to her, even after her Husband's death, and tho' she should not be the Mother of the Successor to her Husband. The Emperor on his Death-bed names his Successor, which proves often the Cause of Civil Wars. The *Abyssine* Monarchs fancy themselves to be sprung from *Solomon* and *Maqueda* (or *Nizaule*, according to *Josephus*) Queen of the South, or *Shebah*.

They

They took formerly vain and exorbitant Titles, not only expressing all the Names of the several Provinces in their Empire, but even some blasphemous, *Titles.* and ridiculous ones, as, The Beloved of God; The Pillar of the Faith, sprung from the Tribe of *Juda*; Son of *David*; *Salomon*; Son of the Pillar of *Sion*, of the Seed of *Jacob*, of *Mary's* Hand, of *Nabum* after the Flesh, of St. *Peter* and St. *Paul* after the Flesh, &c. But the Title of the last Kings was *Tustos* King of the Kings of *Ethiopia*, the Shadow of God on Earth, Protector of the Christian Religion, and of the *Nazarians*; Defender of the Evangelical Precepts; Umpire of the Differences arising betwixt Christians and Mahometans; and of the Posterity of the Kings *David* and *Salomon*.

His Revenues are said to be very large, and his Forces consist mostly in Horse, having *Revenues.* sometimes 70000 of them. His Guards are *Forces.* about 12000 Men. He has a vast many Elephants and Camels to carry the Baggage.

Altho' the *Abyssines* are almost of the same *Arch-Bish.* Religion with the *Cophti*, and have a great &c. respect for the *Cophti* Patriarch of *Alexandria*, yet they don't admit now of any other Order among them superior to that of a *Presbyter*, save only their *Abbuna*. The Clergy have here a great Interest.

Within the Limits of this Empire, there are *Pagans*, *Jews*, and *Mahometans*, of various Denominations; but the main Body of the Natives are *Religion.* Christians. They hold the written Word of God to be the only Rule of Faith. They are not well acquainted with the *Apostle's* Creed, but in lieu thereof, they use the *Nicene*, or rather the *Constantinopolitan* Creed. As to the Mystery of the Incarnation, they are *Eutychians*, having been formerly led into that Heresy by *Dioscorus*, Patriarch of *Alexandria*. In the Person of their Prince they lodge the supreme Authority in all Matters, as well Ecclesiastical as Civil; and they wholly deny the *Pope's* Supremacy, allowing him indeed to be the first Patriarch, but they think it Antichristian in him to claim the Jurisdiction over all the Christian Churches. They also disclaim most Points of the *Popish* Doctrine, especially those of Transubstantiation, Purgatory, Service in an unknown Tongue, Auricular Confession, Images in Churches, Celibacy of the Clergy, Extream Unction, &c. They keep both *Sunday* and

and *Saturday*. They punctually observe Circumcision, and abstain from eating of Swine's-flesh, purely as an antient Custom of their Country. They are very charitable, give much in Alms, and visit the Sick. Their Divine Service consists in reading of the Holy Scriptures, administering of the Eucharist, and reading some Homilies of the antient Fathers. They repair to Church betimes, and never enter into them with their Shoes on; nor do they sit down, unless upon the bare Ground. They have cruelly persecuted several *Roman* Missionaries, who went thither in order to bring them over to the *Pope's* Religion. They pretend that they were instructed in the *Jewish* Religion by their Queen *Mequeda*, who went to see *Salomon*; and in the Christian Religion, by their Queen *Candace's* Eunuch, or Steward, who was Baptised by the Deacon *Philip*. But, according to others, the Christian Religion was here propagated about the 4th Century by *Fruementius*, who was consecrated Bishop by St. *Athanasius*, and is commonly reckon'd the first *Ab-buna* of this Empire.





C H A P. XIX.

OF MONOEMUGI, and MONO-MOTAPA.

I. Q.



HY do you join these two Countries in one Chapter ?

A. Tho' they be two large distinct Kingdoms, yet as they are but little known, we have but little to say about each of them. They are called by the Word *Mono*, or *Mune*, denoting *Lord* or *Emperor*. *Monoemugi*, or *Nimeamaya*, is not so well known as *Monomotapa*. It has *Ethiopia* on the North, *Zanguebar* on the East, *Monomotapa* on the South and *Congo* on the West. *Chicoua* on the *Chicova*. *Zambeze*, Lat. 15. Long. 24. is said to be the Capital of the Empire, and the Residence of the Emperor, to whom his Subjects pay Divine Worship. This Country is divided into three Provinces, viz. *Chicova*, *Sicumba*, and *Inhambana*. It lies betwixt the Tropick of *Capricorn*, almost as far as the Line; and so 'tis near 1300 Miles from South to North, and 760 from East to West. 'Tis said to abound with Silver, Gold, and Ivory. The People in many Places are said to be Canibals. The King lives in good Amity with the Kings of *Quiloa*, *Melinda*, and *Mombaza*, because his Subjects may have then Silk and Cotton Stuffs, and

and Amber, for which they give their Gold, Silver, Copper, and Ivory.

The Empire of *Monomotapa* is surrounded by *Cafraria*, except on the North, where it has *Monoemugi* and *Congo*. *Monomotapa*, the Capital, lies on the River *del Spiritu santo*, Latitude, 22, Long. 21. 'Tis large, handsome and the Houses built of Wood, like Steeples, but neat without and within. *Zambao*, or *Moffota*, Latitude 25, is another City, where the Emperor usually resides, and has a stately Palace.

Some divide this large Country into six Kingdoms, but others into twenty-five, viz. *Mongaz*, *Baroe*, *Manica*, *Boesa*, *Macingo*, *Remo*, *Chique*, *Chiria*, *Chedime*, *Boquiza*, *Inhambazo*, *Chirurvia*, *Condesaca*, *Daburia*, *Maucrumbe*, *Mungussi*, *Antuvaza*, *Choue*, *Gbunque*, *Diza*, *Rumba*, *Rasfini*, *Chire*, *Mocaranga*, and *Remo de Beza*; the chief of which are *Mongaz* and *Macaranga*; and most of their Kings are but Vassals to *Monomotapa*.

This Country lies on both sides the Tropick, and is said to be larger and better than *Monoemugi*.

The *Air* is very hot, and the *Soil* very fat, abounds with Rice, Millet, Fruits, and Sugar-Canes. Here are also great Numbers of Ox-triches, Elephants, and black Cattle, but few Horses. Their Gold and Silver Mines are so rich, and so much is found in the Sands of the Rivers of this Country, that the *Portuguese* call it the Golden Empire. The People are very black, well-shaped, strong, more witty, and courageous than their Neighbours; and so nimble, that they run as fast as Horses. They are inconstant, and apt to revolt. Here's a Country said to be inhabited by Women, who are Warriors like the old *Amazons*, and make the best part of the Emperor's Militia, who has a Guard of them always about him.

The Emperor is absolute, is reckon'd one of the most powerful Princes in *Africa*, and has many tributary Kings under him. He's Master of *Queronda*, *Ximba*, and *Sonha* on the Eastern *Cafraria*. 'Tis related of this Prince, and of several others in those Parts, that whenever he sneezeth, or drinketh publicly, the whole Court jointly put up their Prayers on his behalf and that with a very loud Voice, which being heard in the Neighbourhood, every Soul is bound to do the

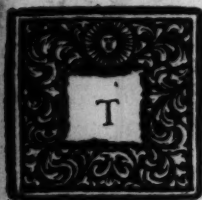
the same; as likewise others that hear them, and so on; whereby the whole City, or Country adjacent, is always sensible when the Emperor sneezeth, or taketh his Glass. He has several Wives, but the first which is deliver'd of a Son is the Queen. The Natives are, for the most part, Pagans.



CHAP.



C H A P. XX.

Of the AFRICAN ISLANDS.

THE Islands belonging to *Africa* are commonly divided into those that are in the Ocean, East and West of *Africa*. Those on the East beginning at the N. are, 1. *Zocotora*. 2. *Amerante*, of the seven Brothers, and others. 3. *Comorra*. 4. *Madagascar*, or *Bourbon's*. And 5. *St. Maurice*. On the West, if you begin on the South, you find, 1. *St. Helena*. 2. *Ascension*. 3. *St. Matthew*. 4. *Annobon*. 5. *St. Thomas*. 6. *Of the Prince*. 7. *Fernando Pao*. 8. *Bisagos*. 9. *Gorea*. 10. *St. Lewis*. 11. *Cape Verd*. 12. *Canary*. 13. *Madera*. And, 14. *Porto Santo*.

That is the Division which can be retained best ; but there's another more easy for a particular Description : And so we divide them into some remarkable ones, and others less remarkable.

Of the first Classis are, 1. *Madagascar*. 2. The Isles of *Cape Verd*. 3. The *Canary* Islands, and *Madera*.

Of each of these in particular, and more at large, but of the others, being less considerable, we shall give but a short Account.

Madagas-

Madagascar is so called by *Europeans* for *Madecase*, or *Malagache*, the Name by which the Natives call the Northern and Southern Parts of this Island. It is also called *St. Laurence*, because it was discovered on that Day, in 1503, by *Francis Alcar's Name*. *meida*, a *Portuguese*; who was, perhaps, the more ready to call it by that Name, because it was his Son's. The *French* have called it also the *Isle Dauphine*, in Honour of their then *Dauphin*, afterwards their King *Lewis XIII.* in the Time they settled here. Some take it for *Ptolomy's Menuthis*, and *Pliny's Cerno Aethiopica*. Their Towns are built of Timber, and encompassed with Palisadoes and Ditches; but the Country People live in wooden Huts, which they transport at pleasure. *Fanshere*, on the South-East Corner of the Island, may be looked upon as the Capital. This Island is divided into several Provinces, which are little known, especially on the North, and far from the Coasts. The most frequented, and best known Provinces are those of *St. Angelo*, *Arco*, *Plum's Harbour*, *Antavares*, *Matatanes*, *Vohistban*, *Fangaterra*, *Galemboule*, or Valley of *Amboule*, *Carcanossi*, *Ampatres*, *Mochiores*, *An Zenavoule*, *Zaphes*, *Cochan*, *Labefonti*, or Country of Cattle, *Terra-de-Guda*, *Pracel*, *St. Andrew*, and *Anfanach*.

Madagascar lies about three Hundred Miles East from *Zanguebar*, betwixt South Latitude 26, and 11, and Longitude 40 and 50. Some reckon it above nine Hundred Miles from North-East to South-
Situation.
 West, and three Hundred and forty in the middle where broadest, and two Thousand four Hundred round: So that 'tis one of the largest Islands yet known. The opposite Place of the Globe to it is the South-part of *California*.

The Air of this Island is generally hot, but often refresh'd with Showers of Rain, and
Air.
 by most affirmed to be very wholesome. The
Soil.
 Soil is very fertile, and abounds with Rice, Fruits, and Pasturage. They have white Pepper in abundance, Cotton, Sugar, and Salt. Here are many Mines of Gold, Silver, Copper, and Iron, and Rocks of Chrystal; but the Natives conceal the Mines from Strangers. Their chief Commodities are Rice, Hides, Wax, Gums, Chrystal, Copper, Ebony, and Wood of all sorts.

Towards

Towards the Eastern Parts of this Island there
Rarities. is a pleasant and fertile Valley, called *Amboufe*, which is stock'd with rich Mines of
 Iron, and yields great store of Oil of *Sejanum*.

2. Near the same Valley there's a high Mountain, on
 whose Top there's a remarkable Spring of very salt Water,
 tho' above 80 Miles from the Sea.

3. They have, especially in the South, most sorts of Mi-
 neral Waters, very different both in Colour, Taste, and Qua-
 lity; and some Places afford large Pits of *Bitumen*.

4. There's also a River, whose Gravel is so exceeding hot,
 that there's no treading upon it, and yet the Water of that
 River is very cold.

5. They have a sort of Earth called *Tavelisse*, which is
 said to be as good as the *Terna Sigillata* of *Lemnos*.

6. The Leaves of their *Rougogne*, a sort of Hemp, which
 when chew'd, make People fuddled, and then to fall asleep,
 but when awake, they are very merry.

7. Here are Tortoises so large, that 'tis said their Shells
 will cover a dozen Men.

8. Their Oxen have large Lumps on their Backs, con-
 taining about thirty Pounds of Grease, which they make
 use of instead of Butter.

9. They are much infested with Grasshoppers, and to de-
 stroy them, they eat them.

10. They have few wild Beasts, except large Serpents,
 which are not venomous, and some Crocodiles.

They have several Rivers, and a great many
Rivers. Harbours, and good Roads.

The Natives are either White or Black,
Inhabitants. and pretend to descend from some People, who
 came from the main Continent, and settled
 here: That is very likely of the White; and yet they
 have all the same Customs. They are strong, witty, and
 courageous, but perfidious, inconstant, revengeful, and in-
 hospitable. They are much addicted to thieving, and most
 of them great eaters; but in case of Necessity, they can
 easily bear Hunger. They have several strange Customs:
 If a Woman be safely deliver'd of a Child, and happen to
 dye in Child-bed, the Child is buried with the Mother,
 because, as they say, 'tis better the Child should dye than
 live, having no Mother to look after it. If their Children
 be born on unlucky Days, as they term them, they expose
 them to wild Beasts; and those unlucky Days are so nu-
 merous,

merous, according to the Opinion of their *Ombiaffe*, or Priests, that half the Year is almost accounted such : And hence it is, as well as from their perpetual intestine Wars, that this Island is so thinly stock'd with Inhabitants. They have but one Language, much like the *Arabick*, but diversify'd into several Dialects.

This Island is subject to several Lords, commonly called *Robandrians* among the Whites, and *Voad-ziris* among the Black, having under them Government. several Governors of Villages and Castles.

Those Lords are continually at War among themselves about their Cattle and Slaves, but unanimous enough to defend themselves against the Invasion of Strangers

The *Portuguese* have settled at the *Anse aux Gallions*, on the South-East Coast ; the *English* at the Bay of St. *Austin*, on the Western Coast, near the Tropick of *Capricorn* ; the *Dutch* at the Bay of *Antongil*, towards the N. of the Eastern Coast ; but the *French* made a better Settlement at a little *Anse* near that *aux Gallions*, where they built Fort *Dauphin* ; but, according to their Custom, encroaching upon the Natives, they attack'd the Fort, and cut off all the Garison in 1673, except a few who escaped on board a Ship in the Road : But we have no Account of any *European* Settlements now subsisting here. Captain *Avery*, and his Pyrates, settled on the North-East Coast, but nothing has been heard of them lately ; and even Capt. *Rogers* says, they are dwindled to nothing.

They are either *Pagans*, or *Mahometans*, especially towards the North ; but the People settled on the Eastern Coast, betwixt Latit. 15, and 18, are called *Zaffeh Ibrahim*, i. e. *Abraham's Race*. Many of 'em are said to observe the *Jewish Sabbath*, and the *Circumcision*. They have some dark Notions of the *Fall of Man* ; *Noah's*, *Abraham's*, *Moses's*, and *David's* History : Whence several Authors guess, that they originally descend from some *Jews*, who might have been driven on that Part of the Island, but no Body knows how, nor when : Perhaps they are the Posterity of the *Ethiopians*.

The Islands of *Cape Verd* are so called from the Cape of that Name in *Africa*, from which they *Cape Verd*. lye West about three Hundred and sixty Miles.

Some take them to be the antient *Hesperides*; but others more likely for the *Gorgades*. However, by their Situation, they represent a Crescent, whose convex Part is towards the Cape. The chief Town is *Ribeira Grande*, on the South-East Corner of the Island of *St. Fago*. 'Tis the Residence of the *Portuguese* Governor and Bishop. The Islands are about twenty in Number, but no more than ten are commonly taken notice of, five of them being called *Great*, viz. *St. Fago*, Latitude 15, Longitude 24. *St. Nicholas* on the North, *St. Lucca* North-West, *St. Antony* North-East, and *S. Vincent*. The largest is about 240, and the smallest 100 Miles round. The five small ones are, the *Ile of Salt*, *Bonavista*, *Mayo*, *Fuego* and *Braga*. The largest of them is sixty, and the smallest is twenty Miles round.

All these Island lie betwixt North Latitude
Situation: 14, and 17, and West Longitude 20, and 25.

They are ill-peopled, because the Air is unwholesome, and the Soil barren. Their chief Riches consist in Skins of Goats and Deer; and in Salt, that's formed naturally of the Water, and loads annually above an Hundred Ships. They have also Wine, Fowls, and several sorts of Fruit, which the Inhabitants, who are very poor, exchange for Clothes, and other Necessaries, sooner than for Money.

In the *Ile del Fuego* there's a remarkable
Rarities. *Vulcano*: And in the *Salt* Island there are many natural Salt-Pits, from whence the Island derives its Name

These Islands being at their first Discovery
Government, destitute of Inhabitants, were peopled by their Discoverers the *Portuguese* in 1460, are subject to them, and ruled by a particular Governor, who assumeth the Title of *Vice-Roy*. The Inhabitants are much the same with those of *Portugal*, with this difference only, that they are more tawny, and addicted to thieving. The *Negroes* are very likely descended from the People of *Guinea*.

The *Canary* Isles, antiently, *Fortunate Insula*, are so called from the *Spanish* Word *Cane*, because a great many Dogs were found there, when *Canary* was first discover'd by them in
Canary Isles. 1483.

1483. *Laguna*, in the Isle of *Teneriff*, on the East side may be accounted the Capital, as being the Residence of the Governor, Tho' *Canary*, or *Ciudad de las Palmas*, be perhaps larger and richer. 'Tis a fine Town, has a good Castle on a Harbour, and is the See of a Bishop. Those Islands are about ten in Number, but seven only are considerable, which you find thus from West to East.

Islands.	Circumference.	When, and by whom disco-
1. <i>Ferro</i>	60	1445 by <i>F. Peraza</i> . (ver'd.
2. <i>Palmo</i> on the N.	70	1493 by <i>A. Fr. De Lugo</i> .
3. <i>Gomera</i>	60	1445 by <i>Peraza</i> .
4. <i>Teneriffe</i>	180	1493 by <i>A. Fr. De Lugo</i> .
5. <i>Canary</i>	120	1483 by <i>Peter de Vera</i> .
6. <i>Forteventura</i>	170	1417 by <i>Bethancourt</i> , a <i>Fr.</i>
7. <i>Lancerota</i>	70	Ditto.

The other less considerable are, *Gratiosa*, *Rocha*, *St. Clara*, *Wolves Isle*, *Alegranza*, and the two *Savages*.

The most Easterly are about an Hundred and fifty Miles from *Cape Non*. Their Situation is betwixt Latitude 28, and 30. Longitude 12, and 22. The *Air* is healthful, the *Soil* fruitful, and they are well peopled. In the Isle *Canary* they have two Harvests a Year. *Fero* is the most Western, and therefore has been long used by the *Frenth*. as the first *Meridian*, because 'tis the most westerly Part of our Hemisphere; but the *Dutch* fix their first *Meridian* at the Pike of *Teneriffe*. The chief Product of these Isles is excellent Wine, Honey, Sugar, Oad, Dragon's Blood, or the Liquor of a Tree, Singing-Birds, Fowls, Corn, and Fruit of all sorts.

Among the Rarities we may reckon the *Pike* *Rarities*. of *Teyde*, or *Teneriffe*, which is a Mass of many Rocks, promiscuously heap'd up like a rugged Pyramid. 'Tis one of the highest Mountains in the World, which is seen in clear Weather an Hundred and twenty Miles at Sea. 'Tis very steep, and always cover'd with Snow at the Top, tho' none ever falls at the Bottom, where it never freezes. It has a *Vulcano* on the Top, which sometimes throws out Flames, There's another *Vulcano* at *Palmo*. As for the Tree whose Top was said to be always cover'd with a thick, misty Cloud, 'tis now lookt upon as a romantick Tale. as well as what's related of the inaccessible Island, ninety Miles North-West of *Canary*. The

Canary Isles are subject to *Spain*, and the Inhabitants are, for the most part, *Spaniards* originally. There are some few of the *Aborigines*, who are very nimble, and vast eaters; they feed generally on Milk.

Madera was discover'd by *Robert Manchin*, *Madera*. or *Masbam*, an *Englishman*, in the Reign of *Edward the Third*, Anno 1344. He was Captain of a Ship, and when going on his Voyage, he carried off with him from *Bristol* a handsome young Woman, called *Anna Aiffat*. He was drove in here by Tempest, where the unfortunate Lovers, and those that landed with them, died of Famine; for soon after they landed, the Ship was drove from her Anchor by a furious Tempest, and cast away on the Coast of *Morocco*. The Crew was put in Prison there, where they found a *Spanish* Pilot, called *John de Morales*, to whom they told their Discoveries, and particularly of this Island. Sometime after *Morales* fell into the Hands of the *Portuguese*, and *John Gonsalve Zalco*, being employ'd by *Dom Henry*, Infant of *Portugal*, to make Discoveries, made use of *Morales*, who carried him to *Madera* in 1420. They found a sort of a Tomb, that *Masbam* had erected for his Mistress, who died first, with his Name, and an Account of his Adventure: But as it was a Desert, and all over-run with Woods, (from whence its present Name in *Portuguese*) they set Fire to the Trees, whose Ashes did so fructify the Island, that when they sowed Corn there, it yielded at first sixty for one, but decreased gradually, and now does not yield above twenty-five for one.

The Capital is *Funchal*, on a Bay in the *Funchal*. South-side of the Island. 'Tis about a Mile long, well fortified, the Seat of the *Portuguese* Governor, and the See of a Bishop. The Harbour is good, lies in form of a Crescent, and Ships ride within Pistol-shot of the Town.

Madera lies Latitude 33, and West Longitude 16, about three Hundred Miles North of *Canary*, and *Madera's* as much West of *Morocco* Coast. 'Tis about *Situation.* 76 Miles long, 34 broad, and 180 round. The Air is temperate and wholesome, and the Soil very good: It produces excellent Sugar and Wine, which keeps very long both by Sea and Land. It is reckon'd to produce twenty Thousand Pipes *per Annum*. It also abounds with good Wheat, Fowl, Honey, Wax, Dragon's Blood,

Blood, and excellent Fruits. They have also a good Trade for Cedar-Boards. In a word, this Island is one of the most fruitful and pleasant Places belonging to the *Portuguese*.

What mostly deserves the Epithet of *Rare* in this Isle, is, that excellent Quality either of its Air, or Soil, or both, which proves mortal to all venomous Creatures: None such are found here, or able to live, if brought from abroad.

Most of the Inhabitants are *Portuguese*, and of a more tractable Temper than those of the *Canaries*. Some reckon the Number of Inhabitants at twenty-five Thousand.

Porto santo lies about forty Miles North-East from *Madera*, is about twenty-four Miles round, pretty well inhabited, and the Product is much the *Porto santo*. same with that of *Madera*: But as 'tis open on all sides, the Rovers of *Sale* carried off about seven Hundred People in 1606. The other lesser Isles are not worth taking notice of.

Socotora, antiently *Dioscorides*, lies about 100 Miles East from *Guardafu*, under N. Lat. *Socotora*. 13. and is about an Hundred and fifty Miles round. *Pereira* was the first *European* that discover'd it in 1503. The Approach of it is dangerous, and the Air extremely hot, and would be insupportable, were it not temper'd by Breezes from the Sea. The Soil is mountainous, dry, and barren, except in some Vallies, where they have Flocks of Cattle. It produces abundance of Dates, Frankincense, Dragon's Blood, and excellent Aloes. The Inhabitants who are come from *Arabia*, are *Mahometans*, brave, but treacherous to Strangers. They are under a *Cheque*, Tributary to the *Cherif* of *Mecca*, or, as some say, to the King of *Corazan* in *Arabia*. He resides at *Tanuri*, the only Town in the Island.

The *Admiralty* Islands lie about South Latitude 5. betwixt Longitude 50 and 65. There are only seven of 'em taken notice of, which are remarkable for little, but only that they have some Trade with *Monbaza* on the Coast of *Africk*, opposite to them. Near this Coast are also *Pemba*, *Zanzibar*, and *Monfia*. Tho' they be very near the Coast, yet some suppose them in the Number of the *Amirante*, or seven Brothers.

The Isles of *Comorra* lie betwixt the North-parts of *Madagascar*, and the Continent of *Africa*, about South Latitude 12, and 14. and

Longitude 43, and 46. and they are four in Number.

1. *Mangazzi*, about 50 m. long, and 12 broad. *Anjouan*, or *Joanna*, 30 m. long, and 15 broad. *Molalia* and *Mayetta*. They are fruitful, and inhabited partly by *Mahometans*, and partly by *Pagans*, under Princes who are tributary to the *Portuguese*. The People are very civil to the *English*.

This Isle is so called from a *Portuguese* Gentleman of that Sirname, who discover'd it. It lies in Lat. 21, Long. 55. above 300 Miles E. from *Madagascar*. 'Tis almost round, and about 180 Miles in Circuit. The Air is hot, but clear and wholesome; and the Soil produces all Necessaries for Life. Here's plenty of Game, and excellent large Tortoises. They have many Lakes and small Rivers, Forests of Ebony, and Palm-Trees. In the middle of the Island there is a Range of high Mountains, one of them a *Vulcano*, which throws out Fire and Smoke, and has destroy'd the East-part of the Island, which is therefore called the *Burnt Country*. The Coasts are also much infested by Hurricanes. This obliged the *Portuguese* and *Dutch* to abandon it. The *French* settled here in 1654, and called it the Isle of *Bourbon*, but afterwards deserted it, and since that Time we have no farther Account of it.

The Isle of *Maurice* was so called by the *Dutch* in honour of *Maurice* Prince of *Orange*, but having been discover'd by the *Portuguese* in 1505, it was called by them *Ilha de Cerno*, or the Isle of *Swans*. It lies Lat. 20. and Long. 58, and an half, and is about 120 Miles round. The Air and Soil are much the same with that in *Mascarenhas*. It has a commodious Harbour, with a Fort built by the *Dutch*, who settled here in 1640. The Isle of *Diego Rodriguez*, Latitude 20, and Long. 63, is of the same Nature, and belongs to the *Dutch*.

St. Helena, so called by the *Portuguese*, because they discover'd it on *St. Helen's* Day, in 1502. It lies Lat 16. and W. Long. 6. about 1000 Miles W. from *Cape Negra*, and farther from the Continent than any Island in the World. 'Tis 30 Miles round, fruitful and healthful, because the Heat is temper'd by Dews and Winds, and they have seldom any Storms, Thunder or Lightning. It abounds so with good fresh Water, that 'tis called the *Mariner's Inn*. All the landing Places are fortify'd; all things are dear to Strangers, except Roots and Lemons. The *English East-India Company* have here a Governor, Deputy-Governor, and a Store-keeper. The

The Inhabitants are lewd and poor, because they are not permitted to Trade with so much as one single Vessel.

The Isle of *Ascension* lies near Lat. 8. and Long. 15. and is barren. There's another of *Ascension* that Name, lying S. W. of this, near the Coasts of *Brazil*.

St. *Mathew* lies on the North of St. *Helen*, near the Line, and has a small Lake of fresh *S. Mathew*. Water. It was discover'd in 1526 by the *Portuguese*, who have abandon'd it.

Annobon, S. Lat. 2, and W. Long. 8. was so named by the *Portuguese*, who discover'd *Annobon*. it on *New-Year's-Day*. 'Tis small, but fertile, and inhabited by *Portuguese*, who are very wicked, addicted to Thievery; and the Women are common. It has a small Town slightly fortify'd.

St. *Thomas* lies under the Line, about 120 Miles West of the Coasts of *Guinea*. 'Tis *St. Thomas* about 50 m. long, 30 broad, and 180 round. The *Air* is not wholesome to Foreigners, but the Natives, who are descended from the *Portuguese*, who discover'd it in 1485, live to a great Age. The Product is Wheat, Rye, Barley, Millet, Pot-Herbs, Figs, Sugar-Canes, Melons and Cucumbers. They have store of Fowls and Hogs. St. *Thomas*, or *Povaasan*, i. e. a Colony, is the chief Town, and lies on the East-side of the Isle: 'Tis well fortify'd; is the Seat of the Governor, and the See of a Bishop. The *Portuguese* Ships, to and from the *East-Indies*, put in here for Refreshment.

Prince's Island was so called, because assign'd *Prince's* to the Prince of *Portugal* for part of his Re- *Island*. venue. It lies 120 m. N. E. of St. *Thomas*, N. Lat. 2 d. 'Tis about 36 m. long, and 24 broad; abounds with Rice, Millet, Sugar-Canes, Cotton, Hogs, Poultry, Fish, Tobacco, and Fruits. The *Air* is better here than at St. *Thomas*.

Fernando Pao, is so called from its Discoverer in 1471. It lies on the Coasts of *Benin*, about *Fernando* 26 Miles from the Shore [North Lat. 2 and an *Pao*. half, Long. 11. 'Tis about 90 Miles round. The Natives are Savages, and the *Portuguese* have a Fort at the North-end, and several Villages. 'Tis much the same as the *Prince's Island*. These seven last Isles are often comprehended under the Name of St. *Thomas's Isles*.

Bisagos. *Bisagos* lies at the Mouth of *Rio Grande*, or *St. Domingo*. 'Tis about 120 m. round, and inhabited by Heathens, as well as several others near it.

Gorea. *Gorea*, Lat. 14, Long. 17. lies about three Miles from *Cape Verd*, and was so called by the *Dutch*, because it resembles an Island of that Name in *Zealand*. 'Tis very small, was first possess'd by the *Portuguese*, and then by the *Dutch*, from whom the *French* took it in 1677.

St. Lewis. *St. Lewis* lies in the River *Senegal*, Lat. 16, Long. 16. 'Tis three Miles round; and belongs to the *French*, who give the Negroes Linnen, Cloth, Cotton, Copper, Pewter, Brandy, and Glass Ware in exchange for Skins, Ivory, Slaves, Ambergrease, and Gum Arabick.

There are several other small Islands along the Coast of *Africa*, but not worth mentioning.





C H A P. XXI.

Of A M E R I C A.

I. Q.

H A T do you call *America* ?

A. The largest Country in the World, and whose Continent is opposite to ours. *America's Name.*

Tho' *Christopher Calomb* was the first who discover'd this Country, yet

it was called *America* from *Americ Vesputio*, a *Florentine*, by whom it was more fully discover'd in 1497. 'Tis also called the *New World*, because it was known but a long while after the *Old*, which we inhabit. 'Tis also called, *West-Indies*, or *Small Indies*, to distinguish it from the *East-Indies*, (also, but improperly called the *Great Indies*) which are a Part of *Asia*. This is what generally obtains, and is most certain. Yet *Powel*, in his *History of Wales*, says, That a War happening in that Country, in 1170, about the Succession, upon the death of their Prince *Owen Guinneth*; and a Bastard having carried it from his lawful Sons, one of the latter, called *Madoc*, put to Sea on new Discoveries; and sailing from *Spain*, discover'd a new World of wonderful Beauty and Fertility, uninhabited; and upon his return, carried a great Number of People thither from *Wales*, in three Voyages, according to *Hackluyt*. The Places he discover'd are supposed to be *Virginia*, *New-England*, or the adjacent Country. *Peter Martyr*, *Decad. 7. Cap. 3.* seems to support this, when he tells us, That those of *Virginia* and

and *Guatimala*, used to celebrate the Memory of one *Madoc*, a great and antient Hero. And hence 'tis supposed came those old *British* Words, which modern Travellers have met with in *North America*.

Some pretend that the Antients had some Knowledge of this Continent. Some *Egyptian* Priests, as we have it in *Plato's Timæus*, relate to *Solon*, That antiently, farther than the Straits of *Gibraltar*, there was an Island called *Atlantis*, larger than *Asia* and *Africa*, which disappear'd after a terrible Earthquake, and a continual shower of Rain during a Day and a Night. *Aristotle's*, if he be the Author of the Book of the World, says, that besides the great Island, containing *Europa*, *Asia*, and *Africa* there were some other large ones, in the Number of which *America* is esteemed to be. *Diodorus Siculus*, Lib. 5. relates, that some *Pbenicians* having passed *Hercules's* Pillars, were by a great Storm carried into a very remote Country, and that they landed over-against *Africa*, in a very fruitful Island, and water'd by several large Rivers. Now 'tis said, that all this cannot agree with any thing better than *America*. To this may be added, what *Silenus* tells *Midas*, Cap. 18. Lib. 6. *Ælian* var. Hist. viz. That *Europa*, *Asia*, and *Africa*, are surrounded with the Ocean; and farther there's a Continent of a prodigious extent, where Men and Beasts are a great deal bigger than those in ours, and that Men live longer there. Their Customs and Laws are contrary to those of other People. They have an incredible Quantity of Gold and Silver, which among them are no more esteem'd than Iron amongst us. *Marcellinus* has a Passage, wherein 'tis said, That in the *Western* Ocean there's an Island larger than all *Europe*. The same thing may be proved from the Prediction which is in *Seneca's Medea*.

Venient Annis

*Sæcula feris, quibus Oceanus
Vincula rerum laxet, & ingens
Pateat Tellus, Typhusque novos
Detegat Orbes nec sit Terris
Ultima Thule.*

But others pretend, that the Antients had no knowledge of this great Part of the World, because they have said nothing about its Limits, Situation, Extent, &c. and that even

even they could have none, the *Compass* having been found out in 1302, by *John Goya* of *Amalfi* in the Kingdom of *Naples*. But to this it may be answer'd, That the *Antients* could not give an exact Description of it, because they had but an imperfect Knowledge thereof, as having been driven on the Coast by a Storm : And as for the *Compass*, or something instead of it, it was certainly known a long time before the Year 1302. However, *America* was discover'd by *Christopher Colomb*, a *Genoesse* in 1492.

This *Colomb* was a Wool-comber by Trade, as well as his Father, but applying his Mind to Geography and Navigation ; and having observed, during his sailing on the *Western Ocean*, that there must be some Land more to the West than those which were then known, he went and settled himself at *Madera*, where he made several Sea-Maps for those who sailed on the Coasts of *Africa*. Having heard there of some *Biscayans*, who had been driven by Storm upon some very remote Coasts Westwards, he wrote to the Senate of *Genoa*, and demanded of them some Ships, in order to make his Discovery, which would be for their Profit and Interest : But the *Genoesse* rejected *Colomb's* Proposals, as being chymical. And considering that the King of *Portugal* was then busy about the *African War*, and the King of *Spain* about that of *Granada*, he sent his Brother *Bartholomew Colomb*, to *Henry VII.* King of *England*, who rejected also such a Proposal. *Colomb* nevertheless being not discourag'd thereat, went himself to *Alphonso K.* of *Portugal*, who order'd 2 Cosmographers, viz. *Cardiglio.* Bishop of *Viseu*, and *Rodrigo*, to confer with *Colomb* ; but these having acquainted their King, that the Proposal was groundless, *Colomb* was dismissed. Then he went to *Spain*, where he was well received by two Geographers, viz. *Alonzo Pinson*, and *John Perez*, a *Franciscan* Fryar. This last recommended *Colomb* to *Henry Guzman*, Duke of *Medina Sidonia*, and to *Lewis de Cerda*, Duke of *Medina Celi*, who despised him ; and so *Colomb* went again to *Perez*, and desired him to give him Letters of Recommendation to *Fernando Talavera*, Confessor to Queen *Isabella*, who in 1486, presented *Colomb* to King *Ferdinand* her Husband ; but the War of *Granada* did not permit his Majesty to grant *Colomb* his Request then : But eight Years after, it was resolved, that they should venture to give *Colomb* a Ship, and two *Caravella's*, or Brigantines. They promis'd him the tenth Part of the Reve-

nue of this Discovery; and as the King's Treasure was exhausted, his Secretary of State did advance 16000 Ducats for *Colomb's* Undertaking.

Now *Colomb* having equipt his Ships, he, with his Brother *Bartholomew*, and the three *Pinsons*, Captains of the two *Caravella's*, and with several others, left the Harbour of *Palospalos de Moguer* in *Andalusa*, on Friday the 3d of *August*, 1492, and went to the *Canaries*, where he took some Refreshments, and then proceeded on his Voyage towards the West; but after having sailed eight Days, the Sea, which was all cover'd with green Grass, frightened so much his Men, that at last, when they perceived they could find no Land, they despairing of good Success, conspir'd to throw him over-board; but he appeased them by fair Means, and told em, that if within three Days they found no Land, they should return to *Spain*. Some say, he knew very well he was not far from some Land, because the Air was fresh, the Clouds were very low at Sun-rising, the Water was not very deep, and the Winds changed often: And so on the third Day, which was *October* the 11th, they perceived some Fire and Smoke, and landed at *Guanahani*, which he called *Desirada*, or *San Salvador*, one of the *Lucayes*, or *Bahama* Islands. He took Possession of it in the Name of the King of *Spain*. Then they proceeded to the Islands of *Cuba* and *Hispaniola*, where he left 38 of his Men in a Fort which he had obtained the Permission to build there from the *Catique*. And having barter'd their Trifles for the Gold and Silver of the *Insulars*, he took some *Indians*, and after fifty Days sail he arrived at *Lisbona*. He was very well received by King *Ferdinand*, who made him a *Spanish* Grandee, and Admiral of *America*, where he returned several times to make new Discoveries. Then he was made Duke of *Laveraguas* in *Mexico*, and *Lavega* at *Jamaica*. The King gave him also this Island in Title of Marquisate; whence the eldest of *Colomb's* Family is called Duke of *Laveraguas*, *Lavega*, and Marquis of *Jamaica*, tho' this Island be now in the Hands of the *English*. *Colomb* dy'd in *Spain*, May the 4th, 1506,

This large Continent is generally esteemed to *Limits*. be surrounded by the Ocean, except on the N. W. where 'tis not known whether it be joined to, or separated from the Continent of *Asia*. It has the Northern unknown Ocean and Country on the North, the *Atlantick*,

Atlantick, or Northern Sea on the East, the unknown Southern Land and Ocean on the South, and the *South*, or *Pacifick* Sea on the West. *America* is divided not by the *Line*, but by the *Isthmus* of *Panama*, or *Darien*, into two *Peninsula's*, the one called the *N. or Mexi-* *Divison.*
can, and the other *South*, or *Peruvian, America.*

As far as it is yet discover'd, it lies betwixt *Divison.*
South Latitude 56, and North Latitude 70.

The Longitude is betwixt 35, and 140 West. *Extent.*

So that the Length, from South to North, is about seven Thousand five Hundred Miles, but the Breadth is very unequal, being much contracted both in the South and North-parts, and in the middle. The greatest Length, from the West-side of *California*, to the East-side of *Newfound-Land*, is about two Thousand four Hundred Miles; and from the West-side of *Peru*, to the East-side of *Brazil*, 2100. The most Northerly Part lies in the fourth Climate of Months, so that the longest Day is above four Months; and the most Southerly Part lies in the 11th Climate of Hours, so that the longest Day is there seventeen Hours and an half.

The *Air* differeth according to the different Situation of the Countries, but in general 'tis *Air.*
temperate and wholesome. The *Soil* in general *Soil.*
is fruitful; but their greatest Riches are the Gold and Silver Mines which are in *Perou*, *Brazil*, and *Mexico*. At the first discovery of *Perou*, it was not unusual to see Temples and Palaces all cover'd with Gold Plates. The *Spaniards* assure, That in 1618, it was verify'd, that from the first Discovery of *America*, until that Year, above one Thousand five Hundred and thirty-six Millions of Gold had been carried out of it; and that in 1645, it was found, that the Kings of *Spain* had had above forty-five Millions, only in Ingots of Gold and Silver Bars, besides other Duties laid upon Merchandises exported out of that Country, as Gold, Silver, Pearls, Jewels, Hides, Sugar, *Cochineal*, *Indigo*, *Coco*, *Sarsaparilla*, *Ginger*, and other Commodities.

The *Isthmus* of *Panama*, joins South to North *Isthmus.*
America: 'Tis about fifty Miles from *Panama* to *Portobello*.

The most remarkable Capes are, *Capes.*

1. Cape *Breton* in the Isle of the same Name
2. Cape *de Florida*, at the entrance of *Bahama* Chanel.
3. Cape *Catoche* in *Jucatan*.

4. Cape

4. Cape St. *Antony* in the West of *Cuba*.
5. Cape *de la Vella*. And,
6. Cape *de Coquiho* near *Rio de la Hacha*.
7. *Nord* Cape, near the Mouth of the River *Amazons*.
8. Cape St. *Augustin* in the North, and,
9. Cape *Frio* in the South-parts of *Brazil*.
10. Cape St. *Antony*, at the mouth of *Rio la Plata*.
11. Cape St. *Helen* in *Quito*.
12. Cape *Blanco*, near *Costa Ricca*. And,
13. Cape *Corientes* in *Guadalaxara*.

There are several *Mountains* in *America*; the chief of them are,

1. *Andes*, or *Cordilleras*, betwixt *Chili* and *Mountains*. *Perou*: They are always cover'd with Snow, and esteemed the highest in the World.

2. The *Apalachin* Hills in the North of *Florida*, are also very high.

The *Vulcano's* are,

1. In *Chili*, those of *Antoco*, *Anton*, *Chillan*, *Chouanouca*, *Copiapo*, *Coquimbo*, *Huapa*, *Ligua*, *Notuco*, *Osorno*, *Peteroa*, *Quechucabi*, and *St. Clement de Villa Ricca*.

2. In *Perou*, those of *Arequipa*, *Coqua*, *Malpa*, and *Pinta*.

3. In *Popayan*, those of *Cocomucos*, *de los Passos*, *Quimbaia*.

4. In *Mexico*, those of *Guatimala*, *Monbacho*, *Nicaragua*, *Popochampeque*, *San Salvador*.

5. In *New Grenada*, those of *Tocaymo*, and *Velez*.

The *Northern Sea* is so called, because 'tis on the North of *Terra firma*, but near the

Tropick of Capricorn. 'Tis also called the *Green Sea*, because 'tis cover'd with green Grass.

2. The *South Sea* is that Part of the Ocean on the W. of *America*. A Part of it, from the 4th to the 30th Degree of South Latitude, is called the *Pacifick Sea*, because of its being calm. And that betwixt *Mexico* and *California* is called *Vermeille Sea*.

The chief *Straits* in *America* are,

1. *Magellan's*, discover'd by *Ferdinand Magellan*, a *Portuguese*, in 1510. 'Tis above *Straits* three Hundred Miles long, and but 16 broad, and consequently very dangerous.

2. *Le Maire's*, discover'd in 1616, by *James le Maire* of *Amsterdam*, and *W. Shouten* of *Horn*. It is South Latitude 56, and is about 24 Miles long and broad.

3. *Hudson's*, discover'd in 1612; and *Davies Straits* are so called from some *Englishmen* of those Names. They are in the North-parts of *America*, very long and broad.

The chief Lakes are,

1. *Lake Superior*.

2. *Illinois*.

Lakes.

3. *Hurons*, with several others in *Canada*.

4. *Nicaragua*, near the *Isthmus* of *Panama*.

5. *Titicaca* in *Perou*.

6. *Parima* under the Line, near *Guiana*.

The chief Rivers are,

1. *Amazons*, so called, because the *Women* appeared in *Arms* as well as the *Men*, *Rivers*. when it was discover'd by the *Spaniards*.

Authors differ as to the Head of this River, some place it at the foot of *Cordilleras* in *Quito*; but others make *Lauricocha* Lake, in the Audience of *Lima*, South Latitude 12, the Head of it; and so it runs above two Thousand Miles, besides Turnings and Windings, before it falls into the Sea. It receives many other Rivers on both sides, and very large ones from the South, and has abundance of fruitful Islands in its Stream. 'Tis the largest River in the World, runs North-East: 'Tis from 8 to 40 Fathom deep, from 6 to 12 Miles broad; and at its Mouth 'tis two Hundred Miles, because of the Islands, and the Tide flows nine Hundred Miles up.

2. *Rio de la Plata*, was so called, because of the *Silver Mines*, and the great Quantity of Plate found in the Countries water'd by this River. It runs South-East, and according to most Authors, rises from the Lake *Xaras* in the *Amazons* Country, South Latitude 18, and falls into the *Ethiopic* Ocean, Latitude 35, where 'tis above an Hundred Miles broad. 'Tis very rapid, but shallow, and receives many great Rivers on both sides; *Parana*, one of them has the Propriety of the *Nile*.

3. The *Mississippi*, which *M. de la Salle*, one of the first Discoverers of it in the end of the last Century, makes two Thousand four Hundred Miles long, including Turnings and Windings. It falls into the Bay of *Mexico* by several Mouths, in Latitude 23 and an half, Longitude 93 and an half. The Mouth of it is so deep, and free from Sands, that 'tis said great Ships may go up to the *Illinois* River.

River. It receives several other navigable ones on both sides, but 'tis much infested with *Crocodiles*.

4. *St Lawrence* rises, as some say, from a Lake called *Piscoutagami*, in Latitude 52, and Longitude 85, it receives many other Rivers on both sides, and has a Communication with the great Lakes W. and S. of it; but there are many Cataracts in it. However, by these Rivers and Lakes, the *French* have found out a Communication betwixt the River *St. Lawrence*, or *Canada*, and that of *Mississippi*.

The Inhabitants of *America* are,

1. The Natives.
2. *Europeans*, who went to settle there. *Inhabitants*.
3. Their Children, called *Criolo*.
4. The *Mongrels*, born of an *European* and *American*.
5. The *Negroes*, transported from other Countries. And,
6. Their Children.

But the *Spaniards* themselves, according to *Capt. Rogers*, distinguish the Inhabitants of their Provinces into eleven Classes, *viz.*

The first and chief is the original *Spaniards*, never yet mixed with other People (as they pretend) and these are most respected.

2. The *Musties*, begot by *Spaniards* on *American* Women.

3. Fine *Musties* are their Children married again with *Spaniards*.

4. *Terceroons de Indies*, their Children again mixed with *Spaniards*.

5. *Quarteroons de Indies*, their Posterity again mixed with *Spaniards*. These last are allowed to be primitive *Spaniards* again, and the reason is, because they are in great Numbers.

6. *Mulattoes*, begot by a *Spaniard*, or any *European*, on a *Negro* Woman.

7. *Quarteroon de Negroe*, again mixed with *Spaniards*, but esteemed no better than *Mulattoes*.

8. *Terceroons de Negroes*, again mixed with *Spaniards*, but still called *Mulattoes*, because they will not allow them the Privileges or Title of *Spaniards*, after once debased with the *Negro* Breed, tho' some of them are as White as the *Spaniards* themselves; they cannot wipe off the ugly and opprobrious Name of *Mulattoes*, unless they hide their Descent, which is no hard matter, by removing into another Place, where they are not known, which is often practis'd,

practis'd, and conniv'd at by the Clergy, in order to increase the Number of good Catholick *Spaniards*.

9. *Indians*, tho' the true and antient Proprietors of the Country, are yet placed below the worst of the *Spaniard* Descendants, tho' they be generally Bastards.

10. *Negroes*. And,

11. The Posterity of *Negroes* and *Indians*, called *Samboes*. The *Europeans*, and their Children, differ nothing, or very little, from those of the several Countries they are come from. The same may be said of the *Negroes*, and *Mongrels*, with this Addition nevertheless, that these are somewhat more swarthy than the *Europeans*.

As for the *Natives*, they are generally of a dark Olive-Colour; we shall speak of them and their Manners more at large, in the particular Description of each Country.

Only 'tis to be observed here, That the *Natives* are thought to come from *Asia*, especially from *Tartary*, or *Jappon*, from which these of *Whence they North-West America* are not very far; came.

And, perhaps, the two Continents are joined towards the North; and what supports the Conjecture, is, That the *Natives* of *North America* have a great resemblance in many things with the *Tartars*, and most of 'em had some knowledge of another Continent inhabited by People wearing Cloths, and long Beards. But however that be, 'tis certain that both *North* and *South America* were inhabited many Ages before either of them were discover'd by *Europeans*. This is evident from the Multitudes of People, and large Cities, the great Structures, and other Improvements of Arts found here, and that they were formed into regular Governments in *Mexico* and *Peru*.

However, *America* is not populous in comparison to our Continent, either because the *Populous- first Inhabitants* went thither along while after *ness*. other Countries were peopled, or because they did destroy one another by War; or because they have been ill used, and destroyed by *Europeans*, and especially by *Spaniards*, who are affirmed by some to have murder'd 15 Millions of them in less than 50 Years.

Among the Defects, and other Inconveniences of this Country, we may reckon several small creeping things and Vermin, and other noxious things, *Defects*.

as Wasps, large Bats, Mustigo's, Maringoins, Ravets, Chiques, venomous Plants, Scorpions, Serpents, Thunders,

ders, Hurricanes, Inundations, Earthquakes, and terrible *Vulcano's*.

The *Spaniards* are Masters of the largest, best, and richest Dominions in *America*; and even the King of *Spain* pretends, that all *America* belongs to him, by vertue of the Bull of Pope *Alexander VI.* That Pope, Son to *Geoffry Lenzoli*, in the Kingdom of *Valencia*, and of *Isabella Borgia*, Sister to Pope *Calistus III.* by his Bull of May 1493, gave all *America* to the Kings of *Castille* and *Leon*, and excluded all other Emperours, Kings and Princes. What a fine thing to give what he had no Right to !

2. The *English* have fine Settlements in *North America*, and in some Islands.

3. The *Portuguese* are Masters of *Brazil*.

4. The *French* of *Canada*, and some small Isles.

5. The *Dutch* of *Surinam*, &c. near the River *Oronoco*. And the *Danes* of the Isle *St. Thomas*, near the East-part of *Porto Ricco*.

As for the Natives of *America*, they are either subject to one of those *European Nations*, or else having been driven out of their Country, they are retired more towards the inland Parts of *America*, where they have their own Laws, Customs, &c.

As for the Government, and other curious *Government*. Things relating to *America*, to avoid vain Repetitions, we shall speak of them in the Description of the particular Countries thereof.

In the Division of *North America* we may consider,

1. The Countries belonging to *Spain*.

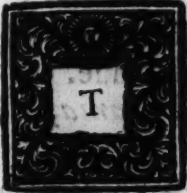
2. To *Great Britain*.

3. To *France*. And all of these in their Order; and then we shall speak of the Islands.



CH A P. XXII.

Of MEXICO, &c.



THE Countries of North America belonging to Spain, are,

Chief Towns.

- | | |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. Mexico, or New Spain, | Mexico, Guatemala, Guadalajara. |
| 2. New Mexico, or Santa Fe, | Grenada, Acoma. |
| 3. Florida, | St. Augustin, St. Matthew. |

Mexico was at first discover'd by John Grialva, but more exactly viewed, and at last conquer'd by the cruel Fernando Cortez, in 1518. It is called Mexico's Mexico from the Capital built by a King of Name. that Name. It is also called New Spain, to distinguish it from the Kingdom of Spain in Europe. It has New Mexico, and that Part of Canada called Louisiana on the North, Part of the Straits of California, and the South-Sea on the West, the Gulph of Mexico, and part of the Atlantick, or Northern Ocean on the East, and the Isthmus of Panama, or Darien on the South-East.

Mexico, the Capital, Latitude 19, 40, Longitude 100, about two Hundred Miles West of the Gulph of *Mexico*, is the largest and finest City in *America* (on the Lake of the same Name, 100 Miles round) This Town was almost destroy'd by the overflowing of the Lake in 1629, and forty Thousand People are said to have been then drowned: But it has been repaired since, and is now a large, fine, rich, and populous Town. The Houses, tho' built of Wood, are fine, and the Streets clean, by reason of the Water running thro' the middle of 'em. The Churches and Palaces are very fine, spacious, and rich. The Cathedral had cost 1052000 Crowns in 1667, tho' not near finished. Here's the Residence of the Vice-Roy, and Arch-Bishop. There's also an University, Inquisition, Sovereign Court, Mint, 22 Nunneries, and 29 Monasteries, all of them rich, besides many Colleges and Parish-Churches.

This Country is divided into three *Audiences*, or Governments, and each of these are divided into Provinces.

I. *Guadalajara*, or *New Galicia* Audience contains,

PROVINCES.

1. *Guadalajara*, proper,
2. *Zacatecas*,
3. *New Biscay*,
4. *Cinaloa* on the North,
5. *Culiacan*,
6. *Chamotlan*,
7. *Xalisco*,

Chief Towns, with their Latitude and Longitude.

Ditto, on the *Baramia*, 21, 104.

Ditto, 24, -- 104. *Durango*, *Nombre di Dios*, *Avino*, where are Silver Mines.

St. Barbara 26, -- 106, *St. John's*. *Ende*.

St. James, *Philippe's*.

Ditto, 24, 109, *St. Michael*.

Aguara. *St. Sebastian*, 23, 107.

Ditto, 22, 106. *Compostella*, *Purification*.

In this *Audience*, especially in the Provinces marked 1, 2, 3, 5, 6, are Silver Mines; but those mark'd 4 and 7, are not yet well known, perhaps because they don't abound with things valued by *Europeans*.

II. *Mexico*

II. *Mexico Audience* contains,

PROVINCES,

1. *Mexico.*

Chief Towns, with their Latitude and Longitude.

Ditto, *Acapulco*, 240 m. S.
Pachuca, where are Silver Mines.2. *Mechoacan,*Ditto 20, 103, *Conception de Salaya, Colima.*3. *Panuco,*Ditto, 23, 98, *St. Jago de los Valles, St. Lewis de Potosi.*4. *Tlascala,*Ditto, *Vera Cruz*, Lat. 19, 97. *Puebla de los Angeles. Tepeaca.*5. *Guaxaca,*Ditto, 17, 97. *Antiquera, Aquatulco, Tecoantepeque, Tukulula.*6. *Tabasco,**Nostra Signora de la Victoria*, 18, 91.7. *Yucatan,**Merida* 20, 86. *Valladolid. Campeche*, 19, 89.8. *Chipa,*Ditto, 17, 93. *Ciudad Real.*9. *Soconusco,*

Ditto, near the South-sea.

These three last are by some placed in the next *Audience*.III. *Guatimala Audience* contains,1. *Suchutepeques,*

Ditto, 14, 92.

2. *Vera Paz,*Ditto, 16, 89. *Golfodulce, or St. Thomas de Castilia.*3. *Guatimala,*Ditto, 14, 91. *Petapla, La Sonsonate.*4. *Honduras,**Comagua, or Valladolid*, 14, 87. *Truxillo Gracia Dios.*5. *Nicaragua,**Leon* 13, 85. *Granada, Realejo, Jaen.*6. *Costa Rica**Carthago* 10, 80. *Nicoya* 11, 82. *Aranjuez, Castro de Austria.*7. *Veragua.**Conception* 10, 78. *Santa fe, Parita, Puebla Nuevo.*

Mexico lies betwixt North Latitude 7, and
Situation. 27. This Country is of a vast Extent, for
 North-West to South-East, 'tis above two
 Thousand Miles; but the breadth is very unequal, it be-
 ing much indented by the Gulphs of *Darien*, *Honduras*,
 and *Mexico*. Its greatest extent that Way, is about six Hun-
 dred Miles, and in some Places 'tis not above

Air. an Hundred. Tho' most of this Country lies
 within the Torrid *Zone*, yet the *Air* is health-
 ful and temperate, being qualify'd by fresh Showers of Rain,

Soil. in the hottest Months, and by cold Breezes
 from the Sea all the Year round. The *Soil* is
 very fertile, and abounds with Wheat, Barley,
 Pulse, Maiz, and excellent Fruit, especially Pomegranates,
 Oranges, Figs, Coconuts, which are the small Money of the
 Country. Here are also Mines of Silver, not so many as
 in *Peru*, but work'd much cheaper. 'Tis also said, that they
 have some Mines of Gold. They have vast and spacious
 Plains, affording very good Pasture. Their chief Commo-
Commodities. dities are Cotton, Sugar, Silk, great Quanti-
 ties of Indico, Cochineal, Honey, Balm, Am-
 ber, Salt, Tallow, Hides, Tobacco, Ginger,
 with divers medicinal Drugs, and several sorts of precious
 Stones.

Among the Rarities of this Country may
Rarities. be reckon'd, 1. Some very large Trees, the
 Bodies of some of them being fifteen Fathoms
 round.

2. They have also a certain Tree called *Manquey*, which
 may be said to yield Water, Oyl, Wine, Honey, Vinegar,
 Thread, and Wood fit either to build or to burn; for the
 Body of the Tree being big and hollow, contains a good
 Quantity of Liquor as limpid as the best Fountain-Water,
 and the Surface thereof is cover'd with a pure oily Sub-
 stance: This Liquor being boiled a little, tastes like good
 palatable Wine; if much boiled, 'tis as sweet as Honey;
 but if kept long unboiled, no Vinegar is more sower. They
 make Thread with the Bark, &c.

3. In the Province of *Guaxaca*, is a poisonous Herb,
 which is said to kill those who pluck it according to the
 time of its own Age, *i. e.* if it be a Day old, he dyes the
 same Day, and so in proportion.

4. Nigh to *Aquatulco*, there's a great hollow Rock
 (called *Buffadore* by the *Spaniards*) which has a large Hole
 on

on its Top, makes a hideous Noise at every Surge of the Sea, and spouts up Water as a Whale, to a prodigious height. In several Parts of this Country are several Springs of Water, so impregnated with certain Minerals, that the Current issuing from them is of a darkish Colour, and resembles Ink.

5. In this Country, but especially in *Guatemala*, there are several remarkable *Vulcano's*, and hot Baths.

6. In *Mechoacan* there are black, shining Stones, which serve for Looking-Glasses; and there's a Plant called *Olcazan*, which is reckon'd a Specifick against all Poisons, and a Restorative in Weakness.

7. There's a great Lake in the Neighbourhood of *Petapla*, on the sides of which, Salt appears every Morning like a Frost, of which they make great Profit.

8. They have a Beast in *Nicaragua*, called the *Fox-Ape*, which has a Bag under its Belly, where it carries its Young-ones, till they are able to shift for Food. It has the Body of a Fox, Ears like a Bat, and Feet like Men's Hands.

9. The Lake of *Mexico* is remarkable for several Particulars. 1. For its containing two sorts of Water, fresh, sweet, bitter and brackish. 2. The fresh is commonly sweet, wholesome, and abounds with Fish; whereas the other is boisterous, because of the Nitre in the bottom, sends forth pestilential Vapours, and has no Fish. 3. In the middle Parts of this Lake is a pleasant Rock, out of which does issue a considerable Stream of hot Water, much esteemed against several Diseases. 4. There's also a Fish without Shells; it has four Feet, and resembles a Woman in several things. The *Spaniards* call it *Juguete de Agua*. Lastly, there are upon this Lake several delightful artificial Gardens, well stock'd with variety of Herbs and Flowers, and moveable from one Place to another, being supported by large Floats of Timber.

They have no considerable Rivers; but among the Sea-ports, and strong Towns, we may reckon *Acapulco*, North Latitude 16--57. on a Bay of the *South-Sea*. Its Harbour is large, commodious, well frequented, and secured by a strong Castle. 'Tis the chief Mart on that Coast. The settled Trade is carried on by three Ships, two of which go once a Year betwixt this Place and *Manila*, and another to and from *Lima* in *Peru*, which commonly arrives before *Christmas* with Quick-silver, Cocoa, and Pieces of Eight, stays till the

the *Manila* Ships arrive, and then returns with *East-India* Commodities. But as *Acapulco* is very unhealthful, when the Fair is over, every body leaves the Place, but a few *Blacks* and *Mulatto*.
Vera Cruz: *Vera Cruz*, or *St. John de Ulva*, on the Bay of *Mexico*, is much the same for the Fleet from *Spain*, as *Acapulco* for the Ships from *Manila*, &c. *Acapulco*, on the *South-Sea*, *Truxillo* on the Gulph of *Honduras*, *La Concepcion* on that of *Mexico*, and *Parita* on the *South-Sea*, with several others, are pretty good Harbours.

The *Mexicans* are a little tawny, but well shaped, civil, ingenious, and very faithful to those whom they love, and who don't use them tyrannically. They quickly learn Arts, Manufacture, and Musick. There are some few commonly residing in the Mountains, who continue as wild and savage as ever. The prevailing Language is the *Spanish* Tongue, which is used not only by the *Spaniards*, but also by the Natives themselves, who generally understand and speak the same. The various Dialects of their antient *Jargons* do daily decrease, and in a few Generations will be quite extinguished. This Country was formerly the most populous Place of *America*, but the *Spaniards* by their Cruelty have destroy'd most of the Inhabitants, especially in *Honduras*. In the City of *Mexico* they reckon now but 40000 Souls, and most of them are *Mexicans* and *Negroes*, the rest are *Criols*, *Mongrels*, and *Europeans*.

Most of these People are very rich, and well furnished with Plate, but they are very proud and lazy; and the Country is much annoy'd by Gnats, Bugs, Locusts, Ants, and other Vermin; by Hurricanes, Inundations, Thunder and Earthquakes, very likely caused by the several *Vulcano's* which are in this Country. And what is a great Prejudice to the Inhabitants, is, that in order to avoid a Rebellion, or Revolution, the *Creols*, or *Mestizes*, i. e. one of whose Parents only is a *Spaniard*, are not allowed any Post, Civil or Military. 3. The *Spaniards* engross the Trade of this Country, forbid Strangers to enter it under very great Penalties, and even none of their Subjects, but those of *Castile*, and *Leon* are allowed to Trade here.

This Country was of old subject unto, and governed by its own sovereign Princes, at first Elective, but in the end, Hereditary,

Hereditary, called Kings, or Emperors of *Mexico*; and it is likely that the Government had been Monarchical a long while before the Invasion of the *Government: Spaniards* in 1521, when it was fully conquer'd by them with a Handful of Men, and has ever since remained subject to the Crown of *Spain*, and governed by a Vice-roy. The Reason why the *Spaniards* conquer'd so easily this, and other Parts of *America*, is, 1. Because the Natives were amazed at the Noise and Effects of the great and small Guns of the *Spaniards*, and at their Way of fighting, especially on Horse-back. 2. The Countries were divided betwixt several small Nations, inveterate against one another, so that they would not unite their Forces, to repel and drive away their common Enemy. The Vice-Roy is usually a *Spanish* Grandee, he has the Power of placing and displacing the Governours of the neighbouring Countries, according as he thinks fit, or rather as they pay him well. The King allows him 100000 Ducats *per An.* but by engrossing Trade, and by other Methods, he commonly makes it worth a Million; and tho' his Commission be but for three Years, he easily gets it prolong'd, by bribing the Courtiers at *Madrid*. There are several other Officers in the Provinces and Towns; and most of the Villages are govern'd by some *Padres*:

The Clergy are here in great Number, very rich, and as much esteemed, or rather dreaded, *Clergy.* as that of *Spain*. *Mexico* is an Archbishoprick, and University; and the Bishops are *Guatemala, Mechoacan, Guaxaca, or Antequera, Puebla de los Angeles, Merida, Nicaragua, Guadalajara, Chiapa, Vera Paz, Domingo, Valladolid* in *Honduras*, and *Sancta Fe* in *New Mexico*. Their Revenue is above 5160000 Peices of Eight.

The People are either Christians or Pagans, or rather a Medley of both. The *Spaniards* are rigid Papists, but many of the Natives do still retain their heathenish Worship, especially for the Idol of one of their ancient Kings, called *Vitzili Putzli*; and if some of them do profess Christianity, 'tis more out of fear for the *Inquisition*, than because they are persuaded of the Truth of the Gospel. *Religion.*

New Mexico is so called because discover'd since that named *Old Mexico*. It is also called, *New Mexico.* *New Granada*, to distinguish it from the Province of that Name in *Spain*. It was at first discover'd

cover'd

cover'd by *Marc de Nisa*, a *Franciscan*, who, at his return, reported that it was full of large Towns, and rich Mines, and so *Velasquez de Coronado* was sent thither in 1583, but he found nothing but Snow, Desarts, wild Men and Cows. The Poverty of the Country has been the Cause that 'tis not yet very well discover'd, nor known, and so we have but very little to say about it. Its Bounds on the North are not known, but it has on the West the *Vermeille Sea*, or *California*, *Mexico* on the South, and *Louisiana* on the East. The chief Town is *Santa fe de Granada*, it lies Lat. 36 °, Long. 106. about 16 Miles from the River *Bravo*, or *del Norte*. It is a handsome Town, built of Stone, the Seat of the Governor, and the See of a Bishop. *Acoma* 100 Miles South-West of *Santa fé*, is pretty large, and built upon a high Rock, to which there's an Ascent by fifty Steps cut out of it.

New Mexico is commonly divided into 18 *Divisions*. Provinces, inhabited by People of different Languages and Customs. These Provinces, with the Name of a Saint for their Capitals, are,

1. *Los Picuries*, St. *Laurent*.
2. *Xacona*, St. *Dominico*.
3. *Los Teguas*, St. *Alphonse*.
4. *Los Piros*, Sta. *Fé de Grenada*.
5. *Galisteo*, Sta. *Crosse*.
6. *Los Pecos*, *Nosra Seniors de los Angelos*.
7. *Taxica*, St. *Miebael*.
8. *Los Salinas*, *Conception de Querac*.
9. *Los Hemes*, *San Diego*.
10. *Los Ciette Ciudades*, St. *Gregory d'Abo*.
11. *Los Manjos*, or *Baranca*, and *Los Biros*, Sa. *Antony de Senecia*.
12. *Los Taos*, St. *Hierom*.
13. *Los Tanos*, N. *Seniors de Soccora*.
14. *Los Guerres*, St. *Antony de l'Isle*.
15. *Acoma*, St. *Stephen d'Acoma*.
16. *Suni*, St. *Bartholomew de Xongopany*.
17. *Moquy*, St. *Bernardin d'Aquatury*.
18. *Cibola*, *Purification d'Avico*.

To these eighteen some add five others less known.

1. *Tufrian*, Sta *Fé de Pelanossa*.
2. *Cuano* near the Lake *Aro*.
3. *Campana* on the *Vermeille Sea*.
4. *Quivira*. Aad,
5. *Toguaio*.

Some

Some place this Country betwixt Latitude 30 and 40, Longitude 100, and 115. But for our part we can say nothing certain neither about the Situation, nor about the Extent. The Air is temperate, *Situation.* and inclining to cold, but generally esteemed wholesome, except in *September, October, and November,* when it is very foggy, and attended with frequent Hurricanes, besides Thunder and Lightning. The Soil in many Places is fertile, but 'tis generally dry, sandy, and barren. They say that there are Mines of Gold and Silver. This Country being none of the best, and but rarely frequented by Strangers, its *Commodities* are very few, Cattle being the chief or only thing they trade in. Some say there are Sheep as big as Horses; they have *Rarities:* short Tails, and very large Horns. 2. We may reckon as *Rarities* the great Currents, and large Pieces of Ice along the Coasts, which have often driven towards *Japan* the Ships, which were sailing Northwards, in order to discover a shorter Passage from *Europe* into *Asia*.

The Inhabitants are lean, slender, and tawny. They are much given to Hunting and *Inhabitants.* Travelling with their Cattle from Place to Place; are such dextrous Archers, that they can hit a *Real* tofs'd up into the Air; are great Lovers of Mules Flesh, and are very savage. They are still govern'd by their *Caciques*, but those conquer'd by the *Spaniards* are ruled by a particular Governour, sent thither by the King of *Spain*. The Natives are generally gross Idolaters, and many of them have little or no Sign of Religion at all.

Florida was so called by the *Spaniards*, either because at their arrival they found the *Florida's* Country all enamell'd with Flowers, or because *Name.* they discover'd it on *Palm-Sunday*, (which they term *Pascha Florida*.) This Country was first discover'd in 1497, by *Sebastian Cabot*, who, some say, was a *Venetian*, and others, of *Genoese* Extraction, and born at *Bristol*. He was sent out on Discoveries by our King *Henry VII*; but it was more particularly discover'd afterwards by *Pamphile Narvaez*, and *Ferdinand Soto*, with several other *Spaniards* in 1540. The *French* settled also here, and in that Part of it called *Carolina* in 1562. The *French* do now call it *Louisiana*, in honour to *Lewis XIV*, their late King. It has *Canada* on the North, *Carolina* and the *Limits.* *Bahama* Canal on the East the Gulph of *Mex-*

ico on the South, and *New Mexico* on the West. There are several Forts, as *Pensacola*, Lat. 29, Long. 91. the best Harbour in *St. Louis's Bay*, taken from the *Spaniards* by the *French* in 1719. Fort *Louis*, Latitude 31, Longitude 92. *St. Austin*, and *St. Matthew*, on the *Bahama Canal*. This Country is commonly divided into three large Parts. 1. *Apalacho*, Northwards. 2. *Cossa*, Westwards. And, 3. *Togeste*, or *Florida* proper in a *Peninsula* on the East, stretching out Southwards into the Sea like a Coat's Sleeve.

Most Maps extend it from Longitude 83, *Situation.* to 107, and from Latitude 25, to 39: So that it is about a Thousand Miles from East to West, and about nine Hundred from South to North. The *Air* is said to be very temperate, and the *Soil* very fruitful, and would produce all Necessaries, if cultivated. It is also well stored with Venison and Fowl. The Rivers and Sea afford plenty of Fish. 'Tis thought that there are Mines of Silver, Iron, and Lead; for when the *Spaniards* discover'd this Country, they found it govern'd by several Princes, some of whom made them Presents of Silver, Gold, and rich Furs. They found likewise Pearls, Turquoises, Emeralds, Coral, &c. here.

Here grows a certain Tree, as big as an Apple-
Rarities. Tree the Natives use to squeeze out the Juice of its Fruit, and therewith anoint their Arrows, being a rank sort of Poison: If there be no Fruit, then they break off a Branch, and out of it depress a milky Substance, as poisonous as the Fruit it self. This Poison is so strong, that if a little of it be thrown into a large Pond of standing Water, all sorts of Beasts that happen to drink thereof, suddenly swell and burst asunder.

2. Here are also, as 'tis affirmed by many, several *Hermaphrodites*.

They have several Rivers, and among them
Rivers. that of *Mississipi*, or *St. Louis*, which is said to be very long, and to receive several others on both sides. It falls into the Bay of *Mexico* by several Mouths, in Latitude 28 and a half, Longitude in 93 and a half. The Mouth of it is very deep and free from Sands. 'Tis much infested by Crocodiles, and Alligators. The Remembrance of the Name *Mississipi*, is abhorred not only in *France*, but also elsewhere, because of the many Calamities a Company erected under that Name did cause in

in *Europe* in 1720: Their Towns are said to be the most populous of any Country in *America*.

The Natives are naturally White, but by anointing themselves with a certain Ointment, they appear of an Olive-colour. They are tall, strong, well-proportion'd, very nimble, much given to War, *Inhabitants*. Fishing, Swimming, and Hunting. They are divided into several Nations, and reputed to be treacherous to one another. They have but one Wife, but their great Men are allowed several Concubines. They have several different Languages, and are subject to several Lords of their own (called *Paracousis*) who are continually at War with their Neighbours. The *Spaniards* and *French* have some few Colonies on the Sea-Coasts.

The *Floridians* are gross Idolaters; but they worship especially the Sun, which they look *Religion*. upon as the Author of their good Success. They have a great Respect for their Priests, who are generally Physicians, and esteemed Conjurers: They call them *Joana's*, or *Jawa's*. Several Missionaries were sent thither in the Days of *Charles* the Vth, but the *Inhabitants* did soon get rid of them, by serving 'em as the *Spaniards* used to do the *French*, viz. they flead off their Skins.



CHAP.



C H A P. XXIII.
Of CAROLINA and VIR-
GINIA.

*Carolina's
Name.*



CAROLINA was not so called in Honour of his Britannick Majesty, *Charles* the Second, but of *Charles* the Ninth King of France, under whose Reign it was taken away from the Spaniards by the French, who did build there a Fort called *Carolin*. It was discover'd with *Florida*, and was formerly reckon'd part of it. It has the Sea on the East, *Virginia* on the North, the *Apalachian* Mountains separate it from *Florida* on the West, and *Spanish Florida* on the South.

Charles-Town. *Charles-Town*, Latitude 33, at the Conflux of *Ashley* and *Cooper* Rivers, is the chief Town. 'Tis the only free Port in the Province, but no Ships of above two Hundred Tuns can pass the Bar. 'Tis the Market, however, for the whole Product of the Country, and trades near a Thousand Miles into the Continent. 'Tis somewhat fortified, is the Seat of the Governour, Assembly, and Courts of Judicature; and the Inha-

Inhabitants are upwards of three Thousand. There's another Town of the same Name more Northwards.

Carolina is commonly divided by the River *Santee*, (which falls into the Sea, Latitude *Division.* 34) into North *Carolina*, containing the Counties of *Albemarle* and *Clarendon*; and *South Carolina*, containing the Counties of *Craven*, *Berkley*, *Dorchester*, and *Colliton*.

It lies betwixt North Latitude 31, and 37, and Longitude 77 and 85. The greatest Extent *Situation.* South and North is three Hundred and sixty Miles, and East to West much the same, but 'tis contracted by the Mountains and the Sea on the South.

The *Air* is always clear, and temperate, there being no excess of Heat or Cold.

Air.

The *Soil* is, for the most part, very fertile, and produces in great plenty most sorts of Fruits, Roots, Trees, *European* Grain, and excellent Rice.

Soil.

They abound so much in Provisions, that they send their Product to other Places in *America* and *Europe*, but especially to *Jamaica*, *Barbadoes*, the *Leward* Islands; and to *England* they send Rice, *Commodi-* Skins, Pitch and Tar. Their other *ties.* Commodities are Beef, Pork, Corn, Pease, Butter, Tallow, tann'd Leather, Honey, Oil, Olives, Cotton, Silk, Tobacco, Sarsaparilla, Cassia, Turmeric, Snake-root, &c. They have also some Vineyards.

I have not read of any other Rarities to be found here, but a certain Herb called *Carolina*, *Rarities.* remarkable for its long red Roots, which draws upon Paper long red Lines, but does not answer in Dyeing.

The Country abounds with navigable Rivers and Lakes; but they prudently settled on those *Rivers.* first, whose Mouths were narrow or shallow, that the Enemies or Pirates might not easily disturb them by Sea. The Country in general lies conveniently for Trade, and has a pleasant and safe Coast, not stormy, nor frozen in Winter. But they have few Towns, tho' a great many Plantations.

The Natives are divided into several Nations, and as they are courageous, and at continual Wars against one another, their Number is very much diminished; and those that remain are *Inhabitants.* very

very much like the *Floridians*, and keep a good Friendship with the *English*, when they are not wronged. They have a particular *Jargon*, which sounds very harsh to the Ear, and seems very hard to Strangers. The People are here very prolifick, so that many Families have from ten to twelve Children a-piece. The *British* Inhabitants are about twelve Thousand, besides *Negroes*, and *French* Refugees.

This Country was formerly possess'd by the *Government*. *Spaniards*, and then by the *French*, but was claimed by the *English* as part of *Cabot's* Discoveries : But they never took formal possession of it till 1660, when it was abandon'd by the *French*. In 1663, King *Charles* the Second granted it by Patent to the Earl of *Clarendon*, the Duke of *Albemarle*, the Lords *Craven*, *Berkley*, and *Ashley* afterwards Earl of *Shaftsbury*, to Sir *George Carteret*, Sir *William Berkley*, and Sir *John Colliton*. The Laws of *England* are in force here, only the Lords Proprietors are impower'd, together with the Consent of the *British* Assembly, or Parliament there, to make or repeal such By-Laws as shall from time to time be thought expedient, for the better governing of the whole Country, which has two Governors.

Liberty of Conscience is here allowed. The *Religion*. Natives are said to acknowledge one supreme Being, whom they worship under the Name of *Okee*, and to him their Priests do frequently Sacrifice, but they think he takes no Care of human Affairs relying upon lesser Deities, They believe also the *Metempsychosis*.

When Sir *Walter Rawleigh* discover'd this *Virginia's* Country in 1584, in *Queen Elizabeth's* Time, he called it so in Honour of that Queen, who dyed without having been married, and under that Name were included most of our Plantations on the Continent.

It has *Carolina* on the South, the Sea on the East, *Maryland* on the North, and the Country of the *Capital* Natives, and *Apalachean* Mountains on the *Williams-* West. *Williamsburg*, about forty Miles up the River, by the Natives called *Pouchatan*, may be lookt upon as the Capital, because Colonel

Nicholson removed from *James-Town* the Courts of Justice, and the Assembly hither; founded a College, a Town-house, and a Port, and order'd several Streets to be mark'd out in Form

Form of a W; but it was never finish'd, it being the Humour of the *Virginians* to live in their Plantations. This Town contains about 40 Houses. *Virginia* is divided into 24 Counties, but some divide it either according to the Necks of Land, which are the Boundaries of the Escheators, or according to the Rivers, with respect to Shipping and Navigation.

It lies betwixt North Latitude 37, and 40, and Longitude 80 and 83; and the Length *Situation.* and Breadth are about two Hundred and fifty Miles each, tho' some extend the Boundaries Westwards as far as *California*.

This Country is happily situated, betwixt the Extreams of Heat and Cold, but inclining *Air.* rather to the first. In *December, January, February, and March*, and when the Wind comes from the high North-West Mountains, which are supposed to retain vast Magazines of Snow, then the Air is very cold and piercing; but in *June, July, and August*, the Heats are excessive; but they have frequent refreshing Showers, cool Breezes, and shady Woods and Groves. Here are terrible Claps of Thunder sometimes, but they seldom do any harm. The Rain falls sometimes in such a Quantity in *September*, that it causes great Inundations, and epidemical Distempers. As for the Moistness of the Country, it is probably occasion'd by the abundance of low Grounds, Marshes, Creeks, and Rivers, which are every where among the lower Settlements, but more backward into the Woods, they have abundance of dry and high Ground, where there are only chrystal Streams of Water, which divide themselves into innumerable Branches, to moisten and enrich the adjacent Lands.

The *Soil* is generally sandy, but of such a variety, according to the different *Situation* of it, that one Part or other of it seems fitted to every *Soil.* sort of Plant which is requisite either for the the Benefit, or Pleasure of Mankind. They have, especially in the upper Parts, Coals and Wood for Firing, Slate for Covering, Stones for Building, and flat Paving, as likewise pebble Stones in vast Quantities.

Their chief Trade is in Tobacco, Cattle, Provisions, Skins of Deer, Beaver, and others. *Commodities.* The Commodities sent hither, are Linnen, Silks, East-India Goods, Wine, Brandy, and all

forts of Cloth, Haberdashery Ware, Tools for Agriculture and Planting.

Such is the prodigious Multitude of Oyster-Rarities. shells, intermixt with the Earth in *Virginia*, that in some Places they are found three or four Yards deep in the Ground, where lying close together, they are said to petrify, and seem to make a Vein of Rock, but whether the Parts of that Rock, are really the Shells of Oysters, there left by the Sea, (which some suppose to have once cover'd this Tract of Land) or a sort of Stones, is not certainly known; but the first is more likely, because,

2. In some lesser Banks of Shells are found Teeth, (about two or three Inches long, and one broad) supposed to be those of Fishes; and in other Parts are dug up the Bones of Whales, several Yards deep, and that many Leagues from the Sea.

3. Near the River *Patomeck* is a sort of aluminous Earth, of an Ash-colour, very soft and light, and of an acid, astringent Taste, almost like that of Alum.

4. In many Parts of this Country is found a certain sort of Squirrel, which at its pleasure can stretch out the Skin of its Sides, Thighs, and Legs, about an Inch in breadth (almost like the Wings of a Bat) by the help of which he leaps farther, and alights more surely, than the ordinary sort, and therefore is called, *The flying Squirrel*.

5. The *Sugar-Tree* yields a kind of Sap or Juice, which by boiling is made into Sugar: This Juice is drawn out by wounding the Body of the Tree, and placing a Receiver under the Wound.

6. The *Mock-Bird* loves Society so well, that whenever they see any Men, they will perch on a Tree by 'em, and sing sweetly: But what is the most remarkable in those melodious Animals, they will frequently fly at a small Distance before a Traveller, warbling out their Notes during several Miles, so that by their Musick they make a Man forget the Fatigues of his Journey.

The East-side of this Country, as well as *Rivers. Maryland*, lies on the great Bay of *Chesapeake*, which is more like a River than a Bay; for it runs up into the Land above two Hundred Miles. It is almost every where fourteen Miles broad, but the Passage for Ships not above five, there being Shoals of Sand on both sides. It receives abundance of Rivers, as

Patowmeck

Petowmeck, James, or Powhatan, and York Rivers. The Coast is very safe, and has a good Anchorage all along upon it, and there are a great many good and convenient Harbours; all that would be a great Advantage to the Inhabitants for their Trade; but by reason of the unfortunate Method of the Settlement, and want of Cohabitation (being in Colonies scatter'd up and down, and far from one another) they can make but a small Advantage of their Flax, Hemp, Cotton, Silk, Silk-Grafs, and Wool, which might otherwise supply their Necessities, and leave the Produce of Tobacco to enrich 'em, when a gainful Market can be found for it. Lastly, The Inhabitants depending altogether upon the Liberality of Nature, without endeavouring to improve its Gifts by Art or Industry, they make use of the Industry of *England* for all those things.

The Inhabitants are divided into the *Natives*, and the *English* with their Slaves. The *Natives*, when the *English* came hither, were able to bring thirty Thousand Men into the Field, from their twenty Nations, but now they are almost wasted either by War, or by retiring farther into the inland Parts, or by their being destroy'd by the far more remote *Indians*, who hate them mortally; or because these Western Parts of *America* were never so populous as the Eastern, which is a very likely Proof that the first Inhabitants of *America* came from *Asia*. However, these remaining, when grown up, are of a brown, tawny Colour, but much clearer in their Infancy; but their Skin comes afterwards to harden, and grow blacker by greasing and sunning themselves. They have generally Coal-black Hair, and very black Eyes; which are most commonly graced with that sort of Squint which many of the *Jews* are observed to have. They are of the middling and largest Stature of the *English*, stait and well-proportion'd, having the cleanest and most exact Limbs in the World; because at their Birth, the first thing done to 'em, is to dip them over Head and Ears in cold Water, and then to bind them naked to a convenient Board, having a Hole fitly placed for Evacuation; but Cotton, or other soft thing for the Body to rest easy on, is always put betwixt the Child and the Board.

Their Women are generally beautiful, possessing an uncommon Delicacy of Shape and Features, and want no Charm but that of a fair Complexion; for they are full of Spirit,

and, consequently always inspired with Mirth and good Humour. They are extremely given to Laughter, which they do with a Grace not to be resisted; but for all that, they are very chaste, but all of them Men and Women are much addicted to Revenge, and very exact in vindicating the death of a Friend. They spend most of their Lives in Hunting wild Beasts, &c.

They have two particular Customs, viz.

Customs.

1. They erect Altars where-ever they have any particular Occasion; and when they travel by any of these Altars, they take great care to instruct their Children and young People, in the particular Occasion and Time of their Erection; and never forget to recommend unto them the Respect which they ought to have for 'em. So that their careful Observance of these Traditions prove as good a Memorial of those Antiquities, as written Records could be, especially, as long as the same People continue to inhabit in, or near the same Place.

2. They have also a Solemnity called *Huskanawing*, which is commonly practised once every fourteen or fifteen Years, or oftner, as their young Men happen to grow up. 'Tis an Institution, or Discipline, which all young Men must pass before they can be admitted to the Number of the great Men, or *Cockarouses* of the Nation. The whole Ceremony is performed after the following manner.

The choicest and briskest young Men of the Town, but such only as have acquired some Treasure by their Travels, or Hunting, are chosen out by the Rulers to be *Huskanawd*, and whoever refuses to undergo this Process, must not remain among them. Then they have several odd Preparatories, but the principal Part of the Business is to carry the young Men into the Woods, and there keep them under Confinement, and destitute of all Society for several Months, giving them no other Sustenance, but the Infusion, or Decoction of some poysonous, intoxicating Roots: By Virtue of this Physick, and by the Severity of the Discipline which they undergo, they become stark-staring Mad. During this raving Condition, they are kept in a sort of Cage for eighteen or twenty Days. Upon this Occasion 'tis pretended, that these poor Creatures drink so much of that Water of *Lethe*, called *Wysoccan*, that they perfectly lose the Remembrance of all former Things, even of their Parents, of their Treasure, and Language.

When

When the Doctors think that they have drank sufficiently of the *Wyfoccan*, they gradually restore 'em to their Senses again, by lessening the intoxicating Power of their Diet ; but before they are perfectly well, they bring them back into their Towns, while they are still wild and crazy

After this, they are very fearful of discovering any thing of their former Remembrance : For if such a thing should happen to any one of 'em, they must be immediately *Huskanaw'd* again ; and then the Usage is so severe, that they seldom escape alive.

Thus they must forget every thing, and learn it again, as if they were newly born, Now, whether this be real, or counterfeit, 'tis not known ; but certain it is, that they will not for some time take notice of any thing, or of any body they were before acquainted with, being still under the Guard of their Keepers, who constantly wait upon 'em every where, till they have learned all things perfectly over again.

Thus they unlive their former Lives, and commence Men by forgetting that they have ever been Boys.

As those that are thus *Huskanaw'd*, are lively, handsome, well-timber'd young Men, and such as are generally reputed rich, some think it to be an Invention of the Seniors, to engross the young Men's Riches to themselves : For after this Operation they never give any Sign that they remember any thing of their former Properties ; and their Goods are either shared among the old Men, or applied to some publick Use.

But the *Indians* detest this Opinion, and pretend, That this violent Method of taking away the Memory from young Men, is to release 'em from all their childish Impressions, and from that strong Partiality for Persons and Things, which is contracted before Reason comes to take place. They hope to root out thereby all the unreasonable Prepossessions, which are fixt in the Minds of Children : So that when the young Men come to themselves again, their Reason may act freely, without being byas'd by the Allurements of Custom and Education. They are also discharged from the remembrance of any Ties of Blood, and are establish'd in a State of Equality, and perfect Freedom, to order their Actions, and dispose of their Persons as they think fit, without any other controul, than that of the Law of Nature. By this means also they become qualify'd, when in any publick Offices, equally and impartially to administer

minister Justice, without having any respect either to Friend or Relation.

Language. Their Language differs very much, so that Nations at a moderate distance do not understand one another. However, they have a sort of general Language, which is understood by the chief Men of many Nations, and in which they perform their Adorations and Conjurations.

Government. These *Indians* having no sort of Letters among them, they have no written Laws; nor did the Constitution they were found in by *Europeans*, seem to need any. Nature, and their own Conveniencies, having taught 'em to obey one Chief, who is Umpire of all things among them. All Lands are common. Their Titles of Honour were *Cockarouse*, and *Warrouance*, besides that of the *King* and *Queen*. A *Cockarouse* is one that has the Honour to be of the King or Queen's Council, with relation to the Affairs of Government; and has a great Share in the Administration. A *Warrouance* is a military Officer, who takes upon him the Command of all Parties, either of Hunting, Travelling, Warring, or the like, the Word signifying,

Populoufness. Captain. The Natives were formerly able to bring twenty Thousand Men to the Field, from their twenty Nations, but now they cannot raise five Hundred. But the Whole of the *English*, and those who are subject to them in this Country, was computed to seventy Thousand People in 1703. The Administration is by a Governour sent from the Crown of *Great Britain*, who with his Council named by the King, is entrusted with the executive Power, but the Legislature is in the Assembly, with the Governor's Consent, ratify'd by the Prince. The Governour can pardon any Crime, but Murder, for which he can only Reprieve till the King's Pleasure be known. He calls, prorogues, and dissolves the Assembly; summons, and presides in Council. His Salary, and Perquisites amounts to 3000*l*, per *Ann*. The rest of the Government and Laws, is much like that of *England*; and they have a Representation of the *British* Government, the Governour being as the King, the Council as the Lords, and the Lower-House of the Assembly, consisting of two Deputies from each County, and one for *James-Town*, 51 in all, like the *British* House of Commons.

The Natives never go about any considerable Enterprize, without first consulting their Priests *Religion.* and Conjurors; for the most ingenious among them are brought up to those Functions, and thereby become better instructed in their History, and the Knowledge of Nature, than the rest of the People; so that they are of great Authority here, as elsewhere, by which means, and the help of the First-Fruits, and frequent Offerings, they riot in the Fat of the Land, and grow Rich from the Spoils of their ignorant Country-men, some of whom have been converted to Christianity. Most of the *English* are of the Church of *England*, and there are forty-nine Parishes, most of which have their own Ministers. There are also two *Presbyterian*, and three *Quakers* Meetings here.





C H A P. XXIV.

Of MARYLAND, and PEN-
SILVANIA.

F We have been a little too long in the last Chapter, about *Virginia*, it was to avoid vain Repetitions in this, and some of the following Chapters,

Maryland was formerly Part of *Virginia*, and was so called in Honour of *Queen Mary*, Wife to *K. Charles the First*, who gave it by Letters Patents, under that Name, to *Cecilius Calvert*, Lord *Baltimore*, in 1632, to be held in common Soccage, paying for the same, two Arrows of the Country, at *Windsor-Castle*, and the fifth Part of all Gold and Silver Ore found in the Province. It has *Virginia* on the South, Part of *Canada* on the West, *Pensilvania* on the North, and the *St. Mary's*. Ocean on the East. *St. Mary's Town* is the Capital, and stands on *St. George's River*, near *Chesapeak Bay*, Lat. 38, Longitude 76. It has about sixty Houses,

Houses, and was formerly the Seat of the Government, and of the Assembly, which has been transferred to *Annapolis* in the County of *Arundel*, a Port-Town, consisting of forty Houses. There are some other small Towns. *Maryland* is divided into ten Counties, five on the East of *Chesapeak Bay*, viz. *Cecil*, *Dorchester*, *Kent*, *Somerset*, and *Talbot*; five on the West, viz. *Ann*, *Arundel*, *Baltimore*, *Calvert*, and *Charles* and *Mary*.

It lies on the N. of *Virginia*, betwixt N. Lat. 37, and 40. 'Tis about 180 Miles from South *Situation*. to North. The *Air* was at first very dangerous for the *English*; but after the Country was cleared by cutting Woods, the Agues are neither so epidemical, nor so mortal as they were before. The *Soil* is generally sandy, and free from Stones; and for Product is much the same with *Virginia's*. 'Tis well Water'd, and Woody. They have some Poplar-Trees, and Laurels that bear Flowers like a *Tulip*; and a Myrtle-Tree, which has *Rarities*. a Berry that makes a sort of Green Wax, very proper for Candles, if mixed with Tallow.

Lastly. Of the several rare crustaceous Animals found in this Country, that called the *Signonoe* is the most observable, especially for the wonderful Contrivance of its Eyes; for they being placed under the Cover of a thick Shell, Nature (whose Operations are admirable) has so order'd the matter, that those Parts above the Eyes are transparent enough to convey a Competency of Light, whereby the otherwise benighted Animal can clearly see its Way.

The chief Rivers are *Patowmeck*, *Patuxen*, and *Chesapeak Bay*. *Rivers*.

The Natives are so diminished by Civil *Inhabitants*. Wars, that 'tis thought they do not now amount to above five Hundred fighting Men; and in 1708, the *English* Inhabitants were computed at 30000. They are of various Persuasions. After the *Revolution* in 1688, Protestant Governours were *Government*. appointed instead of the *Popish* Lord *Baltimore*, who was nevertheless allowed to enjoy his Estate here, and the Duty settled on him by the Assemblies. The Governour with his Council, and Lords of Mannors, make a House of Lords, and the Lower-house is formed of the Representatives from each County.

Pensylvania is so called from the late *William Pen*, a famous *Quaker*, Son to Sir *William Pen*, who was Admiral for

*Penslvania's
Name.*

for the *Rump*, and afterwards commanded under the Duke of York, in the first *Dutch* War in 1664. In consideration of his Services, the Son obtained a Patent of this Country in 1680, which the *English* had taken from the *Dutch* in 1655, then called *New Belgium*. It has *Maryland* on the South, *New Jersey* on the East, and part of *Canada* on the North and West.

Philadelphia, Latitude 41, and Longitude 77, is the Capital of the Country. It lies commodiously betwixt the Rivers *De la war* and *Skoolkill*. 'Tis three Quarters of a Mile long, with good Houses, many Ware-houses, and convenient Wharfs. The Town consists of twelve Hundred Houses, which have large Orchards and Gardens, and are inhabited by rich Traders. In the Center of the Town there's a Square of ten Acres, for the *Stat-House*, *Market-House*, *School*, and *Quakers Meeting-House*. Those of the Church of *England* have a large Church, and are reckon'd about seven Hundred. The *Swedes* have also a Church here. There are several other lesser Towns, as *German-Town*, *Chester*, *New-Castle*, &c.

Penslvania is divided into six Counties, viz. *Philadelphia*, *Bucks*, *Chester*, *Newcastle*, *Kent*, and *Suffex*. It lies betwixt Latitude 40, and 44; and the Grant makes it about three Hundred and thirty Miles in length, and 200 in breadth. The Air

is here sweet and clear: In Winter 'tis sometimes very cold; and in *July*, *August*, and *September*, the Heat is extraordinary, but qualify'd by cold Breezes: So that, except it be for about a Week, 'tis not much hotter here than in *England*. The Wind blows then South-West, but at other Seasons 'tis generally North-West. Mists and Fogs are occasion'd by East and South Winds, which blow but a little while at a time, and that very seldom. The Soil is good, and produces most of the things that grow in *England*. It yields generally from forty to sixty Fold. They send Corn, Horses, Beef, Pork, Fish, Hides, Tallow, Sheep, Wool, and Pipe-staves, to our Sugar-Islands, in exchange for their Growth, which they carry to *England*, and make their Return in *English* Goods. The Country has many Mines.

Soil.

*Commodi-
ties.*

The

The Inhabitants are of several Religions and Nations, but the *English* are the more numerous ; and the greatest Religious Body of one Denomination, is *Quakers*. The *Europeans* and their *Negroes* are reckon'd thirty-five Thousand, and the native *Indians* about six Thousand. But scarce a thirtieth Part of the Province is inhabited, but what is so, is better cleared than any other Part of *America* possessed by the *English*. Inhabitants.

The Governour sent by the Proprietor (but as I think now by the Crown) with the six *Governor* Deputies sent by each County, make Laws, and the other Parts of the Government are like that in *England*, by *Sheriffs*, &c.





C H A P. XXV.

Of NEW-JERSEY, and NEW-YORK.



S these two small Countries were formerly known under the general Name of *New Netherlands*, divided into *New Holland*, now called *New-York*; and *New-Sweden*, now called *New Jersey*, we shall make but one Chapter of them both; and of *New-Jersey* we shall say but little, being in other Respects very much like *New-York*, of which it was a Part in the Grant given by King *Charles II.* to his Brother the Duke of *York*, who afterwards granted it by Charter to the Lord *Berkley*, and Sir *George Carteret*. They assigned it to *William Pen*, and three other Gentlemen, but it was afterwards shared out to other Purchasers.

New Jersey. *New Jersey*, is so called from the *Island Jersey* in the *British Channel*, and that either because People of that *European Island* were the first Planters thereof, or in Honour to the *Earl of Jersey*, who was King *Charles the Second's* great Favourite. It has *New-York*, and the Sea on the East, the *Indians Country*,

try on the North, *Pensylvania*, and part of *Maryland* on the West, and the Sea on the South. 'Tis divided into *East* and *West*: This last is not so well planted as the other. 'Tis about two Hundred and sixty Miles South to North, but the breadth not proportionable. The chief Towns are *Elizabeth*, and *Berghen*. The Natives are reckon'd about two Hundred, and are helpful to the *English*, who are reckon'd about twelve Thousand. Their chief Trade is in exporting Provisions, Furs, Skins, and Tobacco, to the *Sugar-Islands*, *England*, *Portugal*, *Spain*, and the *Canaries*. The Soil is in general very fertile in this Province.

This Country is divided into a certain Number of Shares or Properties, out of which *Government* is annually chosen a Free-holder; and these Free-holders meet at a certain Time, of the Year, as a General Assembly, or compleat Representative Body of the whole Colony. In that Assembly, together with the Governour, or his Deputy (*now*) sent from His *Britannick* Majesty, is lodged the Legislative Power in making or repealing Laws, but still with this Restriction, that they no ways infringe that Liberty of Conscience at first established, and that by an irrevocable Fundamental Constitution, never to be alter'd by any subsequent Law whatsoever.

New-York was discover'd in 1608, by Captain *Hudson*, and by him sold to the *Dutch*, *New-York's* who kept Possession thereof, until 1664, under *Name*. the Name of *New Belgium*, but their Title being disputable, Sir *Richard Car* reduced it, and *Charles* the Second granted it to his Brother the *Duke of York*, from whom it has the present Name. It was yielded to the *English* Crown by the Treaty of *Breda*, in 1667. *New-York* has *New-England* on the East, the Country of the *Iroquois* on the North, *New Jersey* on the West, and the Ocean on the South.

New-York, the Capital, was built by the *Dutch*, and called *New Amsterdam*; it lies on *Ch. Town*. the River *Hudson*; the Houses are of Brick and Stone, handsomely built, cover'd with red and black Tile. The Situation being high, it makes a very fine Prospect. It consists of about a Thousand Houses, and has a very fine *English* Church, a *Dutch*, a *French*, and a *Lutheran* Church. *James* Fort commands the River and Town, and lies in
an

An Island, Lat. 41. The Town is the Seat of the Governor, and the Place where the Assembly meets.

Air. The Province lies betwixt Lat. 41, and 44, parallel with Part of the Kingdom of *Naples*; 'tis hotter in Summer, and colder in Winter than in any *European* Countries in the same Latitude. The Soil of this Country, and some adjacent Islands, is so fruitful, that one Bushel of *English* Wheat has produced an hundred.

Their chief Commodities are Tobacco, Skins of Beaver, Otters, Bears, Elks, Racoons, and other Furs, for which the *English* and *Dutch* Trade with the Natives. And the *English* carry from hence to the Sugar-Islands, Horses, Beef, Pork, Corn, Butter and Cheese; for Sugar, Molosses, Rum, &c. and drive a profitable Commerce to *Madera* and the *Azores*, with Pipe-Staves and Fish; for Wine and Brandy.

Rarities. In several Places in *New-York*, especially near the Banks of the River *Connecticut*, grows a sort of *Snake-weed*, whose Root is much esteemed against the biting of *Rattle-Snakes*: Being pulveriz'd, it has an excellent flagrant Smell, and a good aromatick Taste.

2. Here, and in *New-Jersey*, is also that huge Creature called the *Moose*, of whose Skin they make excellent Buff. I suppose that 'tis this Beast, which when hunted by Dogs, is reported to defend it self by vomiting out an hot scalding Liquor upon them.

The Natives are, by mortal Diseases, and frequent Wars among themselves, reduced to a small Number. They are very serviceable to the *English*, and spend most of their Time in Hunting, Fowling, and Fishing, especially the Men, who remove from Place to Place, and leave their Wives for tilling the Ground, and planting the Corn. They are of late much given to drinking.

When Criminals were condemned to death, they used to hunt them in the Woods like wild Beasts, the King shooting first, and the People after; and happy the Man that could give the Malefactor his Death's Wound, for he was sure of a Preferment.

They are Govern'd by their *Sachems*, and are addicted to the blackest Idolatry, worshipping the Devil under the Name of *Monetto*, to whom they frequently address themselves.

selves with some magical Rites, and their Priests called *Pawas* act as so many Conjurors.

The *English* are reckon'd eight Thousand, and are ruled like *New-Jersey*.

Long-Island belongs to this Province, is an Hundred and fifty Miles long, and twelve broad. It has convenient Harbours, and small desert Islands on the East-Coast, and most of the Inhabitants are *Independants* and *Quakers*.

Long-Island.



CHAP.



C H A P. XXVI.
 OF NEW-ENGLAND.

*New-
 England's
 Name.*



NEW-ENGLAND was discovered by the two *Cabots*, in 1497, and afterwards taken possession of for Queen *Elizabeth* in 1568, by Sir *Philip Amundson*, and *Arthur Barlow*, and by them called *New-England*:

But some say that King *James I.* gave it that Name in 1614, when it was then, and afterwards, planted by several *Dissenters*. Under this Name are sometimes comprehended *New-York*, *Virginia*, &c. But that Country which is properly now called *New-England*, has *Acadia*, or *Nova-Scotia* on the North-East, the Sea on the South and East, *New-York* on the South-West, and *Canada*, or the Country of the *Savages*, on the North.

Boston.

Boston in *Suffolk County*, is the Capital of the whole Province, and the largest Town in *America*, except some belonging to the *Spaniards*.

niards. It lies on the Coast conveniently for Trade, and is defended by a strong Castle in an Island at the Mouth of the Harbour; and on the Shore, by Forts on the neighbouring Hills, which command the Avenues. Here are many fine Buildings. It has handsome Streets; and the Inhabitants are reckon'd about twelve Thousand. It loads 3 or 400 Ships in a Year with Lumber, Beef, Pork, &c. for *Europe*, and other Parts of *America*. The Harbour is good and capable of five Hundred Sail. Here's a Market every *Tuesday*. 'Tis the Seat of the Governour, of the Assembly, and of the Courts of Justice; and for the Beauty of its Structures, and great Trade, gives place to few in *England*.

Cambridge on the North Branch of *Charles River*, about seven Miles from *Boston*, is the Capital of *Middlesex* County. It has several fine Streets *Cambridge*. and Houses, and is an University, which consists of *Harvard-College*, and *Stoughton-Hall*. It is a Corporation made up of a President, or Rector, two Fellows, and a Treasurer. The Income of *Charles-Town* Ferry is settled upon it, and several Gentlemen both in *Old* and *New-England*, have contributed towards its Revenues and Library. There are about four Hundred Students, and they give the same Degrees as our Universities in *England*. There are several other Towns in *New-England*, which does not a little contribute to the peopling and enriching the Colony.

New-England is divided into Three Colonies, or Provinces, which are sub-divided into Counties and Parishes, &c. as follows: *Division.*

I. *Massachusetts* Colony, retains its *Indian* Name; is the largest, and the most populous, being an Hundred and ten Miles long, and eight where broadest. The Counties here, are,

1. *Main*, in which there are five Towns, and four Ministers.

Cornwal, five Towns, and as many Ministers.

3. *Essex*, seventeen Towns, and twenty Ministers.

4. *Middlesex*, twenty-one Towns, and eighteen Ministers.

5. *Suffolk*, thirteen Towns, and nineteen Ministers.

6. *Hampshire*, eight Towns, and six Ministers.

II. *Plimouth* Colony is the oldest, and about one Hundred Miles long, and fifty broad, and divided into three Counties.

1. *Plimouth* proper, six Towns, and seven Ministers.

2. *Barnstable*, six Towns and Ministers.

3. *Bristol*, four Towns, and three Ministers.

III. *Connecticut* Colony is about seventy Miles long, and fifty broad, and divided into the four following Counties :

1. *New London* contains nine Towns, and eight Ministers.

2. *Hartford*, eleven Towns, and twelve Ministers.

3. *New-Haven*, six Towns, and six Ministers.

4. *Fairfield*, nine Towns and Ministers.

New-England lies betwixt North Latitude 41, and 46, and Longitude 66, and 77. The greatest length

Situation. from South to North, is above three Hundred Miles along the Coast, and from East to West about two Hundred and fifty ; but in some

Air. Places 'tis not above eighty : But though it be more Southern than *Old England*, yet it is not hotter, because refreshed by frequent cooling Breezes. And 'tis observed, that the Climate is so agreeable to the *English*, that 'tis now the most numerous and flourishing Colony they have in *America*.

The *Soil* is generally fruitful, and produces in great plenty most sorts of *English* Grain, Fruits and Roots, besides *Indian* Corn. They have all sorts of *European* Cattle, and several wild Beasts, as Lions, Bears, &c. They are also very well stock'd with Fish, and wild and tame Fowl. Here are also Mines of Iron and Copper ; and Oaks and Firs in such plenty, as might furnish Materials for our Navy.

Their chief Trade is in building Ships, felling Naval Stores, and all manner of Provisions, with Pipe-staves, and Hoops to the Sugar-islands, &c. from whence they have in return Sugar, Molosses, Rum, Ginger, Indico, Tobacco, and Cotton ; and what they don't consume at Home, they export to *England*, from whence they are furnished with their chief Materials for Apparel, Tools for Mechanicks, and hard Ware, &c. They trade also in Peltry.

Rarities. In several parts of this Country there grows a certain Fruit (called the *Butter-Nut*) so termed, because of the Nature of its Kernel, which yields a kind of sweet Oil, which has the Taste of Butter.

2. In *Baker's Cave*, about an Hundred and fifty Miles to the Eastwards of *Boston*, is found the *Scarlet Mussle*, whose purple Vein being prickt with a Pen, yields a Liquor of a fine purple Colour, which gives so deep a Die, that no Water is able to wash it away.

3. About eighty Miles North-East of *Scarborough* is a Ridge of Mountains, about three Hundred Miles in length, and known under the Name of *White Mountains*, because their Tops are cover'd with Snow all the Year round. On the highest there's a large Plain, and at the farthest End of it a natural rocky Pyramid (vulgarly call'd the *Sugar-Loaf*) to the uppermost part of which one may easily ascend by a continual Seat of natural Steps, which wind about the Rock, and mount up to the very Top, where there's another Plain of about an Acre of Ground, and in the middle of it a deep Pond of clear Water.

4. On the Sea-side, near *New-Haven*, is a large Bed of Sand, of a perfect Black Colour, with many Grains of Red and White intermixt

5. Among several rare Birds, the most remarkable are the *Troculus*, and the *Humming-Bird*. The former is as big as a Swallow, and is remarkable for three Things. 1. It has very short Legs, and hardly able to support it; but Nature has provided it with sharp-pointed Feathers in its Wings, and by darting them against a Wall, it sticks fast, and rests securely. 2. He uses, like the Swallows, to build its Nest in the Tops of Chimneys, but so that it hangs down about a Yard long. 3. These Birds are remarkable for their Ceremony at parting; for it has been observed, that when they remove, they never fail to leave one of their Young behind in the room where they have nested, making thereby, as it were, a grateful Acknowledgment to the Landlord for their Summer's Lodging.

As for the *Humming-Bird*, 'tis remarkable for being the least of all Birds. Its Nest is like a bottom of soft Silk, and its Eggs are no larger than a white Pea, of an ordinary Size.

Lastly, Here, and in several Parts of *America*, they have Plants of great Vertue. As, 1. *Anti-Erysipelas*, efficacious in curing Inflammations. A chymical Oyl extracted from it, taken inwardly, does Wonders in absorbing scorbutick Salts: 2. Another Plant, called *Partridge-Berries*, is excellent against the Dropsie: You must drink the Leaves as you do Tea. 3. The *Bleeding Root* cures the Jaundice

in five or six Days. 4. The Decoction of the *Cancer Root*, the *Devil's Bit*, and of the *Boar's Thistle*, is a Cure for the King's-Evil; a small Quantity being drank every Day, and the bruised Roots applyed to the scrophulous Tumours. 5. The Root of the Plant called by the Indians *Tantutti-pang*, is infallible for the *Lues Veneræa*. See *Philosophical Transactions*.

Rivers they have pretty many, but the most considerable are *Connecticut*, *Meermack*, *Hudson's*, &c.

The Natives are divided into several Tribes, like the *Tartars*: Some, viz. the *Churchers*, *Tarentines*, and *Monhegans*, live on the East, or North-East. Others, viz. the *Peques*, and *Naragansets*, on the South; the *Connecticuts*, and *Mowpicks*, on the West; the *Aberginians*, *Massachusets*, *Wittanaps*, and *Tarentines* on the North; and the *Pecanois* on the West of *Plimouth Colony*.

They are generally thus characteris'd: They are crafty, timorous, cruel, and revengeful, when they find an Opportunity. Some of them are of a mild Temper, ingenious, and quick of Apprehension. They furnish the *English* with Peltry. They are not able to raise ten Thousand Men. The Converts, and their Offspring, were a few Years ago reckon'd at about four Thousand. Such of 'em as continue Pagans, are very much civiliz'd, and affect to imitate the *English*.

Their *Language* is said to be a Dialect of the *Tartarian*, and their Words are very long. They are subject unto their *Sachems* and *Sagamores*, who are absolute over the others. But the *English* have the same Laws as in *Old England*; and most of 'em are *Presbyterians* and *Independants*, whose Ancestors retired thither in the Reign of *K. James I.* but of late most of 'em are turned Church-men.

Acadia, or *Nova Scotia*, (part of it on the North-East being a *Peninsula*) lies North-East from *Acadia*, or *New-England*, betwixt Latitude 45, and 50, *Nova Scotia*. and is about three Hundred Miles from South to North, and somewhat more from East to West. It was once inhabited by a *Scotch Colony* in 1622, but the *French* seized it, and were driven away by the *English*, who restored it to the *French* by the Treaty of *Breda*; but by that of *Utrecht*, it was yielded to the *English*. They say,

say, that 'tis extream cold here for three Months in Winter; but the Climate is otherwise pretty temperate, the Air good, and the Country has good Accommodations for Fishing, Hunting, and Fowling; and is as well furnished with Materials for building Ships as *Norway*; and their Oak is reckon'd better than that of *Europe*. This Country is not well inhabited, nor cultivated, because of the *Indians*, who are no Friends to the *English*: These *Indians* are the *Souriquois*, *Etechemins*, and *Micmaques*. The only Place of Note here, is *Port Royal*, now called *Annapolis Royal*, on the East-side of a Bay, Latitude 45, Longitude 63. The Town is little, and contains but few Houses; but here is a fine Bason, six Miles long, and three broad, capable of a Thousand Ships. The chief Trade is in Skins, which the Natives truck for *European* Goods. *Long Island* lies off of *Port Royal* at a small distance. Some say it has a Silver Mine, and one of Copper, so rich, that the *French* reckon'd it contained much Gold. They also found Diamonds here, and very fine blue Stones, as good as *Turquoises*.

New Britain is also called *Terra de Labrador*, and *Estotiland*. It lies on the North of *Canada* and *Newfound-Land*, betwixt Lat. *New Britannia*. 50, and 63. 'Tis of a vast extent, and claimed by the *English* as discover'd by *Cabot*, but the *French* claim it as part of *Canada*. The Country is very cold, and overrun with Woods, Hills and Rivers. 'Tis but little known. The *English* and *French* have some Forts on the Sea-coasts and Rivers.

Hudson's Bay was discover'd by *Henry Hudson*, an *Englishman*, in several Voyages from 1607, to 1610; and part of it by *Sir Thomas Button*. This *Hudson's Bay*, as far as known, lies betwixt Latitude 52 Bay. and 66; and the greatest length is about eight Hundred and forty Miles, and the greatest breadth four Hundred. It has been often taken and retaken by the *French* and *English*, but at last restored to us by the Treaty of *Utrecht*.

Canada, or *New France*, is so called from the River *St. Lawrence*, by the *Indians*, called *Canada*; and in a general Acception, 'tis very large, and comprehends most of the Countries on the North-West of *North America*; but in a narrower Signification it contains those Countries which the *French* are,

are, or pretend to be possess'd of in North *America*, whose Limits are reported to be *New Britain* on the North, the Ocean, and the *English* Plantations on the East, *Florida*, and *New Spain* on the South, *New Mexico*, and unknown Countries, on the West.

Quebec, the Capital, lies on the North side of the River *St. Laurence*, Latitude 46, 42, Longitude 69, Capital, 40, three Hundred Miles from the Mouth of *Quebec*. the River. 'Tis divided into the upper and lower Tower Town. The Merchants live in the latter for the sake of the Harbour. Both of them are three Miles round, commanded by a Castle. 'Tis pretty strong, the Seat of a Bishop, a Governour, and of a sovereign Council. The *English* besieged it in 1713, but because of the Currents, and stormy Weather, the Fleet returned home, after having suffer'd considerably.

Canada was discover'd in 1504, by some *Louisiana*. French Fishermen driven thither from *Little Britain* in a Storm; but no Colonies were sent thither till 1604. As for *Louisiana*, or West *Canada*, it was discover'd about 1678, by Mr. *Robert Cavalier de la Salle*, a Native of *Rouen*, and Governour of Fort *Frontenac*.

In this Country is the River *Mississippi*, whose Remembrance will be abhorred in future Ages, not only in *France*, but also in other Countries, because of the many Calamities which a Company erected under that Name, did cause in *Europe* in 1720. This Country is said to be very good, but nothing near to what it was said then in *France*, tho' it may be advantageous for Trading in the more Western unknown Parts of North *America*, especially if the River *Mississippi* be so long, and so far navigable, as 'tis reported.

As for *Canada* in general, it lies from North Latitude 30, to 55, and so is near two Thousand *Canada's* Miles in length, and the breadth above eight *Situation.* Hundred. The Country being full of Woods, Lakes, and Rivers, the Air thereof is colder than it would otherwise be. The Soil is not very fertile, and produces only a little Corn, Flax and Pulse, in those Parts which the *French* have clear'd. They have a great many Elks, Mooses, Buffaloes, and Bevers. Their other Commodities are Cod and Whales, for which the *French* give

give to the *Indians*, Corn and Flax, Hard-ware, strong Liquors, Cloth, and Fire-Arms.

This Country is full of Lakes and Rivers. The chief River is,

1. That of *St. Lawrence*, which falls into the Sea after a Course of above two Thousand Miles. It receives many other Rivers on both sides, *Lakes and* and has a Communication with all the *Rivers*. great Lakes, West of it. But there are many Cataracts in those Rivers, so that none but the *Coueurs de Bois* (a sort of native Rangers, or Pedlars, whom the *French* employ to bring them Furs) know how to trade in them, by having little Vessels ready at the several Falls for their Goods and Passages.

The chief Lakes are,

1. That called the *Upper Lake*, or *Nadoussious*, or *Traci*, lies betwixt Latitude 49, and 52, and Longitude 87 and 96. 'Tis eighteen Hundred Miles in compass, contains several Islands, and falls into the Lake *Hurons*; but is un-navigable, because of its Rocks and rapid Stream.

2. The *Illinois*, or Lake *Dauphin*, lies betwixt Latitude 42 and 48, and Longitude 89, and 93, sixty Miles South of the former, is fifteen Hundred Miles round, falls into that of the *Hurons*, and lies in an admirable Climate, with Meadows, Fruit-Trees, Deer, Turkeys, and other Beasts and Fowls on its Banks, which are very steep.

3. The Lake of *Hurons*, *Algonkins*, or *Orleans*, East of the *Illinois*, lies betwixt Latitude 42, and 48, and Longitude 83, and 88, and communicates on the North-west with the two former, and falls into that of *Eric*, and is reckon'd twelve Hundred Miles in compass. It lies in a fine Climate, and has several Islands on the North-side, but the South-side is pleasant.

There's a great Ridge of Mountains betwixt this and the *Illinois* Lake, which extends South 1140 Miles, almost to the Cape of *Florida*, and has Plains on the Top like Terrass-Walks, for two Hundred Miles long

4. The Lake *Erius*, *Cadaragua*, or *Cat*, lies South-East of that of *Hurons*, betwixt Lat. 39, and 43, and Long. 80, and 86. 'Tis about twelve Hundred Miles round; and falls into that of,

5. *Contario*, which lies on the North of it, and is about five Hundred Miles round : It falls by the River *Rocas* into that of *St. Laurence*. There are besides on the North, the Lakes of *Astinipolis*, which falls into that of *Christinaux* ; and this falls into that of *Outouacs*, which last falls into the *Upper Lake* : But the Lake *Piscoutagami* falls into that of *Tabatibis*, from which comes the River *Canada*. There's also a River which from this Lake falls into *Hudson's Bay*.

These Lakes are full of good Fish, especially large Trouts. And 'tis not improper to take notice here, *Advantages*. that the *French*, by the above-mention'd Lakes and Rivers, encompass all our Plantations on the Continent of *America*, from *Cape Breton*, to the River of *Mississippi* : Wherefore *La Hontan* propos'd to *Lewis XIV* a Scheme for building Forts on those great Lakes, by which the *Iroquese* would be forced to abandon the Country, or submit to the *French* ; and with the other Savages in Alliance with *France*, would be able to drive us out of all our Plantations on the Continent. But on the other hand he owns, that the *English*, by building Forts on the same Lakes, might with the Assistance of the *Iroquese*, drive the *French* and their Allies out of *Canada*.

The Natives are divided into several Nations : As,

1. The *Esquimaux*, near the Gulph of *St. Laurence*.
2. The *Attiquamechez*, near *Quebec*
3. The *Algonkins*, betwixt the Lakes *Ontaria* and *Hurons*. And,
4. The *Hurons* lived on the South-west of them,
5. The *Mississigaghes*, *Nepissinians*, and *Amicoues* are on the North of Lake *Huron*.
6. The *Illinois* on the West of the Lake of that Name, and the *Iroquese*, the strongest of all, live betwixt *New-England* and the Lakes *Eric* and *Contario*.

All these People differ very little from the Natives in *New England*, &c. only, 'tis to be observed, that one of the Reasons why the Country is not populous, may be this, viz.

That the Men having several Wives, decline the Company of those that are big with Child : Wherefore these, to prevent such a Misfortune, (for they, as most other Women, do like the Company of Men) take a certain Root,

Root, peculiarly known to themselves, the Juice of which renders them barren ; but if this succeed not, then they cause themselves to miscarry some other Way.

As their Women are not very Wise, they stigmatize them on the Forehead for the first Fault, cut a Piece out of their Forehead for the second, and kill them without Mercy for the third.

Most of the Natives are idolatrous Pagans, except a few converted by the Missionaries.





C H A P. XXVII.

*Of the Islands round NORTH-
AMERICA.*



S for the North *American* Islands, we shall speak of them under the following Heads,

I. *California.*

II. *Newfound-Land.*

III. *Azores.*

IV. *Bermudas.* And,

V. The *Antilles*, which are subdivided into various Denominations.

*California's
Name.*

California on the North-West of *New Mexico* was discover'd in 1535, by *Ferdinando Cortez*. 'Tis not yet certain whether it be an Island, or part of the Continent, but the latter is by some esteemed the more probable, because Capt. *Woodes Rogers*, who was here in 1709, says, the *Spaniards* told him, that several of their Countrymen had sailed up the Straits betwixt it and the Main, as far as Latitude 42, where they durst venture no farther, because of the shallow Water, and many Islands, which is a general Sign of being near some main Land. And *Dampier* says, the

the *Spaniards* in some of their late Draughts, join it to the Continent. However, it lies betwixt Latitude 23, and 49, and is about thirteen Hundred Miles long, and three Hundred where broadest in the North, but narrow on the South.

Some *Spanish* Missionaries, who were here in 1697, say, that the Heats in Summer are very great along the Sea-Coasts, and it seldom rains; but the Air of the inland Country is more temperate. In the rainy Season there are Floods. but when that's over, instead of Rain, the Dew falls in such plenty every Morning, that one would think it had rained. The Climate also is very healthy. The People have no Houses, but they defend themselves from the Heat of the Sun in the Day-time, under the Shade of the Trees, and of their Leaves and Branches, which make a sort of Roof against the inclemency of the Night. In the Winter they shut themselves in Caves in the Earth, and live there together little better than so many Beasts.

There are large Plains, pleasant Vallies, and excellent Pastures for great and small Cattle.

The Soil is very good; so that with some Labour in cultivating it, and Skill in managing the Water, the Country would be extreemly fertile.

Soil.

In the Months of *April*, *May*, and *June*, there falls with the Dew, a sort of *Manna*, which congeals and hardens upon the Leaves of Reeds from whence they gather it. It is as sweet as Sugar, though not altogether so white.

Rarities.

2. They have two sorts of Deer, which the Missionaries call Sheep, because they somewhat resemble those of *Europe* in make. The first sort is as large as a Calf of one or two Years old; its Head is much like that of a Stag, and its Horns, which are very large, like those of a Ram. Its Tail and Hair are speckled, and shorter than a Stag's, but its Hoof is large, round, and cloven as an Oxe. Their Flesh is very tender and delicious. The other sort of Sheep (some of which are White, and others Black) differ less from ours. They are larger, and have a great deal more Wool, which is very good.

3. They make their Thread of long Plants, or else of a Cotton-like Substance found in the Shell of some sorts of Fruits. Moreover, of certain Plants, whose Fibres are very close and thick set, and which they are very well skill'd in working

working, they make Dishes, Cups, and other Kitchen Necessaries, of all Fashions and Sizes; but when they dress their Meat in such Pans and Basons, they take particular care to keep them continually moving, whilst they are over the Fire.

4. The Coasts are famous for the Pearl Fishery.

The People have large Limbs, are strait, tall, and tawny.

They have a great deal of Liveliness, and are *Inhabitants.* naturally addicted to Raillery. They content themselves with what is only necessary for Life.

The Men go naked, but the Women wear from their Waste down to their Knees, a kind of Apron made of Reeds, very neatly wrought and matted together. They have Pearls about their Arms and Necks. The Country is very populous, especially towards the North inland Parts. There are several Nations of different Tongues mixt together: Some of 'em speak the *Monqui*, and others the *Laymon*, which seems to be universal in this large Country. Every Family makes Laws as they please, having no set Form of Government, which is plainly the Reason that they are so often at War with one another.

Newfound-Land was discover'd by the two *Newfound-* *Cabots*, at the Charge of *Henry* the Seventh, *Land's Dis-* King of *England*, in 1497, but more particu- *covery.* larly by *Thorn* and *Elliot* of *Bristol*, in 1527,

and the *English* Title thereto being renewed by *Humphrey* Gilbert, in the Name of Queen *Elizabeth*, in 1583, a Colony was settled therein about thirty Years after. 1643

'Tis separated from *Terra di Laborador*, or *Situation.* *Nova Britannia*, by the Straits of *Bell-Isle* on the North, and has the Gulph of *St. Lawrence* on the West, the Ocean, and the great Bank on the East, and the Ocean, with several Banks on the South. It lies betwixt North Latitude 45, and 52, and Longitude 48, and 55. 'Tis of a triangular Figure, reckon'd as big as *Ireland*, and about twelve Hundred Miles in compass. Tho' it lies betwixt the Parallels that pass through the southern

Part of *Great Britain*, and the Northern of *Air.* *France*, yet the Air thereof does extreemly differ from that in either of these Countries,

it being subject to a greater excess of Heat in Summer, and more pinching Cold in Winter-time, than commonly happens in them.

'Tis

'Tis full of inaccessible Mountains and Forests, whose Trees are but slowly cut down, because the Country, especially in the South, is but thinly *Soil* inhabited. Where the Ground is already clear'd, the Soil is 'not altogether despicable, affording variety of Roots, and several sorts of our *English* Grain; and there are some Vines in those Parts (Southern) which were possessed by the *French*. It is sufficiently stock'd with wild and tame Beasts and Fowls, and Trees fit for Masts, and building of Ships; but, above all things, the Seas and Rivers abound with Fish, especially *Cod*, the Staple Commodity of the Country.

Nothing here deserves the Epithet of *Rare*, unless we reckon for such, that prodigious large *Bank*, or *Shoal of Sand*, which is about an Hundred Miles East from Cape *Race*, on the South-East of the Island. 'Tis near four Hundred Miles long, an Hundred broad, and near a Thousand in compass; and remarkable for those vast Multitudes of *Baccaloos*, (Cod-fishes) and *Poor John's*, which are fish'd here at Angling, by divers *European* Nations, especially the *English* and *French*.

St. John, on the East-side, is the most remarkable Plantation. The Harbour is about half a Mile broad, defended by a Battery on the North- *Chief Towns* side, and another on the South. Here's also a *St. John's* Fort and Outworks, mounted with fifty Guns; a handsome House for the Governour, and Barracks for the Soldiers. The chief of the *French* Settlements was *Placentia* on the South, in a Bay of the same Name, where they had a Town and Fortrefs, which was surrendred to the *English*.

Here are few *Indians*, but what come from *Laborador*, or *Eskimaux*, by the Straits of *Bell-Isle*, for Fishing and Plunder. The Natives are most *Inhabitants*: of 'em of a middle Stature, broad-faced, and the Men usually beardless.

As for their *Manners*, *Language*, and *Religion*, they differ but little from other *Americans*; only these believe that Men and Women were at first made of a certain Number of Arrows stuck fast in the Ground. They believe that the Dead go into a far Country, there to make themselves merry with their Friends.

This Island is now entirely subject to the *English*, the *French* having yielded up what they possess'd, *Government*. by the Treaty of *Utrecht*; only that they are allowed to fish and dry in the best Part of it, though we are at all the Expence of the Forts and Garrisons.

The Isles of *Anticosti*, or *Assumption*, *Gaspe*, or *Cape Briton*, *Bell-Isle*, and *St. John*, with several others less than these, are Places of great Importance for the *French*, because they command the Entrance into *St. Lawrence's Gulph*, cover all *French Canada*; and, in case of a War with *France*, may endanger our Trade with *Newfound-land*, *New-England*, &c.

The *Azores*, taken by some for the *Cathiteredis* of *Ptolemy*, were so called by their Discoverers the *Portuguese*, in 1449, from the multitude of *Hawks* they found in them. They are also called the *Terceras*, from the *Tercera-Isle*, one of the chief of 'em. And this Island is so called, because 'tis the Third which is found in coming from *Portugal*; or, as others pretend, because it resembles three Islands.

St. Michael is the largest of the *Azores*, and is about an Hundred Miles in compass: But *Angra* in *Tercera* is the chief Town, and has the best Harbour of all the Islands. 'Tis the See of a Bishop, and the Seat of the *Portuguese* Governour. As it is pretty strong, *Alphonse VI.* King of *Portugal* was shut up here in 1669.

These Islands are commonly divided into *Divison*. nine chief ones, which lie thus from East to West, viz. *St. Michael*, *St. Mary*, *Tercera*, *Graciosa*, *St. George*, *Pico*, *Fayal*, *Flores*, and *Corvo*.

They lie North-West from *Madera*, about seven Hundred Miles from *Cape St. Vincent* in *Portugal*, *Situation*. and nine Hundred from *Cape Race* in *Newfound-land*, betwixt North Latitude 37, and 42, and Longitude 23, and 32; and so are of great use to the *Portuguese* in their Passage to the *East-Indies*, and *Brazil*, for their Ships generally put in there for Provisions, and other Necessaries.

The Air inclines much to Heat, and so is *Air*. very agreeable to the *Portuguese*. The Soil produces abundance of Corn, Wine, and Fruit. *Soil*. Here's plenty of Fish, Cattel, and all sorts of

tame Fowl.

Their

Their chief Commodities for Exportation, are Dyers Wood, Cedar, and Singing-Birds.

Some say that there are several Hot-springs, *Commodities*, some of which turn Wood into Stone. 'Tis *Rarities*, also said, that if People troubled with Lice, Fleas, and such other Vermin, land there, such is the Nature of the Air, that it will presently deliver 'em from that troublesome Burden.

These Islands are much subject to Storms and Earthquakes. They are possess'd by the *Portuguese*, who are here more laborious, and better Husbandmen, than in *Portugal*, and other Places.

Bermudas are a Cluster of little Islands, lying about a Thousand Miles East of *Carolina*, and are so called from *John Bermudas*, a *Spaniard*, who *Bermudas* made the first Discovery of 'em in the beginning of the XVIth Century. They are also called *Summers Islands*, from *Sir George Summers*, who was shipwreck'd here in 1609. The biggest is about forty Miles in Circumference, and contains about six Thousand Souls. They lie North Latitude 32, and West Longitude, 65.

The Air of these Islands has been reckon'd *Air*. very healthful, so that sick People used to come hither from our Sugar Plantations, to recover their Health; but within these twenty Years Hurricanes have much alter'd the Air; yet in general 'tis clear, temperate and calm, but when overcast at any time, then they are sure of a terrible Tempest, attended with frightful Claps of Thunder, and Flashes of Lightning. The Storms come with the New-Moon, and if Circles be seen about it, 'tis a sure Presage of a dreadful Tempest.

The Soil was hitherto reckon'd very rich and fertile, yielding the Husbandman two Crops a Year; and the Arable Ground is of such an excellent Mould, that it affords neither Sand, Flints, nor Stones, so hard as to be fit to grind Knives on. But how rich and plentiful soever these Islands have been heretofore, they are now on the declining hand, and grow apace both poor and barren; for which is commonly assign'd a twofold Reason, *viz.* 1. The fall of their *Cedars*, which formerly shelter'd their Fruit from hurtful Winds, whereas now they are frequently blasted. 2. A certain Worm, or Ant, which of late has bred so much among them, as to consume the greatest part of their *Maiz*, and other Grain. Among the other Defects of these Islands

we may reckon that they have no soft Water but what they preserve in Cisterns when it rains. And, 2. That they are surrounded with dangerous Rocks.

Their Commodities are a sort of Cochineal, *Commodities.* Tobacco, Cedar, Sperma-Ceti and Pearls, with several sorts of Fruit, particularly Oranges, reckon'd the largest and best in the World.

No venomous Creature can live here. They *Rarities.* have indeed large Spiders, but without Venom, whose Webs resemble raw Silk, and being woven, are strong enough to catch little Birds.

2. Here's a Plant called *Poison Weed*, which resembles Ivy, the Touch of it causes a Swelling and Pain, which quickly goes off; and sometimes the very Sight of it causes the Skin of ones Face to peel, yet it does not affect every one, for some People chew it without Harm.

3. Out of the Berries which grow on the *Red-Weed*, come Worms, that afterwards turn into Flies, which feed on the Berry, are bigger than the Cochineal, equal in Colour, and superior in medicinal Vertue, as some say.

4. If Wells be dug above the Surface of the surrounding Ocean, the Water is pretty sweet and fresh, but if lower, then salt and brackish, and all of 'em have some sensible Flux and Reflux with the Sea.

The chief Town is *St. George*, at the bottom of a Bay, in the Isle of that Name, in the North-West *Chief Town,* Corner of these Islands. It consists of a *St. George.* Thousand handsome Houses, has a fair Church and Stathouse for the Governour, Council and Assembly. This, and some other Harbours are defended by several Forts and Batteries. These Islands are divided into several Tribes.



C H A P. XXVIII.

Of the ANTILLES.

I. Q.

H A T do you call *Antilles* ?

A. Under this Denomination are comprehended several Islands, which lie just before you *Antilles*. come to the middle-part of

America, over-against *Florida*, *Mexico*, and part of *Terra Firma*. They are divided into,

I. The *Lucaye*, or *Bahama* Islands.

II. The great *Antilles*, viz. *Cuba*, *Jamaica*, *Hispaniola*, and *Portorico*.

III. The lesser *Antilles*, or *Caribbee* Islands, divided again into,

1. Those called *Barlovento*, or *Leeward* Islands. And,
2. *Sottovento*.

We shall speak of all of them, beginning from North to South.

The *Lucaye* Islands are so called from *Lucayone*, the biggest of 'em all. They are also termed *Bahama* from one of 'em of that Name, which lies the *Lucaye*, or nearest to *Florida*, betwixt Latitude 26, and 27, *Bahama*. and is about sixty Miles long, but narrow.

Some reckon them four Hundred in Number, including all the little Rocks about them. The chief of 'em lie thus, from North-West to South-East. 1. *Bahama*. 2. *Lucayone*, or *Providence*. 3. *Ciguatoo*. 4. *Guanahani*, 5. *Tuma*. 6. *Samana*. 7. *Mayagana* and *Bimini*, over-against *Ciguatoo*. Most of them belong to the *Spaniards*, and some to the *English*.

They lie betwixt Latitude 23, and 28, and *Situation*. Longitude 65, and 75. Tho' these Islands lie near, and under the Tropick of *Cancer*, yet the *Air* is temperate, and the *Soil* indifferently good. Most of their *Coasts* are dangerous, which is the reason that they are almost desert; and the greatest Advantage that can be expected from those that are in the Hands of the *English*, (*Providence*, the chief one, being thirty Miles long, and ten broad) is, that they lie convenient in a time of War, to cruise upon the *Spanish* Plate-Fleet, in their return homeward from the *Havana*; or to have Store-Houses for the Relief of Ships drove hither by Distress of Weather, in their Way to and from the Gulph of *Bahama*: For the Current is so strong in the Straits of *Bahama*, that frequently neither Wind nor Oar can prevail against it.

Bahama is also remarkable for several uncommon Insects, but especially for the *Bahama Spider*, the biggest of all the Species, being two Inches long. *Rarities*. It has six Eyes, and those not so big as the smallest Pin's-head.

2. At *Bimini* the People reported, that there was a Spring, which had the Vertue of rendring People young; but this Report had no other Foundation than this, viz. That Women are there very handsome.

3. Some say that the Island of *Providence* abounds with variety of Fish, Fowl, Trees and Plants unknown to us; and that here's a sort of Fish, which causes great Pains, if eaten, but they go off after two Days itching.

Cuba's Name. *Cuba*, the largest Island the *Spaniards* possess, was discover'd in 1494, by *Christopher Colomb*, who called it *Ferdinandina*, in honour to the then King of *Spain*, but it retains yet its *American* Name.

Ch. Town. The chief Town is *St. Christophal de Havana*, *La Havana*. on the North-side of the Island, near the West-end. 'Tis one of the finest, largest, and strongest Towns the *Spaniards* have in *America*. They reckon about
ten

ten Thousand Families in it; and 'tis the Residence of a Bishop and Governor, and the Rendezvous of the *Spanish* Fleets returning to *Spain* about *September*. Its Harbour is very large, safe, and secured by three Forts, built since this Town was taken, and plunder'd by the *English* Buccaneers, under Capt. *Morgan* in 1669, who would have kept it, could they have had the King of *England's* Protection.

It lies betwixt Latitude 20, and 23, and Longitude 72, and 83, separated from *Hispaniola* by a Strait of forty-eight Miles, North-East from *Yucatan* *Situation*: about an Hundred and twenty Miles, and South of *Cape Florida* about the same Distance, just at the entrance into the Gulph of *Mexico*. The greatest length from South-East to North-West, is seven Hundred Miles, but the breadth is not proportionable, being but somewhat above an Hundred; and 'tis much indented on all Sides. A Ridge of Mountains runs thro' it, from whence flow Rivers on both Sides, which are infested with Serpents and Crocodiles.

The Air, considering its Situation, is temperate, being mightily qualify'd by Vapours *Air*. that ascend from the Earth.

The Soil is not so fertile in Grain as in Wood, being mostly cover'd over with Trees, some of them very large, and dropping the purest Rozin. *Soil*. Here's great plenty of Fish, Tortoises, Flesh, and Fruit. They have also Mines of Gold, Iron, and excellent Copper.

Their chief Commodities are Gold, Sugar, the best Tobacco, Cassia, Aloes, Mastick, Ginger, Cinnamon, Long-Pepper, and other sorts of Spices. *Commodities*.

The most remarkable Thing in this Island, is a noted bituminous Fountain, near *Puerto del Principe*, three Hundred and fifty Miles South-East of *Havana*, out of which floweth a pitchy Substance, commonly used for calking of Ships, and by the Natives for Medicines. *Rarities*.

2. Here's also betwixt *S. Salvador*, and *St. Jago*, a Valley full of round Flints, of different Sizes, which serve for Bullets to Cannon and Muskets.

San Jago was formerly the Capital of the whole Isle, and has yet Jurisdiction over the *Ch. Towns*: South-East Side, as *Havana* has on the North-West; but 'tis now a small Town, and has one of the best Harbours

Harbours in *America*. 'Tis the See of a Bishop. *Santa Cruz*, at the bottom of *Mattanea's Bay*, an Hundred Miles East of *Havana*, where *Peter Heyn*, the *Dutch Vice-Admiral*, beat and took in 1628 the *Spanish Fleet* laden with several Millions in Gold, Silver, and other rich Commodities.

The Natives are now reduced to a verysmall Number; by the hard Usage of the *Spaniards*, some having rather chose to hang themselves, than to suffer their ill Treatment. As for the *Government*, &c. you must remember that this Island is govern'd and inhabited by *Spaniards*, who are so sensible of their Weakness and jealous of their Riches, that they blindfold Strangers, when they pass by their Towns and Castles, and have a particular Dread of the *English*, because of an old Prophecy (which I wish might be fulfill'd) that they shall be Masters of it.

Jamaica, discover'd by *Colombus*, in his second Voyage to *America*, in 1493, was by him called *St. Jago*; which Name was afterwards changed into that of *Jamaica*, (after King *James's* Name, then Duke of *Tork*) when it had been subjected for some time to the Crown of *England*, *Port-Royal*, on the East side of the Island, Latitude 17, 54, and Longitude 76, 4, is the Capital; *Port-Royal*. and before it was ruin'd by an Earthquake, and overflowing of the Sea, in 1692, and consumed by a Fire in 1703, was one of the most beautiful and wealthy Towns in *America*, well fortify'd, and the Buildings stately. The Harbour is large and good; but the Trade is now removed to *Kingston* on the other side the Bay, where the Quarter-Sessions, and other Courts of Justice are now kept.

Spanish-Town, ten Miles North-West from *Port-Royal*, was the Capital of the Country, when possess'd by *Span. Town*. the *Spaniards*. It was called *St. Jago de la Vega*, and gave the Title of Duke to the famous *Colombus*. 'Tis still the Seat of the Governour, and chief Courts of Justice, and contains near 600 Houses. 'Tis defended by a small Fort.

Situation. *Jamaica* is divided into fourteen Precincts or Parishes, and lies betwixt Latitude 17, 35. and 18, 40, and Longitude 75, 23, and 77, 53. is about sixty Miles from South to North, where broadest, an Hundred and fifty from East to West, and about three Hundred and forty in compass; the Form being almost Oval. There

There is no Country betwixt the two Tropicks, where the Heat is more moderate ; the *Air* being cooled by the frequent easterly Breezes, which *Air* blow in the Day-time, and by Showers of Rain, and nightly Dews. Winter is only distinguish'd by the more violent Rain and Thunder, which happens in *May* and *November* ; but sometimes on the mountainous Parts, they have frosty Mornings. The East and West Parts are more subject to Storms of Wind and Rain, because the Forests are not cut down. Violent Hurricanes and Earthquakes are sometimes felt here ; as in 1692, and 1722, but not so frequently as in the *Caribbee* Islands. But here, as well as in other Places, drinking to Excess is very prejudicial to *English* Constitutions, and Temperance is the best Physician.

The *Soil* is generally of a black, rich, and fat Nature, producing great Quantities of Corn, Herbs, and Fruit, with divers physical Drugs and Gums. *Soil*. Here are likewise several Rivers that flow from the Mountains, and abound in Fish. Some talk of Silver and Copper Mines.

Their chief Commodities are Cocoa, Sugar, *Commodities*. Indico, Cotton, Tobacco, Hides *Pimento*, or *Jamaica* Pepper, Tortoise-shells, Woad for Dyers ; and many Drugs, and medicinal Herbs.

This Island has some Springs of Mineral Water.

2. The *Manchineel*-Apple is very beautiful to the Eye, of a pleasant Smell and Taste, and yet mortal, if eaten ; whence some term it, the *Eve-Apple*.

3. They have also *Fire-Flies*, (a sort of *Cantharides*) of a Green Colour in the Day, but shining in the Night-time.

4. They have also *Cyrons*, or *Chigos*, that chiefly annoy the Negroes, get into their Feet and Legs, where they breed in Bags, and if not cut out by Surgeons, eat off their Toes, and sometimes over run the whole Body.

5. Their Ponds and Rivers are infested with Alligators, a sort of amphibious Creatures, much like the Crocodiles.

The Natives were formerly in great Numbers, but the *Spaniards*, to strengthen their Conquests, did transport them elsewhere. And since 1655, when this Island was taken by the Admirals *Pen* and *Venables*, the Inhabitants are *English*, with some

Blacks. They formerly reckon'd sixty Thousand *British*, and an Hundred Thousand Negroes, but they are much diminish'd by War, Earthquakes, and Diseases. The *English* able to bear Arms, are reckon'd fifteen Thousand, and their Militia is seven Thousand Foot, with several Troops of Horse. This Island is reckon'd to contain about five Millions of Acres, of which but one half are planted. Most of the White are of the Church of *England*, and the Government is very much like that of *Virginia*. The present Governour is his Grace the Duke of *Portland*, who governs to the satisfaction of all Parties, and makes a Figure more like a Prince, than a Governour.

Hispaniola, discover'd in 1492, by *Christopher Columbus*, was so called by the *Spaniards*, as a Diminutive of their own Country. It was also called *St. Domingo*, because discover'd on a Sunday.

St. Domingo, the chief Town, lies on the South-side of the Island, Latitude 18, and Longitude 69, at the Mouth of the *Lozana*. It is well fortify'd, and has a safe and large Harbour.

'Twas built in 1493, by *Bartholomew*, Brother to *Christopher Columbus*. 'Tis not so considerable as formerly, since the *Havana* was made the chief Place for the *Spanish* Trade. 'Tis remarkable now only for its delightful Situation, its Archbishoprick, and Audiency, or Court of Judicature, is the eldest in *America*.

This Island is divided into two Parts, viz. the *Eastern*, possess'd by the *Spaniards*, which is the largest, and most populous; and the *Western*, chiefly inhabited by *Buccaniers*, and *Free-Booters*, of several Nations, most of 'em *French*, under a General of their own Country, who resides at *Guave*.

It lies about sixty Miles East of *Cuba*, betwixt North Latitude, 18 and 20, Longitude 66, and 73. 'Tis from East to West about three Hundred Miles, from South to North, about an Hundred and twenty, and eight Hundred Miles in compass.

The *Air* is much infested with Morning-Heats, which would be intolerable, were they not allay'd by cooling Breezes in the Afternoon.

The

The *Soil* is so rich and fertile, that of Maiz, and some other Grain, the common Increase is an Hundred-fold. There are Mines of Gold and Silver on the Mountains, but neglected for want of Hands. Their chief Commodities are Cattel, Hides, Sugar, Ginger, Tobacco, Cochineal, Fruits of all sorts, and medicinal Herbs and Gums. *Soil.*

There are some *Jenipah*-Trees, whose Fruit (of about the bigness of a Man's two Fists) being squeezed before it be thorow-ripe, affords a Juice as black as Ink, and fit to write withal, did it not disappear intirely in nine or ten Days. *Rarities.*

2. There's another Tree called *Mananilla*, or Dwarf Apple-Tree, whose Fruit is so poisonous, that if any Person eat thereof, he is instantly seized with an unquenchable Thirst, and dyes raving mad in a short time.

3. Here's abundance of Palm-Trees, of a prodigious height and bigness, in whose Body, an Incision being made near the Top, from thence does flow a Liquor usually called *Palm-Wine*, which being kept for some time, ferments, and becomes very strong.

4. Among the Insects, there's one called *Cucujo*, remarkable for its having two Eyes in its Head, and two on its Wings, which shine so by Night, that if a Person lay three or four of those Creatures together, he may see to read the smallest Print.

5. But the most remarkable of all Creatures to be found in this Island, and some other Parts, is the *Caiman*, commonly called *Crocodile*, which is very big, and has his Back full of Scales, and is therefore hard to be killed. It is much noted for its rare Subtlety in catching its Prey; for laying on a River's side, he so gathereth his Body together, that in Form he resembles exactly the large Trunk of an old Tree: In this Posture he continues till Cattle, or other Creatures, come to the River to drink, when, to their Surprise, he presently starts up and assaults 'em; and to inhance the Wonder, this strange Creature is said to use still a more strange Stratagem to effect its Ends; for 'tis affirmed, that before he lays himself as aforesaid on the River-side, he is busy for some time in swallowing down several Hundred Weight of small Pebble-stones, by which additional Weight of his Body, he can keep a faster Hold of his Prey, and be the sooner able to draw it into, and dive with it under Water. Tho' the *Crocodile* and *Alligator* be much alike, and by

Some thought the same Species, yet they differ in these Particulars : 1. The *Alligator* has under his four Legs, four *Glandula*, whose Smell is very fragrant. 2. It has two very long Teeth in the inferior Jaw-Bone, whereas the *Crocodile* has no such thing 3. When the *Alligator* walketh, he drags along his Tail, whereas the *Crocodile's* is bent up. 4. The *Crocodile's* Legs are longer, and his Scales harder and bigger than the *Alligator's*. 5. The *Crocodile* is bigger, more furious, and bold.

There are some small Islands about this, *Tortuga, La-* and the abovemention'd Islands, as *Tortuga, vache, La* and *Lavache*, belonging to the French ; *La Soana, and Saona*, and *Moana* to the Spaniards, with some others that are not inhabited.

Porto Rico lies about sixty Miles East from *Hispaniola*, Latitude 19, Longitude 65, and is about an Hundred and twenty Miles long, and sixty broad. It belongs to the Spaniards, and is much of the same Produce as *Hispaniola*. At *Aquada*, one of its Harbours, the Spanish Fleets stop often from Europe, to take in fresh Water, and other Provisions.

The *Caribbee Islands* are a Cluster of Islands beginning at the East of *Porto Rico*, and reaching Southwards almost to the *Terra firma*. They are so called from the Natives, who, when first discover'd, were generally Cannibals, the Name *Caribbee*, in their Language, signifying *Men eaters*. They are also termed by some, the *Antilles*, properly so called, because they are just before the Isles which are in the Gulph of Mexico. Others call 'em *Leewards*, or *Barlento*, or above the Wind Islands; because the Wind blowing commonly East, they seem, in respect of the Continent, and Islands near it, above the Wind.

Air. The Air is hot, and not very wholesome, wherefore the Number of People does not much increase.

Soil. The Soil is fertile, but not in Corn. They have abundance of Sugar, Tobacco, Indico, Cotton, Ginger, most sorts of Fruits and Drugs, Fowls and Fish : But most part of 'em have no other fresh Water but what they preserve in Cisterns; and are much annoy'd by Earthquakes, Winds and Hurricanes, which destroy Trees, Houses, Ships, &c. 'Tis said that those Hurricanes have fore-running Signs, viz. the Sea becomes suddenly very calm,

calm, Birds come down to the Plain, and fall flat on the Ground, and the Rain which falls before, is somewhat bitter or brackish. These Islands belong to several Nations, and taken together come nearest in Form to the Segment of a great Circle, and are thus situated from North to South.

Islands.	Possess'd by	Lat.	Long.	Circumf.
<i>Anguilla</i> , little esteemed,	<i>English</i> ,	19	60	30
<i>St. Thomas</i> ,	<i>Danes</i> ,	18 $\frac{3}{4}$	63	30
<i>St. Martin</i> ,	<i>Fr. & Dutch</i>	18 $\frac{3}{4}$	61	60
<i>Saba</i> ,	<i>Dutch</i> ,	18 $\frac{1}{3}$	62 $\frac{2}{3}$	30
<i>St. Cruz</i> ,	<i>French</i> ,	18 $\frac{2}{3}$	62	60
<i>St. Bartholomew</i> ,	<i>French</i> ,	18 $\frac{1}{2}$	62 $\frac{1}{4}$	50
<i>Barbouda</i> ,	<i>M. Codrington</i>	18	58	20
<i>St. Eustache</i> ,	<i>Dutch</i> ,	17 $\frac{3}{4}$	61	30
<i>St. Christophers</i> ,	<i>English</i> ,	17 $\frac{1}{2}$	61	70
<i>Nevis</i> ,	<i>English</i> ,	17 $\frac{1}{3}$	61	20
<i>Antegoa</i> ,	<i>English</i> ,	17	60	60
<i>Mountferrat</i> ,	<i>English</i> ,	16 $\frac{3}{4}$	60	30
<i>Guadaloup</i> ,	<i>French</i> ,	16	61	160
<i>Defrada</i> ,	<i>French</i> , small, but fruitful.			
<i>Marygalant</i> ,	<i>French</i> ,	15 $\frac{2}{3}$	59	40
<i>Dominico</i> ,	<i>Eng. & Nat.</i>	15 $\frac{3}{4}$	60	60
<i>Martinico</i> ,	<i>French</i> ,	14 $\frac{2}{3}$	60	140
<i>St. Vincent</i> , Disp. by Fr. and Eng. wholesome and good,				40
<i>Barbadoes</i> . See lower.				
<i>St. Vincent</i> , <i>English</i> , <i>Dutch</i> , & <i>Natives</i> ,		13 $\frac{1}{2}$	60	50
<i>Grenada</i> ,	<i>French</i> ,	12	61	40
<i>Tabago</i> ,	<i>English</i> ,	11 $\frac{1}{4}$	58	70

The Islands of *St. Eustache*, *Bartholomew*, *Saba*, *Martin*, *Anguilla*, *Sombreo*, and *St. Croix*, are by some called *Sottovento* proper Islands, because the Wind blowing most commonly East or North-East, they are in respect of the other Islands, under the Wind, but others give that Name to those Islands we shall speak of in the End of this Chapter.

Some say, *St. Christophers*, contains about six Thousand Whites, *Antegoa*, ten Thousand, *Mountferrat*, four Thousand, *Nevis* three Thousand, *Barbouda* six Hundred, *Martinico*, fifteen Thousand, besides Negroes and Natives, who are double the Number of Whites.

I received lately from his Excellency, Lieutenant General *Matthews*, the following Account in *French*; I wish for the Satisfaction of my Readers, that it had been longer.

St. *Christophers* was formerly jointly possess'd by the *English* and *French*; but by the Treaty of Peace made at *Utrecht*, the whole Island has been yielded to the *English*. 'Tis about twenty-two Miles long, and its greatest breadth is not much above seven Miles. The middle Part is full of Hills, that there is but twenty-four Thousand Acres of Land fit for Sugar. They make *communibus Annis*, ten Thousand *Boucaux* (Hogsheads) of Sugar. *Nevis* is about twenty-four Miles in Circuit, *Mountferrat* about eighteen, and *Antego* about forty-five. They reckon at *Antego* seventy Thousand Acres of Land in all; and they make, *communibus Annis*, sixteen Thousand Hogsheads of Sugar there, six Thousand at *Nevis*, and twenty-five Hundred at *Mountferrat*. The Militia is now regulated thus; at St. *Christophers*, a Regiment of Foot containing about seven or eight Hundred Men, a Troop of Horse of two Hundred and twenty Men, and another of about an Hundred and twenty Dragoons. There are several Forts, but that called *La Souphriere*, or *Brimstone-Hill*, is now finish'd, and impregnable. 'Tis well provided with Cistern-Water, and there's also a large Well dug. There's at *Antego* a Troop of about an Hundred and twenty Troopers, and three Regiments of Foot, in all twelve Hundred Men; besides a Regiment of Foot, which His Majesty keeps there, viz. five Companies at *Antego*, two at St. *Christophers*, two at *Nevis*, and one at *Mountferrat*. The Fortifications of Monk's Hill, at *Antego*, are now ended; and the General sent by His Majesty does reside in this Island, because 'tis by Nature and Art the strongest of all the Islands, tho' 'tis not very wholesome; and they have no fresh Water but what they can save when it rains. *Nevis* contains in all five or six Hundred Men. *Mountferrat* about four Hundred; Which is very far from what has been commonly written by several (but as it appears by this Memoir) not infallible Authors.

But as *Barbadoes* is of all the *Caribbee* Islands, belonging to the *English*, the most considerable on several Accounts, therefore we shall speak of it in particular.

The *Portuguese*, its first Discoverers, called *Barbadoes*. it *Barbadoes*, because they not only found it a woody, wild Country, but believed it to be possess'd by Barbarians.

Bridge

Bridge-Town, the Capital, was formerly called *St. Michael's*, from its Church. It lies in the South-West corner of the Island, on a large, deep, and secure Bay. It has 1200 handsome Stone Houses, and some Forts to secure it. Tho' it be not very wholesome, yet 'tis very populous. Here's a large Church with a fine Organ, and a curious Clock. They have also a fine Council House, large Taverns, and a Post-House. There are some other Towns. The Island is divided into 11 Parishes, or five Circuits, and lies 70 Miles South-East from *Martinico*, in Lat. 13, Long. 58, and is above 20 Miles from N. to S. and 14 where broadest, and about 60 in compass. The Heats would be here intollerable for eight Months, were it not for fresh Breezes from the E. N. E, which rise and fall with the Sun, yet 'tis so moist here, that Iron will soon rust without constant use. The *Soil*, tho' not deep, was formerly very good, but now 'tis much worn out. They have variety of Trees, Plants, Fruits and Herbs, no *English* Wheat, Apples, Pears, Cherries, Gooseberries, but or Currants.

They export great Quantities of Ginger Sugar, Indico, Cotton, Lignum Vitæ, Tobacco *Commodities*. Citron-Water, Rum, Lime Juice, &c. Before the last War it loaded 400 Sail of Ships a Year for *England*; from whence they receive most of their Clothes, Linnen, Beef, Pork, and other Provisions, all manner of Instruments for Agriculture, and Sugar-works. They receive their Wine and Brandy from *Madera*, and *Terceras*; for their Drink is chiefly Water, *Madera* Wine, Lemonade and Punch.

In *Barbadoes* are Ants of a very large Size, which build their Nests with Clay and Lime, against the Body of a Tree, or the Wall of a House, and that to the bigness of ordinary Bee-hives, divided into a great many Cells. *Rarities*.

2. They have also Snakes very long and big, which frequently slide up and down the Wall of a House, and out of one Room into another, with wonderful Agility of Body.

3. The Water of the Rivulet called *Tugh* River, has on its Surface, in many Places, a certain oily Substance, which being carefully taken off, and kept a little time, is said to be fit to burn in Lamps like ordinary Oil.

4. There are several vast Caves here (some of 'em big enough to contain five Hundred Men) to which the Negroes

gros often fly from their Masters and hide themselves for several Weeks together.

Barbadoes is govern'd by a Governour, sent by His Britannick Majesty, who has a Council of ten Gentlemen, and with two Burgeses chosen out of every Parish, make up the Par-

liament of *Barbadoes*; but their Laws, except some few By-Acts, which concern immediately the Colony, are the same as in *England*. The Governour, to quell all Insurrections, keeps a Standing Militia of 3500 Foot, and 1200 Horse.

This was the soonest peopled of all our Colonies, because of the Wealth acquired by the first Planters. In 1676, there were 70000 *Europeans*, by Birth or Descent, and 80000 *Negroes*; but in 1691, the Island was so depopulated by a fatal Sickness, that it had not above 25000 *English*, and 70000 *Negroes*; but of these above 40000 are Natives, and very well affected, tho' formerly exasperated by the Severity of their Masters, they have laid three several Plots.

The *Sottovento* Islands are those lying along the North-Coast of *Terra firma*; most of 'em belong to *Sottovento*. the *Spaniards*, and from them have received that Name, because they appear'd to the Leeward of their Fleet coming down before the Wind, to enter into the Gulph of *Mexico*. The Air is here warmer, and the Soil less fertile than in the *Barlovento* Islands. They are not populous, and remarkable only for the Fishery of Pearls. In going from East to West you'll find, 1. *Trinity*, Lat. 10, Long. 60, the biggest of 'em all, and possess'd by the *Spaniards*, and Natives. 2. *Margarita*, belongs to the same. 3. *Tortuga*. 4. *Orchilla*. 5. *Rocca*, are desert. 6. *Cubaqua*, or the Isle of Pearls. 7. *Bon Air*, Lat. 12. Long. 68, forty Miles round. 8. *Curassau*. And, 9. *Oruba*, belong to the *Dutch*.



C H A P. XXIX.

OF SOUTH-AMERICA.



South America joins to the North, *South America*, by the Isthmus of *Panama*, and reaches to the Straits of *Magellan* on the South. It was discover'd by *Colombus* in his 3d Voyage in 1496. *Peter Alau-*

sa made further Discoveries; but *Vespucius Americus* afterwards having made four Voyages thither by Order of *Ferdinand* of *Castile*, and *Emanuel* of *Portugal*, gave his Name to all the Continent of *America*. *South America* is of a triangular Form, somewhat like *Africa*, and lies betwixt North Latitude 13, and South 54, Longitude 35, and 85. So that the length from South to North, is about four Thousand Miles; the breadth is unequal, being contracted both on the North and South; the greatest from the Western Part of *Perou*, to the Eastern of *Brasil* is two Thousand, and it has thirteen Thousand Miles in compass. This Part of the World is not very populous, either because the Inhabitants did destroy one another by Wars, or have been devoured by wild Beasts, or drown'd by Inundations, or perished by Famine; or rather, because the *Spaniards* have unmercifully destroyed most of them, and forced the others by their ill Use, to destroy, and prevent themselves from getting

getting Children. lest they should, as their Fathers, be partakers of all manner of Misery under the *Spanish* Yoke. It belongs almost entirely to the *Spaniards*, except *Brasil*, which belongs to the *Portuguese*; but most of the inland Countries belong yet, and are possess'd by several *American Nations* whose Names are hardly known. And it is reported, that the inland Parts of *Paraguay* and *Amazonas*, are under the Dominion of the *Jesuits*. However, *South America* is divided into seven great Parts or Countries, which you find thus, beginning in the North, and going South-West, viz.

I. *Terra firma*.

II. *Perou*.

III. *Chili*.

IV. *Terra Magellanica*.

V. *Paraguay*.

VI. *Brasil*. And,

VII. The Province of the *Amazones*:

Of all of them in Order.

Terra firma was discover'd and conquer'd by the *Spaniards*, not without shedding of Blood, in 1514. It was so called, as being the first Part of the Continent, at which the *Spaniards* first touch'd in their Western Discoveries. It has on the North the Isthmus of *Panama*, or *Darien*, and the Gulph of *Mexico*, on the East Part of the main Ocean, called *Mare del Nort*, on the South *Peru*, and *Amazonia*, and on the West, the South-Sea:

New Panama, the Capital, is so called to distinguish it from the Old Town, which lies in the Neighbourhood, and was a considerable Place, but destroy'd by Sir *Henry Morgan*, in 1670, upon which the Inhabitants removed soon after, and built the present Town. It lies N. Latitude 9, W. Longitude 80, is well built, about a Mile and an half long, is fortify'd, and has a commodious Harbour at High Tides. This Town flourishes by its great Trade, to *Portobello* from the *Perou* and *East-Indies*, and vice versa.

This Country is divided into two great Parts, viz. East the River *Oronoko*, called also *Guiana*, and comprehending *Caribana*, and West the said River, called *Castile del Oro*. And those two great Provinces contain several

AUDIENCES.

Chief Towns, with their Lat. and Long.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. <i>Panama</i> , or <i>Terra firma</i> properly so called, | <i>Panama</i> , <i>Porto Bello</i> 10, and 81. <i>Darien</i> . <i>Porto Perico</i> . |
| 1. <i>New Granada</i> , | <i>Sta. Fé de Bogata</i> , N. Lat. 6, and 75. <i>Sta. Agatha</i> . |
| or, <i>Castile del Oro</i> . | <i>Pampelona</i> , <i>La Trinidad</i> . |
| 2. <i>Cartagena</i> . | Dit. 11, 75 <i>Tolu</i> . <i>La Concept</i> . |
| 3. <i>Sta. Martha</i> . | Dit. <i>Baranca</i> , <i>Teneriffe</i> . |
| 1. <i>Rio de la Hacha</i> | <i>La Hacha</i> , <i>Rancheria</i> . |
| 2. <i>Venezuela</i> . | Dit. or <i>Coro</i> 11. <i>Caracos</i> , <i>Guira</i> . |
| 3. <i>New Andalusia</i> , | <i>Comana</i> , <i>Varina</i> , famous for its Tobacco. |

The PROVINCES of

4. *Paria*, little known, and inhabited only by Savages.
5. *Guiana*, where they place *Manoa del Oro*, and Lake *Parima* under the Equator.
6. *Caribana*, *Marony*, formerly to the English; *Surinam*, and Fort *Zealand* to the Dutch. *Cayenne*, to the French.

Terra firma is the most northerly Country of *South America*, and lies betwixt North Latitude 13, and South 2; and West Longitude 50, and 80. *Situation*. So that from South to North, 'tis nine Hundred Miles, and from East to West, sixteen Hundred Miles.

The *Air* is very hot, but healthful, except in those Parts adjacent to the North-Sea, and *Air*. Isthmus of *Panama*, where the Ground is full of Lakes and Marshes, which, by their ascending Vapours, render the Air very gross, and consequently less wholesome to breathe in.

The *Soil* abounds in Corn where duly manured; in Fruits, Fish, Fowl, and Venison. A good Part of it is planted with Cotton, and Coconut-Trees, the best in the World, especially about *Venezuela*, and some other Places, it produces Sugar-Canes and Tobacco. There are Woods and Mountains, (a Branch of the *Cordillera's*) towards *St. Martha*. They have also Mines of Gold, Silver, Brass, &c. many precious Stones, and in several Places, good Fishing for Pearls: So that this Country must be very rich, but 'tis obnoxious to *Bucancers*.

Their

Their chief Commodities are Gold, Silver, *Commodities.* and other Metals; Balsam, Rosin, Gums, Tobacco, Coco, Long-pepper, Emeralds Saphir, Pearls, &c.

Near *Trinidad* there is a Mine of Emeralds, *Rarities.* from whence an *Italian* brought one of so great a Value to *Philip* the Second of *Spain* that his Goldsmiths knew not what Price to set upon it; and *Cortez*, among the great Number he found in this Country, had one cut out like a Cup, for which he refused 40000 Ducats.

2. They have a wild Plant called *Tunas*, that bears a Fruit much like a Fig, of a reddish Substance in the inside, and of a wonderful Taste; after eating one or two of them, the Urine is as red as Blood, which is very surprizing at first, and makes People believe that they are in danger of losing their Life: So that the Imagination very often produces a real Disease in timorous Persons.

3. Here are some Apple-Trees, whose Fruit is so fair to the Eye, that one can scarce smell to, or look at it, without being tempted to taste it, and yet 'tis a mortal Poison; even if any Body stay for some time under the Shade of those Trees, he will find himself stupify'd, and his Eyes, Cheeks, and whole Face swelled; and if by chance the Dew, that falls from these Trees, happens to touch People, it burns like Fire, and raises Blisters, and Pimples on the Skin, and the Fire made with the Wood, gives an intolerable Head ach.

4. In several Parts of *Guiana*, are certain Trees called *Totock*, remarkable for their Fruit, which is of so great a Bulk, and withal so hard, that People can't with Safety walk among 'em, when the Fruit is ripe.

5. In the Island of *Trinity*, as well as near *Cape Beca* on the Continent, there are Fountains of a pitchy Substance much used in trimming of Ships with good Success and preferable to the ordinary Pitch in those hot Countries, being able to resist the scorching Heat of the Sun-Beams.

They have several Rivers, but none of 'em *Inhabitants.* considerable, except *Rio Grande*, *Oroonoko*, and *Amazons*. The same may be said of the Towns. The Natives are tawny, healthy, robust, and well shaped, and generally live to a great Age. They spend most of their Time in Hunting, and such other Diversions as the *Americans* like. They are naked above their Navel. Those of

of *Guiana* are still Cannibals; and the eating of Man's Flesh, especially that of vanquish'd Enemies, is so relishing to the Palate of those Savages, that two Nations of them, by their mutual devouring, are now reduced to two Handfuls of Men.

This spacious Country is subject to the King of *Spain*, and govern'd by the Vice-Roy of *Mexico*, under whom are several Deputy-Governours. There are also many Courts of Justice, in which all Causes, whether Civil or Criminal, are heard and determin'd. Some of the midland Provinces are as yet free from the *Spanish* Yoke, being still possessed by the Natives, who are govern'd by the eldest of their Families. Those of the Natives who have not embraced Christianity, are yet gross Idolaters: But the others, as well as the *Spaniards*, are under the Arch-Bishop of *Sta. Fé de Bogota*, who has four Bishops under him, viz. *Popayan*, *Panama*, *Carthagena*, and *Sta. Martha*. They are all named by the King of *Spain*, but they must have their Bulls from *Rome*, wherefore the Vacancy, when there's one, is very long.

Perou was discover'd by *Fran:is Pizarro*, in 1523, and is so called from a little River which bore that Name among the *Indians*, at the *Spaniards* first arrival: But *Garcilasso de la Vega*, who was of the royal House of *Perou*, says, That this Country was so called by the *Spaniards*, because at their landing, meeting with a Fisherman, they asked him the Name of the Country; but he thinking they did ask him his Profession, answer'd, *Perou*, which in the *Peruvian* Language signifies a *Fisherman*, or *Seaman*.

It is bounded on the North with *Terra firma*, on the East with the Country of the *Amazones*, and *Rio de la Plata*, on the South with *Chili*, and on the W. with the *South Sea*.

Lima, or *Los Reyes*, South Latitude 12, and Longitude 80, on a River, and in a Plain of the same Name, is the chief Town, and the Residence of the Vice-Roy, of an Arch-Bishop, University, and Royal Audience. The Town is large, rich, fine and populous.

Callao, six Miles from it, is its Harbour, which is large, and secured by two Castles. Every February, that called the *Armadilla* Fleet, sails from hence to *Arica*, where being laden with the Gold and Silver of the Mines of *Potosi*,

and other Places, it returns at the latter-end of *March*, and in the beginning of *May*, that Gold, &c. is carried from thence to *Panama*, and by Land-carriage to *Porto Bello*.

Lima is very subject to Earthquakes. The Spaniards divide *Perou* into three AUDIENCES, which contain several small Governments, viz.

AUDI- Governments. Chief Towns, with their Lat. ENCES. and Long.

1. *Lima*, *Lima*, *Cusco*, 15, and 70. *Caxamala* 8, and 80, *New Potosi*.

Popayan, Ditto, North Lat. 3. *Cari*, *Almavor*, *Pasto*.

Quito propria, Ditto, South Latitude 1. *Porto Vejo*. *Guiaquil* 2, 20 South, and Longitude W. 84.

2. *Quito*, *Los Quixos*, *Baeza*, near the Source of the River *Amazones*, South Latitude 2.

Pacamores, *Valladolid*, *St. Jago de las Montanas*.

Los Charcas, *La Plata*, South 21, and 69. *Potosi*, *Arica* 19. *La Paz*. *Porco*.

3. *La Plata*, *Tucuman*, *St. Jago del Effero*. *Cordoua* 32 and 70.

Situation. This Country, as we have divided, extends from North Latitude 3. to South Latitude 34; so that its greatest Extent from South to North, is about two thousand Miles, and from East to West six Hundred.

Air. The Air is commonly hot and unhealthful; the Wind blows constantly on the Coast South and South-West, contrary to what is usual betwixt the Tropicks.

Towards the Mountains, 'tis cold, because of the great Snows and Rains that commonly fall there, tho' it seldom rains along the Coasts called *Lanos*.

Soil. Here are many large, pleasant Vallies and Plains, with a great many Mountains; the chief of which are the *Andes*, *Cordillera's*, or *Sierra*

Sierra Nevada's, reckon'd the highest in the World. The Plains and Vallies, especially along the Sea-coasts, are very dry and sandy, but in other Places, where water'd with little Rivers, they are very rich, and abound in Corn, Maiz, &c. They have abundance of Game, Fowl, Cattle, and some Lions, &c. Their Vines have very good Grapes.

Their chief Commodities are Gold, Silver, Iron, Quick-silver, Pearls, Rice, Cotton, *Commodities*. Tobacco, Cochineal, Salt, medicinal Drugs, &c.

If any Body ascend to the Top of the Mountain called *Periataca*, he's suddenly taken with a terrible Fit of Vomiting : And many Travellers endeavouring to pass over the Desart of *Punas*, have been benumb'd of a sudden, and fallen down dead ; which makes that Way wholly neglected of late.

2. They have in several Places Springs of very hot Water.

3. Near Cape *St. Helena*, and along the Coast, they have many Fountains of *Coppey*, (a Substance resembling Pitch, and frequently used as such) or *Gultran* Rozin, which flow in such abundance, that Ships at Sea can give a very shrewd Guess where they are, by the strong Smell of such Fountains, provided there be a gentle Breeze from the Shore.

4. In this Country are several *Vulcano's*, whence it is very obnoxious to Earthquakes

5. In divers Parts of *Perou*, are still extant the Ruins of many stately Temples, particularly that call'd *Pachamanna*, (about twelve Miles from *Lima*) and another in *Cusco*, the Residence of the antient *Inca's*, or Kings of *Perou*. In those Temples there was such a Quantity of Gold and Silver, as is almost impossible to believe ; for in and about those Temples, and the royal Palaces, all the Utenfils, Statues, Flowers, &c. whose Number was prodigious, were of massy Gold. No Wonder then, if *Abatalipa*, the last *Inca*, proffer'd to *Pizarro* the *Spanish* General, who had taken him Prisoner, for his Ransom, as much Gold as he could store up in a Hall twenty-two Foot long, seventeen broad, and high in proportion.

6. On a Mountain near *Potosi*, is the most famous Silver Mine in the World : That Mountain stands in the middle of a Plain, and resembles a Sugar-Loaf. 'Tis above a quar-

ter of a League high, and half a League in circuit. The neighbouring Soil is barren for three or four Leagues. The Mountain has been so dug, that 'tis in a manner but a Shell; and it yielded formerly above as much again as it does now. Twenty Thousand Negroes are commonly employ'd here at work. *La Paz*, and *Porco*, are famous for their Mines of Gold; and *Porto vejo* for a Mine of Emeralds.

7. Their Sheep are extreemly large, and are made use of to carry Burdens, yet their Flesh is very good, and their Wool fine: But 'tis reported, that Horses can't live nor thrive here.

8. Among the Curiosities of *Perou*, we may reckon the *Cucujus Peruvianus*, or *Lanthern-Fly*, much like the *Cucujo* of *Jamaica* and *Hispaniola*.

9. They have prodigious large Birds, (called *Candores*) which are so big and strong, that they will set upon and devour an ordinary Calf.

10. Here are two Cause-ways, or Roads, which seem to exceed any ever made by the *Romans*, and reaching from South to North above thirteen Hundred Miles. They were called the great Roads of the *Inca's*, because made by their Orders. One of them was carried through Mountains and Rocks, and the other through the Plain Country. The Grandeur of this Work was augmented by the stupendious Piles of Rocks and Stones laid together, which is surprising how it could be done, for they had no Beasts for Carriages or Draughts, till brought from *Europe*. The Road through the plain Country is defended by Walls twenty-five Foot broad; and within these Walls, there are Streams with Trees planted on both Sides. At certain Distances on those Roads were large and pleasant Inns for Travellers, several of them capable of entertaining Kings and their Retinues; but the *Spaniards* have suffer'd them to decay.

This stupendious Work is used as an Argument to prove, that this Country must have been inhabited for many Ages. This, and other their stately Structures prove, That they must have been a polite People, and under a well regulated Government, long before the Discovery of the New World. Besides what has been already mention'd, these following may be added As,

1. In *Tucuman* are Stones, which breed in an oval Stone-Case, about the bigness of a Man's Head; they lie under Ground,

Ground, and when ripe, they break with a Noise like Bombs, and scatter abundance of beautiful Stones of all Colours, which at first the *Spaniards* took to be of great Value; but upon a strict Examination, found them quite otherwise.

2. The Flower *Granadillo* represents a Cross, and produces a Fruit as large as an Egg, the inside of which is very delicious.

3. Their wild Boars have their Navels on their Backs; and if not cut off as soon as the Beast is dead, corrupt the whole Carcass.

4. Their *Macagua* Birds are so called, because of a certain Herb which they eat as an Antidote when bitten by Snakes.

There's no noted River in *Perou*: But their most remarkable Towns are, *Lima*, *Town*, *Cusco*, *Truxillo*, *Quito*, *Popayan*, *Porto vejo*, *Sevilla de l'Oro*, *Potosi*, *Arica*, *Arequipa*, &c.

The Natives are of a middle Size, and swarthy; they have a simple Aspect, but are not dull, especially those who live on the Mountains. *Inhabitants*. Most of 'em, like other *Americana*, are inconstant, treacherous, lazy, and much addicted to Diffimulation and Sodomy. The Women are somewhat whiter than the Men; very laborious, and the honestest Women in *America*.

This rich Country was govern'd by its *Inca's*, or Hereditary Kings, during above three Hundred Years; but since 1533, 'tis subject to the King of *Spain*, and govern'd by a Vice-Roy, whose Revenue is very Considerable. *Government*.

The Vice-Roy Marquis *De los Reyes*, died, at least, worth eight Millions of Pieces of Eight.

The *Spaniards* say, That a Vice-Roy quitting *Old Spain*, as poor as *Job*, comes here like an hungry Lyon, to devour all he can: And that Sub-Governours are his *Jack-calls* to procure Prey for him, that they may have a Share of it themselves.

Tho' the King of *Spain* has but the fifth Part of the Gold and Silver found in the Mines, yet 'tis said, that during fifty Years, he has had for his Share above an Hundred and fifty Millions of Pieces of Eight, or Crowns.

In several Places (especially on the Mountains) the Natives maintain yet their Liberties, are Idolaters, and govern'd

by particular *Caciques*; but those under the Dominion of Spain profess Christianity. Here are two Arch-Bishops, viz. *Lima*, and *La Plata*. Under the first are the Bishops of *Cusco*, *Quito*, *Arequipa*, *Truxillo*, *Guamanga*, *St. Jago* and *Conception* in *Chili*. And under *La Plata* are, *La Paz*, or *Chuquiaca*, *St. Michael d'Estero*, *Barranca*, *Trinidad*, *Buenos Ayres*, *Assumption on la Plata*, and *Assumption on the Vraguay*.

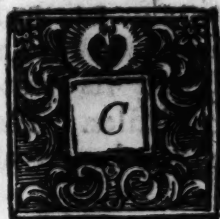


CHAP



C H A P. XXX.

Of C H I L I, &c.



H I L I was discover'd in 1535
by *Almagra*, a *Spaniard*, and *Chili's*
so call'd, as most imagine, *Name.*
from a large and spacious

Valley of that Name in this Country;
but others say, it is so called in the Lan-
guage of the Country, because 'tis very cold.

It has *Perou* on the North, *Tucuman*, and *Terra Ma-ellanica* on the East, *Terra Magellanica* on the South, and the *South-Sea* on the West.

Conception, Latitude 37, Longitude 80, was formerly the chief Town of *Chili*; but *St. Ch. Town.*

Fago, Latitude 34, has now that Privilege.

'Tis the Seat of a *Spanish* Governour, of a Royal Audience, and of a Bishop. Tho' the Town be above forty Miles from the Sea, yet 'tis rich, and has a very good Trade, being situated on the River *Topocalma*, at whose Mouth is *Porto de Val Paradise*.

This Country is divided into three Quarters, or Provinces, wherein are several Jurisdictions, or Counties.

PROVINCES.	Jurisdictions.	Chief Towns, with their Latitude.
1. <i>Chili</i> proper.	<i>Serena</i> ,	<i>Coquimbo</i> , 30. <i>Quasco</i> 29.
	<i>Quillata</i> ,	<i>Copiapo</i> , 25.
	<i>S. Jago de Chili</i> ,	Ditto, 31, $\frac{1}{2}$. <i>Valparaiso</i> 32.
	<i>Conception</i> ,	Ditto, <i>Mataquita</i> .
	<i>Imperiale</i> ,	Ditto, 37. <i>Arauco</i> , 38.
	<i>Valdivia</i> ,	Ditto, 39. <i>Mocha</i> Isle.
2. <i>Imperiale</i>	<i>Chilo's Island</i> ,	Ditto, 40.
	150 m. l. 35 br.	
	<i>Osorno</i> ,	Ditto, 41. <i>Villa Rica</i> , 40. <i>Angol</i> 38, $\frac{1}{2}$. <i>Chillan</i> 36, with Towns of the same Name.
3. <i>Chicuito</i> , or <i>Cuyo</i> .	<i>St. John de la Frontera</i> .	Ditto, 31.
	<i>Mendoca</i> .	Ditto, 32.

The Island of *Juan Fernandez* lies South Latitude 34, 10, and is about 36 Miles round. The *Air* and Soil are very good, but there's no Inhabitants.

Situation. *Chili* lies betwixt South Latitude 24, and 45. So that its Extent from South to North is above twelve Hundred Miles, and its greatest breadth is about four Hundred and eighty Miles. The opposite Place of the Globe to *Chili*, is the South-part of *Tartary*, called *Thibet*.

Air. The *Air* is hot in the Plains and Vallies, temperate along the Coasts, by reason of the Sea-Breezes; but during the Winter, especially near the *Andes*, which run the whole Length of this Country, the Cold is so piercing, that both Men and Beasts perish in great Numbers; and what's strange, the People so frozen, are found in the same Posture they were in when the Cold seized on them. Their *Spring* begins in *September*, their *Summer* in *December*, their *Autumn* in *March*, and their *Winter* in *June*.

Soil. The mountainous Parts of this Country are generally dry and barren, but in the large Vallies towards the Sea, the *Soil* produces abundance of Maiz, Wheat, and most other Grain; as also, variety of Herbs and Fruits. The Vines brought hither from

from *Spain*, prosper very well. They have also Mines of Copper and Gold, the purest in *America*; especially in the Jurisdictions of *Imperiale*, *Baldivia*, and *Cuyo*: But 'tis subject to Thunder, Lightning, and excessive Heats in Summer, which frequently do great Mischief, and so fill the Houses, (especially in *Cuyo*) with poisonous Reptiles, and Insects; so that the People, during that Season, are forced to sleep abroad in their Gardens, or Court-yards.

Their Commodities are Gold, Silver, Maiz, Corn, Honey, Ostriches, Dyers Wood, Leather, Flax, Pitch, Amber, Timber, Salt, Cat. Commodities. tle, Wool, &c.

Here is the Bird called *Cuntur*, (corruptedly *Condor*, by the *Spaniards*) which is of *Rarities*. a prodigious Size, and extremely ravenous. He frequently sets upon a Sheep, or a Calf, and comes down with such Force, that its Blow is always mortal; and not only kills, but is also able to eat up one of 'em. Two of 'em will dare to assault a Cow, or a Bull, and usually master them. The People themselves are not free from such Attempts, but by God's Providence this Bird is very seldom found, otherwise the Country could not be inhabited.

2 The Sheep 'are so very large and strong, that they are able to carry a whole Day a Burden of sixty Pounds weight.

3. They have no poisonous Creatures, and Bugs can't live here.

4. Several of their Mountains are always cover'd with Snow, and yet are full of *Vulcano's*, whence it is, perhaps, that this Country is so obnoxious to Earthquakes, Thunder, and Lightning.

The Natives are of a white Complexion, and tall, very warlike, and courageous, especially the *Auraques*, and those living on the Mountains, who *Inhabitants*: are as yet unconquer'd by the *Spaniards*.

When they had defeated, and killed *Baldivia*, the *Spanish* General, they poured Gold into his Mouth, reproaching him with Covetousness, and made a Cup of his Skull and Trumpets of his Thigh-bones. They esteem so much the Strength of the Body, that they chuse for their Captain the strongest amongst them. But most of the Country along the Coasts, is under the *Spanish* Governour, in subordination to the Vice-Roy of *Perou*. The Natives, who are Inde-

Independant from *Spain*, are gross Idolaters, worshipping the Devil under the Name *Eponamon*; that is to say, *The Strong*.

This Country, which extends Southwards of *Terra Magellanica*, to the Mouth of *Rio la Plata*, Latitude 36, is so called from *Ferdinand Magellan*, who discover'd it in 1519; as also that famous Strait, which still bears his Name; he being the first, for ought we know, that ever pass'd through the same: But as it is long and dangerous, and a shorter Passage having been found out by *Le Maire*, &c. Ships don't go any more thro' it to the *South-Sea*. The Country is but ill inhabited, barren, and little known. The Natives, called *Patagons*, are very tall, but no Giants, as has been reported. The *Spaniards*, who had settled here, and built Forts to hinder other Nations from passing this Strait, dyed either of Hunger or Misery. From *Cape Good Hope*, to *Rio Gallego*, near *Magellan's* Strait, there is 91 and a half Degrees difference, or about 1300 Leagues. And *Port St. Julian* in *Patagonia*, is 76 Degrees W. Longitude from *London*.

Terra del fuego, or the Isle of *Magellan*, lies on the South-side of the Strait, and was so called because of the many Fires, which *Magellan* saw upon it, when he passed the Strait.

Some make it one continued Land, but modern Discoveries shew that 'tis divided into several Islands. The Country is inhabited by *Savages*. On the East-side are the Straits of *Le Maire*, so called from a *Dutch* Sailor, who discover'd them in 1615. They lie Latitude 55, 36, betwixt *Terra del fuego* on the West, and the *States* Island on the East; and East from that, lies *Brower's* Passage. East from thence, Latitude 55, between Longitude 60, and 65, lie *Le Roche's* Island, not fully discover'd; and another called *Unknown Land*, betwixt which lie *La Roche's* Straits, so called from a *Frenchman*, who discover'd them in 1675. And East of them lies the Course which Captain *Sharp* took in his return from the *South-Sea*, in 1681. *Cape Horn*, the most South-part of *Terra del fuego*, lies Lat. 57 48, and Long. 76. The Straits of *Le Maire*, are about thirty Miles wide, with good Roads on each side, and plenty of Fish and Fowl, and some compute it to be only sixteen Miles long.

Paraguay

Paraguay was at first discover'd by *John Diaz de Solis*, in 1515, and taken possession of by the *Spaniards* in 1540. 'Tis so called from a large River of the same Name, signifying, *River of Feathers*, either *Paraguay's* because there are many Birds on it, or because the bordering Inhabitants adorn themselves with Feathers of Birds. The *Spaniards* also call it, *Rio de la Plata*, or Silver River, either because the first Discoverers found some Silver in it, or received some from the Inhabitants.

It has on the North, the Country of the *Amazons*; on the East, *Brasil*, on the South, *Terra Magellanica*; and on the West, that Part of *Perou* Limits. called *Tucuman*, which was formerly a Part of this Province.

Assumption, at the Influx of another River into the *Vraguay*, was formerly the Capital, but now *Buenos Ayres* on the South side of the Ri. Ch. Town. ver *La Plata*, Latitude 35, Longitude 65, above an Hundred Miles up the River, is the Residence of a *Spanish* Governour, of a royal Audience, and of a Bishop. 'Tis defended by a Fort, and has a pretty good Harbour, but not very safe in a North, or North-East Wind. The River here is twenty Miles broad, and navigable by Ships six Leagues higher, but no further, because of a great Cataract.

The *Spaniards* divide this large Country into the six following Provinces. Division.

PROVINCES.

Chief Towns.

1. *La Plata*, proper, in the South, *Buenos Ayre*, *Assumption*, *Corrientes*, *Spiritu Santo*, and the People called *Foentones*.
2. *Chaco* in the North-West Parts, *Conception*, destroy'd. The People *Chiriguanas*, *Payaguas*, *Guamalcas*, *Avipones*, *Matalas*, *Macobis*, *Tobas*, *Palmos*, *Talmacoea*, *Moconcos*, *Zapatalarguas*, *Gorgelocques*, and *Varan*.

PRO-

PROVINCES,

Chief Towns.

3. *Guairo*, E *Chaco*,*Ciudad Real*, Latitude 24.
Seven Archangels, *Concep-
tion*, the People called *Gua-
lachos*.4. *Peraina*, S.W. from *Guaira*,*Acarai*, on the *Parana*.5. *Paraguay* proper, betwixt
Chaco and *Guaira*.*Sta. Fé*, *Xerez*, the People
Guaxarapos, *Guachicos*,
Tapaya, *Xacones*, *Xaquel-
les*, *Xaneses*, *Tapagasu*,
Tapapèques, *Payzevonos*,
Xarayes.6. *Vraguay*, South from *Pa-
rana*.*Affomption*, the People *Gua-
anunas*, *Los Patos*, *Charuas*.

Situation. *Paraguay* lies almost entirely in the inland Parts of *America*, (except those Parts near the Mouth of *Rio la Plata*) betwixt South Latitude 15, and 35; and its Extent either from South to North, or East to West, is above twelve Hundred Miles. The opposite Part of the Globe to it is Part of the Empire of *China* and *Mogul*. This Country in general has a temperate and healthful *Air*. The *Soil*, when well manured, is very fertile, and produces all sorts of *European* Corn, abundance of Wine, Fruits, and Herbs. They have Gold and Silver Mines; Iron and Brass; and Marshes full of Sugar-Canes. Their chief Commodities are Gold, Silver, Sugar, Cotton, Hides, Tallow, &c.

Rarities. Upon *Rio de la Plata* are frequently seen, and sometimes killed, divers Kinds of Serpents of a prodigious bigness, of divers Colours, and who, when they have an Opportunity, prey upon Man and Beast.

2. In the Northern Parts of *Paraguay*, is a certain champaign Country, about 18 Miles square, which is all over-spread with an excellent sort of Salt, and that to a considerable height.

3. In the West-parts of *Tucuman*, is a very large and high Mountain, which for its glittering in a clear Sunshiny Day, is called the Christal Mountain. Under it is a hideous Cave Passage, through which doth glide a considerable

able Current of Water, with so many Windings and Turnings, that from the Time of its Entry under the Mountain, to its issuing forth on the other Side, there's almost the Interval of twenty-four Hours, according to the Computation of some *Portuguese*, who were so bold as to make the Experiment, and that by hazarding their Persons upon a Raft made of Canes.

There are several considerable Rivers, which fall into that called *Rio la Plata*, which according to most Authors, rises from the Lake *Xarays* in the *Amazons* Country, South Latitude 18, and falls into the *Ethiopick* Ocean, Latitude 35, where 'tis above an Hundred Miles broad, from Cape St. Mary in *Brazil*, to Cape Antonio. The Course of it in a direct Line is near fourteen Hundred Miles, but much more including Turnings and Windings.

The Natives are divided into a great many Cantons, of six Thousand, or eight Thousand *Inhabitants* People each; and tho' most of 'em be very big and tall, yet they are reported to be very nimble, and much given to Running, but their Gluttony in devouring raw Meat, without Bread or Salt, fills them so with Worms, that they seldom live till fifty Years old.

They are less cruel than many others of the adjacent Nations, yet very revengeful against those who chance to wrong them.

But this must be said justly of them, That they are very strict observers of their Word; detesting intollerably the Breach of Promise to Strangers, as well as to themselves; in this particular, resembling the *Indians* in *North America*, who too often have occasion to reproach the *English* with forgetting their Promises. They are grateful to the highest Degree, and have a very retentive Memory for Favours receiv'd; insomuch that they will expose themselves to the utmost Dangers and Difficulties, in defence of those Persons who have done them a Kindness.

Some say, that they are idle and dull, but others report, that they are more capable of learning our Arts, than most of the other *Americans*.

The Natives are yet, in great Part, subject to their own Captains, or *Caciques*, whom they chuse among themselves, and under whose Conduct they go out to War. But the best Part of the Country belongs to the King of *Spain*, who keeps

Government.

keeps a Governour at *Buenos Ayres*, and who is accountable to the Vice-Roy of *Perou* : But some relate, that the *Spanish* Jesuits, or Missionaries, have the chief Government, keeping two Missionaries in each Canton, who govern the Natives just as they please; are their Cooks and Catterers, as well as Priests, and allot each Family their Share, otherwise they would devour all at once. These Missionaries live in such Splendor and Luxury, that they suffer no Strangers, or Merchants, to settle among them, lest they should become the Objects of their Envy.



CHAP.



CH A P. XXXI.

Of B R A S I L, &c.



BRASIL was by chance discover'd in 1500, by *Alvarez Cabral*, a *Portuguese*, who, in a Storm, was driven on *Brasil's* this Coast, as he was going to the *East-Indies*; and as the Discovery

happen'd on the Day called by *Papists*, *Holy Cross*, so this Country was called after that Name: But 'tis now universally called *Brasil*, from the *Brasle* Wood, as most Authors think, which grows in great Quantities here. It has part of the Ocean on the North and East, part of *Paraguay* on the South, and *Amazonia* on the West. The Shape of this Country is somewhat like that of a Bottle turn'd upside down.

San Salvader, near *All-Saints* Bay, Latitude 13 and an half, Longitude 39, is, without Dispute, the most populous, and the richest Town of *Bra- Ch Town,*
fil. It lies on the Top of the Hill, and has a *St. Salva-*
good Harbour near it, but the Entrance into *dor.*
it is difficult. This Town is the Seat of
the Vice-Roy, of an Arch-Bishop, and of a Parliament,
and Sovereign Council. The *Dutch* took it in 1623, and
found a great Booty in it; but the *Portuguese* took it again
about

about a Year after, since which they have fortify'd it, together with the Castle of *St. Antonio*, and the Harbour. *Brasile* is little known, except the Sea-Coasts, which the *Portuguese* have divided into fourteen Captainships, situated from North to South in the following Order.

Captainships,	Ch. Towns, with Lat.	Nations of Natives.
1. <i>Para.</i>	<i>Belem</i> , South Lat.	2. <i>Toubinambous</i> , <i>Paranans</i> , <i>Fugares</i> , <i>Cayete</i> .
2. <i>Maragnan.</i>	<i>Taticora Iste Philip</i> ,	3. <i>St. Toupinambous</i> , <i>Ta-boiaries</i> .
3. <i>Siara.</i>	<i>Ditto</i> , <i>St. Sebastian</i> ,	<i>Tabaxares</i> , <i>Tapuyas</i> , <i>Kitariouvi</i> .
4. <i>Rio Grande</i> , or <i>Potangi</i> .	<i>Natal</i> , <i>Conhas</i> , <i>Cape Tiguares</i> .	
5. <i>Paraiba.</i>	<i>Ditto</i> , or <i>St. Maria Petivares</i> .	<i>de las Nives</i> ,
6. <i>Tamaraca.</i>	<i>St. Mary de la Con-ception</i> ,	<i>Mariquites</i> , <i>Obacatiaries</i> .
7. <i>Peruambuco.</i>	<i>Olinda</i> 8 C. S. Aug.	
8. <i>Seregippe.</i>	<i>Ditto</i> , <i>St. Anthony</i> .	<i>Vaquassas</i> .
9. <i>Bahia todos los Santos.</i>	<i>St. Salvador</i> ,	<i>Topinambares</i> , <i>Wicamores</i> , <i>Tupinambas</i> .
10. <i>Ilheos.</i>	<i>St. George</i> , <i>Sta Cruz</i> ,	<i>Tupinachins</i> .
11. <i>Portu Seguro.</i>	<i>Ditto</i> ,	<i>Amyures</i> , <i>Gaimunes</i> , <i>Apiapetangas</i> .
12. <i>Spiritu Santo.</i>	<i>Ditto</i> , 20 and a half,	<i>Tomoniemenos</i> , <i>Margajax</i> , <i>Topuyas</i> .
13. <i>Rio Janiero.</i>	<i>St. Sebastian</i> 22,	<i>An-Tonoupirambauti</i> ,
14. <i>St. Vincent.</i>	<i>gra</i> , <i>Cape Erio</i> ,	<i>Parayoes</i> .
	<i>Ditto</i> , 25,	<i>Tupinikins</i> , <i>Topinaques</i> .

Brasile is the most Easterly Part of South America, and lies from South Latitude 1, to 35, and from Longitude 38 to 58. So that its greatest Extent from South to North, is about two Thousand one Hundred Miles, and all along the Coasts from the River *La Plata*, to that of the *Amazones* three Thousand Miles; but the Extent from East to West is not very considerable, especially on the South Parts. Opposite on the Globe

Globe to this Country are the *Philippine* Islands. And tho' most of it is in the *Torrid Zone*, yet the frequent Rains, and Sea-Breezes, which flow about Noon, render the Air temperate and healthful; and as the Waters are excellent, the People live here to a great Age.

They say that the *Soil* is so fertile in all sorts of things necessary for the Support and Comfort of Man's Life, that there's no Beggar, not even among the *Portuguese*, who are nevertheless pretty much addicted to Laziness every where else. Their chief *Commodities* are *Red*, or *Brasil-Wood* (much used for Dying) excellent Sugar, Tobacco, Cotton, Amber, Rosin, Balm, Train-Oil, Sweet-meats, Saffron, and all sorts of Provisions, besides Gold and Silver.

As the chief Rarities of *Brasil* we may reckon a great Number of strange Creatures, the chief of which shall be here mention'd, and reduced under four general Classes, viz. *Beasts*, *Serpents*, *Birds*, and *Fishes*.

I Of *Beasts*. The most remarkable of them are these following.

1. *Monkeys*, particularly those called, *The King's Monkey*, the biggest of the whole Species, and observable for having a thin, hollow Throttle-bone; near the upper-end of the *Larynx*, by the help of which he makes a great Noise. There are also many Monkeys of a yellowish Colour, that smell like ordinary Musk.

2. The *Sloth* (termed by the Natives *Häi*, from his Voice of a like Sound) but by most *Europeans*, *Ignavus*, or *Pigritia*, and corruptedly, *Pereza* by the *Spaniards*. so called from the Nature of that Animal, being of so slow a Motion, that he requires three or four Days to climb up a Tree of an ordinary height, and twenty-four Hours to walk fifty Paces on plain Ground; his fore-feet are almost double the hinder in length; and when he climbs a Tree, to eat the Boughs thereof, the Hold he takes, is so sure, that while he hangs by a Branch, he can sleep securely. This Beast is not quite so big as,

3. The *Tamanduo Guachu* (which is a Bear commonly called, by *Europeans*, the *Ant Bear*) because he usually feeds on *Ants*; at least he destroys those Creatures where-ever he finds 'em; wherefore he puts his Tongue in Chinks of the Earth, and when 'tis cover'd with those little Creatures, he pulls it and them into his Mouth. Its Tail is so big
C c that,

that, Squirrel-like, he can cover his whole Body therewith: This Bear is like a large Dog.

4. The great *Shell d Hedgehog*, called *Tatu*, by the Natives, and *Armadillo* by the *Portuguese*, because it gathers it self up, Head, Feet; and Tail, within its Shell, as round as a Ball, and that as a sure Defence, either when it falls asleep, or when actually assaulted by any other destructive Creature, with whom it dares not grapple.

II. Of *Serpents*. The most considerable of 'em are,

1. That called *Ibibaboca*, by the Natives, which is about three Yards and a half long, and of a considerable bigness: It is White, Red, and Black; and its Bite is the most pernicious of any, and yet its Venom worketh the slowest.

2. The *Boigacu*, which is half a Yard in compass, and seven Yards long,

3. The *Liboya*, or *Roe-Buck* Serpent; some of 'em are 30 Foot long, and as big as a Barrel, and devour a Roe-Buck at once, from whence they have their Name.

4. The *Bocininga*, or *Rattle-Snake*, so called, by *Europeans*, from a Rattle in the End of its Tail, composed of a Number of dry Bones, from eight to sixteen, which are hollow, thin, dry, and sonorous. The People, whose Misfortune it is to be bitten by it, are tormented with violent Pain (their whole Body cleaving into Chops) and frequently dye within 24 Hours in a most miserable Condition: But as a most remarkable Act of the Divine Providence, this noxious Animal gives timely Warning to Travellers, to avoid it, by making a great Noise with its Rattle, as soon as any Person comes near it.

5. There are also small green Serpents, most commonly living on Bushes, and small Trees, where they catch little Birds.

III. Of *Birds*. The most remarkable are,

1. The *Guara*, by *Europeans* called *Sea Curlew*, remarkable for its alteration of Colours, being at first Black, then Ash-colour'd, next White, afterwards Scarlet, and last of all, Crimson, which grows the richer Dye the longer he lives.

2. They have also *Humming-Birds*.

IV. Of *Fishes* taken on the Coast of *Brasil*, the most considerable are,

1. The *Globe-Fish*, so-called from its orbicular Form, and remarkable for being armed with several long, round, hard, and sharp Spikes and Needles all over its Body, almost like those

those of an Hedge-hog. When he swims, 'tis thought that he draws those Needles in, depressing them to his Body, to facilitate his Way through the Water; and that he advances them at any time he happens to be pursued, bidding, as it were, the Enemy to come at his Peril.

2. On this Coast is frequently seen the *Remora*, a Fish very famous among the Antients, for his stupendous Power in stopping a Ship, as they imagin'd, tho' under Sail, and before a brisk Gale of Wind; but 'tis a meer Story, and it can't have no other foundation than this: If several of those Fishes happen to stick fast round about a Ship, they (as well as Moss, and other things) hinder it from sailing very well.

3. In several Rivers and Lakes of *Brasil*, are to be found *Water-Serpents*, some of them thirty Foot long, and which have so great a Force in their Tail, that by darting it out of the Water, they will snatch whatever is in their Way, be it Man or Beast, and then they eat it under Water.

Lastly The *Iquetia*, a sort of *Scrophularia Aquatica*, is good against *Apoplexies*, *Pleurisies*, and *Intermitting Fevers*. The *Pareyra Brava*, another Root, is a *Catholicon*, provokes Urine, and corrects the *Acids* of the Stomach.

They have a great many Rivers, which are very beneficial to the Country. Their most considerable Towns and Sea-ports are, *St. Salvador*, *Rio Janeiro*, and *Pernambucco*.

The Natives are divided into several Nations, distinguished either by their Language, or Way of wearing their Hair; but in general they are *Inhabitants*, tawny, middle-siz'd, have big Heads, large Shoulders, and great flat Noses. They come soon to maturity, and are so cruel and revengeful, that many of 'em eat their Prisoners. They look fierce like the Northern *Tartars*, and never eat the Flesh of slow Creatures. Most of them go naked, and others wear the Skins of wild Beasts; but some of them dawb themselves with Gum, and then they stick against it some Feathers; others paint their Bodies, to terrify the more their Enemies. They live, for the most part, in Woods; and they lie in a sort of Nets, gather'd at each End, and tyed to two Poles fixed fast in the Ground. This Net is made of the Rhind of a certain Tree, called *Hamack*; and hence is derived the vulgar Appellation of Sea-Bedding, commonly used in the Eng-

fish Ships. The Women are very fruitful, have easy Labour, retire to the Woods, where they bring forth alone ; and having washed themselves and their Child, they return Home : Their Husbands lie a-bed the first twenty-four Hours, and are treated as if they had endured the Labour. They allow *Polygamy*, yet punish *Adultery* with Death : And when young Women are marriageable, but courted by no Body, their Mothers carry 'em to their Princes, who deflower them, and this they reckon a great Honour. They have several Languages ; and those on the Sea-Coasts cannot pronounce the Letters *L, F, R*, and their Pronunciation is much by the Throat.

Some of the *Brazilians* chuse certain Captains, by whom they are ruled ; but others wander up and down, without any Order, or Government among them. The King of *Portugal* sends a Vice-Roy, who has under him several Governours. The Natives are gross Idolaters ; and the *Portuguese* are such as in *Portugal*, except that they would never receive the *Inquisition* at *Brasil*.

They have an Arch-Bishop at *San Salvador*, who has for his Suffragans, the Bishops of *St. Philip*, *Olinda*, and *St. Sebastian*. *N. B.* The *Dutch* took the North-parts of *Brasil* in 1637, but they were obliged to abandon them in 1660. *Newhoff* assigns the following Causes for so easy a Re-conquest of it by the *Portuguese*. 1. The *Dutch* took no care to have sufficient *Colonies* of their own Natives, nor to keep strong Garisons in the Country. 2. They left the *Portuguese* in possession of the open Country. 3. They laid too heavy Taxes on the *Portuguese*, and thereby disgusted them intirely. 4. The *Portuguese* were animated by the Report that this Re-conquest was made for the Honour of God, the Service of the King, and common Liberty. 5. The *Dutch* had very good Conditions granted them.

The Country of the *Amazons*, was discovered by *Francis Orelhana*, a *Spaniard*, in 1543, who sailed down the River from *Peru*, till he came to the *Atlantick*. It was so called from the warlike Women (resembling the ancient *Amazons*) who appeared in Arms, as well as the Men, on the Banks of the River. It has on the North, *Terra firma*, *Perou* on the West, *Paraguay* on the South, and *Brasil*, with a little Part of the Ocean on the East. It lies from the Equinoctial to South Latitude 20, and is about 1300 Miles,

Miles from South to North, and East to West. It is little known ; but 'tis said, it is much the same in every respect as *Paraguay* and *Brasil*, except that 'tis not so obnoxious to Musketoos, and other Vermin : Tho' in the middle of the *Torrid Zone*, the Air is temperate, because of the multitude of Rivers, the E. Winds, which continue most of the Day, the equal Length of Day and Night, the great Number of Forests, and the annual Inundation of the Rivers.

Some place the Head of the River *Amazones* at the Foot of the *Cordillera's* in *Quito* ; but others say, that *Lauricocha* Lake, in the Audience of *Lima*, South Lat. 12 is the Head of it, and that it runs above 2000 Miles, besides Turnings and Windings. It receives many other Rivers, on both Sides, and very large ones from the South, and has abundance of fruitful Islands in its Stream.

As for the Isles round about South *America*, there are several, but little and inconsiderable ones.





C H A P. XXXII.

Of the TERRÆ INCOGNITÆ.



WE call *Terra Incognita* some Countries which are as yet unknown, or known only along their Coasts. We shall divide them into those lying towards the *Arctick*, or Northern Pole, and those towards the *Antarctick*, or Southern Pole. The first are again divided into the *Spitzberg*, *Greenland*, *Nova Zembla*, and the Land of *Redso*. And the others are divided into *New Guinea*, the Land of the *Papous*, *Carpentaria*, *New Holland*, *Solomon's Islands*, the *Australis Terra* of the Holy Ghost, *New Zeland*, the Islands of *Horn*, *Cocos*, *Traytors* and other small ones; *Terra del fuego*, *Stadtland*, *Terra Australis propria*, and the Land of *Diemen's*.

Of all of them in their Order:

Spitzberg was so called by the *Dutch*, because of its sharp-pointed Rocks and Mountains. They pretend that it was first discovered by them in 1596, as they were searching for

for a North-East Passage to the *Indies* : But the *English* say, it was discover'd by Sir *Hugh Willoughby* in 1553.

The *English* call it *Greenland*, because it is cover'd with Moss. However, it lies nearest the North-Pole of any Place, yet known, and has been discover'd on the West-side, to about Latitude 82. It lies on the North of *Norway* ; and 'tis not known whether it be an Island, or Part of the Main Continent.

The *Soil* 'is all mossy and stony, and yet produces some green Herbs : The Frost is *Soil.* almost continual, but strongest in *April* and *May*, when Men can scarce live there. Dead Corpses immediately freeze ; and some say, they have been found entire after thirty Years burial.

The Sun appears here about the middle of *February*, and disappears the first of *October* ; but when it returns towards their Horizon, they have a long Dawn, From *May* to *August* the Sun never sets, but it never rises more than thirty-three Degrees above their Horizon, so that his Heat is not strong enough totally to melt the Ice and Snow, nor to raise the Vapours so high, as to make the Air temperate and clear.

There are some Harbours or Bays, where the *Dutch* and *English* go in the Summer Time to fish Whales, which are very large here, but the Navigation is perillous because of the floating Ice Rocks. The Bears, Foxes, Rennes, most of 'em White ; and some Birds are the only Inhabitants of those Parts. On the East side of *Greenland* there are several Islands, as *Wych's Island*, *Hope Island*, and *Bear Island* about Lat. 74. *Cherry Island*, and *Mayen's Island*.

Greenland, is so call'd because of its green Moss ; the first Discoverer is said to have been *Greenland.* a *Norwegian*, who having committed a Murder in *Iceland*, fled from thence, and landed in this Country, which is about 200 Miles to the West. He sent his Son to *Olaus Trugger* the K. of *Norway*, who upon this Discovery, granted him his Pardon : Whereupon, several *Norwegian* Adventurers did afterwards settle and plant here ; but this Country lay, as it were concealed, for a long Time, till

1576, when Sir *Martin Forbisber* going in quest of a North West Passage to *China* came to that Inlet, betwixt this Country and the Isle of *Desolation*, about Lat. 63, which he called *Forbisber's Straits*. Several others have since that Time made some Discoveries on this Country, which is most of it high Land cover'd with Snow, and where there are but some few Shrubs, tis subject to Earth-quakes.

The *North* Parts are not fully discover'd because of the Ice. The *South* Parts consist of many Islands, which occasion variety of strong Currents. The Natives live chiefly on Fish, Fowl, and some small Beasts. They are generally of a low Stature, with black Hair, flat Noses, broad Faces, and of an Olive Complexion They resemble the *Samojeds* and *Laplanders*, are active, strong, courageous, very kind to one another, but thievish, revengeful and treacherous towards Strangers. They are gross Idolaters, and seem principally to Worship the Sun. Betwixt *Greenland* and North *America* lie the Islands of *Cumberland* and *St. James*.

Nova Zembla signifies *New Land* in the *Nova Zem- Russian* Tongue, and lies East from *Groenland bla.*

about 270 Miles, it reaches from Lat. 70 and 77, and betwixt Long. East from *London* 58 to 80. Authors are not yet agreed whether it be an Island, or joined to the Continent, but some say that People can go over the Ice from North *Muscovy* to *Nova Lembla* and from thence to the *Spitzberg*, and so to the *Northern* Parts of *America*.

Some *Dutch* discovered it in 1596, a great many pretend that there's a Way from it to the *East-Indies*, but stopt by Mountains of Ice. It is likewise observ'd that *Nova Zembla* is colder and more barren than *Spitzberg*, though it lies more Southerly than this. Betwixt the Isle of *Weygatz*, (an Island separated from *Nova Zembla*) and some *North* Parts of *Muscovy* lies the Straits of *Weygatz*, whose Current runs from West to East. On the East of this Strait lies the *Staten Eyland*, and on the West *Maurice's Island*.

The Land of *Jesso*, *Yedzo*, or *Esso* lies on the North East of *Japan*, East of *Asa*, and West of *America*, betwixt Lat. 41 and 52, and Long. East of *London* 135 and 150. Some call it an Island others join it to *America*; it is separated from *Japan* on the North by a Strait of 30 Miles, called *Sungar*.

The

The *Dutch* discovered it in 1643, and found the Natives to be of a small Stature, hairy and ugly, of an Olive Complexion; they daub themselves with Blue, they are Idolaters, warlike and lazy. They feed most commonly on the Fat and Oil of Whales, Fish and Herbs. The *Japanese* furnish them with Rice and Apparel in exchange for Silver, Feathers of several Colours, fine Furs, Fish, Neats Tongues; and Whale Oil. There has been no Discovery yet farther North than Lat. 51. The Straits of *Uries* lie East from it, with an Island in the Middle called the *States Land*, Lat. 45, and Long. 153, and East from those Straits lies that called the *Company's Land*.

New Guinea lies East from *Gilolo* and *Ceram*, South of the Line from N. W. to S. E. it was discovered by *Alvaro Savedra* in 1517, and so called, because tis almost diametrically opposite to *Guinea* in *Africa*. Some say that it consists of a great number of Islands, but others pretend that 'tis joined to the Continent, and some make it the same with the Land of *Papous* or Black. However, all agree, that the Soil is good, and the Inhabitants of a black, swarthy Complexion. That called *Schouten's Island*, is placed by some South Lat. Min. 54. *Moa* lies 260 Miles S. E. from *Schouten*. *Janna* is a little to the East, and abounds with Cocos and other Indian Fruits. Captain *Dampier* discover'd in 1700 another Island divided from *New Guinea* by a Strait on the North East, which he called *New Britain*.

The Land of *Papous* is by some placed East of the Islands of *Banda*, and West of *New Guinea*; some join it to *Guinea*, but others separate it from it. The People in general are Black, and have some Gold, and Ambergrease.

Carpenter's Land, so called from a *Dutch* Commander, who discover'd it, lies between *New Guinea*, and *New Holland*, about Latitude 10, and 15.

New Guinea.

Schouten's Island.

Moa.

Janna.

New Britain.

Papous.

Carpenter's Land.

New

New Holland lies South from *New Guinea*, about South Latitude 10. It was discover'd by the *Dutch* in 1644. The Land is sandy, dry, and has no Springs. The People are the most miserable in the World. They are tall, thin, have great Heads, round Fore-heads, large Brows, and wide Mouths. None of them have the two Fore-teeth of their Upper-Jaws; their Skin is very black; and their Eyes half shut, because they are so infested with Flies, that they can scarce keep them off from their Eyes, Noses, and Mouths. They have no Food but small Fish, which they catch by making Stone-Wears across little Branches of the Sea, to which the Tides bring them, and leave them at Low-Water.

Salomon's Islands, in the South-Sea, according to some two Thousand four Hundred Miles West of *Perou*, betwixt Latitude 7, and 11.

They lie conveniently for Refreshment in the Way betwixt *Chili*, *Perou*, and the *Molucca's*. They are said to abound with Provisions: But Authors are not agreed whether this Country be really Islands, or Part of the South unknown Continent; it is even doubted by some, whether there be any such Islands. Some place near them the Land called *Quiri*, from *Ferdinand de Quiri*, the Discoverer. It is also called by some *Australis Terra*, of the Holy Ghost, situated on the South-West of *Salomon's Islands*.

New Zealand was discover'd by the *Dutch* in 1654: Some place it betwixt South Latitude 30, and 42, on the S. E. of *New Holland*, and on the South-West of *Salomon's Islands*.

'Tis not known yet whether it be an Island, or part of the Continent discover'd by *Quiri*. 'Tis said the Country is fruitful, but meanly inhabited, and little cultivated.

The Islands of *Horn*, *Cocos*, *Traitors*, *Dogs*, *Sondergrondt*, *Waterland*, *Vliegen*, and several others, lie betwixt the Equator and the Tropic of *Capricorn*, on the North of *New Zealand*, and West of *Salomon's Islands*. They have been discover'd by several, but especially by *James le Maire*, a *Dutchman* in 1616. As for *Terra del Fuego*, and *Stadtland*, we have spoke of 'em in the Article *Terra Magellanica*.

Terra

Terra Australis. *Terra Australis propria*, lies on the West of *New Holland*, and on the South of the ancient Continent. The Eastern Part was discovered in 1603, by *Gonneville*, a French Captain; and in 1697, Captain *Vlanning*, a Dutch-man, discover'd some Coasts over-against the South-side of *Madagascar*.

Diemen's Land was discovered by the Dutch *Diemen's* in 1642, and called after the Name of the Land. Governor of their *East-India* Company. Some place it Lat. 42, and Long. from *Teneriffe* 164.

Now if it be asked why these Countries are so little known, and why Discoveries are made more to the Northwards than the Southwards, I shall answer,

1st, That the Sea is more frozen to the Southwards, as receiving a great deal more of fresh Water from Rivers supposed in that vast Continent.

2. The Voyage is far more dangerous, long and difficult to double either Cape of good *Hope*, or Cape *Horn*, than to go to the *North Sea* betwixt *Norway* and *North America*.

3. The Trade to the *South Parts* is not so beneficial as to the *North*.





THE

INDEX.

A	Bex	290	Arabia	136
	Abyssinia,	292	Armenian	130
	Acadia, or N. Scotia	356	Arachosia	149
	Acapulco	327	Arno	68
	Achaia	94	Ararat	136
	Aderbeitzan	146	Arragon	3
	Adige	68	Asia	108
	Adrinople	82	Asmere	164
	Etna	72	Asturia	3
	Africa	244	Ava	186
	Agra	164	Azores	366
	Ajan	289		
	Albania	93	B	
	Alcantara	8	Babylone	128
	Aleppo	120	Bactriana	148
	Alentejo	25	Badajox	28
	Alexandria	36	Bagdat	128
	Algarve	25	Bahama Isles	369
	Algiers	261	Balfora	128
	Amazons	401	Banians	174
	America	313	Barbadoes	378
	Amyrantellles	309	Barbary	159
	Ancona	37	Barca	260
	Andaloufia	4	Barcelona	5
	Antiochia	120	Bari	

INDEX.

Bari		38	Caribbee Islands		376
Batavia		233	Carolina		334
Beira		24	Carpentaria		406
Belgrade		84	Caspian Sea		111
Bender		85	Castille		3
Bengale		166	Catalonia		3
Benin		268	Caucasus		216
Bermudas		367	Cayro		250
Bessarabia		85	Cephalonia		100
Bilbao		3	Cerigo		99
Bildulgerid		269	Ceylan		235
Biscay		3	Chiampa		192
Bisnagar		179	Chili		391
Bologna		37	China		195
Bombay		178	Ciculi		90
Borneo		231	Cochinchina		191
Bosnia		84	C. Colomb		315
Boston		352	Coffee-Tree		140
Brachmans		174	Congo		281
Bragance		24	Constantinople		79
Brazil		399	Corfou		99
Buda		86	Corse		74
Bulgaria		82	Coromandel		180
Burgos		3	Croatia		84
Burfa		115	Cuba		370
	C		Curdistan		127
			Curiel		134
			Cyprus		238
			D		
Cadix		3	Ardanelles		82
Cafraria		284	Dalmatia		82
Calicut		182	Damascus		117
California		362	Dehly		163
Cambodia		189	Diarbeck		125
Cambay		165	Diemen's Land		408
Canary		306	Diou		166
Canada		357	Doge		58
Candia		97	Douro		10
Cambalu	M	196	Dragon		241
Canton		202	Drangiana		149
Cape Good Hope		284	E		
Cape Verd		306	Bro		10
Capes in America		317	Egypt		250
Cardinals		45			
Carduel		133			Elephant

INDEX.

Elephant 193
Entre Duro Minho 25
Ephesus 116
Epyrus 94
Erivan 146
Erzerum 125
Esanial 9
Esbeck 85
Estramadoura B, 6° 25
Echiopia 291
Euphrates 111

F

Faquirs 175
Ferrara 35
Fez 263
Florida 331
Formosa 203

G

Gallicia 3
Gallipoli 81
Gammaz 111
Ganges 169
Genova 61
Georgia 132
Goa 177
Golconda 178
Gomron 150
Gorunna, or Groyn 3
Granada 3
Greece 94
Groenland 403
Guadalquivir 10
Guadiana 10
Guinea 276
Guipuseoa 4
Guzurate 165

H

Ainan 203
Halicarnassus 116

Hermanstad 91
Hercules Pillars 9
Hermaphrodites 168
Hircania 142
Hispaniola 374
Hoang River 201
Horn's Traitor's Isles 407
Hottentots 286
Hudson's Bay 357
Hungary 86
Huscanawing 340

J

Jacobites 131
Jamaica 372
Japan 219
Java 233
Jmaus 112
Imiretta 134
Indies 161
Isfahan 144
Italy 34
Judea 120

L

Adrones Isles 227
Lahor 164
La Havana 376
La Plata R. 319
Leon 3
Leghorn 52
Lama 385
Lipari 75
Lisbona 23
Long-Island 351
Lucayes 369
Lucca 63
Luffon 226

M

Acao 202
Macassar 208
Macedonia 93
Madagaf-

INDEX.

Madagascar	303
Madera	308
Madrid	2
Mahomet	104
Majorca	6
Malacca	188
Malabar	181
Malaguetta	278
Maldives	236
Malta	75
Manilla	226
Mantua	43
Maronites	131
Maryland	344
Mascarenha	310
Maurice Isle	310
Mecca	136
Media	146
Medina	137
Mexico	325
Milan	46
Mindanao	226
Mississippi	319 332
Modena	53
Mogols	162
Moldavia	91
Molucca's	228
Monomotapa	299
Morea	94
Morlachia	56
Morocco	265
Mozambick	288
Mummies	152

N Ankin	202
Naples	40
Natolia	114
Navarre	3
Negroeland	273
Negropont	98

New-Brittain	357
— England	352
— Foundland	364
— Guinea	406
— Holland	407
— Jerfey	348
— Mexico	329
— York	349
— Zealand	407
Niniveh	127
Nova Zembla	405
Nubia	290
Nylus	256

O By	111
Ombria	37
Orvieto	37
Ormus	150
Ostriches	270

P Anama	382
Papous	406
Paraguay	395
Parthia	148
Parma	53
Peking	196
Piedmont	36
Pensylvania	345
Perfis	149
Pegu	186
Perou	385
Philippine Isles	225
Phoenicia	117
Pondichery	181
Pope's Dominions	44
Porto Ricco	376
Porto Santo	309
Portugal	28
Presburg	83

Ragusa

INDEX.

R		Teflis	132
Ragusa	84	Teneriffa	307
Reggio	36, & 39	Terra Australis	408
Rhodes	240	Terra Firma	382
Romagna	37	Terra del Fuego	394
Romania	82	— Magellanica	394
Rome	34	Terræ Incognitæ	402
Rues	133	Thessaly	94
S		Tonquin	184
Sabina	37	Tombut	273
St. Christophers	378	Tralos Montes	25
— Domingo	374	Tranguebar	181
— Helena	310	Transilvania	90
— Marino	64	Trent	54
— Mathew	311	Tripoli	118, & 260
— Maura	100	Tunis	261
— Thomas	311, & 377	Turin	50
Sardinia	73	Turcomania	125
Savoy	36	Turkey in Europe	78
Samarkand	213	— In Asia	113
Saracens	141	Tuscany	50
Scanderberg	92	Tutucorin	181
Scarpanto	242	Tyrus	118
Sclavonia	85	V	
Schouten's Isles	406	Valentia	3
Scorpions	152	Van	146
Servia	83	Vaticrn's	35
Siam	187	Venice	55
Sicily	71	Vera Cruz	328
Sinai	139	Vesuvius	67
Socotora	309	Virginia	336
Sottovento	380	Visapour	177
Spain,	1, & 6	W	
Spitzberg	402	Alachia	91
Stampalia	242	West-Indies	313
Stromboli	39	Winds, killing	129
Sumatra	232	Y	
Surate	165	YEdso	405
Sufiana	149	Yerack	127
T		Yvica	7
Tafilet	269	Z	
Tamerlan	171	Zaara	269
Tarentula	67, & 152	Zanguëbar	288
Tartary, Great	212	Zante.	106

F I N I S.

3
3
3
5
5
8
7
6
7
3
9
5
7
7
69
88
56